Ex Libris
JOHN AND MARTHA DANIELS

c&r

(22)

1639

1st Edn.

£450

MARKHAM 31432

ONE OF THE VERY
OLDEST ENGLISH
BOOKS ABOUT THE HORSE

VERY RARE

FIRST EDITION

W. M. fecit

THE COMPLEAT HORSEMAN AND EXPERT FERRIER.

In two Bookes.

The first, shewing the best manner of breeding good Horses, with their choyce, nature, riding and dyeting, as well for Running as Hunting, and how the Rider ought to behave himselfe in the Breaking and Riding of Colts, as also teaching the Groome and Keeper his true office, touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge, and prescribing the best manner how a perfect Stable ought to be scituated and made, not hitherto so fully described by any.

The second, directing the most exact and approved manner how to know and cure all maladies and diseases in Horses: a worke containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to *Ferrier* or *Horse-Leech:* the Cures placed Alphabetically: with many hundreds of medicines never before imprinted in any Author.

Published at the earnest request of sundry Noble and worthy Gentlemen, for the generall good and benefit of the whole Kingdome: And dedicated to his most Excellent Majestie,

By *Thomas de Gray* Esquire.

LONDON,
Printed by *Thomas Harper*, and are to be sold by *Lawrence Chapman*, at his Shop at Chancery lane end next Holborne,
1639.

Vpon his Majeſtie, mounted on his *Horſe* of Menage.

TO ſee the glorious Edgar *on the Mayne,*
Rays'd on the winged Pines, *to reach a ſtrayne*
In emulation of that Arke, that ſhines
Fixt on the Heavens, amid'ſt the Starry ſignes.

Makes us reflect upon that powrfull hand,
That bounds with Soveraign lawes both ſea & land,
Great Charles, *who rays'd upon his Courſers wings,*
From th' Earth into the Aire like th' Edgar *ſprings;*
And neere ſhall mounting reſt till hee aſcends,
Like Perſius *who* Andromeda *defends.*

William Church

his booke

The gift of my Mother Re: Church

TO THE MOST HIGH AND MIGHTY MONARCH, CHARLES, BY THE GRACE OF GOD, KING OF GREAT *BRITAINE*, *FRANCE*, AND *IRELAND*, DEFENDER OF THE *FAITH*, &c.

SIR,

YOu are justly placed in a glorious sphere, elevated in a most conspicuous altitude above other inferiour and subordinate Orbes, from whence (as a soveraign Arbiter) you behold and judge of our Motions, as they either relish of worth or demerit, and (like the Sunne) impartially dispense the propitious beames of your favour, as well to the humblest plant, as the tallest Cedar. As I am a recent and fresh existent example of your life-tendring influence, for when depressed and trampled upon by the insolency of an unkinde-adversary that

that raiſed me up to tread upon an equall Baſis with him, who lately had deſigned me for his foot-ſtoole. An admirable example of Clemency and Iuſtice, eminent vertues, and truely inherent in your moſt Royall boſome: for which with all humility I bow, and thankfulneſſe acknowledge, infinitely honouring them ſo conſpicuous in your Majeſty, and by you ſo frequently exerciſed. Thus reſtor'd, I come charg'd with a Booke, which I moſt humbly proſtrate at your feete, becauſe I feare it is not conſcious of ſo much worth, as to merit a kiſſe from your ſacred hand. It is the Embrion of my ſtudy, travels, experience, and practiſe, and cannot arrive to forme and perfection without the reflection of your Majeſties favour. It brings with it a front not altogether inglorious, of *Horſmanſhip* and *Ferriery*, the firſt not incompetent with the moſt illuſtrious title and Heroick Spirit; the ſecond not unworthy the knowledge, yea the practiſe of the moſt accompliſh'd Gentleman. I know this Treatiſe cannot hold proportion with ſo elated a patronage, as that of your Majeſty, although it were inform'd with a farre nobler Genius; yet for all this infinite diſproportion, the Dedication of it unto your ſacred Majeſty will not appeare much improper; for firſt I received the ability to proſecute it from your Grace and favour: ſo that deriving its being from you, it belongs of right unto you, and muſt have recourſe unto your Majeſtie for its ſafety and protection. Secondly, it is the off-ſpring of my age, and cannot but leave a fatall participation in its Parents infirmity, and therefore (eſpecially in theſe cenſorious times) cannot poſſibly ſubſiſt without your Royall protection. Laſtly, as you have taken the rationall creatures of this your tripartite Kingdome into your titular care, ſo have you not excluded the irrationall, albeit in a different condition, much leſſe the *Horſe*, whoſe Generoſity, and uſe have given him the precedency in your Majeſties eſteeme, before all other bruit ſpecies, ſo that this Booke (which beautifies his ſhape, encreaſes his courage, delivers rudiments for his menage, preſcribes cures for his diſeaſes,

and

and in all, enables and advances his race and bravery) hopes to finde your Majeſties hand extended and open to receive it. The worke concernes the Common-wealth in generall, and if accepted and peruſed with as much zeale and care as I have us'd in the publiſhing of it; I preſume it will not be found empty of profit. My many yeares have given me the priviledge to have ſeene and knowne this kingdome rich both in the number and quality of her Horſes, and it would infinitely grieve me that I now live to ſee her reduc'd to ſo deplorable an indignity, but that I am confident I ſhall ſee her reſtor'd to her precedent glory and opulency by your Majeſty: and now that I have aſſum'd the boldneſſe to inculcate her poverty, my zeale and reſpect to my Country, tranſports me yet a little further to diſcover the cauſes of it, together with the redreſſes and remedies. Firſt, thoſe Forreſts, Parks, Commons, Fennes, Moores, and other marriſh and waſte grounds, which paid yearely ſo rich a tribute of young, able, and ſerviceable Horſes to the univerſall uſe of this Kingdome, are at this time diſafforreſted, diſpark'd, taken in, drain'd, laid dry, and converted to other (but much different) uſes, ſo that thoſe brave breeds and races of Horſes are much extenuated, or altogether intermitted. Then the Gelders, who in every ſhire ſo confidently and frequently exerciſe their faculty in a moſt unlawfull manner, and ſpay yong Fillies, by which meanes they become barren, the breeds of Horſes diſcontinued, and the Common-wealth highly prejudic'd and unfurniſh'd; for inſtance I can and will (upon occaſion) produce a Gelder who ſpayes more then a hundred Fillies. For redreſſe of the firſt, your Majeſty may be pleaſed to command that thoſe Statutes which were enacted for the breeding of Horſes, may be ſpeedily and exactly put in execution. For the ſecond, that you will likewiſe pleaſe by your Proclamation to inhibit all Gelders that unlawfull and prejudiciall exerciſe of their profeſſion, then ſhall your Majeſty ſee the noxious and exorbitant diſeaſe meet with a ſudden and eaſie cure, and the whole King-

dome derive a ſenſible and ineſtimable benefit from it. Now it reſts that I make an humble Apologie for my boldneſſe, which indeed would be a matter of trouble and difficulty for me to accompliſh; did I not know your Majeſtie to be a Prince infinitely tendring the good and welfare of your Kingdome; ſo that this treating of a buſineſſe not inconſequent, I deſpaire not of obtaining your Royall pardon, but promiſe my ſelfe from your benignity and clemency, a gratious acceptance of that I have moſt zealouſly delivered.

Your Majeſties moſt humble

and faithfull Subject,

THOMAS DE GRAY.

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE, IAMES, MARQVESSE HAMILTON, *EARLE OF ARRAN AND* CAMBRIDGE, BARON OF EVEN,

Aberbroth, and Ennerdale, Master of the Horse *to his Maiestie, Knight of the Honorable order* of the Garter, and one of his Majesties most honorable privy Councell.

My Lord,

TO have presented this peece of Horse-manship to his Majestie by any other hand then Yours, had beene very improper; as well in regard of the place your Lordship beares, as of my respects to your Noble person.

Here is a subject (my Lord) worthy of your consideration, and the imployments of your thoughts even serious; for in this most generous Creature, next unto Man, consisteth the pleasure, honor, and defence of a most flourishing Kingdome.

I have given part of my Youth to the investigation of this

beautifull and uſefull Creature; I have ſearched many Nations for my better information; and albeit I have found ſome Climates more Fortunate then this of Ours, in the production of a happie ſhape to this Creature, for the moſt part our Horſes not being drawne out with ſuch delicate Lineaments, nevertheleſſe ſome of them, I have (where care and diligence have beene uſed in the Breed) of moſt abſolute, and perfect ſhape, and whereas frequently, the Barbary *Iennet,* Turke *and* Neapolitan *Courſer, are cryed up for their beauties, yet as in ſome ſhapes they excell, ſo in ſome other th y may be found defective.*

But if we regard the Spirit, Vigor, and doing of a Horſe, no Nation, or Soyle, produceth a more Active, then this our Iland of Great Britaine, *as hath beene well experienced by many Noble and memorable Services.*

Vnto which if we adde a due obſervation in our Breed, both on the one ſide of the Stalion or Sire, and the Damme, our loſt glory will be ſoone recovered.

But ſince the laying aſide of the great Saddle and Cannon, and neglect of the Horſe of Menage, ſince the applying our Breed only to Racing, or, (as I may better ſay) in furniſhing our ſelves with Horſes of ſpeed to runne away from our Enemy, the moſt ancient honour of Horſeman-ſhip peculiar to this our Kingdome, and for which all other Nations highly eſteemed us, is now almoſt vaniſhed and loſt; inſomuch as were we preſſed with thoughts of defence (from which the moſt prudent and watchfull Eye of our moſt gracious Soveraigne, Guards us, through his moſt happie Government) we ſhould bee forced (I write this in bluſhes) to to pull Horſes from the Coach, and Cart, to fill up our Troopes.

Let it therefore bee recorded, (my Noble Lord) that whileſt you were Maſter of the Horſe to his Maieſtie, an exact obſervation was eſtabiſhed throughout this whole Kingdome, for the due breeding of ſerviceable Horſes; to the furtherance of which moſt Noble deſigne, if theſe my Obſervations ſhall any way conduce, I ſhall bleſſe my Pen that is ever waded in ſuch a ſubiect: profeſſing my ſelfe to owe unto my Soveraigne and Countrey all I

have

have, and unto them my Labours as a moſt loyall Subiect and true Patriot, I moſt humbly offer.

And my good Lord, theſe Obſervations gathered in my Youth, I was adviſed and preſſed by ſome Noble Friends (though now old) to publiſh for the generall good of this our Kingdome: Otherwiſe for my owne part I ſhould have rather ſuppreſſed them, as not being now ſo fit a ſubiect for me to treate off, but the publique good hath over-ſwayd me. Wherefore with theſe Oblations I Conclude, Kiſſing your Lordſhips Hands, and ſhall ever profeſſe my ſelfe

Your Lordſhip

Moſt humble

Servant.

THOMAS DE LA GREY.

To the Reader.

WHen I doe conſider (*benevolent Reader*) the inconvenience whereinto that Man is plunged, who brings himſelfe upon the publique Stage of promulgating his Bookes in print, be the ſubject never ſo laudable, and the Author no leſſe cautelous and ſufficient, endeavouring with all diligence to prevent the brand of a black cole: nevertheleſſe all induſtry applyed, he ſhall not paſſe without oblo-quy and aſperſion.

This very conſideration hath ſo afrighted and deterred me, that albeit I have had many great motives exciting me to make a tender of the Love, Duty, and Service I beare to my Country; yet when I doe contemplate the many cenſures I muſt undergoe, I have beene evermore diſheartened as well from beginning, as going forwards in this my deſired purpoſe. Notwithſtanding partly through the reſpect I beare to my Countries profit and honour, and partly by meanes of the importunity of many my right Noble and generous friends, who have been eye-witneſſes to ſundry of my Cures, and thoſe not a few uncouth and rare: I have adventured even now in my declining dayes, to leave this Work as a Monument to enſuing times, no whit doubting, but that the judicious will friendly accept thereof; but as for the malevolent and ignorant, I am moſt confident that the quils they ſhall dart at me, cannot goe as from a Porcupine, and therefore will do me the leſſe hurt or domage.

I therefore am bold to put into thy hand, this poore work of mine, which I have digeſted into two Bookes: In the firſt, I lay thee down rudiments how thou mayeſt breed Horſes to thy beſt advantage and liking; which albeit they may appeare unto thee to be recent and unknown, yet if thou wilt be pleaſed to put them in ure, and make tryall (not digreſſing from my principles) thou wilt (I doe aſſure me) be ſo farre from diſliking them, as never hereafter to ſwarve or diſſent from them. For if we ſhall ſeriouſly ruminate in how high eſteeme that man is who is owner and poſſeſſor of good Horſes, how much commended, how much reſpected, how much talked of, and how well proffered for them: but when he ſhall be knowne to be a breeder

breeder of such good Horses, will not his *encomiums* be the greater? but when together with these himselfe shall be known to be exquisite in Horsemanship, whereby to cause his Horse to shew himselfe in his Pace, Menage, and all other his postures like as well becomes a right good Horse, perfectly mouthed, delicately borne, obedient to the hand, and to answer the Switch and Spur, will not (I say) that Gentleman be highly commended, and have more eyes upon him as he passeth along, than are commonly cast upon a Comet or the Sun eclipsed? yes undoubtedly. For if we doe but note when a handsome Horse passeth along, we may observe the people not onely gaze upon him as he commeth towards and against them, but to turn themselves and looke after him so long time as he continueth within their view and sight: Mans love to the Horse is generally so great.

Sithence then the Horse is a creature so generous, and therefore so much liked and beloved of all, in my poore judgement, it should suit very well with every Gentleman of worth, ranke, and quality, to endeavour (if not to breed, yet at least) to be masters of such Horses (which he must keep) that shall be truely handsome and comely, rightly bred, of good colour, cleane shape, well marked, and singularly well ridden and made, and so he shall the better advance his honour and reputation.

Having now bred, or otherwise by thy diligent endeavours attained unto such Horses as be truely good, and for thy turne; the second thing to be thought of, is, if they be not already made unto thy hand as thou desirest to have them, that thou then doe procure such a Rider, who is known to be a master of his Art, or otherwise thou wilt be much deceived, and farre to seeke of enjoying thy wished desires, and therefore I have given thee instructions how to make thy choice of such a man, whereby thou shalt not be wronged in thy expectation, nor thy Horse marred in his first making and handling. Neither have I taken upon me to teach him his Art, (for that were a thing very impertinent) but those documents which I have set thee downe must serve onely to shew thee how thou shouldest soone finde whether the Rider may be for thy turne or not.

The third thing which thou art to take to thy consideration, is, the good or harme that may come unto thee by the choice thou makest of thy Groome or Keeper, who may either through his ignorance, or inconsideration, soone make him unfit both for thy owne use, or any mans else: out of which reason I have depainted thee a Groom in his lively colours, and if his conditions and qualities shall be otherwise than what I have delineated, assure thy selfe thou dost runne a manifest hazard of marring that Horse thou didst hope should have been to thy hearts desire. And forasmuch as it is a matter very much praise-worthy to be a Master of good Horses, to have them made perfect and ready, to have such Riders, Keepers, and Groomes, as be very

very perite in their faculties; yet if thy Stable be not every way fitting and correſpondent, much diſprofit and inconvenience may thereby ſoone redound to thy Horſe. I have therefore preſcribed thee the meanes how thou mayeſt have a perfect and good Stable, with all commodities and accoutrements thereunto belonging: and therefore if thou wilt be pleaſed to make uſe of theſe my rudiments, and punctually obſerve theſe my grounds and principles, aſſure thy ſelfe thou wilt in ſhort time aſpire to that which will be thy honour and renown.

And to the end thou mayeſt the more perfectly and eaſily underſtand the full drift and ſumme of this my firſt Booke, I will here give unto thee an Epitome of it in a few lines, which may doe thee much pleaſure in the peruſall thereof.

In the Introduction, I ſhew thee how needfull a creature the Horſe is beyond all others, and what admirable things Horſes in former times have perpetrated and done, whereof I produce thee inſtances of the famous acts of ſundry brave and generous Horſes, whoſe love to their Maſters have been ſo great great, as hardly to be credited, if ancient Hiſtories and Annals of good integrity, had not engraven them in the memory of never-dying poſterity. We reade of *Bucephalus* what he did for the good, life, and ſafety of his Maſter; of the Horſe of *Dionyſius*, with what undaunted courage he comported himſelfe in battell for the reliefe and ſuccour of his Lord; it is recorded alſo of the Horſe of *Antiochus*, what ill ſucceſſe befell *Centurettus*, who when he had ſlaine *Antiochus*, would needs backe the Horſe of his ſlaine Maſter. It is alſo noted what inly love *Nicomedes* his Horſe bare to his Lord and Maſter, when after his death of meere griefe, famiſhed himſelfe. We reade of *Aethon*, the Horſe of *Pallas*, who was evidently obſerved and ſeen to weep at the funerall of his Maſter. *Silius* makes report of two famous Horſes called *Pelorus* and *Ciraus*, the one eminent for his proweſſe and hardineſſe in warre, and the other for his unparalelled ſwiftneſſe. Moreover we may reade, how that this poore creature hath ſo well merited of man, as that many have erected Monuments and Sepulchers, celebrated Exequies, builded and founded munificent Cities, ſet up Pyramidies, made Epitaphs, erected goodly Statues, inſtituted Playes and Games; and all theſe in honour of the Horſe; beſides many other remarkable things right worthy of note.

In the way of Breeding, I do intimate unto thee the manner how, the ſeaſon when, the place where, together with the colours, marks, and ſhapes as well of thy Stalions, as of thy Race, or Stud Mares, and from what defects they muſt be free: what Signes are beſt wherein to cover, what courſe to take with them that they may conceive, what exerciſe is fitteſt for them as well when they be with Fole, as after foling; how to cheriſh thy Mares when their Colts ſhall runne by them, and how to breed up thy Colts till they come to handling,

backing, and riding, with other circumſtances very neceſſary to be known: and thus much briefly for the firſt Book.

The ſecond Booke conſiſteth chiefly of the manner how thou mayeſt cure all ſuch diſeaſes and maladies (both intrinſecall and extrinſecall) whereunto either the life of the Horſe, or any of his limbs or members may be any way endamaged or in danger. This I have handled by way of familiar Dialogue, which I hold to be beſt, for avoyding of prolix and over-tedious diſcourſes, by reaſon it will very much help the memory of the Reader, and keep his minde the better attent upon the ſtate of the Queſtion or ſubject in hand, and by that meanes I may my ſelfe be the better able alſo to explicate and deliver my meaning, much more cleerely. In which Dialogue, I have introduced as prolocutors, three perſons onely, *viz.* Firſt, *Hippophilus* a Gentleman, one who is the true lover of the Horſe. Secondly, *Hippiatrus* the Ferrier or Mariſhall, one moſt expert in Horſe-leech craft: And thirdly, *Hippoſerus* his Servant or Iourneyman, ſometimes his apprentice bred up by him, from whom *Hippoſerus* hath had his education and knowledge in this Art: theſe be all the *Dramatis perſonæ* to this Scene. Wherefore in the firſt Chapter, I doe endeavour to illuſtrate unto thee the true Office of the Ferrier, wherein I do produce an exact examen of his function.

In the ſecond Chapter, I do inculcate as well the cauſes of health as of ſickneſſe, wherein I make an abridgement of all thoſe things which all learned Phyſitians and Chirurgions (both antient and modern do from the grounds and principles of profound Philoſophy) finde to govern and beare rule in the body of the Horſe, without which he can have no fleſh, bones, ſinewes, bloud, or life it ſelfe, wherewith to make up the entire ſtructure of an orginall body, and ſuch are firſt the Elements; ſecondly, the Humours; thirdly, the naturall faculties; fourthly, the inſtrumentall members; fifthly, the ſpirits animall; ſixtly, the ſpirits vitall; ſeventhly, the naturall parts, and ſo of the reſidue. And having ſufficiently diſcuſſed all theſe things in due order and method, I do then ſhew thee what meanes we have to preſerve the Horſe from all inward diſeaſes, which I doe finde to be foure in number, *viz.* By Purge, by Sweat, by Phlebotomy, and by Vomit: and then I do proceed to inculcate unto thee the cauſes of health and long life, which I do make to be in number twelve, which if thou do well obſerve, they will redound to thy great utility and profit.

In the third Chapter I do demonſtrate certaine things moſt befitting a Ferrier to know and underſtand well, before he ſhall take upon him to adminiſter: in the handling whereof I do begin firſt with the foure Elements, anatomizing unto thee their true natures and vertues, and how and where they be ſcituate, things moſt needfull to be known; then I goe along with the two proper Elements, ſhewing from whence the ſeed and menſtruall bloud is ingendred, then I paſſe for-

forwards in intreating of the foure Humours, explaining their natures and vertues, poynting unto the places of their abode and residence, and what relation and coherence they have unto the foure Complexions, I do also shew thee what are the two spirits animall, and the two vitall, their natures vertues, and places of abode and residence in the body of the Horse. After all this I shew thee, that by duly observing the complexion of the Horse thou art to cure, thou mayest thereby the sooner, better, and with more security and ease, perfect thy Cure; nay, I goe yet further with thee, in shewing unto thee an exact way whereby to know by the complexion it selfe, the diseases whereunto the Horse is most propense; then I make known what be the causes of the evill dispositions of the Horse, which bringeth and begetteth unavoydable infirmity and sickneſſe, whereof they be two in number, *viz.* Intrinsecall and Extrinsecall, together with a definition of the nature of sickneſſe; and so I go along in teaching thee the manner how thou oughtest to administer such Drinks, Potions, Clisters, and Medicines, without any the least perill to thy Horse, as also the time of the day most suteable to that purpose: and what exercise is most requisite to be had after Physicke or Medicine. And lastly I come to touch briefly upon his urine and ordure, whereby to give the rules infallible how to know and understand the true state of the body of the Horse as well in health as in sickneſſe.

In the fourth Chapter of this second Book, I do begin to handle the Cures in particular, wherein I run a course by my selfe, which I have not known any before me undertake: for whereas Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, do begin with all the inward diseases which are to be cured by way of Physicke, and then with the outward maladies which doe appertain unto Chirurgery; I have thought it much better to take the diseases Alphabetically, mixing the extrinsecall with the intrinsecall, by which meanes they will the sooner and more easily be found, and turned unto more readily. And whersoever you shall finde this ✠ mark inserted in the end of any cure, I have set the same there, to let you know that receit to be undoubted, and approved for good and certaine, being by my selfe often practised and used. And those receits that have not the mark, are such Cures which I did procure from sundry able Ferriers, whereof I have had no tryall or experience at all, for want of time and means, and therefore dare not avouch or cry them up for mathematicall, albeit they do appear unto me to be probably good, but by reason I have not tryed them, I would not adventure a *probatum*, or *ecce* upon them. Nevertheleſſe if God permit me to reprint, I doubt not but by that time to give them for approved and warrantable, and to adde many more unto them which I have already by me, which I do forbeare to publish at this present, albeit I do know many of them to be as probably good as any of those.

In the other Chapters I goe cleane through the whole Alphabet,

according to that Method used in that 4th. Chapter; and therfore let this abstract suffice for the present. And forasmuch as I have discussed the former things of Breeding, &c. in my first Booke: Yet my intention was not at the first to trench so deepe into that subject, but to shew principally the *Ferriers* Craft and Art, out of an earnest desire I have to excite & stir up our yong Gentlemen to assume some knowledge of a Mystery so necessary for them to apprehend, or at leastwise to have a glimpse of, considering how rare a thing it is to finde a skilfull *Ferrier* among our rurall or Countrey *Smiths*. For if the Nobility & Gentry of this our Ile of *Great Britaine* did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horsemanship were, and how much they are esteemed and admired, who are the true professours thereof, they would labour more than they now doe, to breed and have good Horses; but it much troubleth me to see how little esteeme Gentlemen now a dayes have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Menage, yet for Hunting; but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting forsooth, or Harriers which be as fleete as petty Grey-hounds wherewith they do so much over-straine the strength of their poore Horses (forcing them over deepe-Fallowes, tough-Clayes, and wet and rough Lands) that albeit those Horses be strong and able, yet are they so toyled out therewith, as that when they come home at night, they would pitty the heart of him who loveth a Horse, to see them so bemired, blouded, spurred, lamentably spent, and tyred out: Whereas if such Horses had beene ridden to the great Saddle and Cannon, they would have infinitely delighted all men who should have beheld them.

But let mee leave them vnto their toylesome sports, and let my speech bee directed to such Heroique and Generous Spirits, who have a desire to informe and better their understanding in the secrets of this brave Mysterie; who if they have a will to bee edoctrinated therein, then for a Mathematicall ground of true Horse-manship, I must tell them, that they having and possessing of good Horses, yea and Riding it self is little worth without the knowledge of the *Ferriers* Craft, at the least in the Theorique or Speculative part, if not in the Practique: and therefore I could wish that every worthy Gentleman should have a good insight thereinto, albeit he doth not make it his Trade, Occupation; or frequent practise and profession. Yet it will not be amisse, he be able to know every disease in a Horse, its Symtomes, and how it commeth, together with the true signe therof, which indeed is a matter of very great consequence. For when a Nobleman (*V. G.*) Knight, or Gentleman shall have a Horse that doth well merit his affection, and which shall be for his turne, if any accident or Malady shall befall him, albeit he may not himselfe take upon him the Cure, and to Drench, Bloody, or Dresse him with his owne hands; yet (sending for a *Ferrier*) he may discourse with him upon the Nature of the Disease, and thereby come to understand

whe-

whether the *Ferrier* speaketh according to Art or not, and whether his intended course of administring, be answerable to true Art & perfect Science, and probably a secure way to perfect the Cure; so as if the Master and Owner of the Horse be not himselfe enabled with some superficiall knowledge at the least, at what time he shall consult with the *Ferrier*, if not, (I say) able to iudge of the Mans sufficiency (the Smith himselfe being indeed insufficient) by mistaking the Infirmity, he may ignorantly administer or apply such contrary Medicine, whereby instead of labouring to cure him, hee shall most easily and infallibly kill him, to the no small regret and griefe of the Owner.

But *Ferriers* and *Smiths* may peradventure greatly repine, and grumble at the publication of this Worke of mine, like as to my knowledge, & in my hearing, they have most virulently exclaimed, and vehemently inveighed against Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, wishing their Bookes burned, and the Authours at the Goodyere, for publishing and Printing them: pretending much wrong to be done, to such poore men who have served Apprentiships to the Trade, having none other way or meanes of livelyhood but onely this. But hereunto I answere, that these Men have no cause at all to feare any preiudice thereby; and I dare boldly affirme the promulgation of Bookes will be so far from their harme or hinderance as that it will be infinitly to their benefit: for when they shall find any one Nobleman, Knight, or Gentleman who will undergoe so much paines as eyther to Bloudy, Drench, Corosive, Cauterize, apply Cataplasines, Emplaysters, Powders, Vnguents, or the like to his Horse, whatsoever he hath attained unto by reading, or otherwise; you shall have a thousand who upon any the least occasion will send for a *Ferrier* to take the Cure in hand. Against, instead of this pretended preiudice, this commodity will accrew to my brethren *Smiths*, *Marshalls*, and *Ferriers*, *viz.* they shall (by promulgation of Bookes of this Nature) become much more able, and *Imbui in studijs*, that is, much more learned and indoctrinated in this generous Faculty then ever they were before, by which meanes they will bee esteemed much more famous and eminent, and cryed up for most expert and able Men in this Noble Science. For how commeth it to passe, that Physitians, Chyrurgions, Lawyers, Divines, and all others Artists doe become so great Doctors of their Arts and Professions, and admired for most famous and learned Men, and so frequetly sought after, enquired out, and sent for when occasion is? Is it not for what they have attained unto by study and reading, untill which time they were not so hardy as to adventure upon practise? so as without their Library, they could never have been able to have attained unto that eminent knowledge they have afterwards aspired unto; neyther could they otherwise have beene possibly able to practise and worke by true Art and Science. For the Workes of learned

learned and eminent Men, is the only thing that doth enable them, which are left as a never-dying Monument to ensuing and endlesse Posterity, as the common good to the weale publique, even to all ensuing Ages: Imitating therein the ancient Sages of *Greece*, that when any man had invented that thing which was knowne to bee commodious to the Re-publique, least the thing should bee buryed with the Inventer, and by that meanes raked up with him in the ashes of perpetuall oblivion: they ordained that the first Inventer should set up his Science be or knowne by way of Record in their publique Schooles in spacious Tables and in Capitall Characters of gold with with this Impresse, or Title, *viz.* Κάλλιον ἢ βέλτιον ἀγαθὸν τὸ ὠφελοῦν ἢ τὸ ἴδιον, *Bonum pulchrius, et divinius, quod Genti est quàm Vni.* That is, That thing is to be esteemed better and more excellent which is communicated to the weale publique in generall, rather then to be imprisoned in the Bosome of any perticular man. Wherefore that thing (I say) whereat I do principally ayme, is to publish the true Art of the *Ferrier*, a Faculty wherein I have beene daily versed, and diligently practised for more than forty yeares, and that unto my no small labour and expence: and I doe well assure my selfe that peradventure no one Gentleman in this our Kingdome more, who hath done greater, more difficult, or desperate Cures.

During the time of my travels, I have for my better indemnity, not only perused what Authours I could meete with, who have written upon this Subject; but I did also make my selfe an Eye witnesse to the Cures of the most famous *Marishals* and *Ferriers*, the Cities, and places afforded where I came, omitting no diligence which might informe or enable my knowledge: neyther would I bee too credulous, or give too much beliefe to fame or reports, for we have a Maxime in the civill-Law, which saith: *Fama per se parum momenti habet ad probandum*: Fame alone is not of credit sufficient to satisfie or convince the understanding of Man, untill such time as hee hath made tryall. For the common Proverb is; *Qui facile credit, Facile decipitur.* He that easily believeth, is easily deceived. And truly thus much I am able to speake, that *France* and *Flanders* (for that in those two places I had most commerce and experience, albeit I travelled many other parts of Christendome) were the two Kingdomes in which I found the best, ablest, and most expert *Marishalls*, or *Ferriers*; but of all the places where ever yet I came, I am able of my own knowledge to say thus much (and that with no small griefe) that the worst *Ferriers* generally I doe find to be those who are of our owne Nation: nevertheless, I do not conclude or condemne all for insufficient, for some there be well knowne unto me very quaint and expert *Ferriers*, who can worke very well, and according to true Art and Method. I have therefore in this illaborat Work of mine given you severall Receipts for every Cure, and most of them approved by my perticular practise and experience; Others againe I have inserted

ſerted which are the Cures of other able men, which by reaſon they do ſound probable unto me, I have ſuffred them to paſſe among my owne, (though I never had meanes or opportunity to make triall of them.) And the reaſon why I have inculcated ſo many ſeverall Receipts to each Cure, are two; *viz.* Firſt becauſe that Receipt which will Cure one diſeaſe, will not alwaies cure the ſame Malady in an other Horſe. Secondly, you ſhall find ſome Receipts eyther very difficile to make, or the Ingredients not eaſie to be gotten, otherwiſe they prove more chargeable than the Owner of the Horſe is well able to defray: and therefore I have given the Receipts for all ſorts and degrees of Horſes; howbeit thoſe Receipts which are moſt coſtly and intricate to make and compound are commonly the very beſt; and worketh the beſt effects, and therefore I leave thee to thy ſelfe to make thy owne choyce.

Now if any man ſhall ſay, that I have robbed or rifled other mens labours: I anſwere, I have not robbed, but approved them: for by the ſame rule I may as well object, that whoſoever worketh by my Booke robbeth me, for if that be theft, I pray what Phyſition is there in the whole world, (promulgating his Science) may not be as much cenſured and accuſed for rifling the Aphoriſmes of *Galen* and *Hipocrates*, yea and of others the Ancients and Moderne Authours alſo. But howſoever, I am ſo far from traducing other mens endeavours, as that I doe both reverence and admire them, and eſteeme my ſelfe unworthy their Scholler. But I know no reaſon why I may not publiſh my knowledge of this Noble Art, for what ſaith a venerable Authour *Qui ſe dicit ſcire quod neſcit, temerarius eſt: et qui negat ſcire quod ſcit, ingratus eſt.* As that man is to be accompted for moſt temerarious and raſh, that ſhall take upon him to know that which in truth he knoweth not; ſo alſo doth he ſhew himſelfe to be moſt ingrate, who denyeth to know that thing which truly he doth know. Innumerable are the grounds which may be laid to the rearing of this Structure, which being ſo well knowne to all, by ſetting each downe in particular, I ſhall therein but only *Siſyphi ſaxum volvere*; conſume much time (which to me is moſt pretious) and labour to little purpoſe, and leſſe profit; and therefore I will in this diſcourſe draw towards an end, leaſt I might tire thee out with too long an Epiſtle; Yet leſſe I thought I could not inculcate, by reaſon there are many things in this worthy and noble Science, which might otherwiſe ſeeme to be very darke and abſtruſe, and the Cures I have (I ſay) carryed Dialogue-wiſe, *Ne inquam et inquit ſæpius interponeretur*; meerly to avoyd confuſion: For *Ariſtotle* ſaith well; *Omne Ens naturaliter appetit ſuam perfectionem.* Every *Ens*, that is to ſay; Every man hath a naturall propenſion to arrive unto that perfection to which hee hath awill or deſire to underſtand.

Now the reaſon why I did enterlace my firſt Book with the Honours and perfections which Horſes in former times have atchieved,

as

as also with such rules and principles of breeding, shape, marks, colours, &c. was, lest otherwise I might be like to one who telleth a sick man of a soveraign medicine for his infirmity, and yet conceales from him the use thereof. And therefore I doe make it my chiefest desire, and principall intention, yea my obligation, not onely to illustrate each disease, together with its cure, but also to make up all the attributes belonging to a perfect Horse, and such defects which be incident to so noble and usefull a creature, being likewise discovered.

If therefore it may please thee sometimes to retire thy selfe in the perusall of this Treatise, and with due and serious judgement, not so much to reflect upon the method and forme of this world, as of the matter or subject it selfe, then I doubt not but that thou wilt receive such benefit and contentment, as that thereby thou wilt be much bettered and enabled in thy underhanding, both for the breeding and well ordering of young Horses, and in the cure of every of their maladies.

And forasmuch as I have brought this my first work to its period, which I may rightly resemble to a Structure or Building, my speciall care hath been to make it faire and beautifull to the eye, and to grace, garnish, and set it forth with varieties of divers sorts, wherein I have been very diligent to give it all satisfaction I have been able, and therefore I have laboured to paint and polish it forth with what variety is most necessary for so exquisite a building.

Lastly, sithence nothing more imports a building, then to lay a sure and substantiall foundation, and withall to make the wals so tite and impregnable, as to be able to resist not so much winde and weather, as the violence, assaults, and battery of detracting enemies: my care therefore hath been to have it founded and scituate upon the immoveable Rock of a pregnant truth. And therefore considering I have applyed all this paines, and spent so much time and cost, which I might have otherwise both imployed and applyed to my more particular commodity, by which I have not onely finished this Structure, and made it commodious for thee, but I do also present it unto thee meerely for thy proper use and habitation; and therefore I hope that thou wilt not make such use thereof, as men do of an Inne, where he taketh a bait or repast, for one meale, or for a lodging, for one night, and away, to wit, by onely taking a superficiall view thereof: but that thou wilt make it thy abode, at the least for some time; I meane, by reading and digesting the whole worke in order as it lyeth treatably and seriously, and after by putting in practise what therein thou shalt finde to be fit for thy use; so shalt thou reape, and enjoy the benefit; my selfe the comfort, and the Common-wealth the honour.

If any leakes be in the printing, impute them either unto the misprision of the Printer, or else to the negligence of him unto whom the

the charge of the correcting was committed; and if any be in the Author, let the fault light upon those who spurred him so fast on to haste it to the Presse; but howsoever shew thy charity in correcting the faults and slips, as well of the one, as of the other: So shalt thou shew thy selfe to the world like thy selfe, truely Noble, and oblige the Author to remaine ever thy humble Servant, and true Friend: Farewell.

THOMAS DE GRAY.

To my VVorthy Friend, Monſieur *de Gray*, upon his exquiſite piece of *Horſemanſhip* and *Ferriery*.

WHen Troy's *Palladium, on whoſe fatall ſtay*
Their fortunes, hopes, their Gods, their Altars lay;
Was by Vlyſſes *cunning hand ſurpriz'd,*
And Pallas *woo'd to ſee* Troy *ſacrific'd:*
The Greeks pretending recompence, returne
A Horſe, whoſe entrals that waſt City burne.
How different is thy Gift, ſince here we ſee
Pleaſure with ſafety, ſtrength with wit agree?
This frame exceeds that; but to nobler ends,
That hurts by fraud, by knowledge this defends:
And though in Ilium's *Horſe an Army reſt,*
'Twill be far more to COMPREHEND this Beaſt;
Since Ignorance hath taught our Ile to lay
Her Art, on Iades that onely runne away.
But when I looke on thine, and there behold
Souldiers made knowing, and the knowing bold:
I cry, had this been given for that of Wood,
Minerva *had return'd, and* Ilium *ſtood.*

S. I. B. B.

To his good Friend, *Thomas de Gray*, upon his Booke called the *Expert Ferrier*.

WHilſt other, Readers vexe in fruitleſſe wayes,
And write adventurous lines for vulgar praiſe,
Thou in a noble Art, and uſefull skill,
Venteſt the labours of a modeſt Quill,
To make us by thy well-ſpent induſtry,
Supine neglects to know, and rectifie;
Since in this piece of thine, the Horſe appeares
(Whilſt him his Rider as a Pilot ſteeres
Through ſtormes of Courage,) by thy awfull hand
Enforc'd to ſuffer, and obey Command.
Then, thou, his innate Spirit to maintaine
By propagation of a generous ſtraine,
Vnpractis'd precepts with judicious heed
Freely afford'ſt us in his better breed.
And laſtly, that this Worke may fully pleaſe,
Experimentall Cures of each diſeaſe,
Which frequently occurre in this brave Beaſt
Are, with the leſſe approv'd, by thee expreſt:
That all may ſay, we, in this Booke have found,
A Horſe well bred, well mennaged, and ſound.

S. T. H.

To my knowing Friend, Monſieur *De Gray.*

Ld Edward. *Noble* Worceſter, *that branch*
Sprung from great Iohn *of* Gaunt, *and Royall* Blanch.
Of t'ee our de li Gray *was wont to ſay,*
To ſee thee on thy Horſe of menage play,
Was ſolid pleaſure, for the Excellence
That fed the eye, went further than the ſenſe.
And I beleeve it ſince the Active part
That ſhines in precepts of thy skilfull Art,
And comes to us from ſpeculations taught
Through long Experience, and with labour wrought
In theſe thy choyce Phylippicks, makes this Land
Bleſt in the faire production of thy hand.
Our skilfull Markham, *and old* Blundevill,
Or whoſoe're hath toucht this marſhall Quill,
Receives by thee more light than was his owne,
Or was by th' Ancients, or by Modernes known.

G. F.

To my well-deserving Friend, *Thomas de Gray*, upon his exact piece of *Horsemanship* and *Ferriery*.

IF I who love a Horse next to my life,
Should now be mute in the commending strife
Of this thy Horsemanship, my de la Gray,
I might henceforth be banisht all the play
At Bansteed, Winchester, *and* Salsbury,
And sit me downe under this Horse and dye.
Nay, I will write before thy Booke, and fill
The vacant roome of some deserving quill:
And wish in all my sport to be as sure,
As when thou work'st upon a desperate Cure.

Wolferstone.

Vpon Monſieur *de Gray*, his moſt elaborate piece of *Horſemanſhip* and *Ferriery*.

THis Book's inform'd with a high Genius! this
Above the malice of detraction is!
Nor needs a friends Encomium blaze it forth,
It's proper vertue vindicates it's worth:
Yet, ſince by th' Authors happy care and paine
I underſtood how firſt to uſe the veyne,
And menage ſonipes, I could not chuſe
But vent this gratefull rapture of my Muſe,
How that by it he amply doth impart
The eſſence of the Horſeman's, Ferriers Art;
So that the Horſe ſhall to perfection grow,
And no diſeaſe his courage brave o'rethrow.
Now I will leave Pegaſus *aiery courſes,*
And ſue to mount one uf his well train'd Horſes.

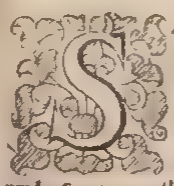
Ed. R.

To the Authour of the Expert *Ferrier*.

HEer's Mirrour, eak Modell of true Honour.
Fame wait's on Thy name. Thou wait'st upon Her.
By Cavallry the Golden Fleece th'ast wonne;
Therein, Thou art a Non pareill, That One.
Whose Fame shall dye? Thine? It shall remaine
The age, presag'd by Ovid's *sublime straine.*

I. H. D. M.

To my ever honoured Friend *Tho. de Gray* upon his select Peece of *Horſeman-ſhip* and *Ferriery.*



Age h'aſt Thou made our Later age,
Thou art the Phœnix *of our Time;*
Certes, Thy rare Peece I preſage
Hath wonne the Fleece it's ſo ſublime.
My younger Pen cannot but waite on Thee,
Whoſe Name ſhall ever bee moſt deere to mee.

Francis Hawkins.

THE EXPERT FERRIER.

Chap. I.

The Introduction.

IF we will but take to our serious consideration how many great obligations we have to admire the infinite goodnesse of Almighty God in creating such a marvellous number of creatures, meerely for the use and service of man, whereof no one of them can be wanting; and that amongst them all, we have none more usefull; or which can be lesse spared, then the Horse; no dumb creature more generous, nor any that commeth so neere unto the pleasure of man, none can serve him better in time of peace and warre, none better for manuring and tilling the earth, and to cause it to produce its fruits; none more usefull for bringing in the fruits of the earth; none more behooefull to beare and carry him his long and tedious journeyes, in heat and cold, through thick and thin, by night and day; none better to carry him from danger, and to land his master at the port of safety, then the Horse: and for his pastimes and recreations, no creature to be compared to this: neither is there any creature created by the great Creator of all things, which doth so perfectly understand and connive with the nature and minde of man, or that beareth a more inly love to man, as doth this poore creature the Horse; for upon all occasions he sweateth, he trudgeth, he toyleth, he drudgeth, he moyleth, he laboureth *pro viribus*, with great alacrity and cheerefulnesse (so long as his vitall spirits last) to give comfort and content to him that feedeth and cherisheth him, yea and that (I say) with such joy and alacrity, as if (like to a reasonable creature) he found himselfe obliged thereto in the bond of all sincere duty and gratitude. For should I speake rather like a Philosopher then a Christian, I could not but agnize nature to be admirable in all her works,

wherein man doth owe unto her infinite, and those very great thanks, in that she hath accommodated and plentifully furnished him with all things needfull for his use, as also in that she hath propagated (amongst all other) the Horse, the most usefull for the service of man, and who best acknowledgeth his Master. And that this may be the better anatomized, I will shew you what I finde recorded by authenticall Authors of the excellency of this praise-worthy creature.

The so much-renowned *Bucephalus*, who carried his Master through so many conquered kingdomes, serves for an example to all ensuing ages, who would not suffer any man but great *Alexander* to backe him, who seemed to be proud at what time he carried so glorious and victorious a charge, and it is also written of him, that being wounded at the siege and sacking of *Thebes*, he carried him couragiously through the troops and throngs of all the combatants, with incredible valour and courage, nothing at all esteeming or prizing the losse of his bloud, being most desirous, and no lesse willing to do his master all faithfull service, to the utmost of his power, and to the effusion of the last drop of his bloud, labouring to purchase unto himselfe by his (not to be parallelled) valour, and his resolute perseverance, a victorious advantage over the enemy. What never-dying high renown, the horse of *Cæsar* got, I hold little inferiour to that of *Bucephalus*? *Dionysius* the tyrant of *Sicily*, in a great and well-fought battell, was himselfe so hard put to it, that he was constrained to forsake his horse, nevertheless the poore beast made his way through the throngs of the enemy; who all bloudy and miery as he was, gat him to a randevous his Stable. *Centaurettus* of *Galatia*, having in battaile slaine *Antiochus*, he in a bravado mounted his horse, who soone found by good experience, (albeit no whit to his advantage) that the said horse retained a resentment of the death of his slaine Master, for the horse so soone as he felt this his new Lord upon his back, never gave ouer flinging, yarking, plunging, and bownding, commanding the Bit with his teeth, launching out sometimes this way, sometimes that way, with so great impetuosity and fury, that at length he cast his rash rider to the earth, and then fell to him with his heeles, redoubling his strokes in so thick and violent a manner, not giving over till he had slain him out-right, whereby he gave him little cause to triumph and glory in his temerarious attempt. We reade of *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, whose Horse so intirely loved him, as that his Master was no sooner dead, but the Horse presently forsooke his meat, and so continued, untill such time as he languishing for very griefe, dyed of famine. *Virgil*, the Prince of Poets, maketh honourable mention of *Aethon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, sonne of *Evander*, who saith that this *Aethon* being present at the funerall of his master, wept for sorrow, as these two verses do inculcate:

After

After came Aethon, *bold in fight, now weeping,*
And in his teares, his mournfull visage steeping.

Silius Italicus in his ninth Book, doth highly extoll two horses, to wit, *Pelorus* and *Ciræus*, speaking of them in this manner:

Ready Pelorus *was to th' hand and rayne,*
Obedient still, and of a generous straine:
Hearing his Masters voyce, Ciræus *hies,*
'Fore the beholders, and the winde of flies.

The tractableneſſe and love that the Horſe beareth to man, have been the occaſion that ſundry great perſonages have reciprocally anſwered it, by erecting of Statues, and by building of moſt famous Cities to their honour and memory. *Alexander* before mentioned, founded an opulent City in honour of *Bucephalus*, and gave it his name, and celebrated his exequies. The Egyptians erected moſt magnificent Piramides, and ſumptuous ſepulchres to ſuch horſes, as had ſerved them well in their warres. *Octavius Cæſar*, and after him, *Adrian* the Emperour, interred their Horſes with great pomp and ſolemnities, and cauſed famous Epitaphs to be engraven upon their monuments. The Emperour *Commodus*, did the like to his Horſe *Parſinus*, and commanded that he ſhould be buried in the *Vatican*. *Romulus* did inſtitute Playes and Games called *Equitia*, in honour of Horſes, and cauſed them to be preſented in the field of *Mars*. The *Ethiopians* did ſo highly eſteem of theſe noble creatures, as that they armed their Helmets with the skins of Horſes, ſuffering their eares to remain on, and they did weare their tayles upon their Creſts, like as now a daies men uſe their plumes. Other nations have done the like, who held Horſes in no little eſteem. We reade of a Roman Emperour, who made his Horſe a Senator. The ancient Aſtrologers have likewiſe attributed ſo much to Horſes, that they have placed one winged amongſt the cœleſtiall ſignes. The Poets hold that the Fountaine (where the nine Muſes uſed to bath themſelves, and to drink) ſprang up, by the blow of the foot which *Pegaſus* gave againſt the two topt hill, *Parnaſſus*. *Neptune*, God of the Sea, is ſurnamed *Hippius*; by reaſon that (as the Poets doe fable) the firſt Horſe that was ever ſeen, received his origen from him, or from a ſtone whereon *Neptune* had poured water. There remaineth much more to be ſaid in honour of the Horſe, then there hath been already delivered. Wherefore omitting further Encomiums, and attributes, I haſten to matters of greater conſequence. Sithence therefore the caſe ſo ſtandeth, that this dumb creature is by Almighty God given unto man, as a creature of ſo uſefull importance; what thankfulneſſe then are we bound to give unto him for ſo great a bleſſing and benefit? And therefore what dili-

gence is required of us; yea, and what carefulneſſe ought we to uſe, in travelling to attaine to this ſo neceſſary a creature in the moſt exact manner we are able? Nor can this poſſibly be acquired to our true content, unleſſe we doe apply our beſt endeavours herein; for the Ancients have this Proverb, *All rare and excellent things are hard to compaſſe*: and therefore we ought to apply all care and induſtry to attain unto good Horſes, which can never be ſo well done, as by *breeding* them; for they muſt be the Horſes that will be able beſt to ſerve us in thoſe offices whereunto we ſhall intend them, according as hereafter ſhall be moſt exactly illuſtrated.

Chap. II.

Of the beſt manner of breeding.

THere are ſo many diverſities of opinions ſo mainly defended *pro & con*, that maketh men fearefull to bring that to publique view, which long practice and experience hath brought them to know and underſtand to be moſt true and infallible: Nevertheleſſe I preſuming that the more judicious may peradventure favour my reaſons and grounds; allowing them at leaſt for probable and good, if they ſhall adventure to make triall, which if they be pleaſed ſo to do, I am confident they will both allow and approve of this my manner of *breeding*, above all other wayes heretofore practiſed; who finding it to be much better, will never be brought from the ſame method, and therefore I would not have any man to condemne me before he ſhall firſt have made triall.

My counſell therefore is, that ſuch generous ſpirits, unto whom Almighty God hath extended his benigne hand, would take to their conſideration, how needfull a thing it is for them to lay hold upon this ſo noble and profitable a bleſſing and benefit, by applying their beſt care and diligence to breed, good, able, and ſerviceable Horſes, which may be as eaſily performed, and in a manner with as little coſt, as in breeding Iades and Baffles, unuſefull and unprofitable. For by procuring a good and able Stud of choice Mares, and by endeavouring to get ſelect Stallions, which for mettle, ſpirit, ſhape, colour, marks, and the like, ſhall be known to be rightly bred, and truely generous, as well (I ſay) the Mares as the Stallions; and theſe, young, handſome, of ſize indifferent, that is, neither too ſmall, nor too large, long-legged or under-bodied; but well knit, limb'd, and joynted; it will be beyond all peradventure but that you ſhall have Horſes fit wherewith to ſerve your Country upon all occaſions, and your own turn and your friends, and acquire to your ſelfe no ſmall honour

honour and commendations both from your Prince, and the weale publique. And this the better to bee performed, you muſt underſtand that ſome things are neceſſary to be conſidered. Firſt, that your grounds be fit for *breeding*, and thoſe not to be ſuch as be low, wet, fenny, mooriſh, or mariſh; but they muſt be paſtures upland, hilly, and in ſome places ſtony and rocky, for grounds of this nature are very profitable for your Colts, to ſcope, run, and play in, it helpeth their winde, it knitteth their joynts, and hardeneth and maketh tough their hooves: ſome of your grounds ought alſo not to be without Underwoods, Buſhes, Furſells, Broome, and the like; theſe will ſerve for ſhelter at what time the cold windes doe blow: the reſidue of your grounds ought to have Lawnes and Plains, wherein ſhould be better graſſe then the former; and in theſe Lawnes, is needfull there ſhould be great Oakes, and ſuch like timber-trees for them whereby to ſhelter them from the ſcorching ſunne in the extreame heats, eſpecially during the time of the Canicular dayes; and theſe trees will alſo defend them from the buzzing and ſtinging Fly, which otherwiſe would greatly annoy and afflict them: you muſt alſo accommodate your grounds with partitions convenient, as well for change, which ſometimes is moſt requiſite, as alſo whereby to ſegregate each ſort of cattell by it ſelf; as your young and old, raſe or breeding Mares by themſelves, your weanlings by themſelves, your Fillyes by themſelves, and your ſtoned Colts by themſelves, according as your beſt judgement ſhall dictate; otherwiſe your breed will be in confuſion, and come to nothing, and ſo you may run the hazard, to loſe both your coſt and paines. Places muſt be alſo made apart, wherein both your Mares with fole, and thoſe who have their Colts ſucking upon them, may run by themſelves with all quietneſſe and retiredneſſe; and every of theſe partitions muſt be ſo ſufficiently fenced, as that no one ſort of cattell can breake into the other. And I doe yet further adviſe, that theſe grounds be well furniſhed with ſweet and wholeſome water, whereof ought not to be any want, either in winter or ſummer, for otherwiſe you may endanger the tainting and ſurfetting of them.

Furthermore, that certaine Sheds and Hay-houſes be erected for them to be fed in during the time of the winter, when graſſe is ſcanty and not ſo much nouriſhing, and the cold winds, troſts, raines, and ſnowes, may greatly pinch and annoy them; in which houſings, would be ſet up Rackes and Mangers whereat to feed them; there would alſo be laid cleane ſtraw for them to lye upon, which will very much comfort and keep them warm: But above all, the greateſt care muſt be had to the fences in generall, whether wall (which is evermore the beſt) pale, quickſets, broad ditches, or high banks, leſt they ſhould at any time breake forth, and treſpaſſe your neighbours to baſtardize, and wrong your breed: and you ought alſo to inſtitute a truſty and diligent Bayliffe or ſervant, whoſe onely function ſhould

be

be to make his fence-walke morning and evening, as duly as any well-experienced Keeper or Wood-man doth his Pale-walke, to see that the fences be fast, and his cattell safe: and let him not faile every day once at the least, to take a true tale and inventary of every sort of cattell he hath in his severall grounds, for feare any should be missing, or some misfortune befalne any of them; and if hee shall finde any wanting, let him not rest searching, untill he hath found it; and if it be in danger or sicke, let him not give over himselfe if he can, (otherwise let him haste to call company and strength enough) to free it out of harmes way.

Now as touching the grounds themselves, as I would not have them too rich, or too rank and deep with grasse; so must they not be too barren, short, and mossie; for as well in this subject, as in all other things, the golden meane is evermore to be preferred. Having thus provided your selfe of a Stud of the choicest and ablest Mares, for age, colour, shape, and marks, your Stallions also of like attributes your care must be to see your Mares well covered, for in this chiefly consisteth the life and quintessence of your *breeding*. Be you therefore marvellous carefull, that neither your Stallion or Mare, have any of these ensuing defects; *viz.* neither Moon eyes, watry-eyes, or Bloud-shotten eyes, or other defect in their eyes or sight, no taint in their wind by Glanders or otherwise, no way subject to Mainge, Mallender, Sellender, Splents, Spaven, Curb, Ring-bone, Scratches, Kybed-heeles, or any other the like sorances; that they be not Cock-thropled, but their Throples very loose; for let either Stallion or Mare have any of these maladies, then be you well assured their Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents: insomuch as when you esteem your selfe confident of such young Horses, you so much desired to be master of, you will be mistaken; for instead of a Stirrier or Horse for mannage, you have bred him fit for nought else but the plough; and in the place of a Hunter, he proves a Mil-horse; and in hope you had a Horse for a Course, he proves for no better use but the Cart; and him you desire to have for your own Pad-saddle, you will be constrained to sell him to a Carrier, to beare a Pack-saddle with a burthen.

To come to intreat of the time most fitting for covering your Mares, let that be so done, that they may cast their Foles in the dead of winter; as either in December, or January: for during their time of going with Fole, to wit, from the day of their Covering, unto that of their Foling, is commonly 12 months, and 10 dayes, yet some do aver, they doe want 11 dayes of 12 moneths, of which computation there is just three weeks oddes: others againe doe affirme, that a Mare goeth but only 11. months and 10 dayes, wherein is greater oddes: but I have found it to be a most certain rule which never did faile me (unlesse in a yong Mare upon her first Colt, who will want some few dayes of the ordinary account) and long and frequent experience

hath

hath made me to be very perfect, that a Mare goeth (unleſſe ſome miſchance or other accident hath otherwiſe occaſioned) twelve moneths and ten dayes: for when at any time I have been preſent when a Mare hath been covered, I have in the very minute entred into my Almanacke, the very day and houre in which ſhe tooke the Horſe, and becauſe I would not be deceived, I have been preſent at her foling, and I have found the time never to faile me. And therefore I could wiſh all *breeders* to obſerve with me the ſame courſe, and they ſhall finde this account to fall out juſt as I have delivered. If your Mare be covered about S. *Lucies* day, which is the 13 of December, then will ſhe fole about S. *Thomas* day the ſame month in the yeare following: But before you ſuffer her to be covered, let neither the Stallion or Mare be at graſſe, but taken into the houſe, ſixe weekes or a moneth at the leaſt; during which time, let them be both very well fed with good old Hay and Oates well duſted and ſifted, to the end they may have ſtrength and ſeed to performe the office for which you have them. But if you will have your Mare certainly to conceive, then take bloud from both ſides of her necke, and let her bleed at either veine well nigh a quart; which muſt be done five or ſixe dayes before ſhe is to be covered; and the next day after her bleeding, give her in a quart of new milke, halfe a ℥ij. of Artimeſia, *alias* Muggewort, chopped very ſmall, a piece of ſweet Butter, and ℥ 2. of *London* Treacle warm; all theſe put upon the fire till the Butter and Treacle be diſſolved, and give this to the Mare bloud-warme in the morning faſting, and ſo the next morning again, and let her drinke be white water. This drink is moſt ſoveraigne to cauſe conception, it provoketh ſeed abundantly, it openeth the pores in the body, and cauſeth the Mare to keep the ſeed ſhe receiveth from the Stallion; Moreover this drinke comforteth the womb and matrix very much: ſo as it is great oddes but that ſhe being thus ordered, will be ſped and conceive, unleſſe ſhe be a Mare of great ſterility, which ſuppoſed, ſhe is not to be kept for a race or breeding Mare.

Moreover, if you be deſirous to have your Mare to conceive a Horſe-colt, rather then a Filly; obſerve then this leſſon I ſhall here give you, and you ſhall finde it an infallible rule, which will never miſſe, *viz.* At what time you would have your Mare to be covered, Let it be done, when one of the firſt five maſculine Signes do raign, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, or *Leo*; but if ſhe ſhall be covered when any of the Feminine or watery Signes are predominant, as *Virgo*, *Libra Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, or *Piſces*; then be you confident it will be a Filly. For this have I often tryed, and found it ſeldome or never to faile me, eſpecially if the wind be either Weſt or North (but Weſt is beſt) at the time of her covering, and you will finde this my rule to be moſt infallible, for experience hath taught it me: And *I have attained unto more knowledge by experience, then I was ever able to aſpire unto, either by reading and*

and ſtudy, or by hearing what others have dictated, taught, or told mee: For we have a maxime, *Experience is the beſt and ableſt miſtreſſe and moderatrix.*

Now for the manner of the covering of your Mares, let her be brought into ſome place abroad, and there faſtned to ſome ſtrong poſt; then bring out to her ſome ſtoned Iade firſt to dally with her, and he will provoke her to an aptitude and deſire of coi y; which done, let the Stallion be led forth towards her, betwixt two or more luſty ſtrong men who may be able to maſter him if he ſhould prove unruly, and let him leap her; and let this be done in a morning betimes faſting; which done, another man ſtanding by with a paile of cold water ready in his hand, in the very time when the Horſe is diſmounting, let him caſt the cold water upon her ſhape, which by reaſon of the coldneſſe, the ſtrength of the caſter, and the ſuddenneſſe thereof, will cauſe her to ſhrinke in, and truſſe up her body, and it will be the meanes to make her retaine the ſeed in the matrix, otherwiſe the womb would not peradventure ſo ſoone encloſe it, but for ſome time after, howſoever the womb would draw together, but not ſo ſuddenly, whereby upon the Mares motion, there might be ſome danger of diſſolving. Take then away the Stallion, and let the Mare be put into ſome remote place alone, from ſight and hearing of other Horſes and Mares, but let her neither eate nor drinke in foure hours after, neither let her have any water at all till night, and then give her either a ſweet Maſh, or white water. After ſhe hath been thus Covered, you ſhall know whether or not ſhe hath either conceived, or loſt, or caſt her ſeed, by many evident ſymptomes which will appeare to your eye; for if ſhe retaineth a good ſtomacke to her meat, and ſo continueth, if ſhe doe not neigh at hearing or ſight of other horſes, if ſhe do not piſſe oft times in the day, caſteth not her eye about gazing continually at every noiſe ſhe heareth, pricketh not up her eares, and that in three or foure daies after her Covering, her belly ſeemeth to be more gaunt, her hayre more ſlicke and cloſe to her skin, ſhewing of a brighter colour, and ſhe ſeemeth to fall away and become leane: if (I ſay) any of theſe Symptomes doe appeare in her, then is it an evident ſigne ſhe hath kept her ſeed and conceiveth, but if the contrary appeare in her, then hath ſhe loſt it, and engendreth not.

But as for offering her the Horſe againe ten dayes after, together with ſuch like circumſtances, I hold them impertinent for this place, being ſo frequently knowne and practiſed, and therefore my labour may well be ſpared. But for her keeping and ordring after her Covering, let her not drinke that ſhe deſireth, but continue her with the ſame dyet which formerly ſhe had before her covering for three weeks or a month after, leſt the ſeed might fortune to be impaired, before the Colt be ſufficiently formed in the womb, and let her be kept ſweet and cleane as may be, and that without any labour or exerciſe during that three weeks or moneth: after which terme you

may

may if you please, inure her to moderate labour, wherein have a speciall care of foure things: first, that she be not at any time galloped, or run off from her wind: secondly, that she be not put to carry heavy burthens: thirdly, that she be neither laboured or travelled in extreame heat: And lastly, that her exercise be not such which may provoke her to sweat violently, for every of these things will cause her to miscarry.

Shee being thus with fole: shee must bee kept in the house untill mid-May at least, and then let first her shooes be taken off, her feet pared well, the Frush and heeles opened, and plates after the manner of running shooes (but not to come home to the heeles) set on; let her run in the driest ground you have, yet not so short of grasse, but that she may at her ease fill her belly at least once a day, and about the latter end of September, (if not before) let her be very carefully taken into the house, but so quietly that you shall not endanger the hurting of her belly, either by the rushing of other Horses and Mares against her, or through her unruly leaping, or inconsiderate brushing against posts, dores, or the like. Let her be kept thus in the house to the time of her foling, and long after, and let her dyet be as before is prescribed.

And when the time of her foling approacheth, let her keeper attend carefully upon her, putting her into a house convenient for her, unhaltred and untied, lest in foling, the colt receive domage, by reason that Mares doe commonly cast their foles standing: wherefore let not the roome whereinto you put her, be too streight, but very warme, (for warmth is a great comfort as well to Mares with fole, as in foling) and let good store of straw be layed, that the Fole may fall from the Mare the softer, and be in lesse danger of harm, and let her (I say) be watched for feare the Fole come not right; and so soone as she hath foled and licked it dry, let her keeper presently milke and stroake her, and that before the Colt doe sucke her, which will both cause her to give down her milke, making the same to multiply, and also keep the Vdder that the milke doe not clod, which if it should doe, the Mare might happily in short time become dry, whereof if there be any perill, I then advise you to draw as much milke from her as you can, and boyle it with the leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and so bathe her Vdder therwith warme, continuing so daily to doe, untill by this meanes you have broken the curd, knobs, and knots, causing them to be dissolved. And as for the water which she is to drinke for some time after her foling, let it be either sweet Mashes, or white water, & a moneth after her foling, give her a Mash, putting thereinto the powder of Brimstone, or Savin, or the like, which will be a great preservation of the Colt; & then if she be moderately laboured either at Plough or Harrow, if she will draw, as well the Mare as Colt will prosper the better; provided she be kept from raw meat while she remaineth in the Stable, by which meanes she will the sooner recover

ſtrength, luſt, and courage, and have ſtore of good milke, which will cauſe the Colt to thrive the better, and to grow to be of the greater bone, which above all things is a matter of greateſt conſequence. And that you ſuffer not the Colt to ſucke the Mare when ſhe commeth from worke, untill ſhe be throughly cold, leſt thereby you ſurfet the Colt.

Thus much I have thought fit to handle of this ſubject; and albeit I have laboured herein to attaine to brevity, nevertheleſſe the premiſſes well conſidered, I ſhall not greatly offend in prolixity, howſoever this my manner of *breeding* being different from the old received cuſtomes, will not (I doe aſſure me) paſſe voyd of cenſure. But as touching old cuſtomes, thus much I doe averre, that as they are in many caſes of that force, as no law is able to abrogate; ſo on the contrary part, many of them are ſo abſurd and ridiculous, as nothing can be more; for what ſaith the civill Law? *Thoſe things which by event or ſucceſſe of time are found to be pernicious or hurtfull, even theſe things ought to be repealed, yea albeit they were at the firſt found profitable.* Which ground holdeth good in nothing ſo much as in old cuſtomes, for of their abſurdities, I am able to produce inſtances not a few, howſoever with many, *It is one of* Hercules *greateſt labours to beat many a man from his old cuſtomes be they never ſo bad*, albeit *Cuſtome is a meere tyrant, and his ſoveraignty moſt inſufferable*, as a grave Author very well obſerveth.

Chap. III.

How to make and order your Stable.

HAving thus waded into this myſtery of *breeding*, I hold it a thing very behoovefull to be handled, how your Stable ought to be accommodated. Firſt therefore your Stable ſhould be ſituate where the ayre is wholeſome, pure, and good, and the ground dry: the ſtructure would be either of free Stone or Bricke, but Bricke is beſt, moſt wholeſome and warmeſt: beſides this benefit Brick hath, which Stone hath not, of being very dry, for Stone will weep, and ſweat drops of water againſt raine and miſty weather, which begetteth damps, and cauſeth rhumes in Horſes. Your Stable ought not to have any unſavory Gutter, Channell, or Sinke neare to it; no Lakes, Hogſties, or Hen-rouſt, whereby to annoy it. It would be alſo ſeeled over head, and have ſtrong doores, with lockes, bolts, and barres unto it. The Racke would not be made too high, or too low, but placed in an indifferent proportion, and ſo artificially ſet, that neither the duſt or hay-ſeeds may fall into his Mane,

Mane, or upon his necke and face. The Manger would be ſet at an indifferent height, made deep, and of one entire piece, as well for ſtrength, as for conveniency to be kept ſweet and cleane. Let the flore be pitched with Flint, and not planked. The windowes would be made with handſome ſhuts and caſements, and well glazed, as well to keep out cold and wind, as alſo (when there may be cauſe) to let in the coole and freſh ayre. Againe, take heed there be no lome wall or plaiſter, ſo neare as that the Horſe may reach thereto with his mouth: for upon that he will gnaw, which may doe him much prejudice, and be the cauſe of much dangerous ſickneſſe, for Lome and Lime are ſuffocating things, they will infect and putrifie the bloud, endanger the Lounges, and be no friend to his winde: neither ſuffer any dung to lye neare him. Furthermore there would be made a faire Loft wherein to lay Hay, and convenient lodging chambers for your Groomes, whoſe neareneſſe, together with their care and vigilancy might prevent many dangers and inconveniences which may accrue unto your Horſes by night. Alſo let a neat Saddle-houſe be contrived with Bings for Provender, and in it Preſſes, wherein to lay up the Saddles, Bridles, and all other furniture appertaining to Horſes, and an Aqua-duct wherewith to bring water to the Stable. And laſtly, other Stals would be erected remote, wherein upon occaſion to ſever the ſicke from the ſound. Many other accoutrements there are belonging to a perfect Stable, as partitions with boards, poſts, and barres, with pins driven into every poſt, whereon to hang Bridles and the like; ſhelves alſo faſtned to the wall ſerving for many uſes, to place neceſſaries upon, &c. which being *known* to all men, will be needleſſe for me here to repeate.

But you may peradventure ſtartle at paving, rather then planking your flore, preferring planks as warmer, and much better then flint or a pitched flore can be; as alſo for that it is a new thing, little practiſed, and ſeldome heard.

But give me leave (I pray) a little to inform your underſtanding in this one point, by which means your judgement may fortune to be much bettered. Firſt therefore, whereas novelty may be objected, I ſhall moſt eaſily aſſoile that point, even from the ſelfe-ſame ground in the civill Law, which I inſerted in the concluſion of the precedent chapter, *viz.* That things found to be prejudiciall, ought to be inhibited, although they might be thought needfull, and good in foreknown times. For that paving of Stables is better then planking them, I have reaſons not a few wherewith to ſatisfie a reaſonable man. Firſt, it is much more durable and laſting, ſuppoſing the flore to be pitched by an expert workman: Secondly, it is leſſe charge by much; and therefore in that point the better: Thirdly, for a Horſe to ſtand continually upon a pitched flore, it emboldneth his feet, and treading the more: Fourthly, it is the moſt excellent thing that may be for Colts, who are unſhod; for it hardneth their hooves, ſo as by cuſtome they will

Paving of a Stable much better then planking.

1
2
3
4

will be as bold to goe upon ſtones, rocky and hard wayes, as Horſes that are ſhod: neither will a pitched flore ſuffer the hoofe to goe abroad in manner of an Oyſter: beſides the uſe thereof will make their hooves more tough, durable, and hollow, inſomuch as when they ſhall come to be ſhod, and to have exerciſe, they will carry their ſhooes much longer, better, and with more eaſe then otherwiſe, if they had been uſed to a planked flore.

The inconvenience of a planked flore.

Now on the contrary part, which concerneth the planked flore, that (I ſay) cannot in reaſon be ſo good by many degrees. Firſt, it is more ſlippery, out of which reaſon a mettled horſe may ſoone be in danger to be lamed or ſpoyled by ſome ſudden ſlip, whereof I have had often experience, which a pitched Stable is not ſo ſubject unto: 1

Secondly, the planks often times ſhrinking, the Horſe (eſpecially if he be a ſtirrier who is accuſtomed to curvet in the Stable) may eaſily breake a plank, and his foot getting into a hole, or between the planks, the horſe plunging and ſtriving, may eaſily breake his legge before he ſhall be able to get it forth, whereof I have more than once been *oculatus teſtis*: 2

Thirdly, when you put forth your horſes to run at graſſe all, or the moſt part of Summer, during which time the ſcorching heats wil ſo ſiccicate and dry the planks, which will cauſe them to warp, and the pinnes which holdeth them down to the joyces will rot, and ſo the planks give way, eſpecially when horſes (who not being handled in ſome moneths before) becomming wild, rammage, and unruly, are newly brought into the Stable, who feeling the planks to move, yeeld, and give way under them, will fall from ſtarting thereat, to ſnaging, leaping, bounding and plunging, till they have diſlocated the planks, and thereby have endangered both themſelves, the reſidue of their fellowes, and thoſe who might come to their help and ſuccour, which is a thing very frequent in a flore of this nature: 3

Fourthly, whereas you may imagine, that a planked flore is warmer then a paved or pitched, I doe know the contrary; for your pitched flore hath no vaults or channels under them, like as hath your planked, wherewith to convey the water which paſſeth from the horſes; by which meanes the horſe lyeth over a moyſt and dampiſh place and vault; and beſides that, the evill favour of the horſe-piſſe will be evermore in their noſe, which is moſt unwholeſome, noyſome, and many times the cauſe of much infirmity; neither can it in reaſon be ſo warme as is the pitched flore, for that the chinkes and awger-holes bored through the planks (which muſt alwaies be kept open to let forth the urine) doth give way to the cold wind, which continually aſcendeth up to the horſe, as well lying as ſtanding, cannot but doe him much dammage. I doe therefore affirme, that if your Groome have a care to litter his horſe well, ſo as he may lye ſoft and warme, (which is a prime property appertaining to his office) your horſe will then proſper, and like much better upon a pitched flore, then he can upon a planked; provided your flore be laid even, not higher

higher before than behind, more then ſo much that may make the water to avoyd to his hinder feet, where there ought to be a ſmall gutter to cauſe it to paſſe away, for in raiſing your flore ſo much, I doe abſtract from the ancient ill cuſtome, by reaſon that a horſe ſtandeth higher before then he doth behind, his hinder legges will ſwell, and ſo he becommeth lame; beſides, it giveth him a taint in the backe and kidneyes; and to conclude, his long ſtanding in this uneaſie manner, begetteth in the poor beaſt much pain and griefe, and this occaſioneth unto him (which would not otherwiſe be) the putting forth of Windgals, Pains, Scratches, and ſuch like noyſome ſorances.

Another thing may peradventure be thought ſtrange, which I have handled in the former chapter, where I intreat of *breeding*; in that I would have the time of the Mares foling to be, either in December or Ianuary, this being in the very depth of winter, as well when the ſeaſon is commonly coldeſt, and when little or no graſſe is to be had, ſo as of neceſſity the Mare muſt be houſed, and fed with hard meat, whereby her milke will be in ſo ſmall a proportion, as either to endanger the ſtarving of the Colt, or elſe at leaſtwiſe keep him ſo poor and feeble, as not to be able to grow, thrive, or proſper to any purpoſe. To ſatisfie this ſcruple, I ſay from long experience, that the winter ſeaſon for a Mare to fole in, beyond all peradventure, is the very beſt, as well for the Mare as the Colt, ſuppoſing ſhe be kept in a warme houſe; and as for her milke, ſhe will have great plenty, and that much better and more nouriſhing than that milke which the Colt ſhall ſucke from his damme at graſſe, ſo as thereby the Colt ſhall be more luſty, ſtrong, healthy, greater of bone and ſtature, better able to endure hardineſſe, better knit, cleaner limbed, more neatly joynted and hooved, and keep his fleſh better than that Colt that is foled in May, Iune, or any the hotter moneths: and my reaſon is, that albeit graſſe cauſeth greater plenitude of milke, (which I deny not) yet is not the ſame ſo good and nouriſhing: for the milke which the Colt ſucketh at graſſe, is very thin and watry; and albeit winter food begetteth not ſo great a quantity of milke, yet the ſame will be thicker, more ſubſtantiall, and of greater nutriment, (the Mare being very well fed) which will feed the Colt very fat, and make him more luſty and ſtrong, (as I have ſaid) then if the Mare the whole Summer and Winter through, and in all the extremity of the heats and colds had been kept abroad. Moreover, the Colt beſides the milke he draweth from the Mare, will alſo feed with her upon Hay, Oates, Bran, and ſuch like food, which will do him much pleaſure. But ſome againe will ſay, that their teeth are ſo tender, as that they will not be able to chew and eate ſuch kinde of hard meates; I anſwer, they are very much miſtaken, for, not onely my ſelfe alone, but ſundry others have with me been eye-witneſſes of the contrary; therefore this needs no further ſolution. And wheras it hath been objected unto me, that that Colt which is foled in May; or *Solſtice*, in that ſeaſon,

Of the time of foling.

The Colt better nouriſhed in the Stable, then at graſſe in winter.

the

the Mare will have ſtore of milke, thus much I doe ingenuouſly confeſſe, but then what manner of milke will it be? None other then ſuch as ſhall be marvellous thin and watriſh, (as I ſaid before) which abundance will alſo faile, even when the Colt hath moſt need thereof, that is, when the Colt beginneth to come up to ſome ſtrength, and at what time he ſhould receive moſt nutriment, to wit, when the winter commeth on, whoſe Snows, Froſts, cold raines, and Flouds; will not a little nip and pinch the Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in ſuch terrible and deſperate manner, that ſhe will want her former plenty of food, warme and dry lodging, and other neceſſary reliefe and ſuſtentation, and ſo in like manner, her abundance of milke, at what time her poore Colt ſhould depend upon the enfeebled Mare, who is not able to ſupply its own need: by meanes whereof it muſt neceſſarily fall out, that ſhe muſt bring both her ſelfe and her Colt to extreame poverty, not being able to ſuſtaine her own life, much leſſe her Colts and her own, and ſo become feeble before winter be halfe ſpent; and over and above all this, the Colt will by his running abroad with the Mare, become ſo ſalvage and wilde, as that if any infirmity ſhould happen to ſeize upon it, its own unrulineſſe will be ſo great, that the cure may thereby become the more difficile: for to ſpeake truely, infinite have been, and daily are the numbers of Colts; yea, and thoſe many times rightly bred, which have miſcarried and periſhed in this nature.

I doe therefore conclude, and as a friend to my Country averre, that the ableſt way to breed up the beſt and moſt ſerviceable Horſes, is (as I have before inculcated) after this methode and none other; and therefore I am bold to adviſe all noble Gentlemen who are lovers of good Horſes, and of this myſtery, to make triall, and to put theſe my rudiments in execution, and he will never (I doe well aſſure me) he reafter, either alter or ſwerve from them; for of this kinde of *breeding*, I have had more then forty yeares good experience: during which time, I intimated theſe my grounds to a Knight, an intimate friend of mine, who was a great lover of good Horſes, and as great a Breeder, as a lover of them, and very well verſed in Horſe-man-ſhip; who hearing my reaſons, and throughly digeſting them, approved of them ſo well, as that he fell to follow theſe my inſtructions, and eſteeming them ſufficient, would never be brought from them after; he affirming, no way comparable to this: for he found by plaine demonſtration, that whereas in former times in breeding (as commonly he did, ten or twelve Colts yearly; when they came to Backing, Riding, and proofe of thoſe ten or twelve, he thought himſelfe well appayed, and his labour and coſt well beſtowed, if two or three at the moſt proved right, and to his minde; whereas ever after in ten Colts thus bred and reared up, hardly any one miſſed, which proved not right and to his good liking: and this manner of *breeding*, made him more in love with this myſtery, then ever before, reaſon dictating it ſo well unto

unto him. For, moſt certain it is, when the Stallion and Mare are both right, and have all their true attributes, and the time, ſeaſon, and manner of *breeding*, with all circumſtances thereunto belonging, punctually and in every point duly obſerved; it will be a hard matter for the Colt to prove ill: but if otherwiſe, then marvell not if the Colt anſwer not your expectation, according to the Greeke Adage, which ſaith; κακῦ κέρκος κακὸν ὄρθιον, *Iade Sire, Iade Colt.* Wherefore if upon tryall it ſhall appeare to you, that you have hitherto been to ſeek of the true grounds, and of the originall cauſes why you have not bred ſo many good Horſes as you have deſired, doe not then wonder that *The cauſe of your errour, and of ſo great a miſchiefe hath ſtolne upon, and deceived you:* for the great decay of good Horſes, together with thoſe infinite errors in *breeding*, and Horſe-man-ſhip; that increaſe that is, being in ſo vile a manner of baſe Iades; have ſo ſwarmed in this kingdome, as that (a lamentable caſe to be related) of one rightly bred, we now adayes have a thouſand Iades; to the great diſhonour, diſprofit, and weakning both of King and Country. And what is the reaſon? I ſhall in a word tell you: *It is impoſſible for a man to bring his work to its wiſhed perfection, who never knew the true grounds of his principles.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the Marks, Colours, and Shapes of Horſes.

THE next thing befitting our ſubject, is to ſpeake (albeit briefly) of the Colours, Marks, and perfect Shapes of Horſes: Wherein I will firſt deliver other mens opinions, and laſtly, mine owne. Some there be who hold that Colours, Marks, and Shapes are little materiall to make up a perfect Horſe, which I will not contradict, for my meaning is not to traduce or controule any man: but this I will ſay, that if a good horſe have theſe properties adherent to his goodneſſe, then is he queſtionleſſe in much better eſteem; for if beauty be added to his other inward vertues, then is he (like to the Nightingale in the beginning of Aprill, heard and hearkened unto, more praiſe-worthy, and better prized. For a horſe, who if he be good and ſerviceable, well metled, bold, and hardy, of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot and pace, lightly and well borne, obedient mouthed, ſure on foot, tough, ſtrong, and eaſie; will (I ſay) not ſuch a horſe be well eſteemed? But if together with theſe good properties, there ſhall be added, good colour, true marks, and perfect ſhape, which cauſeth him to appeare moſt beautifull to all beholders: will not theſe endowments ſet him the better forth? and cauſe him to be the better eſteemed,

med, of every man desired, and much more money offered for him? hay, shall not you (whose the horse is) be come unto, be sued unto, have letters sent you from sundry friends, and will not your selfe prize him at a higher rate than otherwise you would have done? yes assuredly; and hereof I make no question. True it is, and I must confesse no lesse, that a horse may be very good, and performe his function very well, who hath neither good colour, true marks, or perfect shape, nevertheless these extrinsecall vertues are more frequently to be found, and better observed to be in good horses, in whom are colour, markes, and shapes; than in horses which are otherwise. Wherefore because these things are termed exteriour vertues, and therefore takes its object from the eye onely, I will conjoyne them altogether in this my discourse, and shew you what hath been, and is, the opinion of both ancient and moderne Writers. *Virgil* in his Georgickes, handling most accurately sundry points of husbandry, among other things in his third book of Georgicks, describeth the horse, as well his breeding, and his severall sorts of imployments, as his colour, shape, and markes; yea, and that in most exquisite manner: And thus he beginneth:

Let the Males goe
Without restraint to venery, and so
By timely breeds, preserve a perfect kind.
Their first age best; all wretched mortals finde;
After diseases, and old age doe come,
Labour, and death's inexorable doome.
There still will be, whose bodies with thy will,
Thou would'st wish chang'd. Therefore repaire them still;
And lest thy kinde quite lost thou finde too late,
Prevent the losse, and yearely propagate.
And such a choice you must in Horses make,
By him, whom you for Stallion meane to take,
As hope of all the race, elect with care
Even from a tender Fole: such Colts as are
Of generous race, straight, when at first they'r fol'd,
Walke proudly, their soft joynts scarce knit, and bold,
Dare leade the way, into the rivers enter,
And dare themselves on unknowne seas to venture.
Not frighted with vaine noyses, lofty neck'd,
Short headed, slender belly'd, and bro d back'd;
Broad and full brested; let his colour be
Browne-bay, or gray, white proves not commonly,
Nor flesh colour, when warres alarums sound,
His nostrils gather, and breath fire, no ground
Can hold his shaking joynts, his feare advances
His thicke-curl'd Mane on his right shoulder dances.

His

His back-bone broad and strong, the hollow ground
Trampled beneath his hard round hoofe doth sound.
Such was that Horse, which Spartan Pollux tam'd,
Fierce Cyllarus, and Mars his Horses fam'd
By th'old Greek Poets, or those two that drew
Achilles Chariot: such a shape and hew
At his wives comming, flying Saturne tooke,
And all high Pelion with shrill neighings shooke,
Yet when disease or age have brought to nought
This Horses spirit, let him at home be wrought,
Nor spare his base old age. A horse grown old
Though he in vaine attempt it oft, is cold
To venery, and when he's brought to try
(Like that great strengthlesse fire in stubble dry)
In vaine he rages; therefore first 'tis good
To marke his age, his courage and his brood,
With other arts; how sad a horse will be
When overcome, how proud of victory.
Dost thou not see, when through the field in speed
Two racing Chariots from the Lists are fled,
The young mens hearts all rise, as forth they start,
And feare with joy confounded strikes each heart?
They give their Horse the raynes, and lash them on,
Their hurried wheeles enflaming, as they run;
Now low they goe, now rise as they would flye
Through th'empty ayre, and mount up to the sky:
No resting, no delay, a sandy cloud
Darkens the ayre, they on through shoutings loud
Of standers by, all sweat, and fom'd doe flye,
So great's their love of praise and victory.
First Erichthonius Chariots did invent,
And by foure Horses drawn in triumph went.
The Peletronian Lapithes first found
The use of backing Horses, taught them bound,
And run the Ring; taught Riders t'exercise
In martiall ranks, both equall Mysteries:
The Masters of both these have equall need
To finde out Horse of courage, and good speed,
Though ne're so nobly born, though oft in game
They won the prize, and for their Country claime
Epire, or fam'd Mycenæ, or else tooke
Their birth at first from Neptunes trident stroke.
These things observ'd, at Covering time, they care
To make their Stallion strongly fat and faire
The father of their brood; for him they mow
Choice grasse, sweet streames, and corne to him allow,

Leſt he ſhould faile his pleaſant worke to doe,
And th'young ones ſtarvelings from his hunger grow.
But they of purpoſe keepe the females light
And leane: and when they have an appetite
To venery, let them not drinke nor eate,
And courſe them oft, and tye them in the heate,
When in full Barnes the ripe corne crowded lyes,
As empty chaffe before the weſt winde flyes.
And this they doe, leaſt too much rankneſſe make
The breeding ſoyle, and fatted furrowes take
Too dull a ſenſe, but that they ſhould draw in
Seed with deſire, and lodge it ſafe within.
But if thy minde thou more to warre doe give,
Or through Iove's *wood, would'ſt racing Chariots drive,*
And ſwiftly paſſe by Piſa's *river ſide:*
Thy firſt taske is to make thy Horſe abide
To ſee the ſouldiers armes, heare their loud voyces,
The trumpets ſound, and rattling Chariots noyſes,
And oft within the ſtable let him heare
The clathing whip, he'le more and more appeare
To be delighted with his Maſters praiſe.
And when he ſtrokes his necke his courage raiſe.
When firſt he's wean'd from ſucking let him heare
Theſe things and trembling be compel'd to weare
Soft haulters oft about his head, but when
His life hath ſeene foure Summers, teach him then
To run the Ring, in order high to beate
The ground, and both wayes skilfully corvet
As if he toyl'd, then let him with his ſpeed
Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
Scoure o're the champion fields ſo ſwift, that there
The ſands no print of his light foot doe beare.
So when the Scythian guſts, and North-weſt wind
From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind
The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
Corne bowes with equall blaſts; woods tops doe yeeld
A murmuring noyſe, long waves roule on the ſhore,
Forth flyes the wind, ſweeps lands and waters o're;
Thy Horſe thus ordred to the races end
All bloudy fom'd, victoriouſly will tend,
Or elſe his tamed necke will better bow
To draw the Belgian Chariot; let him grow
Full fed, whence he is broken well, nor feare
His growth, ſo fed before he's broke, he'le beare
Too great a ſtomacke patiently to feele
The liſhing whip, or chew the curbing ſteele.

But

But no one care doth more their ſtrength improve,
Then ſtill to keep them from venereall love. &c.
See how the Horſes joynts all tremble, when
A Mare's knowne ſent, he through the ayre doe feele;
No ſtripes, no ſtrength of men, no bit of ſteele,
No Rockes, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
Which roule whole mountaines, can his fury ſtay. &c.
But ſtrangeſt fur
Is thoſe Mare's furious love, which Venus *ſent,*
When they their Maſter Glaucus *peece meal rent.*
Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus,
And ſwim the ſtreame of ſwift Aſcanius.
And when Love's flame their greedy marrow burnes,
Moſt in the Spring, (for heat then moſt returnes
To th' bones) upon high rockes they take their places,
And to the weſterne wind all turne their faces,
Sucke in the blaſts, and (wondrous to be ſaid)
Grow great with fole, without the horſes ayd.
Then o're the Rockes and Valleyes all they run,
Not to the North, nor to the riſing ſun,
Nor Caurus *quarter, nor the South whence riſe*
Blacke ſhowers, which darken and diſturbe the skies.
Hence flowes thicke poyſon from the groynes of theſe
Which Sh-pheards truely call Hippomanes;
Hippomanes, *which oft bad Step-dames uſe,*
And charming words, and baneſull herbs infuſe.
But time irreparable flyes away. &c.

Du-Bartus that famous French Poet, doth likewiſe in his Treatiſe of the Handy-crafts, excellently deſcribe the colour, ſhape, and properties of a good horſe, in the fourth part of the *firſt day of the ſecond weeke*, which beginneth thus:

Cain *as they ſay with his deep feare diſturbed,*
Then firſt of all th' undaunted Courſers curbed;
That whilſt about anothers feet he run
With luſty ſpeed, he might his deaths-man ſhun.
Among a hundred brave, light luſty Horſes,
(With curious eye marking their curious forces)
He chooſeth one for his induſtrious proofe,
With round, high, hollow, ſmooth, brown jetty hooſe;
With paſterns ſhort, upright, (but yet in meane)
Dry ſinnowy ſhanks, ſtrong, fleſhleſſe knees, and leane,
With Hart-like legges, broad breaſt, and large behind,
With body large ſmooth flanks, and double chin'd;
A creſted neck, bow'd like a halfe-bent bow,

Whereon a long thin curled Mane doth flow :
A firm full taile, touching the lowly ground,
With dock betweene two faire fat buttocks round.
A pricked eare that rests as little space
As his light foot; A leane, bare, bony face,
Thin joule, his head yet of a middle size,
Full lively flaming, sprightly rowling eyes :
Great fomeing mouth, hot fuming nostrils wide,
Of chesnut hayre, his forehead starrisi'd :
Two milky feet, a feathen on his breast,
Whom seven yeares old at the next grasse he gueſt.
This comely Iennet gently first he winnes,
And then to bucke him actively begins.
Stedy and straight he sits, turning his sight
Still 'twixt the eares of his Palfrey light.
The chafed horse, such thrall ill suffering,
Begins to snuffe, to snort, to leap, to fling;
And flying swift his fearefull Rider makes,
Like some unskilfull Lad that undertakes
To hold some Ships Helm, whilst the headlong tyde
Carries away his vessell, and her guide;
Who neere to drowned in the jawes of death,
Pale, fearefull, shivering, faint, and out of breath,
A thousand times (to heaven erected eyes)
Repents him of so bold an enterprize :
But sitting fast, lesse hurt then fear'd, Cain
Boldens himselfe, and his brave horse againe
Brings him to pace, from pacing to his trot,
From trot to gallop; after runs him out
In full career, and at his courage smiles,
In sitting still, he runs so many miles.
His pace is faire and free, his trot is light
As Tigers course, or Swallowes nimble flight :
And his brave gallop seemes as swift to goe,
As Biscaine *Dart, or shafts from* Russian *Bow.*
But roaring anon from his smoking throat,
Never more speedy spewes the thundring shot
(That in an Army mowes whole squadrons downe,
And batters bulwarks of a summon'd towne)
As this light-Horse sends, if he doe but feele
His Bridle slacke, and in his side the heele;
Shunning himselfe, his sinewy strength he stretcheth,
Flying the earth, and flying ayre he catcheth;
Born whirle-wind like, he makes the trampling ground
Shrinke under him, and shake with doubling sound,
And when the sight no more pursue he may,

In fieldy clouds he vaniſheth away.
The wiſe-wax't Rider not eſteeming beſt,
To take too much now of his luſty beaſt;
Reſtraines his fury, then with learned wand,
The triple-corvet makes him underſtand:
With skilfull voyce he gently cheares his pride,
And on his necke his ſl:tring palme doth glide:
He ſtops him ſteady ſtill, new breath to take,
And in the ſame path brings him ſoftly backe:
But th'angry Steed, riſing and rearing proudly,
Striking the ſtones, ſtamping, and neighing lowdly;
Cals for the combate, plunges, leaps, and prances,
Beſomes the path, with ſparkling eyes he glances;
Champs on his barniſht Bit, and glorioufly
His nimble Fet locks liſteth belly-high;
All ſide-long jaunts, on either ſide he juſtles,
And's waving creſt courageouſly he briſtles;
Making the gazers glad on every ſide
To give more roome unto his portly pride.
Cain *gently ſtrokes him, and now ſure in ſeate,*
Ambitiouſly ſeekes ſtill ſome freſher feat:
To be more famous, one while trots the Ring,
Another while he doth him backward bring:
Then of all feare he makes him lightly bound,
And to each hand to menage rightly round:
To ſtop, to turn, to caper, and to ſwim,
To dance, to leap, to hold up any limme:
And all ſo done, with time, grace, ordred skill,
As both had but one body and one will:
T'one for his art no little glory gaines,
T'other through practiſe by degrees attaines
Grace in his gallop, in his pace agility,
Lightneſſe of head, and in his ſtop facility:
Strength in his leap, and ſtedfaſt menagings,
Aptneſſe in all, and in his courſe new wings. &c

A famous Ferrier of *Paris* deliverеth theſe colours of a good horſe, which becauſe they are in French verſe, I have engliſhed them *verbatim* thus.

If you deſire a horſe thee long to ſerve,
Take a browne-bay, and him with care preſerve:
The gray's not ill, but he is prized farre
That is cole-blacke, and blazed with a ſtarre:
If for thy ſelfe, or friend, thou wilt procure
A horſe, let him white-Lyard be, he'l long endure.

And

Of the colours of a Horſe.

And the ſame French-man ſheweth, what be alſo the properties and markes which a good horſe ought to have; whereof three are to be of an Oxe, three of a Foxe, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman. Thoſe three of an Oxe, are to have, a faire, and full eye, a large necke, and to be ſtrong and ſhort joynted. Thoſe three of a Foxe, are, to have a comely and ſhort trot, ſmall, and long eares, and a buſhy tayle. Thoſe three of a Hart, are to have leane and dry legges, to be well riſen before, and a leane head. Thoſe three of a Woman, are to be large and faire breaſted, to have a beautifull and full haire, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

Of the ſhape of a Horſe.

The ſame Author delivereth yet further what ought to be the colour and ſhape of a good horſe. Thoſe horſes (ſaith he) that are of a cheſt-nut colour, with Mane, and Tayle blacke, are commonly good. The Sorrell, if his Mane, Tayle, Knees, Fet-lockes, and liſt along his backe, be blacke, and are for the moſt part good, if they be otherwiſe free from evill conditions; as not at any time to lye downe in the water, reſtife, and ſuch like bad qualities. The Browne-bay, Dunne, Dapple-grey, iron-grey, if their extremities be black, are many times very good, if they be well choſen. All horſes (ſaith he) muſt have good Legges, good Feet, and their Fetlocks muſt not be overcharged with hayre; they muſt have alſo good eyes, obedient mouthed, and well metled: they muſt not have fat or fleſhy legs, but to have a great belly, well riſen before, ſtraight backt, not charged with over-great ſhoulders, he muſt have a thin bended neck, like a Carps backe, a good Crouper, large Thighes, round well ſpread Buttockes, and a traine well ſet on: a leane, dry, and thin Head, a full ſparkling Eye, a wide Noſtrill, a wide, thin, & leane Iaw, a looſe Thropell, a well-truſſed-together Body, and Legs not too long: being thus accooterd and ſhaped, it is probable he will be very ſerviceable. He alſo ſheweth ſignes whereby to know the good or evill ſight of a horſe. Every horſe (ſaith he) hath a feather in his Face betwixt his eyes: if the ſaid feather be high above the eyes, then hath he aſſuredly a good and perfect ſight; but if the feather be below his eyes, the horſe then hath oft times a bad ſight: Obſerve this rule well, and you ſhall finde it to be a thing moſt certaine. He alſo giveth other marks touching the Legges of a horſe: which briefly are, that a horſe muſt have his fore-legs above the knees, to be ſtrong, flat, and large, albeit the lower part of the Legges be ſmall: provided he have a good foot, which ſuppoſing, he may prove a horſe of long continuance.

How to know the good ſight from the bad of a horſe.

Which be the beſt colours of a Horſe.

Another Author ſpeaking of the colours of Horſes, doth denominate them after this manner, *viz.* A Brown-Bay, a Black-Roan, or Black full of ſilver hayres, Cole-black, Cheſt-nut, Dark-Bay, Fly-bitten, or White-Lyard. The Browne-Bay is ſo highly eſteemed with all Nations, as that they doe with one aſſent alwaies ranke him in the very firſt place of colours: the Italians and French doe ſo much prize the Brown-Bay, as that they evermore call that colour *Bayary Loyall*, the Loyall Bayard, or more properly according to our Engliſh phraſe,

phraſe, Truſty Bayard. The French, Italians, and Germans doe very far commend and prefer three ſorts of colours in Horſes: to wit, the Browne-Bay, the Cheſt-nut, and the Cole-Black; but they doe evermore preferre the Browne-Bay to the firſt place. Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markham* doe both accord in the choyce of the Colours of the Horſe, and they never doe faile in preferring the Browne-Bay to the firſt place.

What ſhall I need ſpeake any more of Colours; I will now proceed to their Markes, wherein, albeit in moſt things all in a manner do agree; yet only in ſome few points there is ſome ſmall difference. All generally aſſent in the white ſtarre, and white foote, if the blaze be not too broad, or the foote too high white above the Paſtern, for then it is called hoſed, or Buskened: ſome commend the ſhumme, or raſe downe the Face, if it bee not much broader than a three-penny ſilke Ribben, but then it muſt come to end juſt between the Noſthrils, and not be more on the one ſide of the Face, than on the other. This indeede is of all true Horſe-men eſteemed a moſt beautifull good Marke, and well becometh a good Horſe. Some would have the foote being white, to be on the ſtarre foote behinde, and ſome again on the neare foote before: I have heard ſome highly commend the Horſe to have two white feete a croſſe, to wit, the far-foote behind, and the neere foot before, like as had a Horſe of the old Lord *Sandes*, being a Courſer, which he brought out of *Italy*, with ſo much charge, labour, and perill of his life, (as his Lordſhip did ſundry times report unto me,) which was of a darke Bay, and his two feete a croſſe white, howſoever I have known ſome Horſemen, *diſlike* of the ſame Markes, yet I could never heare the reaſons *of* their diſlike. A Knight of my acquaintance would highly commend the Horſe, who had a white foote, which was beſpeckled with blacke motly ſpots; affirming that a Horſe ſo marked did betoken good mettle, great valour, and a heroick ſpirit, for he would alwaies call ſuch a Horſe, *Equus generoſus*, a Horſe of a brave ſpirit; and this hee would report, was taught him by old Sir *Henry Lea*, that famous Horſe-man, and no leſſe excellent Breeder, of whom this Knight bought many delicate Colts, ſome of which were thus marked. All good Horſemen doe atteſt, that the Horſe with much white upon his face, raw noſed, ſheath, yard, tuell, & hooves white, skin white, and legs hoſed, & wall-eyed; is generally weake, faint, of a cowardly condition, tender, and waſhy of fleſh, ſubject to rebellion, reſtifenes, to ſtarting, ſtumbling, evill-fighted, ſubject to tire, dangerous to his Keeper, for biting and ſtriking; and in a word, of a moſt baſe, and evill condition. For *the countenance is the true Index of the minde*: And *a lewd looke prognoſticateth a lewd condition*: And againe; *a deformed countenance doth delineate a wicked and deformed diſpoſition and manners*. It is holden for a good Marke in a Horſe to have many Feathers about his body, as upon his forehead, ſo it be ſcituated above the eyes, and the higher it ſtands,

Of the marks of a Horſe.

Feathers holden to bee a good marke in a Horſe.

ſtands, the better: alſo upon the middle of the Necke neere to the Creſt, under the Neck in the middle of the Thropie, upon the Breſt, and upon both the Flanks, and upon both Buttocks, which for Horſes to have Feathers in theſe, and ſuch like places, is moſt commendable.

The perfect ſhape of a Horſe.

Now as touching the perfect and true ſhape of a Horſe, wherein we have more contrariety of opinions, than re either in the Colour or Marks, whereof I have given you a taſt already: Nevertheleſſe, I will demonſtrate how farre commonly all doe meete in the ſhape of a well timbred Horſe. Firſt therefore it is required that the hoofe be blacke, ſmooth, dry, large, round, and hollow: the Paſterns ſtraight, and upright, Fetlocks ſhort, the legges ſtraight, and flat, called alſo lath-legged, the knees bony, leane and round, the necke long, high-rear'd, and great towards the Breaſt, the Breaſt large and round, the Eares ſmall, ſharpe, long, and upright, the Forehead leane, and large, the Eyes great, full, and black, the Browes well filled and ſhooting outwards, the Iawes wide, ſlender, and leane, the Noſtrills wide, and open, the Mouth great, the Head long, and leane like to a Sheepe, the Mane thin and large, the Withers ſharp and pointed, the Back ſhort, even, plaine, and double chined, the Sides, and Ribbes deepe, large, and bearing out like the cover of a Trunke, and cloſe ſhut at the huckle-bone, the Belly long, and great, but hid under the ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plaine, and broad, with a large ſpace betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long, and large, with wel-faſhioned bones, and thoſe fleſhy, the Hums dry, and ſtreight, the Trunchion ſmall, long, well ſet on & well couched, the Trayne long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard, and Stones ſmall; and laſtly the Horſe to be well riden before. And to conclude, the perfect ſhape of a Horſe, according as a famous Horſeman hath deſcribed, is in a few words, thus; *Viz.* A broad Forehead, a great Eye, a leane Head, thin, ſlender, leane, wide Iawes; a long, high-rear'd Neck, high-rear'd Withers; a broad, deepe Cheſt, and Body; upright Paſterns, and a narrow Hoote: And this is the common allowed, and approved ſhape of a perfect Horſe; ſo as if any of theſe things be deficient in him, he cannot be ſaid to be a Horſe of a perfect Shape: Wherefore I conclude that if a Horſe of a good Colour, well Marked, and rightly Shaped, and right alſo by Syre, and Mare; it will be ſeldome ſeene that he ſhould prove ill, unleſſe his Nature be alienated, and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or elſe that he be otherwiſe wronged, and moſt ſhamefully abuſed by the means of a hare-brain, negligent, or inconſiderate Rider or Groome. But I may in this point bee taxed to hold a Paradox; for ſome may object unto me, that many times Horſes, who are of the beſt Colours, beſt Marks, and trueſt Shapes, doe nevertheleſſe prove arrant jades, reſtiffe, ſtubborn, ill natured, ſubject to tyring, and the like: I anſwere, I acknowledge all this to be moſt true, for I have knowne

Horſes,

Horſes, who upon their firſt view, have beene in extrinſecall ſhew ſo hopefull, as that they have promiſed what a man could expect from them; which notwithſtanding when they have come to the teſt, they have beene a ſcandall to their ſex; but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of theſe who have thus miſcarryed; you ſhall have twenty who will prove right, and anſwerable to your minde: I have alſo knowne Horſes, which wanting theſe good attributes, and who have beene as different from thoſe we call good, even as Chalk is from Cheeſe, who have proved very good Horſes: howbeit I will not counſell you to breed upon ſuch an one, who albeit hee may bring you Colts, yet I dare not promiſe you he ſhall ever bring you a good Colt, whereof I have oftimes made tryall, as well for Horſes of Mennage, as for Hunters, and Horſes for the Courſe. Neither need there any more be ſaid upon this ſubject.

Chap. V.

Of the Office of the Rider and Groome.

HAving now bred Colts according to my inſtructions, which you may well hope will prove to your mind and beſt liking, nevertheleſſe ſome things there yet remaine whereof *duly* to conſider; and that is; that when *you* have thus (I ſay) bred your Colts which you may very well hope are right, your eye and judgement for Shape, Colour, and Markes promiſſing no leſſe; it then behooveth you to be very cautelous in the Handling, Breaking, Riding, and wel-ording them, whether you intend them for Menage, Courſe, Hunting, or the Rode; in any of which an eſpeciall care would bee had to provide you of Riders, Groomes, and Keepers, ſuch as ſhall be knowne to be expert in their faculties; in which principally conſiſteth either their direct making, or marring, and finall ruine. For we cannot ſay, that a Colt (yet unhandled) at three or foure yeares of age, is or can be a perfect good Horſe, whilſt he remaineth (I ſay) unridden, unhandled, and unmade, untill ſuch time, as he hath been taken up into the Stable, made gentle, taught to leade, content to be ſhod, to be Back't, Broken, Ridden, Wayed, Mouthed; and to bee briefe, brought to his utmoſt perfection. By this time, you will come to bee able to know and underſtand his true Worth, Vertue, Nature, Diſpoſition, and Quality, his Pace, his Raine, or Bearing his Toughnes, Strength, and Affability, his true worth and goodneſſe, and what other attributes are befitting a generous Horſe.

What manner of man a Rider ought to be.

His Rider therefore must be an expert and able Horseman, and his Keeper every way as sufficient; otherwise what defects you shall finde in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to the Groome. Wherefore your care must be, that both Rider and Groome be knowne sufficient, lest for want of true science, your Horse may eft-soones be brought to assume such siniſter conditions, from which he will not be weaned in a long time after. Wherefore if your Rider be known to be an able man, and your Groome sufficiently skilfull; you must then expect that perfection from your horse, you ever hoped. For my part thus much I aver, that this Noble Science (Noble, I call it for that it is a faculty well beseeming a truely-Noble Gentleman) is an art wherein I have been versed and travelled for more then forty yeares, as well at home, as in parts abroad, in which I have most diligently consumed much time, as well to the labour of my body and minde, as to my no small expence: and it doth not a little trouble me that in places where I come here in *England*, I doe finde so few Horsemen, (considering it is an Iland which doth abound in Horses, whereof no kingdome under heaven more) and yet so many Braggadochies there be, who will so cracke and boast of their skill in this heroicke Sciences; and when I shall begin to discourse with them of Horsemanship, they will talke so sillily, and so impertinently, as makes me blush to heare them: insomuch as I have much trouble with my patience in forbearing to let them know their absurd folly: and if I but aske them any easie question concerning this mystery, they presently fall into strange and prepostorous discourses, venting many incredible wonders, as farre from sense, and as high above the Moone, as the Moone is above us: and they are as poor, and as ignorant in the true nature and knowledge of the Art, as not to be able to understand the very first grounds and principles in Horsemanship. Others there be, who have attained to so much superficiall speculative knowledge, by reading the works of Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, getting thereby some glimpse of speculation, but lesse true practise, (wherein is as much difference as betwixt us and the Antipodes,) and therefore in what esteeme they either are or can be among Horsemen, is most easie to be imagined. Others there are, who being so active and dexterous, as to be able to sit a rough unridden Colt, a few plunges, by fast holding with both hands to the Mane and Pummell, and by clinging with their legges close to the body of the horse, till by striving and his violent disordered agitation, he hath put himselfe from off his winde; he will not sticke presently to promise to himselfe, the true and entire mystery of able Horsemanship. Others againe I oft meet with, who by sometimes frequenting the Muze, and other places, where Riders use to menage; who after have made no bones to cry themselves up for as good & as able Horsemen, as any in *England*. Others I doe very well know, who by reading, have made some petty practise howsoever

(God knowes) to very ſmall purpoſe (ſo farre forth as their diminitive skill was able to extend) upon ſuch (not rightly bred Geldings, and ſmall Nags of their own) wherein they have aſſumed unto themſelves ſo much pretended knowledge, as that they have in their diſjoynted diſcourſes, not ſpared to taxe the famous *Alexanders*, and other eminent Riders of this our kingdome for Novices, and meere ignorant Horſemen. Such (I ſay) is the vanity and arrogancy of theſe our dayes, in which ignorance dareth to adventure to traduce knowledge, and Vice lay an obloquy upon Vertue. *For unleſſe a man doe arrive unto the depth of profound knowledge, he ſhall be derided, but like as he either hath or hath it not, he ſhall be either commended or ſcorned.* For you ſhall not ſee one in a hundred of theſe pretenders of knowledge, who doth (not ſo much as) underſtand the termes of this generous myſtery; and therefore I may truely ſay of them: that, *Not to know the termes or principles, is to be ignorant of the* Art *it ſelfe:* And yet I have known ſome of theſe ſo impudently weake, as to take upon them to teach, whereat I have not a little marvelled, it being a generall received rule, *viz. It is impoſſible for any man to teach that which hee never learned.* And further a venerable Author ſaith, *He that will be his owne ſcholler, ſhall be ſure to have a foole to his maſter.* For aſſuredly, *great folly and weakeneſſe is to be obſerved in that man, who ſhall take upon him to be a maſter or teacher, who never knew what it was to be a ſcholler.*

But if you deſire to have your Colts come to the height of perfection, let then your care be to furniſh your ſelfe of a good Rider, and ſuch an one who is well known and cryed up to be an exquiſite Horſeman. He muſt not be of life diſſolute, or debaucht, nor of nature harſh, furious, cholericke, or hayre-braind: for the leaſt of either of theſe vices, are unbeſeeming a perſon of this profeſſion: but he muſt be of life ſober, and in his function laborious and diligent; of complexion Flegmatique, and patient, he muſt be maſter of his paſſions; for *A wiſe man knoweth how to conquer and overcome himſelfe:* for that Rider that is cholericke, raſh, haſty, and ſoone provoked to impatience, can never make a good Horſeman, let him love the Art never ſo well, neither ſhall he be able to make a horſe ſo perfect as otherwiſe he might have done, were he otherwiſe conditioned; but let him apply his beſt endeavours, yet that horſe he maketh, ſhall have defects, which his inconſiderate haſtineſſe hath cauſed. For if your young horſe be rightly organized, and as well natured, as well mettled, and as correſpondent for markes and colours, he ſeldome proves ill in the making, ſuppoſing his Rider be maſter of his Art; but if otherwiſe, by which meanes he doe fall into imperfections or vices: it is not much to be wondred at, for thoſe his evill conditions and faults are not ſo much to be imputed to the horſe, as to his teacher, and as touching curſtneſſe and correction to be uſed to young horſes, we have a generall rule in Horſemanſhip, which is, *that he is not cryed up for a good Horſeman, who wanteth knowledge how to bring his horſe to perfection by*

ſweet and gentle meanes, rather then by correction and ſevere chaſtiſements: yet that correction muſt ſometimes be uſed, no man but knoweth, to be as neceſſary as his meat; nevertheleſſe let correction be ſo conſiderately applied, as not therein to exceed the limits and bounds of moderation; Let it (I ſay) be done, *to amendment, and not to deſtruction or confuſion, and utter marring of him:* for diſcretion in a caſe of this nature is a moſt precious jewell, and highly to be valued, and when his Rider ſhall at any time correct him, let it be done in the very inſtant when he offendeth, and doth juſtly merit the ſame, and not otherwiſe, for elſe he will not know the cauſe why he was chaſtiſed, whereby he becommeth rather confounded than amended: ſo on the other ſide, when the horſe doth well, let him be cheriſhed and much made of, which will the better encourage him in the ſame way of going forward in well-doing.

What manner of perſon a Groome ought to be.

And as touching the Groome, he muſt be a man who muſt truely love his horſe, and ſo ſhape his courſe towards him, as that the horſe may love and dote upon his Keeper, otherwiſe the horſe may ſoone get ſo many evill habits, which he will not eaſily alter or forget. For as *Ariſtotle* learnedly ſaith, *Like as you order him, ſo ſhall you finde:* For the horſe by nature is the moſt loving creature to man of all other brute creatures, and none more obedient, none more intelligible, none more deſirous to pleaſe; wherefore if he be ſweetly, mildly, and plauſibly dealt with, he will be alſo reciprocall: Otherwiſe if his Keeper be harſh, furious, chollericke, and paſſionate, the horſe will be put beſides his patience, ſtare and ſee boggards in his Keepers face, become rebellious, fall to ſtriking, biting, and other vices, to the often endangering as well of the life and limbs of his Keeper, as of his Rider, and others: for the old proverb is moſt true, *Patience once wounded or wronged, is ſoone turned into fury and rage.* For the horſe is not ſaid to be *Creatura animalis, a creature endowed with a reaſonable ſoule*; but is, *Creatura ſimpliciter animata, a creature which hath onely life and ſenſe*, as learned Philoſophers doe teach: a creature (I ſay) in whom is onely life, ſenſe, and memory, but diſcourſe he hath not, and therefore muſt be governed by judgement and diſcretion. If therefore your Groome be a man of a looſe, evill, and debaucht life, or not otherwiſe able to govern, or to maſter his paſſions, he is wholy unfit to ſupply this place, and to take a charge of this nature upon him: yea he muſt be a man of a boundleſſe patience, he muſt be judicious and diſcreet, by which means he may with the greater facility, and leſſe difficulty, bring his horſe to be of the ſame identety, parity, and eſſence with himſelfe, their loves and hearts truely united; ſo as he may at pleaſure, mould and faſhion him into what forme he deſireth: he muſt continually toy, dally, and play with him, and teach him to play the wanton, be alwayes talking and ſpeaking pleaſing words and phraſes unto him: he muſt leade him abroad morning and evening when the ſunne ſhineth warm, and then run, ſcope, and ſhew him all the

the delight and contentment he is able: he muſt duly curry, rub, and dreſſe him, wipe, duſt, pick, and cleanſe him, feed, pamper, and cheriſh him, keep him warm and ſweet, be alwayes fidling and doing ſome thing about him, be often tampering with his heeles and legges, often taking up his feet, rapping him gently upon the ſoles, and knocking him ſoftly upon the coffins, untill his Keeper hath taught him to take up any foot of himſelfe at firſt bidding: his Keeper muſt have him alwayes ſo cleane of his body, ſetting upon his coat ſo perfect a gloſſe, as that a man may almoſt ſee his face upon it. His feet would be kept ſtopped, and the coffins daily annoynted, his heeles free from ſcratches, and other ſuch like forances: and his Keeper ought alſo to keep ſo continuall a vigilant eye upon him, and all his actions, as well in his feeding and drinking, as otherwiſe, whereby no ſymptomes of ſickneſſe or infirmity (inward or outward) ſhall be able ſo ſoone to ſhew its head, but they may be as eaſily, and as ſoon cured and amended, or elſe prevented: for *to amend a fault in the beginning, is far better and more eaſie, than when it hath beene long accuſtomed*: for our old Proverb is, *Things are ſooner prevented, than amended.*

But I am loath to wade any further into this ſubject, for this is not that I intended when I began: yet ſithence I am thus farre imbarqued in it, I will give you a few rules which may be profitable both to the Maſter and the Groome, which if they be well obſerved, you may undoubtedly keep your horſe long in very good eſtate and health. *Rules fit to be obſerved.*

1 First therefore before you put your horſe to graſſe (I ſpeake now of horſes which have been ridden and exerciſed) ſome foure or five dayes, or a week before, take bloud from him according as your diſcretion or the Ferrier by his Art ſhall dictate: the next day after, give him the drink of *Diapente*, mentioned in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 7. § 2. with good Sack, and let him after his drinke be inured to hardineſſe ſome dayes before his turning forth, by taking by degrees his cloaths from him, leſt by doing things on a ſudden, he fortune to take more cold, than you can eaſily cure: neither would I have you put him forth till the midſt of May at the ſooneſt, for till that time, graſſe will not have bit enough for him to fill his belly, nor the ſeaſon warme enough, (and let the day wherein you turne him forth be a warme Sunſhine day, and about the houre of ten;) for Horſes pampered in warme ſtables, and kept cloſe, will be ſubject to take cold, if a diſcreet order, and courſe be not taken with them. Secondly, let him be taken up from

2 graſſe about the feaſt of Saint *Bartholomew*, which is upon the 24. day of Auguſt, or ſoon after, for then the ſeaſon doth begin to let fall cold dewes, which betideth no good, but much harme to your horſe, and then beginneth the heart of graſſe to faile, ſo as the graſſe which then he feedeth upon, breedeth no good nutriment, but groſſe flegmaticke and cold humours, which putrifieth and corrupteth the bloud: Let your horſe (I ſay) be taken up about the day before mentioned,

tioned, but with all the quietnes may be, for feare of heating him, by reaſon his greaſe he gat at graſſe is tender, ſo as every little motion will diſſolve the ſame, whereby the bloud may be inflamed, and ſo the Horſe be brought into eminent perill at leaſt of ſickneſſe, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the Stable, or ſooner, let him be ſhod, and let bloud, and drenchr, as before is ſhewed you; for this preventeth Yellowes, Stavers; and ſuch like diſeaſes, which the Gaule, and Spleen occaſioneth, which the heart and ſtrength of graſſe (through the ranknes of the bloud) doth ingender in his body; Then purg and cleanſe him both outwardly and inwardly, like as you are taught in lib. 2. chapter 2.

3 Thirdly, ſearch your Horſes mouth, both then and at other times often, for feare of Barbes, Bigs, Bliſters, and Cankers, and ſuch like maladies which are very incident to breed in the mouths of Horſes, which by the colour of the ſpots of his Gums, Tongue, and Mouth you may perceive, and ſo the better and more eaſily both prevent, 4 and cure all ſuch diſeaſes as are inherent to thoſe parts. Fourthly, rub and waſh ſometimes your Horſes mouth, and tongue with vineger or Verjuce mingled with bay ſalt, but Verjuce is the better, and let ſome paſſe downe his throat, for it is both wholeſome and good. 5 Fiftly, obſerve your Horſes Eyes, and Countenance, which if you doe find them to be heavy, drowſie, and dull, then be you confident all is not well within him: Then take bloud from him, and give him the drinke of *Diapente*, or *Diateſſeron*, and hee ſhall doe well againe. 6 Sixtly, obſerve well his ſtanding, and his going, if you doe perceive him to felter with any of his feet be it never ſo little, or elſe which foote ſoever he doth favour, let the Groome preſently take up that foot, and examine it, if he can feele any place warmer than other, let him now aſſure himſelf ſomething is amiſſe there, take off the Shoo, and ſearch the foot carefully, to ſee whether gravell, or naile be any cauſe thereof; but if you doe find all well there, ſearch the heele and fruſh, if you find not any thing there, ſearch higher for ſome ſwelling that may be in the paſtern-joynt in the legge, or backe ſinew; and when he hath found the fault, and cauſe of his complaint, let him preſently informe the Ferrier, who is to apply his remedies, and by this meanes he ſhall diſcharge his duty as well becometh him. 7 Seaventhly, obſerve alſo if he put forth his foote more than uſually hee was wont to doe; then aſſure your ſelfe the griefe lyeth either in the khee or ſhoulder; if it be ſo, preſently advertiſe the Ferrier, who knoweth what is beſt to be done with him. 8 Eightly, when you are to take your journey with him, water him in the Houſe, and give him his break-faſt of good cleane Oates, ſweet, and wel-ſifted; then bridle him and tie him up to the Rack, then curry, dreſſe, and ſaddle him, but draw not the girts too ſtreight till you come to tke his back; then preſently caſt his cloath over him leaſt he take cold, and when you come to take his back, draw his girts ſtreight, and ſo on God's name

name begin your journey, but for a mile, two, or more, goe faire and softly, for if you heat him too soone, he will not digest his meate, but crudityes will arise in his stomacke, which you shall perceive by his scouring & purging, as he travaileth, whereby you may either founder him in his body, or else cause a *Calientura*, burning Fever, or some other worse infirmity to seize him: and as you doe travell him, when you are come some foure or five miles from home, alight from him, and walke him, sometimes standing still to see if you may provoke him to stale, for it is very wholesome and good, which you may also doe well to attempt when you dismount and walke him down any hill: and some three miles before you come to your journies end, Ride him into some River or other watering place, unto his belly, but no deeper in any wise, and then let him drinke, yet not so much at the first, as he desireth, but by degrees, first taking up his head to cause him to wash his mouth, whereby to free it frō filth & some; Then let him drinke halfe his draught, and lastly, so much as in reason he will: Then observe upon what pace you brought him to the water, with the same pace, (and neither softlier nor faster) Ride him a mile or better, by which time he will have warmed the water in his belly, without taking cold or harme. This watering him thus, will very much refresh him, cause him to forget his wearisomenesse, and when he shall come to eate, it will be with very good appetite, which otherwise he would not have done. A mile at least before you come to your journies end, slack your pace, and begin to go more softly, to the end he may not be too hot when he shalbe set up; have him without delay into the Stable warme, *well* littered up to the belly; but take heed you suffer him not to be either walked, or washed, for these two things are very pernitious, and most dangerous for him, and the cause of more sicknesse, sorances, and death to Horses, then of all other things besides. So soone as you have brought him into the Stable, the first thing you doe, off with your Coate, and tie him up to the empty Rack; then litter him up to the belly, ungird him, take off his Saddle, rub his back with speed, and put his cloath upon him, and upon that his Saddle againe, and gird him with his Surfingle, then make cleane his stirrops, stirrop-leathers and Girts, and rubbe him downe, both Legges, Belly, Body, Breast, Head, Face, and Neck, and so stuffe him up with cleane dry straw, and let him stand so upon the Bit an houre, evermore looking upon him least he sweat a new, which if you shall perceive, then to alay it, take away some of the straw wherewith he is stuffed, and hee will coole againe; if you finde him in good temper, unbridle him, and wash his mouth with water and salt, and wash also his Bit, and so bridle him up againe, and give him some good Hay in his Rack to champ upon, for halte an houres space. After come to him againe, and then unbridle him, put on his Collet-haker, and so give him fresh Hay to eate: Then rub him all over, and so let him stand till

you

you have ſupped; then come to him, and give him either a ſweete maſh or white water, which when he hath drunke, let him eate Hay for halfe an houre after, and then give him his Provender, but by degrees, not too much together, for feare of cloying him, which ſo ſoone as he hath diſpatched, unſaddle him, and rub his body all over, cloath him up warme, and whiſp him up round with ſmall whiſps: Which done, rub his legges dry, picke, and ſtop his feete, and annoint the Coffins and Cronets of his Hoofes, giving him Hay for all night: and laſtly ſhake up his litter about and under him, that ſo he may ly ſoft, and warme: and thus doing, leave him to his reſt.

The next morning, come to him early; and firſt obſerve whether or not he hath layne downe; then looke upon his Ordure, whether it be laxative or coſtive, or if he hath avoyded any greaſe, which if he hath, give him with his Oates, a handfull or two of Hemp-ſeed, and ſo order him as you are accuſtomed, or otherwiſe as you in diſcretion doe find to be moſt requiſite. Many other rudiments there are to be given, which for that they are ſo commonly knowne to every Groome, are impertinent to rehearſe: Only in a word for a cloſe, I ſay, that a good Groome ought to be a man of good life, and ſober demeanour, no Tipler, no haunter of Ale-houſes, or Tavernes, (like as too too many are) no lyer abroad from his Horſe in the night, nor long from him in the day, and an early riſer; the Stable muſt be his Compting-houſe; he muſt not be ſo intimate with any as with his Horſe; have entercourſe with none ſo much as with him: he muſt be his principall aſſociate, and make him of his Cabbinet-councell: his Horſe muſt be his only *Idea*, the only Miſtreſſe whom he muſt court, and ſerve: and ſo ſoone as he doth ſuſpect but any the leaſt inconvenience in him; let him inſtantly impart it to the Ferrier, and looke what the Ferrier doth give in directions, let his Keeper diligently obſerve, and execute accordingly; for it is an argument of a proud and prepoſterus condition in a Groome, to ſwarve from the inſtru-
9 ctions which the Ferrier ſhall at any time give. Ninthly, as the Groome muſt have a ſpeciall care hee doe not pine, or under-meate his Horſe, in his dyet; ſo he muſt bee as cautelous hee doe not cloy him, by laying before him too much Provender at once: but his way muſt be to give him little at once, and often; he muſt eate up all before he give him any more, yea hee muſt eate it with good appetite, otherwiſe he may marre his appetite utterly, and bring him to loath his Provender, and looke what Hay and Provender he doth at any time give him, let it be ſweet, wel-duſted, and throughly purged from Feathers, Hens-dung, Cats-dung, ſtones, gravell, and ſuch like filth, which are things hurtfull and troubleſome to his ſtomacke and feeding; for they will cauſe him to refuſe and forſake his meate, unles pure hunger ſhall conſtrain him thereunto; for ſuch kind of naſty meate, & food will engender in him noyſome & noxious infirmities.

Tenthly,

Fertily, as touching the furniture and capariſon which the horſe is to weare, the Groome muſt be carefull to keep them clean, bright, and handſome: the Saddles, after ſweating and travell, well ayred in the Sun and wind, and after beaten and duſted, the ſtirrops wiped cleane, with the ſtrops and other ſuch like leathers thereto belonging and appertaining, and ſo put up ſafe and handſomely with their cafes and coverings upon them to preſerve them from duſt: the foot cloaths (if he have any under his charge) cleanſed, bruſhed, and neatly folded up; the Bits taken from the Head-ſtals, and cleane waſhed, dryed before the fire; and wrapped up in an oyly cloath to keep them from ruſt and canker, and the Boſſes carefully alſo made clean, together with their Bits, and ſo laid up in the Preſſe or Cheſt made for ſuch like purpoſe. The Head-ſtals and Reynes, Croopers, and other accoutrements would likewiſe be wiped, made very cleane, and hanged up in the Preſſe in their proper places: the Girts, Surſingles, Stirrip-leathers, and ſuch like neceſſaries, would be diligently viewed and examined, cleanſed, and made cleane, and if any thing be amiſſe or broken, let it be mended incontinently, leſt they ſhould be to doe when they were to be uſed: In concluſion, nothing ſhould be out of order atany time, but every thing (as well Stable as Saddle-houſe) kept cleane, neat, and ſweet, which will purchaſe unto the Groome no ſmall reſpect with his Lord or Maſter, and much more reputation and applauſe of ſo many as ſhall be an eye-witneſſe thereof.

10

11

THE EXPERT FERRIER.

The Second Booke.

Chap. I.

Of what points consisteth the office of the Ferrier: Handled Dialogue-wise.

Hyppophylus. MAster Sergeant Ferrier, you are well encountred, I have been often at your house and shop, with a desire to have spoken with you, but could never have the good fortune to finde you at home.

Hyppiatrus. *Sir, it may well be, that you may come often to my house, and yet misse of me, unlesse it be at certaine set houres, for that I having many Cures daily in my hands, and besides I am frequently sent for by many to looke upon sicke horses; marvell not that you cannot so easily finde me at home: but what is your pleasure now that you have met me?*

Hyppophy. You may remember (good *Hyppiatrus*) you promised me (upon our last meeting) to assist me in the perfecting of my Cures, which so long since I purposed to publish, and now I would gladly know what day and place you would appoint for the finall dispatch of the businesse.

Hyppiat. Truely Sir, the time now fits well, for I have dispatched all my affaires for this day; wherefore sithence wee are met so neere my house, we will enter, where we will be retired into a private chamber, prohibiting any accesse unto us, my man *Hypposerus* onely excepted, whom I will interrogate in such points as shall concerne the Ferriers Art or Science: and you sitting by, making your selfe very attent to our discourse, and taking in writing the prime heads

heads of our diſcuſſion, when any thing paſſeth whereof you may deſire to be better informed, propoſe the ſame, and we will give you a full ſolution.

Hyppophyl. Your motion likes mee well, for it will bee the beſt courſe you can thinke of whereby to give mee ample ſatisfaction.

A formall Examen of the Office of the Ferrier.

Hyppiat. *What is the* Ferriers *Art?*

Hyppoſ. It principally conſiſts of foure things, to wit; Science, Experience, Knowledge, and Handy-work.

Hyppiat. *Letting paſſe the firſt three, tell mee what is Handy-worke?*

Hyppoſ. Handy-worke is to heat the Iron well, to Sodder well, to Forge well, to turne a Shoo well, to make and point a Nayle well, to pare the hoof well, to Cauterize well, to let bloud well, to be light, and well-handed, bold, and hardy in dreſſing of a Horſe well, of ſuch Accidents as may happen unto him.

Hyppiat. *What are the principall members of the Creature?*

Hyppoſ. They be three, *viz.* the *Liver*, the *Heart*, and the *Braine*: and if the Creature be offended in any of theſe three, eſpecially the *Braine*, which is in the top of the head, then I ſay he will dy.

Hyppophyl. I alwayes tooke the principall members of any living creature to be foure.

Hyppiat. Therein (Sir) you were miſtaken, for any of theſe former three being hurt, there is evermore preſent death, eſpecially the *Heart*, and the *Braine*: but if any other member beſides theſe three be hurt, yet may your Horſe live, and doe well againe. But which Member (I pray you Sir) do you hold to be one of the foure principall Members?

Hyppophyl. The *Stones* or *Gignitors*.

Hyppiat. *How doe you aſſoyle this Objection* Hyppoſerus?

Hyppoſ. Moſt eaſily Sir, that the *Gignitors* cannot bee any one of the principall Members, reaſon teacheth us: for you cannot ſo much as touch any of theſe three, but you doe either kill the Creature outright, or elſe deſperately endanger him. Now ſuppoſing the *Stones* may fortune to receive hurt or domage, yet if I bee in deſpaire of healing or curing them, I can nevertheleſſe cut, or take them cleane away from the body, or cauſe thē to fall away by other good means or by medicine, without perill of his life: he will only thereby looſe his naturall heat, whereby hee will bee diſenabled from having any diſpoſition to *Coity*, or power of *Procreation*.

Hyppiat. *What is that which goeth from the* Head *of the Horſe, and diffuſeth it ſelfe through-out all the other Members?*

Hyppoſ. They are two *Sinnewes* or *Tendents* which are white, and

have a Ligature beginning at the very end of the *Nose*, and extend themselves along the *Neck*, and along the *Back*, and maketh their extent to the foure *Legges*, and taketh their Ligaments in the fore-*Feet*.

Hyppophyl, I was in good hope *Hyppoſerus*, you would likewiſe have ſpoken of the number of the *Sinnewes*, and where every one is ſeated; for it is a thing very materiall, and I doe the rather deſire it, for that I am not as yet perfect in that point.

Hyppiat. That was but forgotten both by my ſelfe and him Sir, wherefore *Hyppoſerus* make anſwere to the Gentlemans demand.

The number of the ſinews

Hyppoſ. I ſhall doe it moſt gladly, wherefore as touching the *Sinnewes* we ſay, that there are in every Horſe twenty nine or thirty, great and ſmall. Firſt, the two great *Sinnewes* which I named before, which have their firſt origin from the end of the *Noſe*. Item
2 two branches which are maine *Sinnewes* that proceed from the *Brain*,
2 and runneth downe the *Cheekes* to the *Teeth*. Item there are from
2 the *Shoulders* to the firſt joynt of the *Armes* or *fore-Legges* downe-
8 wards, two great *Sinnewes*. Item from the *Knees* to the *Paſterns* are
foure great *Sinnewes*, with the ſame number in the hinder part. Item
10 in the fore-part of the *Breaſt*, and about it, as well within as without,
4 are ten *Sinnewes*, ſome greater and ſome ſmaller. Item from the
1 *Raines* of the *Back* to the *Stones* are foure great *Sinnewes*. Laſtly, one great maine *Sinnew* whith runneth along to the end of the *Tayle*. So as the full number of the *Sinnewes* are twenty nine or thirty, which are to be diſcerned.

Hyppiat. *What is that which we doe commonly call principall or* vitall Bloud?

Hyppoſ. Thoſe be *Veines* which are veſſells of quick or running *Bloud*, which men doe call *Vitall Bloud*.

Hyppiat. *What is that which men doe call* Vitall Bloud?

Hyppoſ. It is that which when the Creature ſleepeth, his bloud is in continuall agitation, and never ceaſeth.

Hyppiat. *How many* Veines *hath a Horſe in his whole body?*

Hyppoſ. To ſpeake properly, a Horſe hath but only one *Veine*, which is that which we call the *Meſaraick* or *Lives Veine* which is in the Liver, being the true Fountaine, Source, and great *Tunne* from whence the *Canes Conduite-pipes*, and little *Veines* (as the ſmaller Rivers doe ſeparate themſelves) which doe run thorough all the parts and members of the whole body.

Hyppiat. *What call you* Separation?

Hyppoſ. *Separation* is of two kinds, *viz.* aſcendant, and deſcendant: thoſe which do aſcend to the *Head* and body, are called *Veines Aſcendant*; and thoſe which doe run low, or to the *Legges* and lower members, are called *Hollow*, or *Deſcendant Veines*.

Hyppophyl. I did ever thinke and beleeve till now, that a Horſe had more *Veines* than one; how then cometh it to paſſe that we open

Veines

Veines in so many severall parts of the body, being so different *Veines* the one from the other?

Hyppol. I answere you Sir, if you bee pleased to examine your paper, there you shall find how that *Hypposerus* told you that a Horse hath but only one *Veine*, and it is a most infallible verity, for that all those other *Canes* which you call *Veines*, are but the very same with that One, which evermore standeth full of *Bloud*, up to the top, conveyed into him, which said great *Veine* is annexed unto the *Liver*; which *Veine*, doth resemble a great *Tunne* or *Cestern*, which conveyeth the *Bloud* into all the lesser *Veines*, by which meanes they continually remaine full, having no vacancy or want: Like as a Cestern (*V. G.*) receiveth its water from a Pump, and so conveyeth and bestoweth it into and among the smaller Pipes, ofttimes storeth with plenty of water, a whole Village, or Towne, or at least a whole Family.

Hyppophyl. *I understand you well; but now friend* Hypposerus, *tell me I pray you, in how many* Veines *may a man take* Bloud *from a Horse in case of necessity?*

Hyppos. In many parts, to wit: In the *Neck*, in the *weeping-Veines*, under the *Eares*, and in six other places of and about the *Head*; as in the *Palate-Veines*, in the *Tongue*, in the *Flank-Veines* in the *Breast* and *Spur-Veines*: in the foure members, to wit, the *Legges*, *Thighes Pasterns* and *Feet*; also in sundry other places, according as necessity shall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady or Disease of the said Horse. *The number of the veines*

Hyppophyl. But yet I was in good hope you would have delivered the reasons for which you doe open any *Veine*, as also which they be in particular.

Hyppos. The *Veines* which we doe usually open are; First, the two *Temple-Veines*, which easeth the paines in the *Head*, coming of *Colds*, Rheumes, Feavers, Yellows, and Stavers, drowsinesse, Frenzy, the Sleepy-evill, Falling-evill, or any griefe in or about the *Eyes* or *Braine*. Secondly, we open the two *Eye* or *weeping-veins* being most soveraigne for such diseases whereunto the *Eyes* are subject; as *watery* or *weeping Eyes*, *Bloud shotten*, *Pin and wibbe*, *haw*, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two *Pallet-veines* in the *Mouth*, and those doe Cure the Lampas, and any inward sicknes within the body; as the Yellowes, Stavers, Anticor, Surfets, Drowsinesse, Tyrednesse, or wearinesse of the body; or if the Horse have any Malady in the *Throat*, as the Strangles, Quincy, Kernells, Pustills, either within or without, it many times helpeth Inflamations Glanders, or the like: for the eating or swallowing of his owne bloud, is most wholesome and soveraigne in such cases. Fourthly, we doe usually open the two *Neck-veines*, which helpeth Farcins, Yellowes, Stavers, Scabs, Mainges, Agues, Feavers, Colds, Surfets, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any way noxious to the inward parts of the body: And *The particular veines.*

2 2

3 2

2 4

And it alſo preventeth ſudden ſicknes, if you have any ſuſpect therof.

2 5 Fiftly, the opening of the two *Plate* or *Breaſt Veines* doe help the Anticor, Sickneſſe of the Heart, Morfounding, which is the foundring in the body by over riding. whereby the Greaſe of the Horſe is molten; it alſo preventeth diſeaſes in the *Liver*, *Lungs*, and inward parts grieved; and ſometimes hurts in the *Shoulder*, which cauſeth lameneſſe

2 6 before. Sixtly, we uſe to touch the two *Arme or Thigh Veines* before, which helpeth Foundring in the *Fore-feet*, Mallenders, ſplent, ſerewe, Ring-bone, and ſuch like infirmities in the *Fore-feet*, and ſuch other

4 7 higher parts. Seventhly, we uſe to take *Blood* from the foure *Shackle-veines* before, and this is very good for the Crown-ſcab, Ring-bone,

2 and ſuch like diſeaſes. Eighthly, we uſe to ſtrike the two *Spur veins*, which cureth the Farcin in the *Sides*, morfounding, ſwelling under the

2 9 *Belly*, which is a diſeaſe called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, we prick the two *Toe-veines* which do help Frettizing, Foundring, Hoofbound, beating of the Horſes Feet by riding upon hard and ſtony

10 2 wayes, and the like. Tenthly, we open the two *Thigh-veins* behind; and this doth help the griefes of the *Kidneys*, Swellings in the *hinder-legs*, Foundrings, Selenders, Scratches, Kybes. &c. and it helpeth alſo diſeaſes in and about the *Belly*, as piſſing of Blood, piſſing oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the weakneſſe of the *Reines*, the *Back*, *Belly*, *Guts*, or any other the inward parts, the Curb, Spaven, and

11 4 ſuch diſeaſes which come of rankneſſe of *Blood*. Eleventhly, wee ſometimes doe open the foure *Shackle-veines* behind; and this is very good againſt foundrings and other paines in and about the *feet*.

12 2 Twelfthly, we let *blood* in the two *flanke or hanch veines*, and this is moſt profitable for all kind of feavers, the *ſtones*, poverty, & the felterworme. Thirteenthly, we draw *blood* trō the two *tayle veynes*, which

13 2 cureth the mainge in the *tayle*, falling off the haire, or the itch in the *Scown-ſcab.* *tayle*. And theſe are for the moſt part all the *veines* which are uſually opened, or that my ſelfe have ever known, or have ſeen my Maſter open, which are very great meanes to help theſe diſeaſes by me mentioned. So as the full ſumme or number of *veines* which *Ferriers* uſe commonly to open, are thirty. Other *veines* there are which are of a ſmaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be opened. Nevertheleſſe ſome *Ferriers* there are, who have fondly reported unto me that they have let horſes *blood* in many of thoſe ſmall *veins*, but I could never learne for what purpoſe the ſame was done: let this therfore which I have here ſet you down ſuffice for this matter.

Hyppophyl. I have heard you *Hyppoſerus* attentively, but yet I would moſt gladly underſtand one thing, which is, that where as you ſay that the opening of theſe *veines* doth help and cure ſuch diſeaſes, I would gladly be ſatisfied herein, for if by the opening of theſe *veines* the horſe will be cured, then we may ſpare much labour in applying drinks, purgations, cliſters, and ſuch other things, which we uſually make and give to horſes.

Hyppoſ.

Hyppof. Sir, I assure me you cannot be so ignorant as you speake; for this opening of *veines* and *bloud-letting*, doth not alwaies absolutely cure those diseases which I have named; but it doth sometimes aswage the malignancy of the malady, somtimes it preventeth diseases, and sometimes againe it prepareth the body the better to receive such physicall drinks which doe inwardly cure them, and such Salves, Oyles, and Vnguents which doe dry and heale up outward infirmities; but that *bloud letting* doth absolutely cure them, I say it doth not, howsoever in some cases it may.

Hyppiat. *What is that which departs from the* head *of the horse, and serveth him for his principall members?*

Hyppof. I have shewed you that already: they be *sinewes* and *nerves*; these *sinewes* which depart and proceed from the *head*, give sense and feeling, arriving in the body of the creature, and so diffuse and spread themselves through all the principall members, which doe descend from the *head* unto all the other members, which make a conjunction of the *bones*, of the *legges*, of the body, and of all the other members.

Of the bones

Hyppiat. *How many bones hath a horse, and how are they situated in the body?*

Hyppof. There are in the body of every horse, two hundred fifty and seven *bones*.

Hyppiat. *Name them severally.*

Hyppof. All the *bones* which every horse hath whereby to make up an organall body, are these: *viz.* hee hath in his *head*, thirty nine, and forty *teeth*: the *bones* in his *head* doe comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the *scull*, albeit they be compoted of parts and parcels of certain other *bones*, also the two flat Handles, which form the *Palate*; and the *Forke* or *Throat* hath five, the *chine* fifty two, the *breast* one, *ribbes* thirty sixe, the *fore-legges* and *fore feet* have forty foure, and the *hinder-legges* and *feet*, forty. So as the whole structure of the body of a horse whereby to perfect a full building of *bones*, consisteth of about 257. or 259. if they be rightly computed; which doe represent themselves altogether at what time the perfect *Anatomy* of the horse is laid open.

39
40
2
5
52
1
36
44
40
259

Hyppiat. *What naturall composition hath the* head *of the horse?*

Hyppof. He hath *eyes* to see, *eares* wherewith to heare, *nostrils* to smell or scent; a *mouth* and *tongue* to taste and eat, and wherewith to nourish him.

Hyppiat. *What naturall composition hath the whole body of the horse in generall?*

Hyppof. The whole body hath its *heart*, *liver*, *lungs*, *spleene*, *stones*, and *gignitors*: all which are called the *noble parts*, and that most justly: for when either the one or the other of any of these parts receive hurt, or domage, the poor beast is in perill of his life, except in the *gignitors*, according as I have declared.

Hyppof.

Hyppiat. *What maladies or diſeaſes are moſt uſually incident to the horſe?*

Hyppoſ. Sundry diſeaſes, as namely Auynes and Gripings, called in French, *Tranchaiſons*, Foundrings, Farcins, Mainges, and very many more which ſeverally to recite, would ſpend much time: Nevertheleſſe I will handle briefly their natures, dividing them into two ſorts, *viz.* Moyſt, and Dry; the moyſt doe proceed commonly from naughty *bloud*, the dry commeth of heat: as the Scab, Mainge, and ſuch like diſeaſes proceeding from moyſtnes; ſome againe are called Leaproſies, or the Elephantique mallady, by reaſon that Elephants are much troubled therewith; and every diſeaſe is known by its proper ſymptomes.

Hyppiat. *What be the ſignes whereby to know the humid or moyſt diſeaſe?*

Hyppoſ. The humid or moyſt malady is properly called the Glanders, which oft times proceeds from the *liver* and *lights*, when they be infected with putrefaction and rottenneſſe; or when they breed inflamed lumps, knots, or kernels under the *Chaule*, which all do come of cold taken by immoderate riding and labour, and want of care afterwards, which begetteth evill humours in the body, which when they ſhall begin to breake from the horſe, by his running and purging at the *noſe*, whereof other horſes will have a deſire to licke, and therby they doe become infected.

Hippiat. *Many horſes there be which doe runne at the* noſe, *who have not the Glanders.*

Hippoſ. 'Tis very true, but this diſeaſe of the Glanders may be known by its knots, kernels, and puſtils which ariſe under the *Iaw*. You may alſo know it by the colour of the corruption which the horſe venteth: for, if that mattrative ſtuffe be green, and of a ſtrong and offenſive ſavour, or if it be white, and ſtinketh, as alſo viſcous and ſlimy; then be you confident it is the Glanders, but if he ſhall caſt forth corruption at his *noſe*, which is white, and that by bits and gobbets, which doth not ſtinke or have any evill ſavour or ſmell, then it is not the Glanders, but ſome diſtemperature which commeth of a cold lately taken, which is eaſily cured, if it be not let runne too long, for *there is great danger in delay.*

Hippiat. *What be the arid or dry diſeaſes?*

Hippoſ. They are an alteration of the body, which we doe commonly call Surfets and Purſivenelle, which is occaſioned oft by riding of a horſe beyond his ſtrength or breath, eſpecially preſently after water, or by putting him to too much labour, or too violent running and ſtrayning, or by waſhing him when he is very hot.

Hippiat. *How commeth a horſe to have the Tranchaiſons or Gripings?*

Hippoſ. By ſuffering him to drink when he is too hot, or by overriding him; they alſo come of bad winde which ingenders in him, and not by ſuffering him to ſtale in his riding in convenient time, and of evill humours.

Hip-

Hippiat. *What signes have you of the scab or mainge?*

Hippos. We may with good reason say that this disease we call the scab, mainge, or itch in a horse, proceedeth of too great abundance of ill bloud, which when it is once inflamed by over-hard riding, causeth its leprosie to come forth upon the *skin*, which commeth to be an itch running over the whole body, beginning betwixt the flesh and the skin, insomuch as it will cause the haire to fall away, from whence ordinarily doth proceed a dry scurfe or scab, which is very contagious.

Hippiat. *How commeth the Farcin to the creature?*

Hippos. No way so soone as by a bad Stable, whither Swine and Poultrey doe resort, for their doung is most pernitious: also by evill dressing, which may be a great cause, and by too much rankenesse of bloud, and by some wound, hurt, or blow with a staffe, especially if the staffe have knags or knots upon it, sometimes by enter-firing, and hewing, and lastly by spur-galling.

Hippiat. *Which be the foure maladies which doe most appeare when a horse sheweth by his action that hee is in danger of death, by the said diseases?*

Hippos. That hapneth often by too much ventosity, or by eating too much raw meat, or to have drunk being very hot: it commeth also of the coldnesse of *urine*, or having ridden him too hard too long together, not giving him leave to pisse.

Hippoph. *I pray* Hippocrates *give me leave to demand of you, what you would doe in such a case, by your best endeavours, to save the life of the poor beast?*

Hippos. In a case of this nature, I would first take *bloud* from him, if I found just cause for it, and then should I administer a laxative clister, which should be both comforting, and yet operative, which is inserted in *lib. 2. chap. 6. § 8. clis. 2.* Or else I would give him a drink of good operation, which you shall finde in *lib. 2. chap. 7. § 8. clis. 6.* either of which, or both, are most soveraigne in this case. But if I shall finde, that the malice of the mallady doth not continue in the body, but falleth down into the foure legs, as usually it will do: then doe I use to open the veins in those places, and in the neck also, or in any other part I shall judge shall be most necessary, and of his bloud I will make a restrictive charge, adding thereunto Wheate-meale, Bole, *Sanguis-Draconis*, Egges, the strongest white-wine Vineger, and such like, which I will more at large expresse in the place of Cures: this (I say) will I apply to all the foure *legs*, and over and against the *kidneys*, the *breast*, *throat*, *feet*, and the like places, then would I cup the bottome of the *soles*, I will also apply to the foure *legges*, Garters, which I will tye hard above the *knees* and *hammes*, and so govern my selfe in performing the Cure, according to the strength, vertue, and greatnesse of the horse, and as my judgement shall dictate unto me.

Hippiat. *By how many wayes may evill come to a horſe?*

Hippoſ. Two wayes, *viz.* by nature and by accident againſt nature; as of thoſe diſeaſes which fall down into the *legges* and *feet* of the horſe, from whence doe come Scratches, Splents, Squibs, Mallenders, &c. with other kindes of humours and accidents, as well in the body of the creature, as in the members: and *ſalvo aliorum judicio*; theſe things appeare unto me to comprehend in them the aforeſaid accidents, which doe happen to the horſe, even as ſoon by nature many times, as by accident or againſt nature.

Hippoph. Hippoſerus, *I doe not well underſtand this point: you ſay that theſe things may happen as well by nature, as againſt nature, which are to my underſtanding a plaine contradiction. I pray explicate yet your ſelfe more fully.*

Hippoſ. Thoſe things which are againſt nature, I told you are by by accident; but when I ſay that certain diſeaſes may as well come unto him by nature as by accident, yea even in the ſelfe-ſame diſeaſe, my meaning is, that if the Stallion be troubled with the ſame diſeaſe at what time the Mare, who is the damme of this Colt is covered, I ſay that then the Colt himſelfe ſhall be capable of the ſame malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (parents to the ſame Colt) have for example a Spaven, I ſay that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven: and thus I have explicated my ſelfe, and aſſoyled your demand.

Hippiat. *But what call you accident, or againſt nature?*

Hippoſ. As thus, *verbi gratia:* if walking your horſe in your hand in the fields, or elſe-where, and that he happen to be ſtrucken with ſome cudgell, leaver, or heavy baſtinado, or with ſome ſword, hatchet, Bill, or other edge-tooke, or that you ſhould enforce him to doe more than what nature or ſtrength were well able to compaſſe, or leading him upon plaine ground he might wrinch any member, or ſway his *back*, or breake his *leg*, either by the ſtroke or ſtripe of ſome other horſe, or otherwiſe accidentally, or ſhould by misfortune fall downe ſome ſteepe precipice, whereby he may breake or diſlocate ſome limb or member: all theſe diſaſters we uſually doe call Accidentall, and all ſuch things of this nature.

Hippiat. *Which be the* elements *which doe give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living creatures?*

Hippoſ. They are foure in number, that is to ſay: *Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth*, whoſe natures if you ſhall pleaſe, I will diſcuſſe elſewhere.

Hippiat. *No, I pray let us have them both now and elſewhere: their natures, conditions, and qualities.*

Hippoſ. The nature of *Fire* is to be hot and dry; *Ayre* to be hot and moyſt, *Water* to be cold and moyſt; and *Earth* to be cold and dry.

Hippiat. *Doe you know the twelve* Signes *of the* Zodiacke, *and how they doe govern the body of man, and of all creatures?*

Hippoſ.

Hippof. Yes, I doe know them all perfectly; and thus are they called *Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces*: These doe all governe the twelve Months of the yeare, and are placed above the *Zodiack*.

Hippiat. *Doe you know the names of the* Planets, *and their numbers?*

Hippof. That I doe very well, and they bee seven in number; to wit *Saturne, Iupter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury*, and *Luna*.

Hippiat. *What parts doe the twelve* Signes *before mentioned governe?*

Hippof. *Aries* governeth the Head, *Taurus* the *Neck*, *Gemini* the *Shoulders* and *Armes*, *Cancer* the *Stomack* and *Breast*. *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the *Belly* and *Guts*, *Libra* the *Reines* and *Buttocks*, *Scorpio* the *Privy parts*, *Sagittarius* the *Thighs*, *Capricornus* the *Knees*, *Aquarius* the *Legs*, and *Pisces* the *Feete*.

Hippiat. *In what daies is it best for a horse to be let bloud?*

Hippof. In the e be no extraordinary cause, as in case of desperate sickness, or so; then *January* the third, and the fifteene. *February* the fourth, and nineth. *March* the seventeene and eighteene. *Aprill* the tenth, and sixteene. *May* the first thirteene. *Iune* fifteene and twenty. But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the *Canicular-dayes* be then predominate, *bloud-letting*, is not so good, but only in urgent case of necessity. In *September* the eleventh, and twenty eight, *October* the eight, and twenty three. *November* the fift, and sixteene, *December* the fourteene, and twenty six. And these daies doe wee hold to be the very best, unlesse dangerous or sudaine sickenesse doe cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessity, no daies are to be regarded or observed: For

Q; retinente vita, et non sit mortis imago:
Si semper fuerit vivens, morietur et infra.

Hippiat. *What medicine would you apply to a Horse, who may have any of the foure Maladyes?*

Hippof. I would give him of the foure Cordiall waters, which I would make, of Buglas, Savin, Succary, Aquavitæ, Endife, and the like.

Hippiat. *How would you make a comfortable drinke?*

Hippof. I would make it of certaine Cordialls, to wit; of Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Anny seeds; all these in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all these infused in a cleane earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drinke.

Hippiat. *Whereof would you make an operative drinke?*

Hippof. I would take white Wine, Sallet-oyle, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke, or Duck-powder, Hony, Cordial-powder; and of all these things would I put such a quantity as I should thinke requisite

quiſite, and according to the ſtrength and corpulency of the Horſe.

Hippiat. *Whereof would you make a laxative Cliſter?*

Hippoſ. Into a laxative Cliſter I will put either of Pellitory, Melelote or Cammamile (but Pellitory is the beſt) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet Oyle, Hony, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hippiat. *What be the natures of your principall Drugs?*

Hippiat. Agarick purgeth the *Braine*, Allos the *Breaſt*, and body, Rubarb purgeth the *evill water*, and it openeth the *Liver*, and helpeth obſtructions, and oppilations, Ariſtolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the *Breaſt*, *Liver*, and *Lungs*, and Bacchalauri or Bay-berries, doe mortifie the peccant *Humours* which doe ingender in the *Breaſt*, or *Entrayles* nere about the *Heart*: and Saffron (if it be diſcreetly given) doth marveylouſly comfort and enlighten the *Heart*.

Chap. II.

Of the cauſes of Sickneſſe in generall: and the cauſes of Health, and long Life.

Hippiat.

NOw that we have proceeded thus farre, in a diſcuſſion of the Office of the *Ferrier*; Let us approach yet nearer to intreate of the Cures, and that we may goe on *Pedetentim*, and *Gradatim*; Let us firſt diſcuſſe the cauſes of Maladies, and therefore I demand of you, *What are the true Cauſes of the ſickneſſe of the Horſe?*

Hippoſ. Sir, that man which hath a deſire to become an *Expert Ferrier*, muſt apply himſelfe to underſtand the true nature of two things; *viz.* of *Generation* and of *Corruption*, in which I could never find the leaſt diſcord in the Primary nature of Horſes, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the foure *Elements*. But I will proceed in Anatomizing unto you the verity hereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better underſtand my meaning.

Hippophyl. But friend *Hippoſerus* in my judgement, you begin to aſſume too high a pitch for ordinary *Ferriers*, who are in a manner all or the greater number un-lettered perſons; and therefore will never be able to underſtand what *Generation* and *Corruption* meaneth, for theſe are termes taken from the grounds of *Philoſophy*; and therefore above their *Genius* or *Sphere*.

Hippoſ. Sir, there be many things neceſſary to bee duly knowne, and as diligently to be obſerved in him, that deſireth to be a perfect and able *Ferrier*, which whoſoever ſhall be defective in, he may well bee

be an *Empyreticall-Horſ-Leach*, but skilfull *Ferrier* or *Marſhall* he ſhall never be. And for that you pleaſe to ſay, that I ſore too high, becauſe I began my diſcourſe with the termes of *Generation* and *Corruption*: if you had not interrupted me; I ſhould have explicated my ſelfe ſo cleerely, as that a very reaſonable judgement might eaſily have apprehended me, for I hold it not a thing fitting to puſſell mens *Braines*, either with *Chimeras* which they are not able to underſtand, or with over-long, and tedious diſcourſes, of things meerly impertinent: but if you ſhall be pleaſed to heare me with patience, I will touch upon this ſubject, to wit: What are the cauſes of Sickneſſe in generall, as alſo of Health and long Life; and that *Laconica brevitate*, and ſo leave the reſt to your judgement, and practiſe: eſpecially conſidering what other Authours (my Maſters) have ſo learnedly, and no leſſe ſufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to ſay, what I ſaid before) with the cauſes of ſickneſſe and death of Horſes in generall, in the true knowledge whereof, conſiſteth their preſervation; I doe hold it a thing moſt needfull that we doe perfectly know that thing which wee doe cal *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Phyſitians* and *Philoſophers* have ſo much diſcuſſed both in their Schooles and Writings; and how the body of the Horſe (like alſo to that of Man) is compounded of the foure *Elements*, *viz. Fire*, *Aire*, *VVater*, and *Earth*. The natures of theſe four *Elements* are different: for *Fire* is hot and dry, but it participates moſt of Heat. *Ayre* is hot and moyſt, but chiefly moyſt: *Water* is moyſt and cold, but moſt cold: *Earth* is cold and dry, but moſt dry. *Fire* and *Ayre* are both light *Elements*; and *VVater* and *Earth* both heavy. Four Humours alſo there are, which be as it were four Children to theſe four Elements: and theſe are; *Bloud*, *Phlegme*, *Choler* and *Melancholy*. Theſe foure *Humours* are attendant upon the four former *Elements*, without which a naturall body cannot be made: for *Bloud* naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moyſt, but taketh moſt from heat, and therfore is ſubordinate to *Ayre*. *Phlegme* is cold and moyſt, but the principall quality thereof is coldneſſe, and therefore hath reference to *VVater*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his chiefeſt nature is heate, and therfore is governed by the Element of *Fire*. Melancholy is cold and dry, but his chiefeſt condition is dryneſſe, and therefore ſubjects it ſelfe unto the element of earth. Now the fountaine of the bloud is the Liver, which diſperſing it ſelfe by the helpe of the *veines* into all the parts of the body, nouriſheth and preſerveth the ſame. Flgme preoccupateth the *braine*, being a cold and ſpungy ſubſtance, and the ſeat of the *ſenſible ſoule*. Choller inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleaſing harmony with the bloud. Melancholy reſideth in the ſpleene, which is the receptacle and diſcharge of the excrements of the Liver. From whence we may collect that it hath its proper uſe and end: as for demonſtration, Bloud principally nouriſheth the *body*, Flegme occaſioneth motion of the *joynts*,

Of the foure Elements, Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth.

Of the foure Humours, Bloud, Phlegme, Choler, and Melancholy.

joynts and *members*. Choler exciteth and provoketh the *body* to avoyd it's *excrements*: and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the body to an appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers doe with one unanimous assent agree in this, that in every *naturall body* there are foure principall *instrumentall members*, from which all the parts of an *organicall body* is said to be framed, and these are the *braine*, the *heart*, the *liver*, and the *stones* or *gignitors*; and each one of these doe performe its true function to all the particular members of the *body*. For the *sinewes* doe receive their sustentation from the *braine*, and these are called *animall spirits*, the *arteries* from the *heart*, which are *vitall spirits*, the *veines* from the *liver*, which are *naturall parts*; and the *seed-vessels* from the *stones* or *gignitors*, as the place of *generation*.

The instrumentall members. The braine, the heart, the liver, and the stones or gignitors.

Now forasmuch as I have shewed you the foure *elements* with their true natures, the foure *humours* with their qualities, and the foure *instrumentall members* with their true conditions: It now remaineth that we intreat briefly of the foure *naturall faculties*, which is in every *body*, together with their true attributes: The first *faculty* is to *eate*, the second to *retaine*, the third to *concoct*, and the fourth to *expell*. And to answer to these foure faculties, you must understand that there are residing in the body, the afore-named *humours*, that is to say, Bloud, Flegme, Choler, and Melancholy, whereof *nature* maketh use of the service of but one of these onely to work upon, which is an *excrement* which we doe justly call *whey*, or *wheyish-bloud*, whose engendring is wrought in the liver, and so conveieth it selfe into the *veines* at which time the foure humours doe take from the *body* that forme and substance it ought to assume: and of this very *liquor* doth *nature* serve it selfe, to resolve the *meat*, and so to operate that the same may passe through the straight *caves*, *conducts*, *pores*, and *passages*, carrying nourishment to all the parts of the *body*. You must therefore understand that the *veines* are the receptacles for the *bloud*, which is mixed with the *vitall spirits*, so as the said *veines* have their source or origin from the *liver*, whereby their office is to exhaust from the *liver* unto the *veines* the said *wheish* substance and to inject part thereof through the passages into the *bladder*, and from thence againe forth of the *body*: by which meanes the *body* is freed from offence, and from sustaining domage: whereof two of the *veines* conduct part of the said *whey* from the *liver* unto the *coddes*, and so to the *seed-vessels*, where it remaineth with some small quantity of the purest *bloud*, by which meanes, the operation of the *stones* (whose quality are hot and dry) doe thereby effect a most perfect *seed*. Which two *veines*, nature (who is the most exquisite Artist, and *Quæ nihil habet vitii*) hath planted one in the *reines* on the right side, which endeth in the right *cod*, and another semblable in the left; both which take their issue from either of the *coddes* accordingly; besides, nature hath bestowed upon the right *cod* much heat and dryeasse, so hath she also given unto the left, as great a quantity of cold and moysture, the right *cod* by meanes of its heat

The foure naturall faculties. To eate, to retaine, to concoct, and to expell.

heate engendring the male, and the left by reaſon of its cold engendring the female, and ſo likewiſe is it as well of the female as of the male of every creature. But now to come to the *heart* which is formed with the *liver* and *braine*, and maintained with the pureſt *blood*, which is ſo exceſſively hot, as whilſt the creature liveth, if you put but your finger into its hollow part, it is impoſſible to continue it there long without burning or ſcalding the ſame, from whence it muſt neceſſarily enſue, that the *liver* being the fountaine of all the *blood*, muſt of neceſſity have great and abundance of pure *blood*, wherwith to ſupport and maintaine the ſtructure of the whole *body*, and the *vitall ſpirit* of any creature is none other thing than a *corporeall fume* or *vapour*, (to ſpeake properly) very pure and ſubtile; begun in the *heart* by the operation of the naturall heat, ſpread by the *arteries* and *veines*, to refreſh and comfort the whole *body*; which agitative or *ſubtile Spirit* proceeding from the *heart*, and *vitall ſpirits*, being a continuall motion, by reaſon that motion and agitation is the true life thereof, which continually remaineth in all living creatures. But the *heart* which may be truely and rightly ſtiled the *fountaine of life* and *heat*, nature hath aſſigned it its proper place, which is to be ſcituate in the center, that is the middle part of the *body*: from whence proceedeth life and heat into each organ of the *body*, by which meanes they are preſerved and enabled to perform their naturall and proper function. And as touching the *cods*, if the *liver* be not well ſtored, nay full of pure and perfect *blood*, neither is the creature able to concoct and digeſt its meat, nor can the *cods* be hot: ſo as if there be in thoſe parts a defect of heat, the *ſeed* of the beaſt cannot be perfectly concocted, by which meanes the Horſe becommeth frigid and impotent, and without any power at all of *Procreation*. And this is as much as need be ſaid of this ſubject: wherein if I have any way erred, or not delivered my ſelf ſo cleerly whereby to be underſtood as I deſire, the blame muſt light upon the great deſire I promiſed to brevity: howſoever I have endeavoured what in me lyeth, to dilate and explicate my ſelf at full.

Now will I begin to ſhew to you what meanes we have to preſerve horſes from all inward diſeales; which conſiſteth of four wayes, *viz.* by *Purging*, *Sweating*, *Flebothomy*, or *Blood-letting*, and *Vomit*. As touching the firſt, which is *Purging*, it is twofold, to wit, outward and inward. This *outward purging* is by cleanſing the outward parts, which muſt be done immediately at what time you take up your horſe from graſſe, which would be about Saint *Bartholomewes* day, for then the heart of graſſe doth begin to decline, and therfore after that day, the graſſe he then feedeth upon, breedeth no good, but bad and corrupt bloud, and ſo conſequently ſundry ſorts of *maladies* and infirmities in his *body*; beſides the ayre beginneth then to grow ſharpe, which is alſo very dangerous, yea and moſt contagious for him; and if you ſuffer him to runne after that time, his haire will grow long and rough, ſo as he will not have for that *winter* any

Cleanſing and purging. Of outward Purging.

any ſlicke or glittering coat. Of this outward *cleanſing* or *purging* your horſe, you ſhall finde taught you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. § 6. and the manner how and when it would be done, *viz*, in a warme day in the Sunne, at what time every part and member of him would be ſoped, waſhed, dryed, and cleanſed from all manner of *ſweat*, *ſcurfe*, *duſt*, *dirt*, and *filth*, yea and that all his whole *body* over, eſpecially his Maine, Tayle, and Cods, who being thus cleanſed and made dry again, and his yard drawne, cleanſed, and annointed with tryed hogs greaſe, let his eares, his Maine (juſt ſo farre as the top of the head-ſtall will cover, and no more) and under the Chaule, be handſomely trimmed, then pull away by the roots all the ſmelling haires about and under his mouth and noſe, and the long *ſtubborn hayres* under and about his *eyes*: which done, cut away about a handfull of the lower part of his tayle even and decently; then cauſe the Ferrier to ſhooe him up, but let him be carefull to pare him neatly, and to open the Heeles and Fruſh. Then cloath him up warme, and ſtopped with ſmall wiſpes; this done, annoint all his hoofe, with the oyntment (having firſt waſhed them cleane, and made them dry againe) preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 11. § 9. Then let his feet be picked cleane, and ſtoppe him with Oxe-doung.

Cleanſing and purging inwardly.

Now as touching his *inward purging*, this ought to be done evermore before you put him to any labour or exerciſe: and firſt let him be raked, by cauſing ſome one who hath a ſmall hand and arme, to annoynt them firſt with a little ſweet Butter, or Oyle de Bay, but ſome doe uſe Sope, which I doe hold too ſharp, and ſo putting his hand into his *fundament*, let him bring forth all his doung, and while he is in ſo doing, let him try to feele for Bots or wormes, which may ſticke faſt unto the great *Gut*, and the place where the doung lyeth; which if he finde, let him pluck them away gently, and by degrees, and ſo bring them all out: this done, give him the Cliſter mentioned in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. § 8. *Cliſt.&c* 4. and ſo ſoone as the horſe hath received it Cliſter-wiſe, then preſently clap his tayle cloſe to his Tewell, and ſo cauſe him to keep it ſo long as you can; and this would be done, three or foure dayes before the Full or Change of the Moone.

Drinke 1. *Drinke* 2.

The next day after, give him his firſt drink, inſerted *lib.* 2. *cap.* 16. § 14. *purg.* 4. the next day following, give him his ſecond drink, ſhewed you in *liq.* 2. *cap.* 16. § 14. *Purg.* 5. and ſo follow ſuch directions ſhewed you in thoſe Rules.

Let bloud.

The next day following you have thus given him his two drinks, let him *bloud*: if you ſhall finde the *bloud* to be very bad, take the more from him, if reaſonable good, take the leſſe, but if very good, then draw your cord, and ſo do but give the *veyne* vent, and no more, then afterwards keep him with warm Maſhes, as is taught you elſe-where.

Sweat.

The next day after *bloud letting*, *ſweat* him like as is preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 18. § 28. *S.* And if you doe diſcover any cold in him by any ſymptomes,

Vomit.

then give him the vomit preſcribed you in *lib.* 2.

cap.

cap. 20. § 1. *V.* And to prevent any Obſtructions in the *liver* or *lungs*, or his *heart* any way oppreſſed, or otherwiſe to preſerve the *blood* pure and from corrupting; all which inconveniencies may be a ready meanes to bring your horſe to his end; give him in his Provender, ſuch powders and other Simples which you ſhall find in ſundry places of this Treatiſe: for this will refine his blood, and preſerve his *liver* from infection, and keep him in perfect health.

Powders to be put into his provender.

Thus far Sir, I have declared unto you what I underſtand of the Cauſe of Sickneſſe in generall. It remaineth now for me to inculcate what are the cauſes of health and long life, which to be briefe are twelve in number: *viz.* The firſt is Nature, good digeſtion, and good Nutriment: the ſecond is moderation in feeding and dyet: the third is, moderate labour: the fourth is, moderate uſe of ſleeping and waking: the fifth is, moderate ſpending upon Mares: the ſixth is, moderate journeyes: the ſeventh is, wholeſome ayre: the eight is, not to be exerciſed too ſoone after graſſe: the ninth is, to be kept from raw and greene meats: the tenth is, not to be ſuffered to eate or drinke being hot: the eleventh is, not to be either waſhed or walked at the end of his dayes journeyes: the twelfth is to give him with his Provender, ſuch powders and ſimples, as are preſcribed you in all thoſe Chapters which are by me mentioned.

12. Cauſes of health & long life.

Hippiat. *You have ſpoken well* Hippoſerus, *but I would have you ſhew me, how long life is acquired by theſe cauſes, which as yet you have not done, for you have but onely delivered them in generall heads and termes: Wherfore I would gladly know what you can ſay of them in particular.*

Hyppoſ. I will Sir: Theſe twelve cauſes of long life doe come to a horſe either inwardly or outwardly, which howſoever they muſt be holpen either by Art, by Induſtry, or elſe by judgement and diſcretion.

Wherefore you muſt know that whatſoever is naturall muſt neceſſarily proceed from good temperature, and proportionate mixture of the foure qualities of the body: ſo as the juſt and adequate proportions of temperate mixture, are the true cauſes of long life, by reaſon that all mixtures of ſuperfluities are againſt theſe three things, *viz.* Nature, good digeſtion, and ſound Nutriment. For heat and nutriment are then well proportioned, when neither the moiſture with its too great quantity is predominant, whereby it devoureth the heat; nor when over-much heat too ſuddenly conſumeth and deſtroyeth the moyſture; howbeit there muſt be a neceſſity that the heat muſt have a kinde of regality and dominion over the moiſture, otherwiſe it will never be able to nouriſh the body as it ought.

What things do hinder nature, digeſtion and nutriment.

The ſecond cauſe of long life, is the moderation of their naturall appetite of *eating*, it being availeable either in exceſſe to kill and deſtroy, or in moderation to ſave: whereby the horſe ſhall daily repaire the decay of his humidity, by ſupply of moderate nouriſhment, and never over-whelme or ſuppreſſe his heat with too great abundance

Moderation in eating.

of moiſture, nor mixe his *Humidum Radicale* with too much ſuperfluous impurities, for extreames are evermore perilous and ill, as well in exceſſe as in defect: For as too much eating (bee the meate never ſo good and wholeſome) hindreth good digeſtion, and ingendreth Crudities, together with an evill habit of the Stomack; ſo likewiſe too ſpare a diet doth as much weaken and decay nature, by reaſon that the heat which, thereby will ariſe in the ſtomacke, will firſt over-charge, and afterward conquer the Radicall moyſture; both which are friends to ſickneſſe and death.

3 *Moderate labour*

The third cauſe of long life is moderate labour, a matter very much effectuall to digeſtion, and therfore to long life, dilating and ſpreading nutriment into every member of the body: for over-much reſt, breedeth in the body ſuperabundance of bad humours, which cooleth the body: for want of which moderate exerciſe, it is as it were caſt into a ſleep, and in a manner through lumpiſhneſſe beſotted and benummed: from whence doth ſpring another miſchiefe equivalent to the former, to wit: a collection of excrementall ſuperfluities, occaſioned through lazineſſe and idleneſſe, by reaſon that the horſe for want of moderate Exerciſe, is not able to digeſt his received nutriment: by which meanes many maladies are ingendred in his body, proceeding from corruption in the bloud, crudities in the ſtomack, and the like, becauſe he hath in his body (as a man may properly ſay) a very ſink or ſtanding-pool of unnaturall humours. And therfore I give all men this caveat, *viz.* to be very carefull they do not put their horſes to over-much labour and travell, untill ſuch time as they have well digeſted their meat, for that by their immoderate exerciſe, they over-clog their ſtomack, and ſo they cannot have a true concoction, their ſtomacks being full, and their bodies cloyed and over-much ſtuffed with raw and cruded humours, which through violent exerciſe are diſperſed, firſt, into all the Veins (corrupting the bloud) and from thence into al the parts of the body, which ingendreth ſo many noyſome infirmities within the bodie, and ſo many lothſome ſorances without the body, as will not eaſily be cured: and therfore it doth greatly behove a man, that his horſe (if hee love him, and deſire to keep him long) his exerciſe be neither too intemperate, nor too little, but ordred with judgment and diſcretion.

4 *Moderate ſleepe.*

The fourth cauſe of long life is moderate uſe of ſleeping & waking, for theſe are the mayntenance of health and long life, if they be had with moderation, and both are very noxius otherwiſe beyond meaſure. For inordinate watching is a mayn enemy to health, for it waſteth and conſumeth the vitall ſpirits, and it decayeth the *Humidum Radicale*, cauſeth maceration and ſterility, it is an impediment to the operation of the *Brain* and ſenſe, it begetteth ſiccitie in the *Brain*, and aridity in the *Marrow*, and worketh the like evill effects in the *Liver* and *Lungs*. On the otherſide, immoderate ſleepe hindreth health, quencheth the natural heat, and conſumeth the moyſture in the *Body*:

for

for ſleep is but a vapour aſcending from the Stomacke to the Braine, whichſtupifieth the Brain for a ſeaſon,and during that time it maketh the body ſenſleſſe; and the ſooner it being provoked by over much feeding, ſtuffing, and filling of the belly; and therfore it greatly ſtandeth a man upon that he hath a vigilant care to his horſe his ſleep, that it be moderately taken,for as I ſaid but now, as too much ſleepe is noxious, ſo alſo too little is as prejudiciall.

What manner of things ſleepe is.

The fifth cauſe of health, and health and long life is that great care be had in keeping your horſe from exceſſe in ſpending himſelf upon Mares for that is Death's Harbinger, by reaſon it doth after a moſt violent manner, conſume the ſpirits, debilitateth the *ſtomack*, dryeth up the *brain* and *Marrow*; and therfore the reaſon why a Gelding (if he be kept free from ſurfets) is longer lived than the Stoned-horſe: ſo likewiſe the reaſon why a Mule, being a mixed creature, (howbeit a Monſter in nature) is longer lived than either of them; for that his juſting (howſoever without fruit) in that kind is but once only in the whole courſe of his life: and therfore I could wiſh, that one Horſe be not ſuffred to cover above three Mares at the moſt through out the whole yeer, and that from the yeers of his comming to fixe, untill he hath attained twelve, and no longer; for when a horſe hath once ſeene twelve yeers of his age, nature will then begin to decay, wherby he ſhall not be able to beget Colts which can prove ſo good and ſerviceable, as thoſe hee begat in his yong yeeres. For beſides (hard and toylſome labour,) this act of coity with Mares, doth more weaken and dull him; for you cannot be ignorant of the old Proverb, which ſaith; *Omne animal poſt coitum triſte.*

5 *Moderation in ſpending upon Mares.*

The ſixt cauſe of long life is, moderate riding in long journies, for by intemperate driving his heat from the inward into the outward parts of the body, is the cauſe that the fire of *choler* will be enkindled, which will be ſo vehement as that it muſt needs prove an infinite horrour unto nature, ſo inflaming the *blood*, that if the Horſe at the ſame inſtant be not very empty and clean in his *body*, the *blood* and *humours* being mixed together, will be through the violence therof, diſperſed into all and every part and member of the *body*, and then a ſudden cold taken upon it (which rarely faileth) doth inſtantly putrifie and corrupt the *blood*, and congealeth it to the unavoydable perill of the life of the Horſe: eſpecially if after this intemperate riding, he be either ſuffered to drinke, or ridden into the water, as many of your furly and lazy *Grooms* are accuſtomed to do. My counſell therfore is, that when you have any long journey in hand, let his travell be moderate, inhibit walking, waſhing, or giving him cold water; but, ſo ſoon as you ſhall diſmount him, let his *Keeper* have him into the Stable well littered, and throughly rubbed through all the parts of his body till hee be thorow dry, let him be clothed and ſtopped up warm, and at a reaſonable time, let him have white water.

6 *Moderate journeying.*

The ſeventh cauſe of health and long life, is; wholſome ayre and

7 *Wholeſome ayre.*

ſoyle, clean keeping, painfull and good dreſſing, the Stable kept neat, ſweet, and warm; his food old, ſweet, clean, and dry, well ſifted and ſhaken, and freed from duſt and filth; his litter ſweet and dry, and all wet and old litter removed from under his feet and manger, and let all evill ſavours be removed from about the Stable.

8 *Not to travell too ſoone after graſſe.*

The eight cauſe of health and long life is, not to ſuffer your Horſe to be travelled or exerciſed too ſoon after you have taken him from graſſe, untill ſuch time as he be thorowly purged and cleanſed from his ſuperfluous and bad humours, which hee gat by being at graſſe in time of his reſt, and full feeding, which certainly are not a few; but hereof I have ſufficiently ſpoken before in this very Chapter, and therfore I paſſe it over.

9 *Not to eate raw or green meate.*

The ninth cauſe of health and long life is not to ſuffer him to eate any raw or green meate whilſt he ſhall be kept in the Stable, for that ſuch diet doth beget many bad and humours oppugnant to nature; as Feavers, Surfets, Yellowes, Stavers, Anticors, Morfounding, and the like; all which will debilitate Nature, and endanger the breeding of many deſperate diſeaſes, to the perill as well of the Horſes life, as health, if extraordinary care be not had (by way of prevention) in very good time, by the diligence of an *Expert Ferrier*.

10 *Not to eate whilſt he is hot.*

The tenth cauſe of health and long life is, by keeping your Horſe from meate and drinke whilſt hee is hot, for that doth weaken the heart and ſpirits; it is an enemy to the Appetite, and digeſtion, engendreth Oppilations, and Obſtructions, corrupteth and putrifieth the bloud, breedeth Feavers, and many other maladies, and is very often the occaſion of ſuddaine death.

11 *Not to bee walked or waſhed.*

The eleventh cauſe of health and long life is, to bee very preciſe that you doe not permit your Horſe to be walked or waſhed after labour, or travell, if in his travell he hath been heat, but preſently after you diſmount him, let him be led into the Stable, well littered, warm clothed, painefully rubbed and dried; but hereof I have ſpoken ſufficiently in the ſixt cauſe, and elſe where.

12 *To mix certain powders with his provender:*

The twelfth and laſt cauſe of health and long life is, to uſe ſometimes to put and mix with his provender, certaine powders, *viz.* the powder of Anniſeeds and of Licoris, or of Fenugrick, Sumerick, Bay-berries or Brimſtone, white-Lilly roots ſmall chopped, Enula-campane roots, if green and newly gathered, otherwiſe dried and beaten to fine powder, or the roots of *Polipodium* of the Oke or its powder, Savin, Marſh-Mallowes, Rue, Iſope, Hore-hound, or Colts-foote: theſe either ſmall chopped if you give them green, or elſe dried and given in powder, which Simples will keepe him ſound and in perfect health, for their vertues are to purifie the *bloud*, prevent Obſtructions, open and reſolve the *Liver*, coole the *Bloud*, and perſerve the whole ſtructure of the *Body* in excellent health.

Thus have I (as ſuccinctly as I have beene able) declared the reaſons of ſickneſſe in general together with the true cauſes of health & long

long life, the contrarietyes whereof will engender in your Horſe, infirmities and death: for the ſenſitive Bodies as well of all other creatures as of Horſes, are often (upon the leaſt cauſe given) diſguſted & brought out of ioynt and temper, by reaſon of the aſſidual warfare of the never-ceaſing-iarring Elements, that it not a little importeth a Maſters care to looke very narrowly into the ſtate of his body. For put caſe that time and experience doe approve the contrariety of the before named inherent qualityes of Heat, Cold, Drynes, and Moiſture, the formall cauſes of all intrinſecall diſeaſes, the continuance and unperceivable lingring in them, together with the true cauſe of their ſuddaine and untimely death: Yet is there meanes as eaſily to be found, as well for the prevention of all enſuing ſickneſſe (if we will but apply our care and diligence) before it approacheth, as for the able curing of them when they are come, and palpably perceived; according to the opinion of famous *Galen*, who ſaith: He that preventeth the cauſe of ſickneſſe, preventeth the ſickneſſe it ſelfe: for, Take away the cauſe, and the effect followeth not.

Hippoph. You have ſpoken well *Hippoſerus* upon this ſubject; but yet your laſt Article is not without difficulty, in that you do advile to adminiſter certaine powders, and other ſimples unto a horſe in his provender, which ſhould conſerve him in health, and prevent all inward diſeaſes in him. I cannot certainly but approve very much hereof, in that they be moſt ſoveraigne in ſuch caſes you ſpeake of, but the manner of adminiſtring them, is the thing I much ſtand upon, knowing right well that theſe ſimples (or the greater part of them) are of ſtrong and offenſive ſcents and ſmels, and others are as farre diſguſtfull and unpleaſant to his taſte, whereby he may very eaſily be induced by diſliking thoſe powders and ſimples, to loath and utterly forſake his provender.

Hyppoſ. Sir, you object well, nevertheleſſe give me leave to tell you, that in caſes of this nature, Vſe (we ſay) makes perfectneſſe: True it is, that horſes will have an averſion from theſe kinde of drugs and ſimples, but what then? have you no feare, for rather than he will not eate his Provender at all, hunger will in time bring him to it, yea as well thoſe powders, as his provender: provided you doe not offend him by putting in too great a quantity at once, but by degrees, and that by a little at a time, till cuſtome hath made him perfect; and moſt certaine it is, that ſome horſes are ſo coy, dainty, and choice feeders, as that you can hardly provoke them to eate any provender at all; whereas others there be who are ſo great feeders, as that they will make no bones to devoure what meat ſoever you ſhall lay before them; for it is very homely viands, which a good ſtomacke will refuſe: nevertheleſſe if you ſhal finde that your horſe cannot be brought to take theſe things with his provender, you may then ſometimes adminiſter of theſe powders and other ſimples, with good Ale or Beer, giving it him as you give drinks, and it will ſuffice: howbeit it will

doe

doe him more good to be given in his provender.

Hippiat. *What is the beſt thing to be given to a horſe to preſerve the* liver *from infecting, and to refine the* bloud?

Liver to preſerve.

Hyppoſ. I have knowne many things adminiſtred in this caſe, but the very beſt is, to take the root of *Polipodium* of the Oke, to waſh it, and to make it very cleane; then cut or chop it very ſmall, then take Liver-wort, one handfull, ſmall chopped alſo, and ſo much Rubarb as the weight of a teſter, either cut very ſmall, or grated: give him this in his provender three or four mornings together faſting, and give him no meat in three houres after, and let his drinke be white water for that day, and give him this monethly, and once in halfe a yeare: make tryall of his *bloud* to ſee how pure or foule it is, and adminiſter accordingly.

Hippoph. *I pray you* Hippoſerus, *what is the true nature of Rubarb? whether is it purgative or binding?*

Hippoſ. Truely Sir, Rubarb hath two contrary natures: for if you either ſcrape, grate, or cut it, then is it a looſener; for it diſſolveth and openeth the *liver*, and expelleth the obſtructions thereof; it expulſeth all bad humours in and about the *heart*, *liver*, and *ſpleene*; it cleanſeth the *body*, and ſendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all ſuch things as may annoy or offend the *intrayles:* but if you ſhall pound or beat Rubarb in a Morter, or otherwiſe, the ſpirit thereof being a ſubtile *body*, will *Tranſire* and fly away, whereby the operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

Hippoph. Let this ſuffice for the preſent, I have detained you too long from your particular affaires; it now growes late, and therefore I will take leave till our next meeting, which (God willing) ſhall be to morrow at the ſame houre, at what time I ſhall not faile you; for that I deſire a finall end of this buſineſſe: wherefore for this preſent I will take leave, recommending you both to God.

Chap.

Chap. III.

Of such things which are of necessity to be knowne by every expert Ferrier, before he doth adventure to administer.

Hippophyl.

HItherto *Hippiatrus* we have proceeded orderly, and your servant *Hipposerus* hath discourſed very accurately & pithily: Nevertheleſſe ſome things there be which yet he hath not put home enough, whereby I have not received that full ſatisfaction I deſire.

Hyppiat. Sir, Sithence we are met here againe to diſcuſſe ſuch things whereof you deſire to informe your ſelfe; my will is to have you fully and ſubſtantially ſatisfied (if it may be) in every point which might concerne this our ſubject; wherfore I entreat you to propoſe your doubts, and looke in what *Hipposerus* may faile, my ſelfe ſhall endevour to ſupply to the utmoſt of our beſt skill.

Hippophyl. Sir, I thanke you, but withall one favour I muſt begge of you, and that is, that for that my memory may peradventure faile me (it being none of the beſt) if as things occurre to my thoughts, I ſhould aske any queſtion out of ſeaſon and order, yet you will not take it ill that I ſhould interrupt him or you in your diſcourſes.

Hippiat. No truely, Sir, will I not, and therefore begin to make your demand, and *Hipposerus* ſhall give you anſwer.

Hyppoph. I thank you, then thus: As touching the compoſition of the *body* of the horſe, more I grant might have been ſpoken in words, but not more to purpoſe; for a man to runne into diviſions and ſubdiviſions, were but to beget confuſion in the unlearned Reader (ſuch are your ordinary Smiths for the moſt part, for whoſe inſtruction I doe principally undergoe theſe paines) and to ſend him away worſe ſatisfied in his judgement, than before. Whereas a plaine and ſuccinct methode doth more edifie and inſtruct him than the other can doe. I therefore demand of yon *Hyppoſerus*, that foraſmuch as you have ſpoken well of the foure Elements; to wit, Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth, yet have you not demonſtrated their natures, or where they are placed. For true it is, my ſelfe and all men do perfectly know, that theſe foure elements are not theſe foure materiall and viſible elements which we daily behold and make uſe of, as things moſt uſefull for us towards the ſuſtentation of out livelihood: being creatures, without which we cannot live: but I would gladly have you ſhew what their true natures be, being things incorporate, and therefore concealed from

from our eyes: I would alſo know in what parts they doe raign, and have their identity or being.

Hippoſ. Sir, as touching the natures of theſe foure Elements, I have ſufficiently made appeare unto you in *Capitulo præcedenti, pænè in initio*, but as touching the ſecond part of your demand, I ſay, that theſe foure elements which be in nature ſo diſſonant and diſtinct one from the other; as that nothing can be more, no white can be more oppoſite to blacke; nevertheleſſe that you may know theſe Elements, I thus averre. The Fire is higheſt, being neare neighbour or adjoyning to the Moone, and therefore naturally hot: Ayre is placed next unto it, and therefore naturally light. The Water is annexed to the Ayre, and therefore naturally moyſt. And the earth is ſcituate next to the Water, but loweſt, and out of that reaſon naturally heavy. As touching their vertues all the learned doe hold, that Fire by meanes of its heat,

The nature of the 4. Elements.

1 *Fire.* excite th matter to Generation, and occaſioneth warmth in every living body, and it doth ripen things raw and undigeſted, in ſuch excellent and ſubtle wiſe, as that the Ayre, which is of a more groſſe nature, may the better enter into the *body*, making a commixture with the Fire, whereby alſo it moderateth the heat of the Fire, the coldneſſe of the Water, and the dryneſſe of the Earth, ſo as diſtemper may the leſſe oppreſſe the *Body*. The Aire by reaſon of its moyſtnes

2 *Ayre.* maketh the matter apt to receive its naturall ſhape, and through the inſtinct of the Fire its naturall heat, cauſing the mixt *Bodies* as well ſubtle as penetrable, as well Light and moving, whereby they bee neither too groſſe nor too heavy, and withall the Ayre cooleth and abateth the extremity of the burning heat of the *Heart, Liver*, &c: As

3 *Water.* touching the third Element which is Water, its nature is that through the coldnes thereof it congealeth, conglutinateth, and bindeth in mixt *Bodies* both the parts and members together, to wit, *Sinewes, Bones*, & *Fleſh*; ſo as the Water by meanes of its coldnes doth temper and aſſwage the violent heat of the Fire, and the condenſity of the Ayre, collecting thoſe things together which they otherwiſe would

4 *Earth.* have diſſevered. And as touching the Element of Earth, its nature is by meanes of its dryneſſe and Siccity, in mixt *Bodyes*, ſo to harden and faſten them together, as that having once aſſumed their ſhapes, it cauſeth them to retein and keep them, which otherwiſe by the force of the other Elements would be ſo lax and looſe, as not to be able to hold together; wherein I could produce many familiar inſtances, which for brevities ſake I am enforced to omit. But the opinion of the beſt *Phyſitians* is, that when any naturall *Body* dyeth, the ſubſtance thereof returneth back againe to thoſe Elements from whence they came. Thus you may plainely ſee, that Fire is naturally hot, and therefore ſeparateth: Ayre moyſt, and therefore giveth Shape, Water cold, and therefore bindeth: and Earth dry, and therefore naturally hardneth, and keepeth its impreſſion: Wherefore in any Malady in a *Horſe*, obſerve but this one Rule, *viz.* that when at any time

an

an Inflamation ſhall ariſe in the *Body*, be you confident it proceeds of Fire, and therefore you muſt adminiſter (if you will performe a right Cure) things contrary to that Element: to wit; what may be agreeable to Ayre and Water, whereby to moyſten, coole, and allay the rage of the heat. If it be a *Flux* of *Bloud*, or the like proceeding from the abundance of moyſture; which takes its origin from the Element of Ayre, then muſt you apply Medicines which may connive with the Earth, whoſe dryneſſe may harden ſuch moyſture. If it proceed of *Cold Rhumes*, or the like, whereby the infirmity hath its ſource from the Element of Water; you muſt then adminiſter Medicines cohering with the Element of Fire and Ayre, which may be able through its heat and moyſture to expell all cold and groſſe humours. And laſtly, if the griefe be Maingeneſſe, or the like, which cometh from the Earth, which be dry and arid infectious diſeaſes, then muſt your applications be had from the Element of Fire, whoſe nature is to diſſolve all ſiccative humours: Wherefore (I ſay againe) that heat being too predominant is aſſwaged by the meanes of moyſtneſſe and coldneſſe: too great moyſtneſſe by heat and dryneſſe, over-much coldneſſe by heat and drynes, and too great a proportion of dryneſſe by heat alone.

Hippophyl. *But then tell me I pray you, bee there no other Elements, or beginnings in Living* Bodies, *more then theſe foure before named?*

Hippoſ. No Sir, not any other which have their beginnings: but there are two other which the Learned doe terme proper *Elements: viz.* the Ingendring of *Seed*, and *Menſtruall Bloud*; but theſe (I ſay) doe aſſume their eſſence from the other foure Elements, whereby they become a *Body*, which otherwiſe they could not, and therefore are ſubordinate to them, and they take their place after them.

Hippophil. *Having ſpoken ſufficiently of the Natures and Qualities of theſe foure Elements; What ſay you to the Humours?*

Hippoſ. I ſay that the Humours are alſo foure in number, which Phyſitians doe ſtile the firſt *Qualities*, according, as I have formerly intimated: and theſe foure are *Bloud*, *Phlegme*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*: *Bloud* being ſweet in taſt, *Phlegme* neither ſweet, bitter, nor ſowre, and therefore of no taſt, or if of any (like to that of good Oyle) rather ſweet then otherwiſe: *Choler* is bitter in taſt: and *Melancholy* is ſowre in taſt: So as by theſe taſts you may diſtinguiſh them: and theſe Humours have reference or neere affinity unto the foure Elements; for like as I have before agnized, *Bloud* is of the nature of the *Ayre*; *Phlegme* of the *Water*; *Choler* of the *Fire*, and *Melancholy* of the *Earth*; and theſe Humours have their particular abode and reſidence in the *body*, abſolute and peculiar to themſelves; as *Bloud* hath his abiding in and about the *Heart*; *Phlegme* in the *Braine*, *Choler* in the *Liver*, and *Melancholy* in the *Spleene*, whereby we may

The 4. firſt Qualities.

the better come to know what Complexion raigneth in every *Horſe*, as alſo how he is naturally qualified and diſpoſed: for the *Horſe* that is of a *Sanguine Complexion* is commonly a Bright Bay, who is of diſpoſition joviall, wanton, or merry, agile, and of motion temperate, neither too fiery, nor too dull or melancholy: Your *Milke-white* is of *Complexion Phlegmatique*, whoſe property commonly is to bee lunt, heavy, and ſlow: your *Bright-Sorrell* hath commonly reference to *Choler*, and he is naturally for the moſt part, fiery, hot, and ever-free-mettled, but yet of no great ſtrength: Your *Mouſe-Dunne* and ſuch like ruſty and ſut-colours are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, and they be ordinarily cowardly, faint-hearted, ſubject to ſtarting, flothfull, reſtife, ſtubborne, diſobedient, revengefull, &c. but if theſe *Complexions* be rightly ſymbolized, and doe all meete in one and the ſame *Horſe*, according to each ones proper nature, they doe performe their functions as they ought in a perfect harmony, whereby the *Horſe* remaineth ſound and healthy: but if there be diſcord or diſagreement in the Elements and Humours, there muſt bee the like in the *Complexions*, and then doth the poore *horſe* ſuffer for it to the danger both of Life and Health.

Hyppophyl. I ever underſtood that there are certaine *Spirits* which doe remaine in the *body* of every *Horſe*: doe you know them *Hippoſerus*?

Spirit Animal.

Spirit Vitall.

Hippoſ. Yes, I doe, and they be ſaid to bee two in number, *viz.* The *Spirit Animal*, and the *Spirit Vitall*; the *Spirit Animal* hath its reſidence in the *Braine*, by which meanes it giveth motion, feeling, and power to the *Horſe*, through the ayd of the *Sinewes*: and the *Spirit Vitall* makes abode in the *Heart*, which is the only cauſe of the exceſſive heat thereof, which diſperſeth the *Bloud* into every part, and member of the *Body*. For the *Heart* and the *Braine* are in equality abſolutely different, the *Heart* being moſt violently hot, (as I have before ſhewed) and the *Braine* is as extreamely cold: and ſo hereof needs not any more be ſpoken in this place.

Hippophyl. *But may not a man conjecture to what infirmities or diſeaſes*, Horſes *may probably be ſubject by their* Complections?

The diſeaſe known by the Complexion

Hyppoſ. Yis Sir, very eaſily, yea and that with ſo great advantage and profit to the *Cure*, if the *Ferrier* be expert and skilfull in the making and applying of his Medicines, as that nothing can be more. For example, the *horſe* that is of colour either *bright-Bay* or *dark Bay*, with a pleaſant and cheerfull countenance, or if he bee a white *Flea-bitten*, *white-Lyard*, or *Black* with a *white-ſtarre*, or race downe the face, or white-foot; if he be of eyther of theſe colours, we hold him to bee of a *Sanguine Complection*, and in *Horſes* of this *Complection* the Element of Aire is moſt predominant, and they be commonly of nature affable, well-metled, active, and of good ſtrength; but the Maladies whereunto they are moſt uſually incident, are Leaproſies, glanders, Conſumptions, and the like, yet theſe *Horſes* are frequently of ſo a-

Of the Sanguine Complexion.

ble

ble Conſtitutions; as that they have vigour enough to endure good and ſtrong Medicines: provided theſe Medicines be not too hot, but cooling. The *Horſe* which is *Milke white, Yellow-dunne, Sanded*, or *Pie bald*; theſe take more from the Element of Water than from any of the other three, and theſe we ſay are of a Flegmatique Complexion; and they are naturally ſlow, dull, heavy, and neſh or waſh of their fleſh; and they be moſt enclined to Poſes, Rhumes, paines in the head, Stavers, Yellowes, and the like, and theſe *Horſes* can undergoe good ſtrong Medicines if there be cauſe to adminiſter ſuch: provided theſe Medicines be not made of Ingredients, that be not over cold.

Of the flegmatique complection.

The Horſe whoſe colour is Mouſe-Dunne, Cheſt-nut; Browne, or of a ſoote-colour, or Iron-Grey; theſe are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, participating more of the *Earth*, then of any of the other Elements; by which meanes they are of Nature dull, heavy, dogged, reſtife, faint-hearted, &c. and therefore moſt enclined to Inflamations in the *Spleene*, Siccity, and Aridity in the *Liver*, to the Dropſey, Frenzy, and the like; theſe *Horſes* are better able to endure ſtronger Medicines than any of the former: provided thoſe Medicines bee not ſiccatrizing or drying, but ſuch as are both cold and moyſt. The *Horſe* whole colour is cole-Blacke without any white at all, a deepe Iron-Grey, a Bright-Sorrell, or the like, ſuch coloured *Horſes* we ſay be of a *Cholericke Complexion*, and they partake more of the Element of *Fire*, than of any other of the three former, for that they are by nature Fiery, hot, too free, and hare-brained, and therefore cannot bee very ſtrong of conſtitution; wherefore the *Ferrier* muſt be very carefull he doe not adminiſter any ſtrong Medicine to ſuch a Horſe at any time, for ſo he may ſoone deſtroy him.

Of the melancholy complection.

Of the cholericke complection.

Hippophyl. But yet *Hippoſerus*, I would bee glad to know of what *Complexion* that Horſe is, in whom all the foure *Complexions* doe joyntly meete, as namely in that *Horſe*, that is either of a Browne-Bay, or a Dapple Bay, Dapple-Grey, a Black full of ſilver haires, a Black-Rone, a Red-Rone, or the like.

Hyppoſ. Sir, as I cannot give you more *elements* than theſe foure before named, ſo I am not able to give you more than foure *complections*; but yet that one *horſe* may participate of them all, is a thing poſſible enough, and this is the very beſt *complection* of all other; yea and the moſt perfect: for *horſes* in whom the foure *complections* doe meet, cannot but be the beſt and moſt able of all other, yea and the beſt for *ſhape*, for *colour*, and for *mettle*, the ſoundeſt and moſt healthy: for howſoever they may accidentally fall into infirmities, nevertheleſſe they are not naturally inclinable to any, and therefore when a Ferrier ſhall at any time have occaſion to adminiſter unto them, he muſt be very circumſpect the phyſicke be punctually adminiſtred according to the nature of the diſeaſe, and he muſt examine both the cauſe and time of his firſt languiſhing: as whether it be a

Of the foure complections meeting in one horſe, which is the beſt and moſt perfect.

ſickneſſe newly taken, or long before, whether it proceeded of a Surfet, Hard-riding, Evill-dyet, &c. by which meanes he may adminiſter his phyſicke (whether Pils, Potions, or Cliſters) the more ſecurely: for medicines given upon a firſt ſickneſſe, and before the horſe be farre ſpent and weakened through the diſtemper of the malady, may be compounded the ſtronger, and will work to more effect, but after a long ſickneſſe, when as the *ſpirits* both *vitall* and *animall* are enfeebled, the *elements* are in open rebellion each one againſt the other, and the humours in a confuſed diſtemper; then (I ſay) muſt the phyſicall medicine be ſo tempered and ordered, ſo as that nature muſt be aſſiſted, but no way further perplexed or troubled, whereby the evill *humours* muſt be ſent away, the *body* cleanſed and acquited of the cauſes of its diſtemper, and then it will not be long before the poore *creature* may recover ſtrength and ſanity, and ſo repaire daily the decay of his former ſtate of health.

The cauſes of ſickneſſe defined.

Hippophyl. *How doe you hold the cauſes of ſickneſſe?*

Hippoſ. If you meane the cauſes of ſickneſſe ſimply, you muſt underſtand, that all Maladies and Sickneſſe of what nature ſoever they be, are *affects* and evill *diſpoſitions* (as learned Phyſitians doe call them) unnaturall, which doe proceed, and are as it were, the Precurſors which do moſt violently hale and pull ſickneſſe after them, and thus in a word doe they define the cauſes of ſickneſſe and not otherwiſe.

Two cauſes of ſickneſſe.

Hippoph. *How many ſorts of cauſes be there?*

Hippoſ. Onely two degrees, *viz. Intrinſecall* and *Extrinſecall*: the *Intrinſecall* are thoſe which are ingendred within the *body*, and therefore cannot be made viſible to the eye, but are made known by their ſymptomes: the ſecond are *Extrinſecall*, and therefore are more eaſily diſcovered and known by outward object, wherefore they need no further diſcourſe.

Sickneſſe defined.

Hippoph. *How doe you define ſickneſſe as it is in its owne nature?*

Hippoſ. *Ægritudo*, or *Infirmitas*, is none other thing than that which is contrary to nature. For all intrinſecall infirmities moſt commonly poſſeſſe and ſeize upon the whole *body*; and thoſe are moſt frequently Feavers, Peſtilence, Convulſions, &c. Other infirmities again do attach, but only certain members or parts of the *body*, as colds which do perplex the *head*, Surfets which doe annoy the ſtomack, and Splents, Spavens, Pearls, and Hawes in the eyes, and the like extrinſecall forances, but more ſorts of infirmities and maladies I never knew, every ſeverall of which may moſt eaſily and palpably be diſcovered as well by their inward as outward ſignes.

How to apply inward medicine.

Hippophyl. *What is your opinion as touching the adminiſtring of Drinks, Potions, and Cliſters to a ſicke horſe, to wit, whether it be better to apply them very warme, or but indifferently?*

Hippoſ Sir, even in this very point is a ſpeciall heed and care ſtt to be had and taken; for by giving Medicines or Cliſters too warme, a

Ferrier may easily undoe all, and utterly destroy the *horse* he would labour to cure; yea with as great facility, as if he gave him in the place of a wholesome *cordiall*, a formall *poyson*: for you must understand that a *horse* of all other living *creatures*, can worse indure to receive inwardly hot things, by reason that he is inwardly so extreamely hot by nature, and therefore whatsoever thing is to be administred to him, ought not to be more than bloud warme at most, by any meanes, for that nothing can be more noxious to him than the endangering the scalding of his *stomacke* and *intrayles*; besides let his drinks and inward medicines be given him in the most leisurely manner you are able, for feare of suffocating him; neither suffer any man, (as I have seene many use to doe) to pinch his *gullet* or *wind pipe*, whereby he is provoked to cough most violently, for it is a thing most dangerous both to his winde, and causeth oft times fleshy stuffe like to the *garget* to grow in his throat. Now for the administring of Pils, Balls, and such like medicines, little advice is required if they be not made too great, onely if you take forth his *tongue* first, and then put them up into his *mouth*, you cannot doe amisse, but of this methode no man can be ignorant.

Hippophyl. *What time is best wherein to administer your medicines to a sicke horse?*

The time when to administer.

Hippos. Evermore in a morning fasting, unlesse upon urgent occasion (as in case of sudden and dangerous sicknesse, which may happen to fall out upon a sudden accident;) and the longer he be kept fasting from meat and drink, as well before he taketh his physicke, as after, it will be the better, for by that means his medicine will worke the more kindly in his *body*, for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking at least 3 houres before and after.

Hippophil. *Is it requisite he be exercised after the taking of his physicall medicines?*

What exercise is most meet with physicke.

Hippos. Sir, a little moderate exercise is very necessary whereby his physicke may worke the beter, and the sooner, as to trot him upon so easie a pace as you can cause him to take, otherwise to walke him up and down out of the wind in the warme Sunne, by the space of a quarter of an houre, but then so soon as he commeth into the Stable, let his Stall be littered before hand well, then presently cloath him up, and stoppe him warme, and keep the ayre from him, neither let his Keeper goe from him in three or four hours, but let him rivet his eyes upon him continually, observing well his postures, and as occasion may require, let him be at hand to help and supply the *horse* with all things necessary.

Hippophil. *May a man attaine to any knowledge of the health or indisposition of the horse by observing his* Ordure *or excrements?*

Of Excrements.

Hippos. Yes may he Sir, and that very much, insomuch as I would advise all carefull Ferriers who have a desire to attaine reputation by their Art, that before they doe administer any inward medicine, whether

ther Purgations or Cordials; that they be carefull firſt (if poſſible) to ſee his *Ordure*: for I doe finde for the moſt part the *Ordure* is correſpondent to the food the horſe eateth, eſpecially for the colour; for if he run at graſſe, or be foyled in the Stable, then will his *doung* be evermore green, howbeit of a more bright, and ſometimes again of a more darke colour, and it will be rather ſoluble than hard, but the indifferent colour, and freer from hardneſſe is ever beſt, and doth make appearance of the more ſanity and health of the *beaſt*, as alſo that he is thereby the leſſe ſubject to coſtiveneſſe, and therefore in better ſtate of *body*. But if his Ordure be very bright and laxative, it is an infallible ſigne that he hath eaten ſome thing that is againſt nature; as a Feather, or ſome naughty worme, ſome Spider or the like unwholeſome thing, otherwiſe he ſcowreth of ſome inward cold which hath formerly lurked in his *ſtomacke or body*: but if his *doung* at graſſe or foyle be very hard and coſtive, which hee putteth forth with round and hard trattles, then is it a great ſigne that he is very hot in his *body* and inward parts, which may endanger the Stavers, or elſe doth ſhow that he hath a ſurfet which he got (before his putting forth) through intemperate riding, waſhing, raw, or evill food, or the like, whereby the *horſe* is in danger to become morfounded, to have the yellowes, or jaundiſe, or a feaver, which will otherwiſe hardly appeare in him in it's effects untill his comming into the Stable, at what time due order muſt be taken for ſpeedy prevention. But if your *horſe* doe feed upon Straw, then will the colour of his *doung* be yellow and ſomewhat hard, long, and well compact all which be tokens of a healthy and a ſound *body*; but if it be reddiſh, and exceeding dry, it is a ſign of enſuing ſickneſſe, by means of a great drought in the *body*, and ſo alſo if it be thin: but if it be blackiſh, and doth not ſmell ſtrong, then is it a ſigne that the *horſe* is in danger of death. But if your *horſe* doe feed upon Hay and Oates, and that he be ſound in *body*, then will his *Excrements* be a brown yellow, moyſt, and well compact, but if the browneſſe be converted into reddiſhneſſe, you may be then well aſſured that he hath ſome diſtemperature in his *body*, but when it converteth into blackneſſe, then if prevention be not ſpeedily had, death enſueth: and as touching the ſmell, that falleth out according to the quantity of the provender you give him, for the more provender, the ſtronger will be the ſmell of his *Ordure*, and Peaſe and Beanes will cauſe his *Ordure* to ſmell ſtronger than Oats, and bread more than any Grayne or Pulſe; and the more bread and Provender you give him, the more perfect and ſound ſhall you keep him in his *body*. But if his *doung* be brown and ſlimy, and ſhine withal, then be you aſſured he hath much greace which lyeth in his body, which Phyſicke muſt fetch away from him, for then alſo is his *bloud* putrified, corrupted, or enflamed. But if you doe finde by his *Excrements* that he voydeth undigeſted ſtuffe, which you may know by the whole cornes of Oates, Wheat, and other Grayne he ſendeth forth

in

in his *doung*, then perſwade your ſelfe, that your *horſe* hath lately taken a foriall ſurfet, which may right eaſily bring him to his end, if a diſcreet courſe be not ſpeedily taken: in a word, if his *doung* be black and hath little or no ſmell, then make you no queſtion but that he is in danger of death, which wilfull ſoone after follow, if the greater care be not taken to hinder and prevent the ſame.

Hippophyl. *Have you made the like obſervations of the* Vrine *or* Water *of the* horſe?

Hippoſ. Yes indeed have I, whereby I have not a little profited my ſelfe, and attained unto great experience, inſomuch as I dare boldly averre, that that Ferrier ſhall never come to be an expert Artiſt, who ſhall not be very well verſed therein, nor be able to adminiſter his Medicines aright, who ſhall not be very obſervant of the *horſes urine*: for if he ſhall finde his water to be either pale, whitiſh, or yellow, not much unlike to the color of whey, or fat Amber, or if it be not very cleere, but ſmelleth ſomewhat ſtrong; let the *Ferrier* then be confident the *Horſe* is not ſick, but ſound and healthy, and in perfect ſtate of *body*; but if his *urine* be extreame cleere and white, and of the colour of Rock-water, and withall ſlimy, then hath he a taint in his *Kidneies*, *Reines*, or *Back*, or elſe he enclineth to the *Stone*, or elſe hee hath ſome ſtoppage in his *Kidneys*. But if his *Water* be high-colored like to the colour of ſtrong Beer, then is it a tokē the *bloud* of the *horſe* is enflamed, and that he is ſubject to a *Feaver*, or to ſome ſtrong Surfet: but if it be red and of the colour almoſt of *bloud*, then is the *bloud* more inflamed, which came of over hard Riding, which may prove very dangerous to his life. But if it bee of a pale greeniſh colour thick, and viſcous, then certainely his *Backe* is growne weake, and he is in danger of a *Conſumption* of his *Seede*. But if it be high coloured and nebuled or mixed with ſmall Cloudes, with a kind of blackneſſe therein, then this doth demonſtrate enſuing ſickneſſe and death, if it be not carefully prevented. But if the Nebuloſity be diſperſed into ſeverall parts, and not combined as it were into one *Maſſe* or *Body*; this then argueth, that the malice of the diſeaſe beginneth to depart, whereby the *Ferrier* may have great hope of the health of the *Horſe*: And thus farre I have by diligent obſervation found to bee moſt certaine, Whereby I have brought many a deſperate Malady to it's wiſhed Cure, which otherwiſe I could not ſo eaſily have effected.

Of Vrine.

Chap.

Chap. IIII.

The manner of handling the particular Cures.

Hippiat.

SIr, I doubt not but that we have proceeded farre enough into this subject, for I cannot see what can be spoken more; let us now come to the particular Cures, handling each one in it's proper place.

Hippophil. With all my heart: but I pray let me define you, that we may not only handle the Cures themselves, but the severall Diseases to which a *Horse* is or may be subject: together with the causes of such diseases, the signes how to know them, and the meanes and manner how to cure them.

Hippiat. All shall be done to your minde Sir: Wherefore I pray proceed.

Hippophil. I will: Nevertheless I hold the best and cleerest way wilbe to handle the *Cures* by way of *Alphabet*; whereby whosoever doth desire at any time to informe himselfe of any *Cure*, hee may the more readily turne thereunto, without looking over the *Index* or *Table*.

Hippiat. I thinke not that to be amisse.

§. 1. *A.*

Hippoph. *THen thus: Tell me* Hipposerus, *doe you know the Receipt which is called* Acopum? *Doe you also know it's Nature? Whether it is a Medicine to be taken inwardly, or an Vnguent to be applyed outwardly?*

Two things to bee observed in every Cure.

Hippos. Sir, to make answere to two things in one, I say; first, it is impossible for any man to become a perfect *Ferrier*, who shall not first know unto what diseases a *Horse* is enclinable: secondly, what be the causes of every disease in particular: thirdly, how, and by what waies and meanes these diseases doe accrew: fourthly, the signes how to know and distinguish them: and lastly, the meanes and manner how to cure them. Secondly as touching this your demand of *Acopum*, and it's true Nature; I answere, that I doe know it well, to be a most soveraigne thing in some causes; for I have occasion to make use thereof very often: It is both a medicine to bee taken inwardly, and an Oyntment to be applyed outwardly. Master *Blundevile* was the first that ever brought the knowledge and Vse thereof into our Kingdome, who had it from the *Italians* when hee lived in *Naples*, as himselfe told me, where it is very much used; and he also affirmed

affirmed that it was formerly in much use and high esteeme among the ancient *Grecian Ferriers*, who gave it the name of *Acopum*. Master *Markham* hath also in his *Master-peece* the same Receipt, but he would make it his owne, for he giveth it no name, but stileth it in his nine-tininth Chapter of his *Cures Physicall*, thus: *A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench, and a singular Oyntment*: And in reciting the Ingredients, he maketh the quantities but the fourth part of what Master *Blundevile* setteth downe, which is in effect one and the same thing: and he relateth likewise the same Vertues thereof, which Master *Blundevile* doth; onely Master *Markham* saith that foure or five Spoonfulls hereof must be given with a pint of Sack or Malmesey: as also that the *lymbes of the Horse* being bathed therewith, it is good against wearinesse and tyrednesse; and lastly hee saith that being given in Wine, it cureth all kind of inward maladies; all which particulars, Master *Blundevile* nameth not.

Hippophil. *What is the reason that Master* Markham *doth set downe but aquarter of the Ingredients in the making of this famous Receipt?*

Hippos. His reason is good, Sir, and I will approve of his judgement therein: for if any man should make so great a quantity together as Master *Blundevile* doth set downe in his Receipt, it would not be spent whilst it were good, but only by such a *Ferrier* as hath daily use thereof, and such an one wilbe hardly found; for the newer and oftner such like *Receipts* are made, the better they be, and yeildeth more profit when they be administred.

Hippoph. *Is this Receipt hot or cold in operation?*

Hippos. It is hot in working, otherwise it could not hold good in cases of Surfets, Tyrednesse and of Convulsions and the like, wherein consisteth it's chiefest vertue, being administred outwardly; but being administred inwardly, it is not altogether so hot, for then the ancient *Ferriers* would not have prescribed to have it taken with Sack or Muskadine, both which are very hot; for it helpeth all Feavers for the most part; but yet I would not have it administred inwardly in so great a proportion as Master *Markham* adviseth, for hee (as I said before) alloweth foure or five Spoonefulls to a pint of Sack or Muskadine; unlesse it bee to bee given in very cold Causes, for the Wine it selfe is very hot. But both my Master and my selfe doe commonly administer two Spoonefulls at the most at a time, in a pint of white Wine, or with a quart of good Ale or Beere, which we hold to be much better and safer, and we have found it evermore to worke to our hearts desire: insomuch as wee have both wrought admirable Cures therewith, I doe assure you.

Hippohyl. *I pray deliver mee this* Receipt, *just as Master* Markham *hath it.*

Hippos. I shall Sir, most willingly: but then you must understand that the quantities will be more intricate to weigh forth, whereby to make it the more punctually.

Acopum.

Take *Euforbium*, halfe an ounce, *Caſtoreum*, one ounce, *Adraces* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium*, halfe an ounce, and halfe a quarter, Pepper one ounce, Foxe greaſe halfe an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, Pigeons dung as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce and a quarter, *Spuma nitri*, three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Perethrum* and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum* two ounces, ſeed of Rue halfe a quarter of a pound. Seed of *Agnus Caſtus*, one ounce, Parſely-ſeed halfe an ounce, dryed roots of *Ireos*, or *Flour de luce*, one ounce and a quarter, Iſope and *Carpo Balſamum*, of each a quarter of a pound. Oyle of *Floure de luce* a quarter of a pound, and halfe a quarter, of Oyle de Bay as much, Oyle of Spikenard, three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum*, three quarters of a pound, and halfe a quarter, the oldeſt oyle Olive, a pound and a halfe. *Piche* a quarter of a pound, and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound: melt of every of theſe that will be molten ſeverally by themſelves, and then mingle them with the reſidue of the ingredients being firſt beaten to fine powder, and after they have boyled a little on the fire, take it off, and ſtraine it into a cleane gally-pot, and ſo keep it for your uſe, and when you are to adminiſter of it to your horſe, let it be given as before is ſhewed, and if by long keeping it waxe hard, then ſoften it with the oyle of Cypreſſe, ſo that it may be good and thick, ✣.

Hippophil. *What are the vertues of this Receipt, called* Acopum *?*

Acopum its vertues.

Hippoſ. Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham* doe tell you, to wit: it helpeth convulſions in the *ſinewes* and *muskles*, it draweth forth all noyſome humours, and disburdeneth the head of all griefe, being put up with a long Gooſe feather annoynted in it into the *noſtrils* of the *horſe*: it healeth (I ſay) all manner of convulſions, cramps, numneſſe, and ſtringholts, colds, and rhumes: it diſſolveth the *liver* being troubled with oppilations and obſtructions: it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the *body*: it baniſheth all wearineſſe and tyredneſſe, if his *limbs* be bathed with this medicine: and laſtly, it cureth all ſorts of inward diſeaſes, if it be adminiſtred by way of Drench to a horſe in Wine, ſtrong Beere, or good Ale.

§ 2. *A.*

Hippoph. *DOe you know another Receipt, which is called* Arman *?*

Hippoſ. Yea ſir, it is a *confection* in great requeſt in *France* among the Ferriers there, and now we have it here in *England*: and it is a moſt ſoveraigne medicine to be given to a ſick *horſe*, and it is to be adminiſtred inwardly.

Hippoph. *What be the principall vertues of the* Arman *?*

Hyppoſ. It provoketh a good appetite to meat, and cauſeth good digeſtion; it taketh away all annoyances which doe either clog or otherwiſe

therwiſe trouble the *ſtomacke*; it cooleth the inward heat in the *body*; it helpeth all Agues and Feavers; it is moſt excellent againſt Surfets; it is an infallible remedy for the Quinſie or Squinancy in the *throat* comming of cold taken, and very good againſt the Tranchaſons or gripings in the *belly* or *guts* proceeding of *winde* and ſuch like inward infirmities.

Hippophil. *How doe you make this confection?*

Hippoſ. Take hony of roſes a pound & half, the crums of the whiteſt manchet made into fine powder, *quantum ſufficiet*, then take Nutmegs, cordiall powder, & cinamon, of each an ounce & half: mixe all theſe being made firſt into fine powder, then put it into a clean glaſſe or gally-pot, and moyſten it with Roſe vineger, that it may be of a thicke ſubſtance like unto pap, all your Ingredients being very well incorporate together, and ſo keep it to your uſe. And when you have occaſion to adminiſter of this *Arman*, take ſome of it upon the end of a Buls pizell, and put it into his mouth, and let him champ thereon: but if you give it to a horſe that hath a Quinſy, let him gulp down two horns full; as alſo to a horſe that hath a Fever, and is much diſtempered therewith, and it will give him health, in two or three times taking, and give him alſo an appetite to his meat. But then you muſt remember that he take this in a morning faſting, and let him faſt three or foure houres after, and his drinke muſt be for ſome time either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, and a ſpare dyet, till he be ſomewhat recovered. *Arman.* 1

Hippoph. *I pray what is that thing you call* cordiall powder, *and whereof is it made?*

Hippoſ. Cordiall-powder hath not its name for nought, for its nature jumps right with its *Epitheton*: this we have alſo from the *French*, who uſe to giue it to their ſicke *horſes* which are farre ſpent and enfeebled with a conſumption in the *fleſh*, *liver*, &c. for it is a moſt reſtaurative *Cordiall*, comforting the *vitall parts*, and *ſpirits animall*, and reſtoreth it to Sanity: and thus it is made.

Take Cinamon and Sugar, of each, foure ounces, and of fine Bolearmonack two ounces: let all theſe be made into very fine powder, and mixe them well together: keep this powder from ayre made up cloſe till you have occaſion to make uſe thereof. I doe uſe of this powder in very many of my Receits, as you ſhall hereafter underſtand. *Cordiall Powder.*

Hippoph. *Have you any other ſorts of* Cordials *beſides this?*

Hippoſ. Yes Sir, I have another powder which the *French* doe call *Duke*, or *Duche-powder*, which little differeth from the former *cordiall powder*, onely it wanteth the Bolearmonack. We have alſo another *Cordiall*, which is an *Electuary*, and is known by the name of *Electuarium Theriacum*, by reaſon it hath much treacle in it, and we doe compound this *Electuary* thus.

Take ſyrrop of Violets, ſyrrop of Lemons, and ſyrrop of Roſes, *Electuariũ Theriacũ.*

of each halfe an ounce, adding thereunto of your beſt *London* treacle, one ounce, mingle them well together, and it is a moſt ſoveraign Cordiall to be adminiſtred unto Horſes which are dangerouſly ſicke and weake.

Hippoph. *Why doe you rather chooſe* London *Treacle before* Venice *Treacle, Treacle of* Genoa, *or our common Treacle.*

Hippoſ. This *London* Treacle I doe ſelect for all medicines for horſes, rather then any other Treacle whatſoever, by reaſon it worketh the beſt with them of any other, for that *Venice* Treacle, and that of *Genoa* are too hot; and your common Treacle is nothing at all worth, it being made onely of the droſſe and excrements of *Molaſſes*, which is none other thing then the droſſe of the refining of Sugar, for I have made tryall of them all: but this *London Treacle* I do finde to be moſt agreeable to the nature of Horſes: wherefore both my ſelfe and my Maſter doe uſe none other, unleſſe in ſome particular cauſes, wherein we adminiſter ſometimes the *Treacle of Venice.*

White water 1

Hippoph. *What meane you by your white water?*

Hippoſ. White water is none other thing then water made hot in a cleane kettle, and when it is hot enough, I uſe to put into it a quantity of *Wheat-bran*, and ſometimes *Barly-meale*, which I commonly preſcribe to ſicke Horſes in *phyſicke*, in ſtead of *Maſhes*, for that when *Maſhes* are either not to be had, or that they are not neceſſary for my purpoſe (as in ſome caſes they be not) or to prevent giving of cold water; I make uſe of this *white water*, which muſt evermore be given bloud warme, according as our enſuing diſcourſe ſhall declare.

Hippoph. *But now let us returne to this confection you call your* Arman: *What other vertues hath it more than what you have already delivered?*

Hippoſ. Truely Sir, I have ſhewed you before in a manner all its vertues: and to recite them again, I ſay, it is moſt ſoveraign for Horſes that have taken a cold, or have inflamations or Puſtils under their *Chaule*, or thereby are troubled with the Quinſye or Squinanſye: Theſe maladies this *Confection* will help, if it be given good and thick with a horne, for having the Quinſye in the *throat*, if in giving this *Arman*, it provoketh him not to cough, then take ſome of the *confection* upon the end of a *Buls-Pizell*, and put it a pretty way down his throat, by which meanes he ſtrayning to cough, may breake the impoſthumation in his throat, whereby the Horſe may be in the leſſe danger of his life; and cauſing the Matterative ſtuffe to vent out, the Horſe will be in ſhort time perfectly cured.

Hippoph. *Are there any other kindes of* Arman *beſides this?*

Arman. 2

Hippoſ. Onely one more Sir, which alſo the French have brought amongſt us, which is not altogether ſo operative as the former: and this it is, *viz.* Take hony one pound, and warm it a little upon the fire, then take half a pinte of Vineger, & a little Wheate flower, and one penny-worth of Pepper in fine powder, mixe all theſe, and adminiſter

ſter it bloud warme, as aforeſaid.

Hippophil. *With what manner of* vineger *doe you uſually make up your medicines?*

Hippoſ. When we ſpeake in generall termes of *vineger* to be put into any medicines to be given, either for inward or outward diſeaſes; we alwayes intend it muſt the ſtrongeſt and beſt *white wine vineger*; but if it be of any other kinde of *vineger* or *verjuyce*, we then do give it in the *Receit*, its proper name. *Vineger.*

Hippophyl. *As touching* hony *wherewith you make up your medicines, what manner of* honey *muſt it be?*

Hippoſ. That ſhould be made of *life honey* onely, and of none other, unleſſe *common honey*, or *courſe-honey*, be in the *Receit* particularly named, as it many times is. *Honey.*

Hippophyl. *Let us now goe on to ſomewhat elſe: what hold you good for the* head-ach *in a* horſe?

§ 3. A.

Hippoſ. WE adminiſter according to the nature of the Diſeaſe, for that the pains in the *head* are ſeverall and diſtinct diſeaſes, and therefore have ſeverall cures.

Hippoph. *Which be thoſe ſeverall maladies, and how may a man know and diſtinguiſh them each from other?*

Hippoſ. A judicious and carefull obſervation is it whereby we doe know and diſtinguiſh all ſorts of maladies: for the Horſe being a *dumb creature* without reaſon and ſpeech, is not able (like as *man* can) to tell you where his paine lyeth, and therefore it muſt be the eye and judgement of the Ferrier, to be able to obſerve his true *ſymptomes* whereby he may goe right to accompliſh the *cure*, otherwiſe he muſt of neceſſity faile. Wherefore as the diſeaſes of the *head* are of ſeverall natures, every of which doe beget his paine, even ſo are the medicines which we apply as different. Now theſe paines in the *head* doe proceed from the *braine*, or from the *panicles*, by which meanes they doe properly breed Megrims, the Night-Mare, Glanders, Rhumes, Cathars, Apoplexies, Convulſions, Palſies, Frenzies, the Takings, Sleeping-evill, Madneſſe, and the like: all which commonly doe proceed from the ſubſtance of the *braine*, or from the *panicles*; for that from the *cels* and *ventricles* through which the *ſpirits animall* doe give feeling and moving to all the parts and members of the *body*, the diſeaſes before mentioned doe engender. *Ach in the head.*

Hippophyl. *From what grounds hath this* head-ach *its ſource or Organe?*

Hippoſ. The grounds and cauſes are many Sir: ſome being inward, and ſome outward, as by meanes of ſome *cholericke humour* which may be predominant, by which meanes it doth oft times breed in the *panicles*, or elſe of ſome heat taken through violent labour, and ſometimes

times by some blow given him in the *Poule* or other place of the *head*; and some doe hold it cometh of some evill savour, which I also doe allow of; sometimes it cometh of *Crudityes* and *raw digestions* from the *Stomack*, by reason there is so great a sympathy betwixt the *Stomack* and the *Braine*, whereby they doe continually participate as well of their good dispositions in health, as of their domages in the least of their infirmities and sufferings.

Hippoph. But many there be who do hold stifly that a *Horse* hath no *Braines* at all, but only a kind of *windy liquid substance* not unlike unto a kind of jelly?

Braines.

Hippos. That opinion is most erronious, for a *horse* hath a most perfect *brain*, like as hath any other living *Creature*, albeit indeede not in so great a proportion as other *Animals* have. For naturall reason doth dictate that if a *Horse* had not his *Braine*, it were impossible for him to have semblable diseases in the *Head*, which both *Man* and all other living things have, who are (I say) likewise subject to such Maladies; which could not proceed from any other Causes but only from those before premised. Neither were it possible for a *Horse* to endure so great labour and toyle, or to undergoe so great and so many waies, such extreame violences as daily he doth, if Nature had not endowed him with his organal parts correspõdent to his strength ableneſſe, and activity of *body*: neyther could he have any memory at all, but appeare a *Lump of flesh* and *bones* without motion. But not to verberate the Ayre; I affirme that a *Horse* hath his *Braines* in as compleate measure, albeit (as I have but now touched) not in so great a quantity as other *beasts* have, but in as ample, solid, and sufficient manner as any other living *creature*, together with the *skinne*, which Artists doe call *Pannicles*, which doth adhere to the *bones* conducted by the *Cells* or *Conducts* by which the *Vitall Spirits* doe give some feeling, sense, & motion to the *body*, from whence proceeds the causes of diseases and sickneſſe. And for your better satisfaction if you please I may be present when at any time your *Huntsman* is to cut up a *horse* for your *Hounds*, I will let you see most plainely both the *Braine* and the *Pannicles*.

Hippoph. *How shall a man come to know when a* Horse *hath any pain in his* Head?

Hippos. The Symtomes are most evident, if you eye him well: for his eyes will swell and become watry, and oftimes Matterative; he will hang downe his *head*, as if he were sleepy; he will pricke his *eares* upright, forsake his meate, and his sight will be dim.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for the* Head-ach?

Hippos. Some use to perfume his *head* with the stalkes of Garlick and Frankinsence, two or three severall times, which will bring much liquid stuffe forth of his *Nose*, which indeed is very good, and I doe practise it sometimes as occasion is offred; but then withall after I have perfumed him, I use to let him *bloud* in the *Palate vein*, & in both the

the *weeping veins*: And when I do not perfume him, I take the longeſt feather of a Gooſe, and moyſten it well, in Oyle de bay, which I put up into his *Noſthrills*; and this doth both open and purge his *head* abundantly, and then keeping his *Poule* warm, together with moderate dyet, for three or foure daies after, I then take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*; and give him all the time of his Cure either good *Maſhes* or *white-water*, and undoubtedly he will doe well. But ſometimes if I find his *head-ach* cometh of cold taken, wherein he may bee enclining to an Ague or Feaver, I then beſides drawing *bloud*, do both apply *Acopum* to his *Noſe*, like as I ſaid for Oyle de-Bay, and alſo give him thereof to drinke, as I have formerly preſcribed. If he be Feaveriſh: take a pint of Muskadine, the yolke of five new-laid Egges, and a head of Garlick picked, pilled, and bruſed, Pepper, Cinamon, and Nutmegges, and ſomuch as well I can take up upon a Feſter or ſix-penny peece: theſe all made into very fine powder; give him to drinke bloud warme three daies together, and let him faſt ſix houres after. ✣.

§. 4. Æ.

Hippoph. *How doe you make* Aegiptiacum?

Hippoſ. Wee have two ſorts of them; the firſt we doe call *Black-Aegyptiacum*; the ſecond *Red*, both *Corroſives*; for their natures be to corrode and eate away al manner of dead, prowd, rotten, and naughty fleſh out of any old Sore or Vlcer, and they do alſo cleanſe and prepare a Sore, make it apt to be healed with carnifying or healing Salves. The firſt is thus made.

Take courſe Engliſh Hony two pound, Verdegreaſe, Diers-Gals, and Green Coperas, of each four ounces: Let all theſe be made into powder and mixed together, and ſo put into an earthen pot, and ſet upon the fire, keeping it with continuall ſtirring; but ſo ſoone as it beginneth to boyl, take it from the fire, & let it cool; for by ſuffering it long to boyle, it will become red, which will not be ſo good. This black *Ægiptiacum* beſides what I have ſaid before of it's vertues, is alſo very good to diſſolve the *hooves* of the *Horſe*, if they bee too dry or hard: ſo as it will cauſe the corruption if any be in the *Foote*, to aſcend above at the *Cronet* where the haire is, and alſo to reſtore and repaire the *hoofe* of the *horſe* when the *Sole* is taken out: and in this nature you muſt uſe this Vnguent, but onely at the third dreſſing after you have taken out the *ſole*, ✣. Now the ſecond *Ægiptiacum* is made thus.

Ægyptiacum 1

Take courſe Hony two pounds, Verdegreaſe foure ounces, green-Coperas two ounces, beate the Verdegreaſe and the Coperas very ſmall to powder, then put it into an earthen put, and put unto it a little Vineger, and ſo boyle it very well till it become red, and keepe it for your uſe. ✣. Another.

Ægyptiacum 2

§. 5.

§. 5. A.

Hippophil. *What is your beſt cure for a Horſe that is Accloyed?*

Hippoſ. Sir, this Malady ſo called by the *French*, is the ſame we call prick't with a *Naile* in the Shooing, and it is eaſily cured if the *Ferrier* be skilfull, and that it be alſo taken in time. And thus wee worke, *viz.* Firſt, take out the ſole, and cut the hoofe round about the place pricked that no corruption be remaining behind, fil it up againe with hurds ſteeped in whites of Egges, dreſſe him thus three dayes together, then heale the ſore up with ſalt made into fine powder mingled with Vineger, or elſe with Diers Galls, or with Mirtle, or Lentils, and annoint the outſide of the *hoofe* with black *Aegiptiacum*. +. Another.

Accloy.

Take a litle cotten or bumbaſt and ſteepe it in browne Sugarcandy molten, and apply it with a hot Iron to the place. And if the foot be bruiſed with the ſhoo, or that the ſemall horn be hurt or bruiſed, then cleanſe and prepare the place firſt, and then apply unto it a quick or live Spider with a hot Iron, and ſo tack on the ſhoo, and let him not come into any wet till he be fully cured. +. Another.

Take Salet Oyle, Turpentine, and Roſinpitch, all molten together; put it very hot into the hole where hee is pricked, and ſo ſtop the hole with Hurdes. +.

§. 6. A.

Hippophyl. WHat Receipts *have you for all inward diſeaſes?*

Hippoſ. The *Spaniards* have one Medicine with which they Cure all Diſeaſes; and albeit I ſay they doe cure all diſeaſes with this one *Receipt*, yet my meaning is, that looke whatſoever the infirmity be, they adminiſter none other thing but that one, whether it cure or kill: and this they call a *Cataplaſme*, of which they make no ſmall account, which they give as Pills.

All diſeaſes a Cataplaſme.

Take wheate meale twelve pound, Anniſeeds foure ounces, in fine powder, Brimſtone in powder three ounces, Fennugrick in powder three ounces *et ſem.* Comin in powder three ounces, Honey two pound, good Sallet-Oyle one pound, *et ſem.* of good Sack as much, or ſo much as will ſuffice to make it into a *Cataplaſme* or *Paſte*. This *Cataplaſme* (ſay the *Spaniards*) or Medicine, is all of it to be put into a ſtone pot well nealed, and ſo boyled untill it be thick, ſo as when it is cold it may bee made up into Pills or Balls; whilſt it is in boyling it muſt be kept with continuall ſtirring, otherwiſe it will burne too; and being thus made into pills, give him of them every morning faſting, for foure or five dayes together, or longer if you ſhall ſee cauſe; for that (ſay they) it is moſt ſoveraigne againſt many Maladyes. It killeth all ſorts of wormes within the *body* of the *horſe*; it alſo

so helpeth the diseases of the *Lungs*, and inward parts, and it is generally good for any inward cause: and an excellent locall plaister to be applied outwardly. It is the *Spaniards* principall *Physick* for their *Iennets*, and *Barbaryes*. I have made tryall thereof sundry times, and I doe find it to be most usefull in all cold Causes: and truly it is most Cordiall, for it doth bring a leane and poor *Horse* into flesh and good state in a little time. +.

A second *Receipt* I also have, which cureth all inward Diseases, which I had of a *Rurall Smith*, who was cryed *Vp* for a famous *Ferrier* all the Countrey about: So I having heard so great a report of his skill, addressed my selfe unto him, & when I had conferred with him, putting him hard to it in the matter of his Art; he at last ingenuously confessed unto me that he had but this one only drinke, which gat him all his knowledge and credit, which with much pressure I wrested from him, under condition that I should never make him knowne, wherein I have precisely kept my word. And the Cure and Drinke is this: *viz.* Take wheate meale six pound, or as much as will bring the Ingredients into a stiffe paste, Anniseeds two ounces, Comin two ounces, wild or bastard Saffron one dramme & half, white Wine foure pints, Fennugreke one ounce & two drammes, Brimstone one ounce & half; good Sallet Oyle one pint & two ounces, English hony one pound & half; powder and searce what is to bee powdred and searced, then compound them together, and make it into one body into a stiffe paste, and so keep it in a cleane *Gally-pot* close covered for your use. And when you have occasion to use it, make a Pill or Ball thereof, of the bignesse of a mans fist, and so lave and dissolve it into two Gallons of faire water; till it bee all molten into the water: Let your *Horse* drinke hereof so long as you please both morning and evening, and let him have none other water to drinke, to the end he may be the better compelled to drinke of the Water, which in the end he will doe, and like it very well. +.

All diseases] a Cataplasme.

Of this *cataplasme* I have made often use, and I doe finde it to be a soveraigne *Receit* for many infirmities; it also preventeth much inward sicknesse; it raiseth and battleth a Horse much better than either Grasse or Provender; and it giveth him Life, Spirit, and Stomacke, and keepeth him in perfect health.

Our ordinary Country Smiths have yet another drinke, which they administer upon all inward causes, and truely it doth oft times hit right, especially in cold causes, *viz.*

Take Fennugrick, Turmerick, Graynes, Anniseeds, Licoris, Long-Pepper, Comin, of each halfe an ounce, and of Saffron one dram: and of hearbs, take Selendine, Rue, Pelamontine, Isop, Time and Rosemary, of each, like much, but yet no more then will make of them all but halfe a handfull, First chop small these hearbs, and put them into a quart of good Ale, and when they have boyled a while, put in your spices finely powdred, and then boyle them a-

All Diseases.

gain with a ſmall fire; then take it from the fire, and ſtraine it, and put to the liquor the quantity of an egge of ſweet butter, and halfe an ounce of *London* Treacle, give this to your Horſe bloud warme, and and ride him moderately after, and then ſet him up warme and well littered, letting him faſt foure houres after, and let his drink be either a ſweet Maſh or white water. This is very good againſt Feavers, Colds, and the Yellowes. ✣.

§ 7. *A.*

Hippoph. *I Met not long ſince with a diſeaſe called S.* Anthonies Fire, *I pray is there ſuch a diſeaſe?*

Hyppoſ. Yes Sir, there is ſuch a diſeaſe, but it ſo ſeldome comes to a Horſe, as that few Ferriers have had occaſion to cure the ſame; by reaſon very few know it, and therefore marvell not in that they cannot cure the ſame. Saint *Anthonies Fire* is that burneth in the fleſh moſt extreamely, and hath in it ſo great malice, as that look what you do apply to the place (unleſſe you hit the cure right) it will doe it no good, but more harme, much after the nature of a *Nolt me tangere*, or *wild-fire*. This diſeaſe is alſo called by ſome the *ſhingles* in a Horſe, and like as the Diſeaſe it ſelf is very rare, and ſeldome known in a Horſe, ſo alſo is the cure as uncouth and ſtrange. For my part I will not profeſſe my ſelfe to be any whit more skilfull then indeed I am: this diſeaſe I never yet obſerved to be in any Horſe: I only have heard ſome Ferriers talke thereof, but yet I never heard but of one man, who was ever truely able to make a Cure thereof; and this was a Knight of very good worſhip who taught it me, he averring confidently unto me, how that he had cured three ſeverall Horſes of this very malady. I asked him whence this diſeaſe proceedeth, and what are the ſymptomes whereby to know the ſame; he anſwered me, that he could never rightly come to be mathematically aſſured how it breedeth, or occurreth to the Horſe, but by gueſſe onely, and that himſelfe thought it came from ſome *cholericke bloud* paſſing to his *head* into the *braine* and *pannicles*, which cauſeth the Horſe to become ſtarke mad, yea ſo truely mad, as to be deprived of his memory, in not knowing his *Keeper*, or any other body elſe; yea his fury is ſo great, as to reſiſt ſtripes, to ſlight and contemne correction be it never ſo ſevere, he will endeavour what in him lyeth to perpetrate what miſchiefe he is able, by biting, ſtriking, and endangering whom or whatſoever thing commeth into his way, and when he cannot have his minde of living *creatures* whereupon to wreake his malice, then will he doe it partly upon dead creatures, by biting and gnawing the Manger and Racke-ſtaves, and by ſtriking the poſts and barres with his *heeles*, and partly upon himſelfe by beating his *head* againſt the wall and ground; he will alſo forſake both his meat and ſleep, or naturall reſt, untill he dyeth, if he be not in time cured, which is thus.

S. Anthonies *fire.*

Take

Take fi.ſt help enough, an : caſt him, which done, take a *worme* which groweth in a *Fullers Teaſell*, and put this *worme* alive, and without any hurt into a *quill*: then ſlit the *skin* of *the fore-head* of the *horſe* under the *fore-top*, and open the ſame round about with your *cornet*, making a concavity an inch round every way and better, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*: which done, blow the ſaid Worme out of the *quill* into the place which you made hollow as aforeſaid; but take heed you doe not kill the Worme in ſtitching up the *skin* againe, becauſe that the Worme may not get forth: and after twenty dayes the Worm will dye, and in that time the Horſe will be throughly cured. This cure was taught me by the aforeſaid Noble *Knight*, with which he affirmed to me, that he had cured 3 or 4 horſes.

§. 8. *A.*

Hippoph. *WHat ſay you to an* Anticor?

Hippoſ Sir, I ſay it is a diſeaſe whereunto Horſes are oft times enclined, and it commeth ſundry wayes, to wit, ſometimes with too much feeding without exerciſe, ſometimes of too hard and immoderate riding or other labour; both which waies the *bloud* of the creature becommeth corrupted and inflamed, which maketh its reſidence in and about the heart, which if it ſhould not have a way to make its vent, it would quickly kill him, by which meanes many good Horſes dye ſuddenly, and the cauſe unknowne. This Diſeaſe is apparent to the *eye* by a ſwelling which will ariſe in the middle of the *breaſt* juſt againſt the *heart* from whence it taketh its name, which if it be not ſoone prevented, will aſcend to the *throat*, and then it is certaine death. It commeth likewiſe by ſurfets taken by heats and colds, ſometimes alſo by Feavers, which are malignant, and ſometimes againe by feeding upon unwholeſome meats. The ſignes to know this diſeaſe before the ſwelling doe appeare are theſe: he will be ſicke and grone many times when he is layed, he will hang down his head, and forſake his meat; and then if he ſhould deſire to eate, what meat he loveth beſt, whether Hay, Graſſe, Provender, or Bread, lay it upon the ground before him, and if he hath a minde to eate thereof, albeit he make proffer to bring his *mouth* towards it, yet he ſhall not be able to reach it, but will ſooner famiſh: when you doe perceive the ſwelling to appeare, firſt draw bloud from both the *Plate-veynes*, but if you cannot finde them, then let him *bloud* on both ſides of the *necke* to a good proportion; which done, you may give him the drinke of *Diapente* with Beere or Ale, putting thereinto one ounce of browne ſugar candy, and halfe an ounce of *London Treacle*; which will drive the ſickneſſe and griefe from his *heart*; which done; annoynt the ſwelling with this Oyntment.

Take Hogges greaſe, Bores greace, and Baſilicon; of each three ounces, incorporate all theſe well into one body, and annoynt and *Anticor.*

rub the ſwelling therewith every day till it come to a ſoftneſſe, and then open it, and let forth all the corrupted matter: then waſh the Sore with your Coperas water mentioned in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. § 4. and then put in your green Oyntment preſcribed you in *capite ibidem*, and it will be ſoon whole. + Thus have I cured many Horſes of this Diſeaſe, and I never failed if the Horſe had not been ſwelled too high towards the *throat* or *necke*, before I took him in hand. + But Maſter *Blundeviles* and Maſter *Markhams* cure for an *Anticor*, is thus.

Firſt they let him *bloud* in the *plate-veins*, and then they give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmeſey, and put thereto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and of Cinamon two ounces, and ſo give it him bloud-warme, and keep him warme in the Stable, eſpecially his *breaſt*, that no winde doe offend him; and for his drinke, let it be warm Maſhes, and ſuch meat as he will eate. And if the ſwelling doe appeare, then beſides letting him *bloud*, they doe ſtrike the ſwelling in divers places with their flegme, that the corruption may goe forth, and annoynt the place with warme Hogges greaſe, and that will cauſe it to weare away, or elſe grow to a head if it be kept warme. Thus Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markhams* cure is in effect the very ſame. Maſter *Markham* alſo preſcribeth Malmeſey and *Diapente*, which is uſed alſo by others, and it is very good: and he alſo ſaith that ſome do adminiſter *Doctor Stephens water*, whith he affirmeth he hath ſeen to have wrought in this kinde ſtrange effects. For my part I ſubmit, for that theſe *Receits* ſeeme very probable; howſoever I never did experiment any but that onely which I firſt inſerted, which I had of a famous Ferrier in *France*, and therefore I finding mine to be infallible, made tryall of none other.

§ 9. A.

Attaine upper.

Hippoſ. *What is that you doe call an* Vpper Attaint?

Hyppoſ. It is none other thing but a ſwelling of the maſter or *Back-ſinew* of the *fore-legge* above the *Paſtern joynt*, and moſt commonly commeth by an over-reach; that is, when the Horſe in running either down a hill, or upon deeps, or upon or over-thwart high furrowes of plowed lands, or upon other evill or uneven grounds, doe ſtrike the *toe* of his *hinder-foot* againſt the great *ſinew* of the *fore-leg*. This I ſay, we terme an *Vpper Attaint*.

Hippophyl. *How may a man come to know aſſuredly that the griefe lyeth in that* ſinew?

Hippoſ. Your eye and hand (Sir) will ſhew it you very palpably; for the *ſinew* will ſwell, and burne, and be ſore, and the Horſe will hault therewith.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for it?*

Hippoſ. We uſe to apply to the place a charge reſtringent which muſt be ſiccative.

Hippoph.

Hippoph. *I should rather think that by applying suppling or mollifying Oyles or Vnguents, you might cure it sooner and much better.*

Hippos. Herein Sir, under your favour you are much mistaken: For all things that are suppling are most noxious unto these kinde of Maladies, by reason that all Oyles and unguents will cause the *Sinew* to swell much more than otherwise; and therefore we do apply siccative and drying things. Some use Caurerizings, which indeede will cure, and set the *Horse* upright againe, but therein are two inconveniences; to wit: First, albeit it taketh away his paine so as hee desisteth from haulting, yet will the place be ever after swelled, which wilbe a continuall eye-sore, during his life; Secondly, the markes and stroakes where the Iron went wilbe ever after seene, making the haire of a different colour; both which are great blemishes to the *Horse*.

Hippoph. *Wherein then consisteth your best Cure in this case?*

Hippos. I alwaies use for a Sorance of this nature to apply this ensuing Charge.

Attaint upper or back-sinew sprain.

Take Cantharides two ounces, Masticke foure penniworth, Venice Turpentine two penniworth, Euforbium foure drammes, Black-Rosin six ounces, Aqua-fortis two drammes: beate the Cantharides and Euforbium into fine powder; then first melt the Masticke and Black-Rosin, then put in your Turpentine, which so soone as it is molten, put in your Cantharides and Euforbium, and let all boyle together, keeping them stirring, and have a speciall care it boyle not over; and when you have taken it from the fire, put in your Aqua-fortis, and so stir them well together, and put it into a glasse or gally-pot, and so keepe it for your use. And when you have occasion to use the same, first wash and bath the grieved place well, then with your Splatter, spread it upon the place being made warme, and clap flox upon it of the same colour, and give him rest, and he will doe well. But he must have time, and after a weeke that hee hath beene thus charged, let him be put forth to grasse if it be not in Winter, or the Winter or cold weather approaching. +. Another.

Take the whites of two new-layed Egges, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, and the best and strongest white Wine Vineger, incorporate these very well together with the powder of Sanguis draconis, and having shaven away the haire as aforesaid, spread it good and thick upon the grieved place, adding still more every three daies for fifteene dayes together, and then put him forth to grasse, and let him run a whole March, and after so long as you shall thinke to bee sufficient, and he wilbe sound againe. +. This I have also made tryall of, and I have found it to be right good.

A *French Marshall* taught me a Medicine for an *Attaint* or *Overreach*, whereof I did never make use; howbeit he protested unto me he thought it one of the best cures that he could ever know; and I my selfe saw him dresse a *Horse* therewith, but how the *Horse* became cured

cured I had not time to know, by reaſon I departed from *Orleans* before the Cure was performed. And the Cure was this. Take one or two handfuls of Saxafrage, and all the Sewet of a Loine of Mutton, and a pint of white Wine; chop the Hearb, and mince the Sewet very ſmall; and ſo boyle all theſe together, which being thus well boyled, take a ſufficient quantity of *Horſe-dung* newly made by a *Horſe* that goeth to graſſe, and putting it to the other Ingredients, worke it to a Salve, and apply it plaiſter-wiſe to the place good hot, renewing it twice every day for ſo long time as you ſhall think to be convenient.

Now Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markham* doe both agree in the Cure of an *Attaint* which is thus: Firſt, waſh and bath the place with warme Water, and ſhave the haire ſo farre as the ſwelling goeth; then ſcarrifie the ſore place with the point of a Razor, that the bloud may iſſue forth: Then take Cantharides and Euforbium, of each halfe an ounce, powdered, and mingle them together with a quarterne of Sope, and with a ſhy ſpread ſome of the Oyntment over all the ſore, ſuffering him to reſt in the place where you dreſſed him for one halfe houre after, and then you may take him into the Stable, there letting him ſtand without Litter, and ſo tyed that hee may not touch the ſore with his *Mouth*, and then the next day uſe him in the ſame manner againe; then the third day annoint the place with freſh Butter; continuing ſo to doe by the ſpace of nine dayes, and at nine daies end, make him this bath.

Take Mallowes three handfulls, a Roſe-Cake, and Sage of each a handfull: boyle them together in a ſufficient quantity of faire water; and when the Mallowes are become ſoft, put in halfe a pound of Butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and then being ſomewhat warme; waſh and bath the ſore place therewith every day once, till it be whole. This Medicine I confeſſe I never tryed, but I think it very good. Maſter *Blundevile* hath only this, but Maſter *Markham* hath ſundry others: ſome of which, I will relate, to the end the *Ferrier* may make his choyce. Another.

Take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oyle, and mixing theſe together lay it to the ſwelling. Another.

Take alſo Frankinſence, Roſin, Tarre, Euforbium, Turpentine, Fennugrick, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Sewet one ounce, of Oyle one ounce, of Wax three ounces, & three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; mix and melt all theſe together, and plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the place till it be whole. Another.

Take alſo Sanguis-Draconis three quarters of an ounce, Bole-Armonack one ounce, Oyle as much, Maſtick three ounces, Suet, as much, and as much Swines greaſe: melt and mix all theſe together and lay it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away.

Another Cure I found in an old Manuſcript, with which I have cured many *horſes*, which have been much ſwelled, which is this: *viz.*

Take

Take Turpentine, of Venice one ounce, and Aqua-vitæ, three Spoonfulls: beat them together in a Bladder, or some other convenient Vessell, untill they come to a perfect salve, then annoynt the sore very well therewith, and heat it in with a hot Brick, or a hot Iron: and thus doing foure or five times, it will set him upright. +. This I have often tryed and it is very good.

§. 10. *A.*

Hippoph. *What is that which you call a* Nether Attaint?

Hippos. It is also an Over-reach sometimes, and sometimes againe it cometh by a Wrench, sometimes by a Strayne, sometimes by treading upon a sharp stone or stub, and sometimes it cometh by a blow, and it is called properly a *Neather Attaint*, by reason it being commonly upon the fore-legge like as is the other; it is nevertheleſſe placed lower than the other is; for whereas the other is above the *Fet-lock Ioynt*, this is under it, for it is commonly upon the *Heele* or *Fruſh*, nor is it oftimes visible to the eye, howsoever it may be felt, as well by the heat and glowing which will be upon the *heele*, as also by the softnesse, for there wilbe a *Bladder* or blister of viscous corrupt matter like to Ielly, which will grow in the place; and besides it will make the *Horse* to complaine, and it wilbe also somewhat swelled. I have cured sundry *Horses* which have had this Malady, and they have done well again. The cure is thus, *Attaint Neather.*

Take a peece of Filliting and bind it above the *Pastern-joynt* a little good and hard, which will cause the blister or swelling the better to appeare more visible to the eye; make incision with your Incision knife, and crush out all the corrupt Ielly, and congealed matter. Then heale it up by washing the sore with Coperas water, declared *in lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. §. 4. and after annoynt it with the Greene Oyntment mentioned *in capite et* §. *Ibid.* and so in short time it will bee whole and sound againe. +. This is a very hard Cure for your ordinary Country *Smiths* to take in hand to performe, if they bee not well acquainted with the nature of this Malady. Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham*, have both this manner of Cure, only they differ from me in the healing Salve.

§. 11. *A.*

Hippoph. *What Cure have you for the* Avives?

Hippos. This terme *Avives* we have also gotten from the *French*, which our *Ferriers* doe call the *Vives*. It is a disease which growes under the *Eares*, and *secundum vulgus*, it is called the *Fives* or *Vives* from the *Eares* it creepeth downe towards the *Throate*, which when they begin to enflame will swell, and not only paine the *Horse* very much, but also prove mortall, by stopping his *Avives.*

Wind

Wind they will kill him out right, if it be not in time cured; and I my ſelfe have ſeene and knowne *Horſes* dy of this malady. It proceedeth moſt commonly of Rankneſſe of *Bloud*: in the cure, care muſt be taken that you doe not touch the Graynes or Kernells with your fingers The *Avives* or *Vives* are certaine flat Kernells, much like Bunches of Grapes which grow in a cluſter, cloſe knotted together in the place; the moſt certaine cure is to cut the *Skin* longeſt-wayes, and to lay the Kernells or Graines open, and then with an Inſtrument made like to a paire of Pliers to pinch forth the Graynes, then to apply unto the place eyther a linnen-cloth, or a few hurds ſteeped well in whites of Egges well beaten, and ſo bound on, and renewing it dayly, it will cure it: but you muſt heale up the *Skin* with the Greene-Oyntment before ſpoken of *in Cap. & §. Ib.* +. But the common cure is to draw downe the ſore with a hot Iron juſt in the midſt, ſo farre as the ſwelling goeth, and then under the roote of the *Eare*, draw two other ſtrokes of the faſhion of an arrowes head, then open the *skin*, and with a ſmall payre of plyers, pull out the kernels, and ſo cut them off, but have a care of the *veine:* that done, fill the place with Bay-ſalt made into fine powder, and after heale up the ſore with the aforeſaid Oyntment. +. This have I alſo practiſed, and performed the Cure, but with greater difficulty than the former, by reaſon of the Fire which I put to the place, and therefore I doe hold my former Cure the better, ſafer, and ſpeedier. +.

Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham* doe ſay, that the *Italians* uſe to take a ſponge well dipped in ſtrong wine vineger, and bound to the Sore, renewing it twice a day till the kernels doe rot; then they open the neather moſt part of the ſoftneſſe, and ſo let the corruption forth, and then fill the hole with ſalt finely brayed: and the next day they waſh away the filth with warme water, and the next day after, they annoynt the Sore with Honey and Fich flower mingled together till it be whole. This Cure I never made tryall of, but it ſeemeth to me to be a very good and probable Cure. Another for the Avives.

Take Tarre, tryed Hogges greaſe, Bay ſalt, and Frankinſence powdred, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, melt theſe on the fire all together, then with a clout faſtened to the end of a ſticke, boyling hot ſcald the places 4 or 5 mornings one after another, untill the enflamed places doe become ſoft and ripe. Then with your inciſion knife ſlit the skin, and let forth the corruption: then to heale up the ſorances, take tryed Hogges greaſe and Verdigreaſe made into fine powder, melt them upon a gentle fire, but ſuffer it not to boyle more then a waume or two at the moſt, then take it off, and put to it of ordinary Turpentine, as much as will ſuffice, and ſo ſtirre all together untill it be cold. And herewith annoint the ſorances daily, till they be whole: + This is very good.

Maſter *Markham* in his *Maſter piece*, hath a Cure for the *Avives*, which

which he intituleth; *A moſt rare and certaine approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, rotting, or any ſuch like violent exerciſe.* But as yet I did never experiment the ſame. The cure is this.

Take a penniworth of pepper, beaten to fine powder, Swines greaſe a ſpoonefull, the juyce of Rue a handfull, and of Vineger two ſpoonfuls, mixe all well together, and convey it equally into both the *eares* of the Horſe, and ſo tye or ſtitch them up, then ſhake his *eares* that the medicine may ſinke downewards: which done, you ſhall let him *bloud* in the *neck veyne*, and in the *temple veine*. And this (ſaith he) *is an infallible cure.*

§ 12. *A.*

Hippoph. VVHat diſeaſe is that which we doe call the Arraiſtes?

Hippoſ. *Arraiſtes* is alſo a French *Epitheton*, which is a diſeaſe we doe commonly call the *Rat-tayles*, engendring in the *heeles* of a Horſe, not much unlike to the Scraches, but that it is much more venimous and malignant. It commeth of too much reſt, and the *Keepers* want of care in the not rubbing and dreſſing him, as alſo by reaſon that the Horſe ſtandeth continually in the Stable, his fore-feet being higher than his hinder-feet: for by reaſon of his great reſt and pampering, the *bloud* corrupting in his *body*, falles down into his *hinder-legges*, and breedeth this diſeaſe, which now we doe call the *Arraiſtes*, or *Rat-Tayles*. The beſt Cure for this Malady is, firſt, to let the Horſe be ridden till he be warme, whereby the veines will ſwell, and the better appeare. Let him *bloud* in the *fetlocke veins* on both ſides, making him to bleed well; and the next day after, waſh the ſores with warme water, and then clip away all the *hayre* from about the Sores, then annoynt the grieved places with this Oyntment, *viz.*

Arraiſtes or Rat-tayles.

Take greene Coperas, and Verdegreace, of each two ounces, and of common honey foure ounces; beat your Coperas and Verdegreace very ſmall, and ſo worke them with your honey to a perfect unguent, and herewith annoint the Sores daily till they be whole. ✣. And thus we doe conclude this *Chapter.*

Chap. V.

§ 1. B.

Hippoph. VVHat is your beſt way to breake and heale the backe of a Horſe that is ſwolne?

Hippoſ. We have many wayes to cure a Malady of this nature: if the place be ſwelled, and yet not ripe enough to be opened, then apply that remedy which you ſhall finde taught you hereafter, to reſolve or ripen the ſame: and when it is ripe, put your inciſion knife unto it, or a hot iron, and ſo open it in the loweſt part, ſo as the putrifaction may the more eaſily paſſe away; then every morning inject this *Lotion* with a Seringe, which is thus to be made, *viz.*

Backe ſwelled.

Take Honey-ſuckle leaves, Plantine, Ribwort, Yarrow, Burſa-Paſtoris, Knot-graſſe, and Cumphrey, of each halfe a handfull, boyle theſe in a quantity of running water, till a moity be conſumed, then ſtraine the herbs from the water, caſting away the herbs, and then ſet the water upon the fire again, and ſo ſoon as it beginneth to boyle againe, put into the ſaid water hony of Roſes, one ounce, Allum and Alkenet, of each two drams, ſtirre all theſe well together, and let it boyle till theſe latter ingredients be well diſſolved; then take it from the fire, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane glaſſe, keeping it cloſe ſtopped for your uſe. Vſe this water every day five or ſixe dayes together, and it will cure any Sorance in the *backe*, or other part of the *body*, provided that to *skin* the ſore, you apply a rag made wet in the ſaid water. + Another Receit I have wherewith I have cured many galled backs, and other ſorances: which is as followeth.

Take water and ſalt, and boyle them well together, and firſt waſh the ſore place therewith. Then take Pepper made into very fine powder, and ſtrew it upon the ſore, & it will heale it in very ſhort time. +. A third I have much more ſoveraigne than the two former, which cureth not onely all galled *backs*, but any other wound whatſoever.

+ Take Roſin, and common Pitch, of each ſixe ounces, Maſticke, and Incenſe, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolearmonacke, of each three ounces, melt, diſſolve, and incorporate all theſe together upon a gentle fire, and as they doe begin to coole, make them up into rolles, and when you would uſe this Salve, ſpread it upon a cloath or leather, ſomewhat thin; but if you be to uſe it without either cloath or leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you uſe to doe plaiſter-wiſe; and whilſt it is warme, clap *flocks* of the ſame colour upon it. This *Emplaſtrum* as it cureth any ſwelling, gall, wound, ſore, or hurt; ſo it ripeneth, breaketh, and healeth all impoſtumations, biles, and puſtils. It is alſo a moſt excellent *defenſative plaiſter* for the ſtaying and drying

drying up of all evill humours, and also very soveraign for asswaging of swellings. ✣.

Another Receit I have taught me by a worthy *Knight*, but I never made use thereof.

Take the leaves of Asmart, and wash them, and lay them all over the place; and albeit you ride him every day, yet will he heale very fast. But if he doe remaine in the Stable without exercise, if you put the water of the leaves upon the place, it will heale him speedily.

Another Receit I have which was taught me by a *French Marishall*, howbeit I made no tryall thereof, but he commended it to be *tres-bonne*; which is this, *viz.* Take three parts of sheeps-dung, and one part of wheate or Rye-flower, and dry the flower, and then knead them together, and bake it a little, and apply it bloud warme to the place.

§ 2. B.

Hippoph. *IS there a disease in a horse called the* Barbes?

Barbes.

Hippos. Yea Sir; there is such a disease, and it groweth in the *mouth* vnder the *tongue* naturally, for every Horse hath them, nevertheless there is no harme in them, untill they doe become inflamed, and then they will swell with corrupt bloud, proceeding from naughty *humours*, and become raw, and so trouble and pain the Horse, so as he cannot feed without much griefe: for it commeth by meanes of evill *humours*, and inflamed *bloud*. I never heard of more Cures than two for this malady, which is to take hold of his *tongue*, and on either side under it of the *jaw* you shall see two teats or paps; clip them away close, and then wash the place with a little water and salt, and they are cured. The other Cure.

Take a paire of Sizers and clip them away from under the tongue, and let them bleed, then prick him in the palate of the mouth with your Fleame, that he may bleed the better, then wash the places with white wine vineger, Bolearmonacke, and Bay-salt, of each as much as will suffice, and for three or four dayes after, let him see that no bay-dust sticke upon the places so clipped, and he will soon be well againe.

§. 3. B.

Hippoph. *WHat good Receit have you to dissolve and dry up all ill* humours *in the* body?

Bath for Humours to dry them up.

Hippos. The best thing that I could ever know, is a certain *Bath* which I make, wherewith I bath him, and I doe finde it to be right good, which I make thus, *viz.* Take Sage and Rosemary, of each a handfull, of the barke of the root of Beech, three pound, and of the barks of young Elmes, Oakes, and Ashe, of each a handfull; of Nep, Penny-

Penny-Royall, and of Cheſt-nuts, the rindes being taken away, of each a handfull, three or foure white Onions cleane pilled and cut into ſmall pieces or ſlices, red wine three pottles, ſtrong white wine vineger two pottles: boyle all theſe together, and cauſe your Horſe to be walked a quarter of an houre before, a good pace, that he may be onely warme, then let him be preſently bathed with this *Bath* good and hot, and then ſet him up warme, and let his drinke be either ſweet Maſhes or white water: bath him thus three dayes together, and feed him with ſuch meat as is ſweet and wholeſome, and let him not be ridden into any water in eight or tenne dayes after, and this will diſſolve and dry up all his bad *humours*. +. This I learned of an *Italian Rider* in *Bruxels*, whom I ſaw practiſe it very often whilſt I was there, and rode with him. And ſince I have my ſelfe adminiſtred it to many good Horſes here in *England*, with which I have done very much good.

Hippoph. *Now that we ſpeake of* Bathes, *I would gladly know what are their vertues.*

Hippoſ. Bathes have been much more in uſe in former times than now they are, howbeit I and my Maſter doe uſe them often, and we doe finde great profit by them: for they are fomentations, which be the moſt comfortable things of any to the *joynts* and *limbs* of a Horſe. *Bathes* diſſolve all ill *humours*, and gives heat and warmth unto all the *members* that are benummed with cold, or for want of *blond*; it comforteth and ſtrengtheneth them; and it giveth very great eaſe to the pained *ſinewes*. Beſides, it aſſwageth ſwellings in or about any outward parts of the *body*; for *legges* ſwelled, ſtiffe or benummed, or for any other joynt pained or grieved, or for any *ſtring-hault*, *crampe*, or *convulſion*. I commonly uſe a *bath*, which doth in ſhort time cure all ſuch like Maladies. And my *bath* is this.

Bath for ſtiffe legges.

Bath 1

Take Muskadine and Sallet oyle, of each a pinte, Bay-leaves and Roſemary, of each two handfuls, let them boyle halfe an houre, and when you are to bathe your Horſe therewith, rubbe and chafe the grieved place with a wiſpe or hayre-cloath a pretty while, then put the foot into ſome broad bowle or payle, whereby to preſerve the liquor and hearbs, and lave and bathe him thus a quarter of an houre: which ended, binde upon the place a piece of Sheeps or Lambs skin, with the woolly ſide to the *legge*, and let him ſtand ſo four and twenty houres: apply this five or ſixe times, and it will be a perfect Cure. +.

Another *bath* I have which is moſt ſoveraign to cure all g ourdy, gowty, and ſwoln *legges*, which commeth either by farcin, ſcratches, or the like, wherewith I have cured very many Horſes. And thus it is made.

Bath 2

Take the grounds of a Beere barrell with the Barme, Smallage, Featherfew, Winter-ſavory, Cumfry, Mallowes, Rue, Set-well, Penny-Royall, Wormewood, Arch-angell, of each a good handfull,

and

and of the leaves and Berryes of Miſſletow three or foure good handfuls, Sheepes Tallow one pound, tryed Hogges-greaſe halfe a pound, three or foure handfuls of Rie or Wheat Branne: boyle all theſe together untill all the hearbes and Miſſletow become ſoft: but be ſure you have liquour enough, and a little before you take it from the fire, put into it ſome Hay: With this, bathe his Legges; firſt one, then the other, putting ſtill that *Legge* which you are to bathe into a broad Bowle or Payle, as is afore ſhewed; and when you have bathed that *Legge* ſufficiently, then take of the hay in the Bath, and making a Thum-band thereof, rowle it about the *Leg* above the uppermoſt or middle *Ioynt*, and put off the hearbes betwixt his *Legge* and the Thum-band: and ſo uſe the other *Legge* or *Legs* which are ſwelled and need bathing: Which done, powre of the liquour remaining upon the thum-bands: and thus let him bee bathed herewith every day once for ſo many dayes together as you ſhall thinke requiſite, and it will bring downe the ſwelling quite, and make him ſound. +.

Another Bath I have no leſſe excellent, wherewith I have done many rarecures. *viz.*

Take Smallage, Oxe-Eye, and Sheepes Sewet, of each like much, to a good quantity: Chop them ſmall together, and after ſtamp them in a ſtone Morter; then boyle them with mans Vrine, and bathe the grieved parts herewith warme, doing as before with a Bowle or Payle: then with Thum-bands of ſoft Hay made firſt wet in cold water, rope up the member, as well above as below the griefe. Vſe this as oft as you ſhall ſee cauſe, but if the griefe happen in travell, then by bathing him thus over-night and roping him up, he wilbe able to travell again the next morning without complaining. +. This I doe aſſure you is a moſt excellent Bath, and it cureth any Lameneſſe which cometh eyther by ſtroke, ſtrayne, or other Accident. *Bath.* 3

One other Bath I have whereof I never made uſe, taught mee by a *Gentleman*, who was well verſed in *Horſe-leech-craft*. And his Receipt is this: *viz.* *Bath.* 4

Take Savine, and the Barke and Leaves of the Bay-tree, Pellitory, Roſemary, Sage, Rue, of each three ounces, boyle theſe in a Gallon of white Wine, untill halfe be conſumed: herewith bathe your *Horſe* as before is ſhewed, and whether the Griefe be viſible or not, uſe it and you will finde it an approved Medicine. After this manner hath the *Gentleman* delivered me this Receit, which he proteſted to me to be moſt ſoveraigne; which I can neither commend nor diſpraiſe by reaſon I never yet had experience thereof. And thus much of *Baths*, now let us paſſe to other matters.

§. 4. B.

Hippoph. I *Pray you* Hippoſerus, *can you ſhew me what is good to cauſe a Horſe in the Stable to* Belly *well?*

Hippoſ. That can I ſir, for many *horſes* by being kept long in the ſtable (eſpecially yong *horſes*) wil ſeldome have good *bellyes*, for their *bellies* will ſhrinke up towards their *Flankes*, and they become as great as *Running Horſes* uſe to be, when they are dieted for a Courſe; which doth betoken great Coſtivenes in them, which proceedeth of much unnaturall heat in the *body*; and ſuch *Horſes* never thrive or lik well, for they be naturally tender, and waſh, or flew of their fleſh: and therefore ſuch a *Horſe* I could wiſh you not to keepe, but to put away ſo ſoone as may be. For if he come once to hard labour, you cannot poſſibly keepe him ſound, but be often ſicke and unhealthy. The
Belly gaunt. beſt cure which I have, was taught me by a *French Marſhall*, who told me that every *horſe* hath about his *Cods* two ſmall ſtrings, which extend from his *Cods* to the bottome of his *Belly*, to wit, of each ſide one; which ſaid ſtrings you muſt breake with your finger, a thing very eaſie to be done by thoſe that have practiſed it; and when you have broken them, you muſt annoynt that place every day with freſh Butter and *Vnguentum Populeon* mixed together; this done, in ſhort time he will come to *Belly* well.

This I never my ſelfe tryed, but he that taught it me did much practiſe it, and hee brake many of thoſe ſtrings of ſundry *horſes* in my ſight.

§. 5. B.

Hippoph. W*Hat meanes have you to helpe the payne in the* Belly *of a* Horſe?

Hyppoſ. This diſeaſe is that we call the *Collick*, which the *Italians*
Belly paine. do call *Colon*, from whence our *Engliſh Ferriers* derive the word *Collick*: the *French* call it *Tranchaſons*, which is a paine or griping in the *Belly*, comming ſometimes of cold and wind, and ſometimes of groſſe *Humours* which ly in the ſmall *Guts*; ſometimes by reaſon of abundance of Billions or ſharp *Humours*; and ſometimes by inflamations in the *Body* cauſed by feeding upon raw and bad meates, which occaſioneth Crudities. But of this we ſhall have cauſe to ſpeak more in its proper place of the *Collick*: Only thus much, that whereas paines and Gripings in the *Belly* do proceed oftimes from the *Liver*, and the working of the *Spleene*, which is moſt ventoſous. But I thinke it not amiſſe to give you one Receipt wherewith to cure any Gripings or paynes which may at any time proceed eyther from the *Liver*, *Spleene*, or *Milt*. Neither have you any Signes whereby to know this diſeaſe, but only the ſame for the *Collick*. And the cure is this.

Take

Take Iſope, Cowſlips, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, of each like much, ſo as all when they be together, they doe not exceed halfe a handfull. Then take Gentiana, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Fenugrick, Enula Campana, dried long Pepper, of each halfe a ſpoonfull, and one ſpoonefull of Honey: chop the hearbs ſmall, and make the other ſimples into fine powder, and boyle them in a quart of Ale or Muſkadine which is much better, and give it him bloud warme, and ride him an houre after, then ſet him up warme, and foure or five houres after, give him boyled barley, and for three or foure dayes, let his drinke be either Maſhes or white water. ✠ With this I have done many good cures.

§. 6. B.

Hippoph. WHat is good to heale the tongue of a Horſe, which is hurt with the Bit or Haulter.

Bit wherewith the tongue hurt.

Hippoſ. If the *tongue* of your Horſe be hurt or cut with his Bit or Haulter, or by any other accident or miſhap, the beſt way to cure and heale it, is:

Take Mell-Roſarum, and annoynt it therewith, with a linnen rag faſtened to the end of a ſticke, let the Sore be ſo annoynted three or foure times a day, and let him alwayes after dreſſing ſtand upon the Trench one houre, and in ſhort time it will be whole. With this I have cured many Horſes, ſome of which have had their *tongues* cut more then halfe through. ✠ Another Cure I have, which a *French man* taught me, which is as followeth.

Take red honey, the marrow of powdred pocke, quick-lime and pepper all made into fine powder, of each like much, boyle all theſe together, ſtill ſtirring it till it come to an Oyntment, with which annoynt the ſore twice every day till it be whole. With this Receit I have cured ſundry good Horſes, and I do know it to be very good. ✠

§. 7. B.

Hippop. HOw may a man ſtanch the bleeding at the noſe, or when a veine is cut, or a wound given, whereby a Horſe is in danger to bleed to death.

Bleeding to ſtanch.

Hippoſ. We have many wayes wherewith to ſtanch bleeding, as well at the *noſe* as elſewhere. As thus, Take the tender tops of Iſop, and ſtamp them to maſh, and put them up into his *noſe*, or lay and binde it to the *wound* or *veine* cut or broken, and he will be ſuddenly ſtanched. ✠ Another:

Take Burſa-Paſtoris bruized, and apply it to the place, and this is very good. Another:

Take the powder of the ſtone called *Emachile*, and blow it up into the *noſe*, or lay it to the *veine* or *wound*, and the *bloud* will be ſtanched. Another.

Take

Take his own *bloud*, dry it, and make it into fine powder, and apply it as is aforesaid, is very good. ✣. Another:

Take the tops of the angriest and youngest red nettles, and stampe them very well, and laid to the place, will stanch bleeding. ✣. Another:

Take Hogges dung, and apply it as is aforesaid, is very good, ✣.

Take also Bumbast-cotten, woollen cloath, silke, felt, all these burned, or the hearb called Clownes-all-heale, will doe the like. ✣. Al of these I have often tryed, and doe finde them right good.

§ 8. *B.*

Hippoph. *What is good against* blindenesse?

Blindenesse.

Hippos. *Blindenesse* may come many wayes, and therefore if it be that which commeth of filmes or thickneſſe in the *eyes*, which of all other kindes of this nature is easiest to be cured; I will remit them to their proper places. But for filmes onely I will give you one or two Receits. But first it were fit you should understand how this disease commeth to a Horse. If he be subject to have a thickneſſe or white filmes in his eyes; it commeth most commonly of a *rhume* which passeth into his *eyes* from his *head*, which you may soone perceive by his continuall weeping, and sending forth watery moysture which will run from his *eyes* upon his *face*: which when you shall observe, let then his *Keeper* sundry times every day wash and bath his *eyes* with cold water newly drawn from the Well; and this will prevent his *filmes*, and cure that *flux* or *rhume*: but if the *films* doe come before you observe that he had any such *rhume* or running at the *eyes*: then

Take mans dung, and put it into a Fire-pan, and so burne it untill it come to be a cole, then beat it to fine powder, and put thereof into a Gooſe quill, and blow it into his *eyes* twice a day; and this will cleer his *eyes* againe. ✣.

Take also the tops of the angriest young red nettles, a handfull, and stamp them very well, then put it into a fine linnen cloth, and then dip it into beere a little, and so straine forth the juyce, which done, put a few graynes of salt, bay or white to it, and when it is dissolved, drop of this liquor into the grieved *eye*, one drop: and do thus morning and evening, and it will take away not onely a *filme*, and other such like thickneſſe which may hinder his *sight*, but it will also take away a Pearle. These two Receits I have often practised, and I have found them very good. ✣

Hippoph. *I have heard some say that they can make a Horse suddenly blinde, and yet after restore him to his perfect sight againe: but I think they doe boast and cracke of more then they be able to doe, how thinke you* Hipposerus?

Hippos. Why truely Sir, this is easily done, and I will briefly discover

ver unto you the ſecret, which is thus.

Take Saffron, and dry it, and make the ſame into very fine powder as much as will ſuffice, and put of this powder into a quill, and ſo blow it into his eyes, and when it hath remained there by the ſpace of halfe a quarter of an houre, wipe this powder from his eyes ſo cleane, as that it may not be diſcerned, and this will make him ſtone blinde. But if you be deſirous to have him to reaſſume his ſight again, then

Take Garlicke, and chew it in your mouth, and then whilſt it is ſtill in your mouth, breath into his eyes, and in five or ſixe times thus doing, he will againe ſee very perfectly. ✣ But this latter muſt be adminiſtred within eight dayes after the Saffron was blowne into his eyes, otherwiſe his ſight will never be recovered. ✠

B.

Hippoph. VVHat is good againſt the biting of a mad dog?

Hippoſ. I have onely three cures for it, whereof I never had occaſion to make tryall; howbeit they were all recommended unto me for ſpeciall good: the firſt is.

Biting of a mad Dog.

Take the tender tops of Rue, Boxe-leaves, and Primroſe-roots, of each a handfull, pound them together in a morter, and put them into a quart of new milke, with *London* Treacle one ounce, and ſo give it him bloud warme. This proportion will ſerve very well for two Horſes. Another,

Take Hobgoblin, perewincle, and Boxe leaves, of each one handfull, firſt mince them ſmall, and then ſtampe them very ſmall in a ſtone morter, and with milke or beere adminiſter it, both at the Change or Full of the Moone. A third cure I alſo have, which is this:

Take the hearb which groweth in dry and barren hils, called *The Starre of the earth*; you muſt give it three dayes together; the firſt time you muſt gather three of theſe hearbs with all the whole roots, and waſh them cleane, and wipe them cleane, then pound them well, looſing no part of them; which done, give it your Horſe in Milke, Beer, Ale, or white Wine; but be carefull the Horſe take all the hearbs and roots: but if you will, you may make up theſe hearbs and roots in freſh or ſweet butter which will doe as well: the ſecond day give your Horſe five of theſe hearbs and roots, like as you gave him them the day before; and the third day give him ſeaven. Doe this punctually as I have here preſcribed you, and be you well aſſured your Horſe will be perfectly cured: for albeit I my ſelfe have never tryed this medicine, yet I doe know the party of whom I had this Cure, hath cured much cattell of all ſorts therewith, for it cureth all ſorts of living creatures which ſhall be bitten by a *mad Dog*; I my ſelfe can ſay thus much of this Receit, that I knew it cure a whole *kennell* of *Hounds* of a Gentlemans, one Beagle excepted which they did not

ſuſpect to be bitten, which indeed was bitten, ſo he fell mad and dyed, but all the reſidue eſcaped and did very well. Another time a *Gentlemans* ſonne of my acquaintance was unfortunately bitten by a mad Dog, who was cured by the party who taught me this Receit, and this young *Gentleman* (for he was then but a boy of ten yeares old) was ſo farre ſpent with the rancor of the diſeaſe, before this man tooke him in hand, as that his *head* began to be addle, and he to talke very idly, yet he cured him, ſo as he lived and did well, and is at this houre living, he being now come to mans ſtate, and a very handſome and proper man, whoſe Parents whilſt they lived, I very well knew, and with whom I was very intimately acquainted. ✠

§ 10. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat remedy have you for a Spaven?*

Hippoſ. We have two ſorts of *Spavens*: the one we call a Through wet, Bloud or Bog-Spaven; the other a Dry, or Bone-Spaven: the firſt of theſe two is eaſily cured; the ſecond may be cured, but ſuch a cure is not for every Ferrier to take upon him to compaſſe: for that it is a Cure of very great difficulty, and of no leſſe danger. To ſpeake therefore firſt of the *Bloud Spaven*, it is a Diſeaſe which groweth upon the *hough*, with a ſwelling which is full of *bloud*, which though it be greateſt upon the inſide, yet the ſwelling appeareth alſo upon the out ſide, being fed and nouriſhed by the great *veine* which runneth along the inſide of the *thigh*, and ſo commeth along the inſide of the *hough*, and ſo downe the *legge* to the *paſterne*, and ſo from the *paſtern* to the bottome of the *foot*. This malady commeth by meanes that the bloud is corrupted through hard riding, eſpecially when the Horſe is very young. Now the *bloud* being through over much heating too much ſtirred, it begetteth a fluxible *humour*, which being marvellous thin, falleth to running cowardswards towards its center, but it is ſtopped in its paſſage in the *hough*, where it reſideth, and by that meanes ſwelleth, and ſo becommeth a diſeaſe, which peſtring that place, makes the *joynt* ſtiffe, whereby he becommeth ſtarke lame, not being able to goe, but with great difficulty and paine. The ſigne is moſt eaſie, being moſt apparant to the *eye*. The beſt way to cure it, is: firſt, to ſhave away the haire on both ſides the ſwelling, ſo farre forth as the ſwelling goeth: then take up the *thigh veine*, and let it *bleed* well; which done, tye the *veine* above the *orefice*, and let the *veine* bleed from below what it will; whereby the bloud which was aſſembled about the ſpaven place, which cauſed the former ſwelling, is by this meanes ſent away: then with your fleame or inciſion knife, make two inciſions in the lower part of the ſwelling, and after prick two or three holes in each ſide of the *hough* where the Spaven is, that the medicine may take the better effect, and when the *bloud* and *water* hath vented away ſo much, as it will doe, bind round about

Bloud-Spaven.

about it, plaister-wise the whites of Egges and Bolearmoniack very well beaten together, either upon hurds or linnen cloath, and make it fast about the *hough*, so keep on the plaister. The next day take it off, and wash and bathe the sorance with this *bath, viz.* Take Mallowes and the tops of nettles, and boyle them in water till they be soft, and therewith *bath* him. Then take Mallow-roots, Brancha Vrsina, Oyle, Waxe, and white Wine, so much as wil suffice, and boyle them, binde this warme to the sorance round about the *hough*, and sew a cloath about it, and so let it remaine three dayes more; and every morning stroke it downewards with both your *hands* gently, to the end the *bloudy humour* may issue forth. The fourth day *bathe* and wash it very cleane with the former *Bath*. That done, Take Carana, and stone Pitch, of each one ounce, and of Brimstone a quarter of an ounce made into very fine powder: melt these together on the fire, and when it is almost ready to be taken off, put into it of Venice Turpentine halfe an ounce, and make a plaister thereof, spreading it upon leather, and apply it to the place warme, round about the *hough*, and so let it remaine untill it doe fall away of its own accord: or if it doe come off sooner than you might thinke fitting, then make another plaister of the like ingredients, and apply it as before. ✠ This is the best cure that I could ever know for this malady, with which I have cured many *Blond-Spavens*. ✠ Another for a Bloud Spaven.

Bath for a Blond-Spaven.

When the swelling doth appeare upon the inward part of the hough, take up the thigh veine, and let it bleed from the nether part of the leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give *fire* to the Spaven both longst-wayes and crosse-wayes, and then apply a restringent charge to the place, and thus it will be cured. This I never tryed, but positively speaking, I hold it to be a very good Cure.

§ 11. *Bone-Spaven.*

Hippoph. HOw *doe you cure the dry or* Bone-Spaven?

Hippos. This malady is not easily cured but with great difficulty and danger: it is a great hard crust, yea as hard as a *bone* if it be let runne, sticking or indeed growing to the *bone*, much closer than the barke of an Oake to the body, and it is upon the inside of the *hough* under the *joynt* neere to the great *veine* of which I spake of before in the Cure of the *bloud-spaven*: by which meanes the Horse that hath such a *Spaven*, cannot chuse but hault. This *bone-spaven* commeth two wayes; the first, through hard riding, or other kinde of intemperate labour, whereby the *blond* dissolving, falleth downe and maketh its residence in the *hough*, which doth in short time become dry and hard as any *bone*, from whence the sorance taketh its denomination. Secondly, the Horse may have this malady by inheritance or kinde either from the Sire or Damme, as I have before specified in the second Chapter of the first Booke,

Bone-Spaven.

where I doe intreate of *Breeding*.

The Signe to know it, is evident enough; *viz.* by your *Eye* and *hand*, for it is both visible and palpable enough, and as easie to bee seene and felt as the *Legge* it selfe. The best way to cure it, is first by taking up the *thigh-veine*, which caused it, and fed and nourished it, and let him bleed well, and so put him into the Stable, and doe no more to him for that day; the next day, shave away the haire from off the *Spaven*, and rub it hard with a Rowling-pin (having first annoynted the place with *Petroleum* and chafed it well in with your hand) or some other round and smooth stick, morning and evening for foure daies together, and at the fourth dayes end, slit downe the skin with your Incision-knife, the full length of the *Spaven*; but bee very carefull you do not touch the great *Artery* or *Veine*, both which do ly very neere; for if you do never so little hurt the great *Artery*, you utterly maime the *horse* past all recovery; having thus done, lay to the place the Hearb called *Flamula* bruised, and bind it on that it fall not off, for two dayes more; then for three daies after: Take Cantharides & Euforbium, & incorporate them well together, (being before beaten into fine powder) with black Sope, and Bay salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dresse it every Morning: this will lay the *Bone* and Crust bare. After take Fearne-roots, Hounds-tongu, and Bore-grease; incorporate all these together, and lay it to the place, untill you perceive the Crust to be loose, and to bee wasted; assay now and then to loosen the same with your Cornet or other Instrument, and if you can with conveniency take it off quite, doe so: Which done, heale up the wound with your greene oyntment prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. §. 4. you may also apply to the Sorance after the aforesaid Corasives, a Plaister of strong *Ægyptiacum* till it hath fretted off the flesh upon the Crust so bare as possibly may be, and so you may the better attempt the taking away of the said Crust, or by rubbing it with a Rowling-pin, or a Hasell-stick annointed with *Petroleum* till the Crust be converted into a mattrative substance, or other thinner kind of corruption, which may very easily be drawne away. And thus have I cured the *Bone-Spaven* severall times: Which disease I cannot easily commend to be cured by any, but those who have before hand seene some other skilfull *Ferrier* to do it before him, and the Method he useth in the working, by reason that the Cure is so extreamely difficile, and over-dangerous. ✠. But when at any time you doe perceive a swelling begin to be in the *Spaven-place* of your *horse*, whereby you may suspect it may prove a *Spaven*; for prevention whereof.

Take Naturall Ballsome, and having first shaven away the haire, annoint the place with the said Ballsome, for two or three daies: and after you shall represse the *Humours* with this Charge.

Take Oyle of Roses three ounces, Bole-Armonack one ounce, wheat flowre halfe an ounce, and the white of one Egge; make all

these

theſe into one body, and every day (having firſt annointed it with Balſome) lay on the ſaid Charge. ✠.

Hippophyl. *But let us looke backe againe to the* Eyes. *What ſay you to* Bloud-ſhotten Eyes?

For a *Bone* or *Dry-Spaven* or *Curbe*: Firſt take up the veine that feedeth it (whether *Spaven* or *Curb*) as well below as above, then give it fire, then charge the place with pitch made hoat, & clap flax upon it, then foure daies after, you muſt dulcifie the ſorance with the Oyle *Pampileon* and freſh Butter molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the ſcarre ſhalbe falne away, you muſt applie unto it a kind of ſtuffe which is called Blauco or white, made I think of Ieſſoe, and ſo continue it untill it be whole. ✠. This is very good.

§. 12. B.

Hippoſ. I Say Sir, that *Bloud ſhotten Eyes* may eaſily be holpen, if a right Cure be taken, and the *Ferrier* perite: for as touching *Eyes*, they are a tender *Member*, ſooneſt hurt and offended of any part about the *body* of any living *Creature*; and therefore there ought the greater care to be taken in the Cure thereof: and take this by the way for a point of good Counſell, and for a good Rule, that in adminiſtring to the *Eyes*, you be very carefull that your Medicine bee not too old, but often made and renewed; for by uſing old made Medicines, either their Vertues do paſſe away, whereby the *Member* dreſſed receives no good; or elſe, by being too old, the Medicines may moſt eaſily putrifie and corrupt, and ſo by that meanes do much more harme than good to the *Member* you hoped to cure; inſomuch as if you be not very cautelous in making and compounding your *Receipts* for the *Eyes* aright, you may moſt eaſily endeavouring to cure one *Eye*, not faile in putting out both. All diſeaſes in the *Eyes* come only of two Cauſes: *viz.* Firſt, either inward, or outward; Secondly, by meanes of ſome Blow, Stripe, Prick, Cut, Bruiſe; or ſome ſuch like accident. The Inward Cauſes do either proceed from evill *Humours*, which do make their reſort to the *Eyes*, or elſe by the meanes of ſome cold taken, which breaketh forth at the *Eyes* into ſome great *Flux*; or elſe by meanes of ſome hot, ſharp, or ſalt *Humours* which doe make their reſort to the *Eyes*; all which doe and will engender *Bloud-ſhotten*, weeping, or watery *Eyes*; and theſe doe proceed from Inward cauſes. Now theſe Maladies which have their ſource from outward Cauſes, are (as I have before mentioned) eyther by a Blow, Stripe, Prick, bruiſe, or the like, which will cauſe paine and anguiſh, and ſuch like inconveniencies, whereby the *Member* being diſtempered through heat, burning, glowing, &c. will weepe and ſend forth much moiſture, which will produce not only *Bloud-ſhotten* and *Weeping-Eyes*; but alſo (if Art and Care be not added in time convenient) Dimneſſe of Sight, Filmes, Pearles, Pin and web

Bloud-ſhotten Eyes.

web. Dragons, Serpentines, and such numberlesse Sorances, yea and direct *Blindnesse* it selfe, without speciall providence and care used by way of prevention. Wherefore for Maladies of this Nature, I will prescribe you a few Receits, which shall be very good and approved. First therefore, whereas the common cure in practise among our ordinary *Ferriers* and *Smiths* is, to draw *blood* as well from the *Temple-veines* as for the *Neck veins*; my Counsell is, which experience is taught mee by my *Master* here, and it hath not a little profited and pleasured me) to be very cautelous how you draw *blood* from weake and enfeebled *Eyes*, as *blood shotten* and *Rhumatique-eyes*, must bee (unlesse in cases of extreme necessity) for by so doing, I have known *Horses* in like cases which before they had *blood* taken from them were able to see a little, but after *blood letting* they have become so blind as a *Beetle*; nor were they ever able (no Art wanting) to see more, so as they after became very notable strong, & able *Millhorses*. First therefore I aver, that insteed of opening a *veine*, I counsell you to lay unto the *Temple-veines* a Charge, whereby to stay and hinder that *Flux* of noxious *Humours* which were the cause of this Malady; and let this Charge bee made thus. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, of each like much; melt all these together, and either apply it upon a Plaister made of Leather cut round, or of Velvet, of that color or as nere to the colour of the *horse* as may bee, or else lay it good and warme to the *Temple veines*, with a cloth fastned to a sticke, and before it be cold, clap Flockes of the same colour to the place, and let it so remaine on, till of it selfe, it fall away. Then dresse the grieved *Eyes* with these ensuing things.

Blood-shotten Eyes: a Charge.

Take the white of a new-layed Egge, Hony, Selandine, and red-Fennell of each so much as will suffice: stamp them all well together, and so bind it unto the grieved *Eye*. ✠. But if you do find, that the sight waxeth thick; and that you observe dimnesse of sight in him, through his weeping: Take then *Lapis Calaminaris*, and put it into the fire making it red-hot, which infuse or quench in a pint of white Wine; which done, let the stone be made red-hot, and quenched in the same Wine the second time, and so in like manner the third time; and after the third quenching, when it is through cold, dry it; and beat it into fine powder; and put the powder thereof into a glasse Viall, and put thereto your white Wine wherein your Stone was quenched, and after it hath stood and infused one whole night at the least; put one drop of the cleerest of the Wine into the *eye* of the *horse*, and so into the other *eye* also twise a day, till you have staied the *Rhume* & quite cleered his *Eyes*. ✠. Another.

Take the luyce of Selendine, Red-Fennell, Vervine, and Rue, of each a like quantity, *viz.* one Branch, or Sprigge of eyther; stamp them together, and straine it through a cleane fine linnen ragge into a little cleere running water; then put into it as much grated Ginger, and Bay-salt finely powdred, of each so much as will lie upon a two pen-

penny piece, putting all these into a glasse-viall, let it stand to settle, and when you doe see it as cleere as it will be, drop a drop of this water into either *eye*, morning and evening bloud-warme, &c. ✠

Another:

Take also Ale-hoofe (which is indeed your true ground-Ivy) and stampe it well in a stone morter, and if it be too dry, put thereinto a little white Rose water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, then straine it into a glasse, and annoynt, wash, bathe, and taint (if need be) the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure the *eyes* perfectly. ✠ The residue of Receits I reserve to their due places.

§ 13. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat good cure have you for a* bloud-running itch?

Hippos. This sorance commeth to a Horse commonly by meanes of some extreame heate giuen him in the *body* through over-violent exercise, whereby the *bloud* is enflamed, some whereof getteth betwixt the *skin* and the *flesh*, which running too and fro, being salt and billious, it there doth itch and smart, provoking the Horse many times to rub, scrub, and bite himselfe: Which disease if it be let run long, will come to be an *Elephantique leprosie*, or at least a terrible mainge: by which meanes he will soone infect all the Horses which are in the Stable where he standeth, for it is a contagious malady and loathsome. The best way to cure this *itch* before it proceed further, is, Take Chamberly newly made, two quarts, Bay-salt a handfull, unslaked Lime a handfull, Enula campana root dryed and finely powdred, a handfull, but if not dryed, then green, cut into thin slices, Hens dung a handfull: boyle all these together a while; then with a sticke with a clout fastened to it, wash the Horse all over so hot as he may well suffer the same: use this three or foure mornings together, and it will cure him, keeping him to a spare dyet, and giving him white water. ✠

Bloud-running itch.

§ 14. *B.*

Hippophyl. *WHat is good to prevent* Blowing *and* Pursiveneſſe *in a Horse?*

Hippos. You must first understand Sir, the true nature of this griefe, as also how he came by it, whereby you may the more easily know how to cure the same, for that there be sundry wayes and meanes whereby a Horse may come to be breathlesse and short of winde, and every one of them may be a severall disease, and so require a distinct remedy. But if you meane a shortnesse of winde onely, then know that many Horses are naturally thicke winded, as being *cock-thropled*, narrow *Chawled*, &c. Also shortnesse of winde may come unto him accidentally, as when being *fat* and over-laden with *flesh*, or by being too

Blowing & Pursiveneſſe

too rank of *bloud*, or by too much glut and foulenesse in the *body*, then is he subject to shortnesse of breath and pursyveneſſe; so as upon any motion or exercise he will sweat, pant, blow, and heave at the *flanks*; and this commeth upon him by immoderate riding, eating, drinking, and rest. And such like exercise causeth the *panch* of the Horse (if he be put to any sudden motion or exercise) to be so hard and strutted out, as that he must so straine his *longs*, (*the bellowes of the body*) as to cause a dislocation in them, by meanes whereof they cannot execute their office or function as they ought; and if care and remedy be not speedily had, he will in short time be past all recovery, and then hee is brought to that disease which the vulgar doe call *broken winded*: wherefore to prevent it, administer unto him this ensuing Cure.

Let all the hay he eateth, (nor let him eate all he desireth, for such Horses are commonly great feeders) be sprinckled and moystened with water, which will asswage his excesse of drinking, and very much coole his *bloud*, which cannot but be inflamed. Then give him every morning for foure or five dayes together, two egges steeped twenty foure houres in the strongest white wine vineger you can get: give him (I say) these two egges, and then the vineger after, then ride him softly an houre after: which done, set him up warme, and three houres after, give him hay sprinckled with water, and at night when you do give him his Oats, wet them in Beere or good Ale, and let his drinke be white water. ✠ Doe this ten dayes together, so that about the beginning of *May*, and about *Michaelmas*, he may be in breath: and so keep him to spare dyet, but with discretion. ✠ This medicine will both purge him, and scowre from him much flegme and filth as well at *nose* as *mouth*, and he will be both sounder and in better health a long time after: provided he be also kept to moderate exercise. And if after you have thus drenched and dyeted him, you doe not perceive his blowing and lifting at the *ribbes* and *flanks* to cease, then be you confident your Horse is past all cure, onely still moysten his meat as before is inculcated, and he will hold out the longer. ✠ Another Receit I have for the same malady, which if he be not past all cure, will infallibly doe him much good, which is this, *viz.*

Take wheate meale, the powder of Lung-wort, *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Annifeeds, Comin-seeds, of each three drammes, make them into fine powder, and make paste with them with honey, and fresh butter, of each like quantity, so much as will suffice, and put to it the yolkes of two new laid egges; make this paste into pils, and every morning fasting give him three or foure of these pils rowled up in the powder of Enulacampana, and the powder of Licoris, of each like much. These pils preserve the winde of the Horse mervailously and keeps him alwaies in breath, and therefore good they be often used. ✠

Of these two Receits I have had great experience, and a third I

was

was taught, whereof I had not oft made triall, yet with that little experience I have had of it, I doe find it to be right good, being as followeth.

Take the Excrements of a sucking child, and put unto it a pint of white wine; let it boyle till the one halfe be consumed, and so give it him blood-warme. This will cause him to forsake his blowing for 15. dayes; so as when hee beginneth againe to blow, give him the same medicine againe, and so keep him with this from time to time so oft as you shall have cause, and by this meanes you shall have his wind good. ✠ But then you must beware you put not into the wine too large a proportion of the Excrements, for it will make him to be very sick, and peradventure endanger him, for howsoever when at any time you doe administer it, it will make him very sick. Remember also to sprinkle his meat, and to give him white water.

§15. B.

Hyppoph. *WHat is your opinion of* Botts, Trunchions, *and* Wormes, *their severall sorts, and how doe you kill them?*

Hyppos. The generall Opinion is, that there are but two sorts of these kind of creeping *Creatures*, to wit, *Botts*, and *Wormes*, for they hold that *trunchions* and *bots* are both one and the same thing, but they are much mistaken; for *bots* are of a different shape and colour from *trunchions*, and of different natures, for *bots* doe breed and reside in the great *gut* adjoyning to the *fundament*, but *trunchions* doe breed and make their abode in the maw onely, and if they be suffered to remaine any time within the *body* of the Horse, they will make their way through the aforesaid great *gut*, and the *trunchions* through the maw, both which *vermine* doe bring death to the Horse. Now I doe averre, that there is a third sort, which have none other denomination than plaine *wormes*, unlesse you will adde the word *maw-wormes*, and so stile them *maw-wormes*, which name indeed is most proper to them, by reason that they select for their resting place the *maw* onely, from which they never depart, where they doe eate small holes quite through the *maw*, by meanes whereof the Horse dyeth.

Bots, &c.

Three sorts of vermine which doe engender in the body of the Horse.

The *Bots* are a kinde of little wormes with great heads and small tayles, they breed and live as I said before in the *great gut*, adjoyning to the *fundament*, and they may be taken away most easily by putting in your hand, and by picking them from the *gut* to which they are fastened.

1 *Bots.*

Trunchions are in shape short and thick, and of a pretty bignesse, and they have blacke and hard heads, but they must be sent away by medicine.

2 *Trunchions.*

Maw-wormes are long, red, and slender, much like unto earth-wormes, most of them of the length of a mans finger, and some are longer;

3 *Wormes.*

longer; theſe muſt alſo be taken away by medicine. All theſe three ſorts doe ingender in the *body* of the Horſe, by meanes of evill, raw, and flegmatique meates, which have turned to bad digeſtion, whereby putrified matter hath bred in the *maw*, and from thence theſe three ſorts of evill creatures have engendred. You may very eaſily know when your Horſe is troubled with them: for he will ſweat with paine, ſtampe with his *fore-feet*, and ſtrike at his *belly* with his *hinder-feet*; he will alſo turne his head towards his *belly* to looke upon it, and forſake his meat, he will alſo grone, tumble, and wallow; he will alſo rub his tayle as if it were troubled with the itch. Now how to kill theſe wormes is very difficile, for feare of endangering the life of your Horſe: onely medicines muſt be given which muſt cauſe them to diſtaſt the maw, and to feed upon ſuch drinkes being ſweet, whereby he may voyd them with his *dung*. I will here give you many Receits, ſome of which I have very much experimented; and the firſt is this, *viz.*

Take of Egremony one handfull, chop and ſtamp it ſmall, and put unto it a quart of new milke, with brimſtone made into very fine powder, halfe an ounce: give this to your Horſe faſting bloud-warm, and keep him upon the trench faſting three houres at the leaſt, and at night give him white water. ✠ Another.

Take the guts of a well-growne chicken, (all but the gizard) and rowle it up warme in the powder of brimſtone, and bay-ſalt, and put it downe his *throat*, and trot him up and downe halfe an houre, doing as before. ✠ Another.

Take new milke, and the powder of brimſtone, this doth the like. ✠ Another.

Take Saven and Worme-wood chopped and ſtamped ſmall, put to it a pinte of Muskadine, and give it him warme. ✠ Take alſo a quart of *brine* newly made, and give it him to drink. ✠ Another:

Take as much *Precipitate*, alias *Red-Mercury calcined* as will lye upon a two-penny piece of ſilver, and convey it into a piece of ſweet butter the bigneſſe of an egge, in manner of a pill: give him this in a morning faſting, the Horſe having ſtood all night in his *Muſſell* at the empty *racke*, unleſſe extremity doe compell you, for in ſuch a caſe you may adminiſter it at any other time. When you are to give it him, take forth his *tongue*, and make him ſwallow the whole pill, then ride him a while up and downe, and after ſet him up warme, cauſing him to faſt three houres after: and with this medicine you may kill all manner of *Bots*, *Trunchions*, and *wormes*, of what kinde ſoever. yet at the giving, you muſt be wondrous circumſpect and carefull; for this *Precipitate* is a very ſtrong poyſon, wherefore you muſt be very obſervant of your proportion, wherein you ought not to exceed, except with good caution. Againe, if you mixe your *Precipitate* before hand with a little ſweet butter, the quantity of a hafell-nut; and then afterwards lap it up in the greater lump of butter, it may be received by the

the Horſe to his leſſe danger, and it will beſides very much allay its evill quality. But this I leave to your own diſcretion, aſſuring you that there is hardly any thing comparable to this, for this diſeaſe. ✠ This Receit I have adminiſtred unto three Horſes onely, whereof the firſt and laſt I cured, but the ſecond dyed under my hands: but I doe aſſure you not for any want of care. ✠ Another:

Take Sublimatum ſo much as can be taken upon a two penny piece of ſilver, and made up in butter will kill the Bots in a Horſe, it it be adminiſtred as was the former Receit. This I did never try. Another. *Bots.*

Take a quart of good Ale, of Rue, and Saven, of each a quarter of a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound: bray all theſe in a morter, and put them to the Ale, and boyle it well, then ſtraine it, and give it him bloud-warme, and he will voyd them. Another;

Take of new milke a quart, and a penny weight of brimſtone in fine powder, and twenty of the long haires of his tayle, cut them very ſhort, and put it all together into the milk, and give it him to drink, and then throw a handfull of bay ſalt into his mouth, and he is cured. ✠ Another.

Take a quart of ſtrong Wort, and give it him to drinke bloud-warme, and let him faſt eight houres after. Another;

Take the firſt day a quart of new milke, and put to it halfe a pinte of honey, and give it him warme: this will cauſe them to give over from gnawing and feeding upon the maw for a ſeaſon, by reaſon they will drinke and ſucke the milke and honey for a time: the next day, give him this drinke [illegible]

Take a quart of ſweet Wort, or of your ſtrongeſt Ale, ſpecially if it be new, then take a quarter of a pound of Ferne roots, of Saven halfe a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound; ſtampe them all together, and put to it of brimſtone and of ſoot, of each two ſpoonfuls, both well powdred, and let all theſe be well ſteeped in Wort or Ale two hours, then ſtrain it, & give him of this two good horn-fuls, then bridle him, and let him ſtand upon the trench ſixe houres, but this will not kill them, the third day give him theſe purging pils. Take of Lard one pound, let it be laid in water two houres, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof onely, beat it well in a ſtone morter, and put thereto of Anniſeeds, Licoris, and Fennugrick, all made into fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, Aloes powdred, two drams, and of Agaricke one ounce: make all theſe well mixed into one body, and divide them equally into ſixe Pils or Bals, then the Horſe having faſted over night, give him in the morning three of theſe Pils, annointed firſt with honey, then cloath him up, and litter him well, and keep the Stable warme, and at night give him a ſweet Maſh, and for three dayes after, let him have none other drinke then white water. Theſe Bals will ſo purge the bad *humours* that breed and nouriſh theſe *vermine*, that the Horſe will be perfectly cleane and free from them,

them, of what kind ſoever they are: and you ſhall find them to come away in his *Dounge*, and the moſt of them to be living; for no Medicine (but thoſe two only of *Precipitate* and *Sublimate* before remembred, in which is ſo great perill) can kill them. ✠. This Receipt before any other I have made moſt uſe of, & I find it to be the very beſt, and moſt infallible of them all; and this will hardly leave one *Bot Trunchion* or *Worme* in all his *Body*: I forbeare to report unto you, what quantity of theſe *Vermine*, a *Horſe* hath voyded at a time, for I love not to relate *Wonders*. Another Receipt I will deliver you, howbeit not equivalent to the former, which is this, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of greene broome, and of Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very ſmall, and work them up into Pils with freſh or ſweet Butter; and having kept the *Horſe* over night faſting, give to him three of theſe Pills in the Morning early, then ſet him upon the Trench, and let him faſt two houres after, but give him no Water till night, and that white Water. ✠. This alſo have I experienced, and have found it to be very good, for it hath cauſed the *Horſe* to voyd many of theſe bad *Cattle*. I will conclude with this: *viz.*

Take a quart of Milke warme from the Cow, and put to it of Honey halfe a pint, and give it him the firſt day; the next day take Rue and Roſemary, of each halfe a handfull, ſtamp them well together, then let it infuſe, together with the powder of Brimſtone, and Soute, ſo much as will ſuffice, foure houres in Wort or Ale a quart, then ſtraine it, and give it him bloud warme; then let him bee walked or gently ridden an houre or two, and ſo ſet him up warme, and give him Hay an houre before you give him any drinke, which let bee white Water, and you muſt not give him Hay in foure or ſix houres after you have given him his foreſaid drinke. And you muſt withall remember, that in all Medicines as well for this kind of Malady, as for any other his drinke muſt be either a ſweet Maſh, or elſe white Water. ✠. This alſo is a very good Receipt, and I have had good experience of it, and it hath evermore wrought well. ✠.

§. 16. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat helpe have you for a* Brittle Hoofe?

Hyppoſ. This cometh two waies, to wit, by nature, or by accident: it cometh naturally when the *Stallion* who begat him, or the *Mare* which did Fole him, was ſubject to the ſame infirmity; and therefore I doe adviſe all men to forbeare Breeding with ſuch a *Stallion* or *Mare*, for all their *Colts* will bee in danger to partake thereof. *Brittle hoof* If it come Accidentally, then muſt it fall out to come either by ſome Surfet that fell downe into the *Feet*, which cauſed a ſiccity in the *Hoofes*, or elſe in that he had beene formerly Foundred or heat in the *Feete*, and not well cured. I need not ſhew the Signes where-

whereby to know this Malady, being it is moſt apparant. As touching the Cure, I will give you but only one Receipt for the preſent; by reaſon I ſhall have occaſion to handle it more largely when we come to intreate of the *Hooſes*. And the Cure is this: *viz.*

Take a Rape, or a Drawing-Iron, and with eyther of theſe make the Coffin of the *Hooſe* fine and thin, in all ſuch places as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and pare the *Soles* very thinne alſo; then apply to the *Feete*, as well *Soles* as *Coffins* this enſuing Charge. Take Ry-bran, or for default thereof, Wheate-bran, *Oxen* or Cowes-dunge, of theſe ſo much as will ſuffice, then take Sheepes-Suet, and Hogs-greaſe tryed, Tarre, and Turpentine of each halfe a pound, mince the Sheepes Suet very ſmall, and melt it on the fire, then put to your Hogs-greaſe, and when theſe be molten, put in your Oxe or Cow-dung, ſtirring them well together, then by degrees put in your Bran, continnually ſtirring them, and laſtly your Tarre and Turpentine, and when you have kneaded al theſe ſo well together as that they are become one body and like to paſte: take them from the fire and ſo keepe them for your uſe, and being only warme, ſtop his *Soles* therewith, but tack on his *Shooes* firſt: but for his *Coffins* make Bagges of courſe cloath, and firſt covering all his *Coffins* good and thick, faſten thoſe bagges over his *hooſes* to his *Paſterns*, but take heed they be not too hard tyed, yet ſo as they may ſtay on; dreſſe him thus every day once for fifteene or twenty dayes together, and let him not in all that time touch any Water with his *Feete*, and his *Hooſes* will become firme and tough againe. After if you turne him forth into moyſt ground it will be the better, if the ſeaſon will permit it. You muſt during the time of his cure give him continually white Water. ✠. This cure I have often tryed, and it is very good. ✠.

§. 17. *B.*

Hippoph. VVHat doe you hold good to be applyed to the Heeles and Feete of a Horſe, that is bruiſed and beaten with travell?

Hippoſ. Sir, I will give you only one Receipt for this cure, which I have often uſed, and it is ſo truly a good one, as that it's equall can hardly be found. And thus it is.

Bruiſed heeles and feete.

Take of the tender tops of the moſt angry, and ſtinging Nettles you can get one handfull, ſtamp them very well in a Morter, and when they be throughly beaten, put unto them of Turpentine and tryed Hogs-greaſe, ſo much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a formall Vnguent: Apply this to the *Feete* and *Heeles* of your *Horſe*, in bags or cloutes, and let this bee done the very next morning after you come where you may reſt him, renew this every day once, and in ſhort time he wilbe ſound, and well againe. ✠.

§. 18.

§ 18. *B.*

Hippoph. *What is good to allay burning with* Shot, Gun-powder, *or* Wilde-fire?

Burning with shot.

Hippos. For this malady I use evermore to take varnish, and to put it into faire water, and to beat the water and varnish very well together, then I powre away the water from the varnish, and so with a feather I annoynt the place burned, and in few times dressing, it will kill the fire; which done, I heale the sorance with carnifying and healing salves. + This is very good.

But I will now give you two or three other unguents, which are most precious against all sorts of burnings, which is this.

Take Hogges grease as much as will suffice, set it upon the fire, and let it boyle well, and as the skimme ariseth, take it away with a feather or such like thing, untill no more will arise; that done, and that it hath boyled enough, then put it forth into an earthen vessell, and set it forth into the open ayre foure or five nights, after which time you must wash it in a great quantity of cleere running or fountaine water, to the end it may be free from salt or other filth, and wash it so long in sundry waters in some great bowle, until it come to be very white, Then melt onely this oyntment, and so keep it for your use, wherewith annoynt the places grieved, and in short time it will cure them. + This I had of a famous French Marishall, and I have often used it, and I ever found it to be most soveraigne for all sorts of burnings. But if Hogges grease may not be had then take the fat of Bacon, and wash it well, and it is marvellous good. + Another,

Take fresh butter, and the whites of egges, of each as much as will suffice, beat them well together, till you bring them to a formall unguent, and annoint the places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the fire and cure them soundly. + This is also speciall good. Another.

Take a stone of quick-lime which must be well burned, (that which is best burned, will be lightest) dissolve it in faire water, and when the water is settled, so as all the Lime remaineth in the bottome, straine the cleerest of the water thorow a fine cleane linnen cloath, then put unto this water either the oyle of Hemp-seed, or of the oyle of Olive, of like quantity with the water, and so beating them well together, you shall have an excellent unguent most precious for all sorts of burnings. And the nature of these three unguents be to leave no scarres. Wherefore we apply them for most soveraign remedies as well for man as beast in cases of this nature. + This also I have often tryed, and I have found them all to be most singular.

§ 19.

§ 19. B.

Hippoph. HOw doe you take away bunches, knots, warts, *and* wens, *from a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Theſe kindes of ſorances doe come to a Horſe, by meanes of much rankneſſe of bad bloud, which is engendred of *peccant humours*, which *humours* doe proceed of naughty meat. They are ſo apparant to the *eye*, that any man may point at them with his finger. The way to free your Horſe of them, is firſt: take up ſuch veines as you may know to feed them; then ſhave away the hayre from about the places, and for foure dayes together, lay *Ægiptiacum* to them; at foure dayes end, waſh and bathe the places with ſtrong wine vineger made hot; then take wine vineger one pinte, green coperas and Dyers gals, of each foure ounces, cantharides two ounces, bay ſalt one handfull, make theſe into fine powder, and let them boyle on the fire with the vineger a little, and ſo waſh the ſorances therewith ſcalding hot, and every third day continue thus to doe till you perceive them to dry up. Let the ſcurfe fall away of its own accord at leiſure, if any more ſhall happen to grow forth afterwards, apply the ſame medicine againe, albeit it was formerly cured by the ſame thing: yet I have not ſeen any Horſe to fall into the ſame malady againe, and during the time you have him in cure, let him not come in any water, but keep him in the ſtable warme. ✠ Another cure is this: Firſt (as before) ſhave away the *hayre*, and take up the *veins* which feed thoſe ſorances, then ſixe dayes after, let him *bloud* in the *heeles* to draw away the *humours* downwards: then waſh and bathe him well with hot vineger; which done, take a quart of oyle of Nuts, and Verdegreace powdred two ounces, and a quarter of a pinte of Inke; mixe all theſe well together, and apply it cold to the places, rubbing and bathing them well therewith, and if the knots and warts doe not begin to dry up at the firſt dreſſing, then muſt you begin again every fourth day untill ſuch time as they be throughly cured. ✠ Another, Take courſe honey one pound, Verdegreace in powder three ounces, mixe theſe well together with the fineſt wheat flowre, and ſo bring it to an oyntment, and after you have cleanſed the ſorances as before is ſhewed you, apply this oyntment to the place with a rowler: if there be any warts among the knots, cut them away cleane before you doe apply the ſaid oyntment, and thus doing ten or twelve dayes every other day, he will be perfectly cured. ✠ Another: Shave away the *hayre*, and take up the *veins* as aforeſaid, then waſh and bath the place well, then take mutton ſewet, mallowes, and brimſtone, make a decoction hereof, & when you have very well bathed the ſorances with the ſaid decoction, take the ſubſtance thereof, and putting it between two linnen cloaths, make it faſt to the place over night, and in the morning take it away, which done, apply unto the place this unguent, *viz.*

Bunches, Knots, &c.

Take

Take vineger and mutton ſuet, the gumme of the Pine-tree, new waxe, and roſin of each like much: melt all theſe together (but put in your Cum laſt) and ſo annoint the ſorances with a feather twice every day till they be whole. Of this Cure I never made tryall, but it ſeemeth to be a good one. You muſt not forget in every of theſe Cures to take up ſuch *veines* which in your judgement you may finde to feed thoſe ſorances, and to ſhave away the *hayre* from about them cleane. Now with this other Cure, I will conclude. Waſh and bathe the places with the decoction laſt before mentioned, and lay the ſubſtance to the ſores. Take then new Waxe, Turpentine, and Gum Arabicke, of each like much: melt them to an unguent, and herewith annoint the ſorances; during which time, let him come into no water, and the Poults of Mallowes, &c. muſt be every night applyed till he be whole. Another:

Take (and to conclude) blew ſlate and brimſtone, of each four ounces, Verdigreaſe one ounce, made into fine powder, then take freſh butter four pound, melt it in a ſmall kettle or Poſnet, and ſo ſoon as the butter is molten, put into it all the former ingredients, and ſo let them boyle wel; and when you have brought it to a perfect unguent, take it off, and keep it for your uſe. And when you would uſe it, warm thereof upon a chafing diſh and coles, and annoynt your Horſe therwith upon the ſorance, and that but once, and it will ſuffice. But you muſt let him *bloud* the day before you doe annoint him in the *necke veine*. And at the end of eight dayes, take a quantity of cold Lee, and three ounces of blacke ſope, and waſh the ſorance therewith. This quantity of oyntment will ſerve but onely for two Horſes. Of this Receit I never had occaſion to make tryall; but it was taught me by a famous *Mariſhall* of *France*, who commended it unto me for an extraordinary good Receit; and truely it ſeemes to me ſo to be.

Chap.

Chap. VI.

§. 1. C.

Hippophylus.

What is good to bee applyed to a Horſe, *that hath caſt himſelfe in his* Halter?

Hippoſ. This commonly commeth to a *Horſe* which being tyed down to the manger, his *eare* or *Poule* itching, with his hinder *Foote* ſcratcheth the the place that itcheth, ſo as when he taketh away his *Foote*, the Halter catcheth into the *Paſterne Ioynt*; which he feeling, falleth to ſtriving, whereby he caſteth himſelfe downe, and by meanes of the hardneſſe of the Cord, he is gauled even to the very bone, and many times (if he be not opportunely reſcued) the Halter doth ſtrangle him, and he found ſtarck dead. But if the *Horſe* do eſcape with life, he will be nevertheleſſe terrible gauled, which will ſoone rankle and ſwell, unleſſe cure be preſently adminiſtred. The ſigne whereby to know it, is apparant enough. I will give you only two Receipts for this ſorance, whereof the firſt ſhalbe this; *viz.*

Caſt in a Halter.

Take the leafe of the hearb called Saubſucus, ſtamp it and ſtrayn it, and take only the juyce thereof, and apply the ſaid juyce to the ſorance by waſhing it therewith, after take a linnen cloth, white and cleane, and make it into three or foure folds, ſteeping the cloath in the ſaid juyce, and bind it on to the place grieved: but in Winter when the ſaid Leafe is not to be had, you muſt take the ſecond rinde thereof, and do therewith as before; but then note, that before you waſh and apply the ſaide juyce to the wound, you muſt firſt waſh the ſorance with warme Water, and then apply your ſaid juyce, and he ſhalbe perfectly cured in ſhort time. This I never yet experienced, by reaſon I could never yet meete with the Hearb. This ſecond I have often tryed, and I have found it to bee infallible, *viz.* Make a Rowle of fat Wooll, and ſteepe the ſame in Vineger and Sheepes Suet ſo much as will ſuffice, boyled together till it commeth to bee very thick, and let the Rowle bee full as long, or rather ſomewhat longer then the place gauled: apply this to the ſorance Plaiſter-wiſe, and bind upon it a cleane Linnen cloth, changing it twiſe a day, and in ſhort time it wilbe whole. This is right good. 4.

§ 2. C.

Hippoph. VVHat Cure have you for a Canker?

Hippoſ. This is a very loathſome Sorance, which if it be ſuffred to run long will ſo feſter, and corrupt the place where it hapneth, that it will violently eate, even to the *bone*: if it fall upon the *Tongue*, it will eate the very roote in ſunder; if in the *Noſe*, it will eate the very *Griſtle* through; You may eaſily know this Sorance, for that the places wilbe very raw, and bleed often, and many times you ſhall perceive a white Scurfe to grow upon the place grieved. For it is a moſt *Cankerous Vlcer*, which ofttimes is engendred of a fretting humour. It commeth two waies, that is, eyther of naughty, and corrupt *blood* procured by meanes of unwholeſome meate, or by ſome *Bilious Humour* which came to the *Horſe* by an extreame cold not long before taken, which will cauſe his breath to ſtinke loathſomely. I will deliver unto you ſundry cures for this ſorance, which my ſelfe have experimented, and have found them to be very good. *Canker.*

Take white Wine halfe a pint, Roch Alome the quantity of a Wall-nut, Bay-ſalt halfe a Spoonefull, Engliſh Honey one Spoonefull, Red-Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Honey-Suckle Leaves, Yarrow, Plantine, Bramble-leaves, of each like much, but of every one a little: boyle all theſe in the white Wine ſo much as will ſuffice, till a quarter be conſumed, and then firſt inject of this Water into the ſorance; or elſe if the *Canker* be in the *Mouth*, waſh the place with a clout faſtned to a ſticks end, and ſo dreſſe him therewith twice a day or oftner if you ſhall ſee cauſe, till it be whole. ℞. Another

Take greene Coperas, and Alome, of each one pound, white Coperas foure drammes, boyle theſe in a pottle of running Water untill almoſt the one moiety bee conſumed, then take it from the fire, and put into it of Honey half a pound, then holding up his *Head* with a Drenching Staffe (but yet not too high) with a Pewter or Elder Sering or Squirt, inject it into his *Noſe* (if the *Canker* be there) bloud warme; which done, give preſently his *head* liberty, whereby hee may ſnuffle and blow forth the corruption, and faile not to inject him thus three or foure times one after the other at every dreſſing; and do thus Morning and Evening till it bee whole; which will not be long. ℞ But if it be only a ſore Mouth, and that it come to be a *Canker*, then.

Take of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vineger, and make it thick with powdred Alome, and ſo waſh the ſorance therewith two or three dayes together, for this will kill and deſtroy the *Vlcer*; then heale up the Sorance thus; *viz.*

Take of faire Water a quart, Alome, and Honey, of each foure ounces, Maudeline leaves, red Sage, and Columbine leaves of each

a handfull: boyle all these in the Water till halfe bee consumed and every day twice, that is, Morning and Evening, wash his *Mouth* therwith bloud-warme, and it will heale him. +. Another.

First make this strong Alome Water. *viz.* Take Alome halfe a pound, Hony halfe a pint, red Sage, and Wood-bind-leaves, of each a handfull: boyle all these in faire water, till halfe bee consumed: with this Water and Hearbs, wash and rub the Sores till they become red and raw, then take white Wine Vineger halfe a pint, Alome powdred two ounces, Ginger powdred halfe an ounce, and of life Honey halfe a pint, mix all these well together, and therewith annoynt the sore Morning and Evening, and it will cure him. +.

All these Receipts I have made tryall of, and have found them to be right good. Another.

Take the juyce of the Root *Asphodill* seven ounces, Quick-lime, & Arsnick of each two ounces, beat and incorporate all these together, and put them into a new pot close stopped, and let it boyle till it come to ashes; these ashes you shall apply to the Sorance twice a day, but the sore must be first washed with strong Vineger, as before is taught.

§. 3. C.

Hippoph. HOw cure you that Horse *who hath cast his* Hoofe?

Hippof. This is a troublesome Sorance, yet with care it may be cured: it commeth either by meanes of some Foundring, or by an Accloy, Prick, Stub, Graveling, Quitterbone, or other hurt within the *Foote*, which breaking out above round about the *Cronet*, and in time the *Hoofe* breaking, it falleth from the *Foote*. I neede relate no Signes whereby to know the same. The Cure is thus.

Casting the hoofe.

Take Aquafortis the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape or Drawing Iron, file or draw away the old *hoofe* somewhat neere, then touch the *hoofe* so prepared with your Aquafortis, three or foure severall dressings and no more: This done, annoynt the *Foote* with the Vnguent we doe commonly make for *Horses Feete: viz.* Take Hogs-grease three pound, Pach-grease two pound, Venice-Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet-Oyle one pound: Melt and mix all these upon the fire, and herewith chafe, rub, and annoint the *Coffin* of the *Hoofe* up to the very top; and this will bring a new *hoofe*. +

Take also Turpentine halfe a pound, Tarre halfe a pint, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet Oyle one pint: Melt all these except the Turpentine together till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and so stirre it till it be cold; but before hand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick sole, made fit for his *hoofe*, but wide enough, that it may be tyed about his

Paſterne, and dreſſe his *hoofe* with this medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and ſo put on the ſaid buskin, and faſten it to the *paſterne joynt*, or a little above, but ſo as that the buskin may no way offend or trouble the foot, renewing your medicine every day once till it be whole.

This Receit is alſo moſt ſoveraign for a Horſe that is *hoofe bound*: and as the new *hoofe* beginneth to come, it behoveth you carefully to obſerve where it groweth either harder or thicker in one place more than in another, or crumbleth, or goeth out of order or faſhion any where about the Hoofe, which when you ſhall perceive, file the place with your Rape, and ſo keep the *hoofe* in good faſhion, by which meanes there will come a very perfect *hoofe* againe: which being, put him out to graſſe into ſome moyſt Paſture or Meadow, for that is the onely way to cauſe the *hoofe* to becomme tough.

Hippophyl. *What is the reaſon that in all your medicines in which you uſe Turpentine, you put that in laſt, and not when you put in your other ingredients?*

Hippoſ. Sir, I ſhall give you in a word a ſufficient reaſon for this demand: to wit, if the ingredients which I doe put into any medicine be to be molten upon the fire; as Gums, Pitch, Tarre, Roſin, and the like; if I ſhould put in my Turpentine together at once with the reſidue before it could be ſufficiently molten or boyled, the Turpentine (being a drug ſo ſubtile) would conſume it ſelfe into *vapour*, and by that meanes leave the medicine imperfect, and that is the cauſe why I doe put in my Turpentine evermore a little before I take it from the fire.

§. 4. C.

Hippoph. *IN what caſes doe you* Cauterize, *and what be its vertues?*

Hippoſ. Cauterization or giving of fire is of two natures, *viz. Actuall* and *Potentiall*: your *Cautery actuall* is made by hot burning inſtruments, with which you ſeare and burn thoſe places which be requiſite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure otherwiſe well cured, but by giving of the fire: as in caſe of great impoſtumations, ſtanching of *bloud* in wounds, or in ſearing of *veines*, *ſinewes*, or the like: or elſe in caſe of diſmembring, if other meanes be not at hand, whereby to ſtay the flux of *bloud* without danger of bleeding to death, and ſo likewiſe in very many caſes of this nature, wherein I doe adviſe all men that are not very perfect in giving the fire, that they doe not practiſe upon Horſes of price, but firſt upon Iades, and low-prized Horſes, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand, and to underſtand themſelves in this Art the better: as when they are to uſe the lighter, and when the heavier hand; as alſo that they do make their circles round, and their lines ſtreight and even, and not crooked

Cautery actuall.

or

or waving. For this *actuall fire* is a thing moſt neceſſary for them that doe truely know and underſtand the true uſe and vertue thereof, and therefore it ought to be very carefully, judiciouſly, and moderately applyed, and never but upon good and very conſiderate grounds: which in ſo doing, you ſhall finde it to be a moſt ſoveraigne remedy to hinder and ſtay all manner of corruption whereunto any member may be enclined, provided that in the handling of your inſtrument, you touch not *Muſcles*, *Arteries*, *Sinewes*, *Ligaments*, *Cords*, or the like, for ſo you may utterly lame where you would ſet upright, and deſtroy where you would cure, excepting onely in caſes needfull. For by applying this *actuall fire*, you ſhall joyne and conglutinate parts and *members* ſevered, dry up ſuperfluous moyſture, and ſinke *members* ſwelled: you ſhall beſides bring forth all evill and putrifactious matter congealed and gathered into knots, as Wens, Biles, Puſtils, Exulcerations, and the like: you ſhall alſo aſſwage old griefes, and make perfect all ſuch parts of the *body* as be any way corrupted: neither ſhall you need feare the increaſe of any evill *humours*, by reaſon that the *skin* being ſevered by meanes of the hot iron, it doth ripen and digeſt all manner of putrifaction and matrative ſtuffe, whereby it venteth and paſſeth away much more eaſily, healing and qualifying all griefe and paine, cauſing the *member* which before was ſubject to feſtring and to gangrene, to become the ſounder, and by much the ſtronger, ſo as nothing of diſadvantage will be remaining, but the *ſcar* onely, where the iron paſſed, and the worſt that can be made thereof, will be but a little *eye-ſore*. But then you muſt have a very great regard unto your Inſtruments that they be made according to the nature and quality of the place and *member* which is to be ſeared: for one faſhion will not ſerve in all cauſes; for as the places which are to be *cauterized* are commonly different in ſhape and proportion, ſo alſo ought the ſhapes and faſhions of your inſtruments to be made accordingly. You are alſo to have a ſpeciall care to the heating of your inſtruments, which ought to be done with a right good judgement; for as they muſt not be too cold, ſo ought they not to be too hot, for by that meanes you may eaſily enflame the *cauterized* places too much: Againe, in giving the fire great care muſt be had to the bearing of the hand, for therein conſiſteth very great cunning, and as I have before admoniſhed you to be carefull that you touch not any *ſinew* or *ligament*, ſo no fire is to be given to the diſlocation or fraction of any bone. And as touching the *mettle* whereof your inſtruments are to be made: ſome commend and prefer *gold*, *ſilver*, and *braſſe*, or *copper* before *ſteele* or *iron*: but I will not controule any mans knowledge confeſſing mine own to be the leaſt; Onely thus much I may averre of that little I have (through Gods permiſſion) that having made tryall of them all, yet I have ever in all my practiſe found *iron* and *ſteele* to be the very beſt, and moſt certaine to worke with, of all the other *mettals*, and my reaſon is, becauſe *ſteele* or *iron* will retaine its

its once received heat longer than any other *mettle*, whereby I cannot be so much deceived in my work; for *gold*, *silver*, and *brasse*, as they be sooner made hot than *iron* or *steele*, so are they as soone cold: now *steele* and *iron* mettals are much more substantiall and harder of nature then the other *mettals* be, and therefore as they are somewhat longer before they be hot, so they retaine their heat much longer, which during the time of their agitation, workes more surely: againe, a man cannot tell when those other mettals are hot enough, as also when they be too hot, if you put never so little water to them whereby to allay their over-much heat, they suddenly turne and become so cold as not to be able to make them worke at all; the contrary whereof you shall finde to be in the nature of *iron* and *steele*. And let this suffice for *cautery actuall*. Now I will in a word handle *cautery potentiall*, which as the *cautery actuall* burneth the *flesh* by the hot instrument; even so doth *cautery potentiall* burn the *flesh* by medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees, namely by *corasive*, by *caustick*, or by *putrifaction*. *Corasive* is when that is applyed to the wound wherein is dead or proud *flesh* to corrode or eate it away, by which meanes the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaisters, Waters, or Vnguents which doe carnifie and make good flesh, by which meanes the wound which before was foule, is now become cleane, healed up, and made sound, and these corroding things are commonly Precipitates, Sublimatum, Arsnick, Realgar, Leads white and red, Verdigrease, Allome, Coperas white and green, Vitreall, Saudaraclia Chrysocollo, Origanum, Mercury, Aconitum, Capitellum, Romane Vitriall, Shavings of Oxe or Hartshorne, Red-corall, Spunge of the Sea somewhat burned, Vnguentum Apostolorum, Vnguentum Ægiptiacum, Vnguentum Caraccum, Magistra, Sal-niter, Cantharides, Apium, Aqua-fortis, Ciclamine, Melanacardinum, and many more, which I am enforced to leave out partly for want of memory, and partly for want of time; all which doe burne, eate, and corrode the *flesh*, putting the poore *beast* to micle paine. A *Caustick* is a greater burner, for that being once put to the *skin*, will in short time make a wound where none was before, for therewith we doe use to make issues, and where it is set to the *flesh* or *skin*, it maketh its way in, whereby we may in shorter space administer our *Emplastrum*, for *Caustick* are stronger and more violent than either *Putrifactives* or *Corasives*; for whereas *Corasives* doe work onely upon *skin* broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, spungy and naughty *flesh*: and *Putrifactives* doe ripen, mollifie, and prepare the wound for the *Caustick*; so *Caustickes* do breake *skin* and *flesh* and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worse than any of the two former. Now your *Putrifactives* are such medicines as we do commonly apply to Swellings, which we doe make for the most part of medicines compounded; as Poultesses, rosted-Sorrell, white Lilly roots, and the like, for such things are drawers and ripeners, causing

Cause y potentiall.

Corasive.

Caustick.

Putrefactive.

causing swellings which be hard and fleshy, to become soft, and putrifactive, and to prepare Sorances for the *Caustick*, whose nature is to breake and open, what before the *Putrifactive* had ripened, which otherwise must have beene done by *Cautery Actuall* or by incision. And this I doe hold sufficient to be handled upon this subject; howsoever much more, and many other particulars may be delivered, yet in this consisteth the substance of all, for by reason I aime at brevity, I refer you to Master *Blundeviles Offices*, and to Master *Markhams Master-peece*, who have intreated hereof very accurately.

§. 5. C.

Hippoph. WHat good Charge *have you to be applyed to the* Feet, *wherewith to stop them, when the* Horse *is eyther* Surbated *or in danger of* Foundring?

Hippos. This commeth commonly to young *Horses*, which are sorely ridden before their *Hoofes* and *Feete* be hardned, as also sometimes when *Horses* upon hard riding and long travell are ill shod, this doth not only cause them to bee *Surbated*, but also hazardeth their *Foundring*; which so soone as you do perceive, the first thing you do, is, to cause his *Feete* to be cleane pickt, that no Gravell be remaining betwixt the Web of the Shoo and the Sole, then wash the *Feete* with water and salt, and about an houre after let his feete bee throughly well stopped with the Charge prescribed you in Chapter the tenth, §. the sixteenth of this Booke; and hee will bee well in short time. *Charge for Surbating.*

§. 6. C.

Hippophil. WHat is *the best way to* Cleanse *and* Purge *a* Horse *from all filth, at his first taking up from grasse?*

Hippos. This I have shewed you in the seaventh Chapter of this Booke; but yet I will once againe reiterate it unto you in few words. First therefore, he having beene had into the Stable, the next day, if it be a hot Sunne-shiny-day let his Keeper take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there let him handsomely trimme him (a thing which every *Groome* and *Keeper* knoweth well enough how to do;) then let him take ordinary soft washing Sope, and annoint his *Head* all over therewith, taking a great care that none of the sope or suds, get into his *Eyes* or *Eares*, then wash him with warme Water, and so purge and wash all manner of filth from his *Head* and every part thereof; that done, first wipe all his *Head*, *Eares*, *Eyes*, and *Face* with a warme linnen cloth; and then wipe & rub him dry with wollen clothes: then Sope his whole body all over *Capapee*, leaving no part thereof free, especially his *Maine* and *Taile*, then wash him very cleane with Buck-lee, with a wispe or wollen cloth, and when *Cleanse a Horse.*

you

you have ſufficiently cleanſed him, let him be wiped, rubbed, and made dry, as before you have done his *Head*, & when he is throughly dry, let him be led into the Stable and ſo clothed up with a cleane thin ſoft cloth, and ſhod up at your pleaſure. And by this kinde of *Purging*, trimming, and cleanſing of a *Hoofe*, I have in three or foure houres ſpace ſo altered a *Horſe*, as that his owner hath not on the ſuddaine knowne him.

§. 7. C.

Hippoph. I *Have knowne* Horſes *troubled with ſundry ſorts of foule or* ſore heeles, *all which carry the name of* Scratches *in generall, ſome whereof have* Clifts croſſe, *and overthwart, ſome* Clifts *with* Cracks, *and ſome long* Clifts, *&c. What doe you ſay to theſe Maladies?*

Hyppoſ. I ſay Sir, that every of theſe ſorts are very foule Soraunces, yet ſoone cured, if the *Ferrier* bee ſo well skilled as to take up the *Veines*, before hee apply his Medicines and Remedies. The Maladies do come by Surfets taken by over-heats, by waſhing his *Horſe* when he commeth home hot, by naughty meate, or by corrupt *blood*, the *Peccant Humours* falling downe-wards and ſettling in thoſe parts where the Sorances are, whereby they prove moſt troubleſome to the *creature*, and no leſſe noyſome to the beholders, for the *heeles* be very raw, and do run with loathſome water and matter which doth ſtinke very offenſively. The ſignes need no deſcription. The cure is, firſt to take up the *Thigh-veines*, whereby to ſtop and hinder the falling downe of theſe bad *humours* which do feed them; then clip or ſhave away the *haire* cloſe from about the ſores, then waſh the places with broken Beere and Butter warme, and dry them againe, which done, apply this Plaiſter to the places grieved.

Clifts and Cracks in the Heeles.

Take Sheepes-ſuet, or Deeres-ſuet which is much better, and being molten upon the fire, let it coole till you may hold your finger therein; then put to it ſo much Ry-bran; or (for want thereof) Wheate-bran as will bring it to a ſalve, lay it to the place Plaiſter-wiſe upon Hurds or Tow, and binde a cleane linnen cloath over the Plaiſter to keepe it on, and ſo let it remaine foure or five daies without medling with it, by which time the Sores wilbe throughly purged, and the ſcurfe will eaſily come off; then take old Bores greaſe well rotted, and melt it upon the fire, and when it is ſo cold as was the Sheepes, or Deere-ſewet, put to it the yolkes of Egges ſo much as will ſuffice, and a little Verdegreaſe in fine powder: incorporate all theſe well together, bringing them to an Vnguent, with which annoynt the ſores every day once, untill they bee throughly and perfectly whole. 4. Another.

Take Oyle de Bay foure ounces, Verdegreaſe, and Litarge of Gold both in fine powder, of each two drammes, make all theſe in-

to an unguent, and annoynt the sores therwith morning and evening, till they be whole. In every of these Cures, let your Horse come into no water. ✣ Another:

Take Soot five ounces, Verdigrease in fine powder three ounces, Orpin one ounce, beat all these together into fine powder, and then adde thereto as much common honey as of all the residue; boyle all these together well, putting into it as it boyleth quick-lime, as much as will suffice, keeping it alwayes stirring till it be well boyled, and is become thick: with this oyntment annoynt the Sores twice every day, untill they be sufficiently cured. ✣ Another:

Take hot wood Ashes and Quick-lime, and with common honey and white wine; make it into one body to a perfect Vnguent, and herewith annoint the Sores; and if this malady have not been long upon the Horse, this oyntment will certainly cure him, but if they be old and have run long upon him, then give him the fire, and then dresse the Burning with the oyntment prescribed you in the former Cure. Another:

Take a round iron, and give the fire towards the extremities or ends of the *chops*, and annoynt them every day as before, and assure your selfe the *clifts*, *chops*, and *rifts*, will not increase but diminish, and so in short time he will be whole and sound. ✣ This is speciall good.

§. 8. C.

Hippoph. I *Would gladly know* Hipposerus *something of* Clisters, *and their true natures.*

Hippos. As touching *Clisters*, there be sundry kindes of *Purgations*, and therefore to the end you shall the better understand them and their proper vertues; I will first anatomize unto you the severall degrees of *Purgations*: and by reason I have been much, and that for a long time versed in this subject, I am not ashamed to discover unto you from whence I had my first grounds and principles; for every man (as the Proverb is) must have a beginning; to wit, he must be a *Scholler* before he can be *Master*: for as *Seneca* saith very well, *It is great temerity in any man to take upon him to be a Master, who did never know what it was to have beene a Schollar.* My first rudiments therefore I received for Master *Blundevile*, and after somewhat I attained unto by the help of Master *Markham*, both very well travelled in this Art, the rest I atchieved partly in my *travels*, and partly from my particular *practise* and *experience*. Now Master *Markham* followeth Master *Blundevile* in many things *verbatim*, in the rest in substance, wherein Master *Markham* doth more largely dilate and deliver himselfe, making thereby oft times many things more cleare and apparant, yet they both assent in what they say; *viz.* that *Purgation* is defined by the learned *Physicians* to be the *emptying* and voyding of superfluous

Of Clisters.

Purgation defined.

perfluous *humours*, which doe cumber, peſter, and diſturb the *body* with their peccant condition: affirming that ſuch ill *humours* do breed much bad nutriment, which the learned doe call *Cacochymia*, which when it will not be corrected or amended, either by faire meanes, or by the help of nature, then muſt it be compelled, forced, and driven away by *Purgation*, *Vomit*, *Cliſter*, or *Suppoſitory*. And whereas Maſter *Blundeville* ſaith, that Horſes are not uſed to be purged by *Vomit*, as men be; I in conference with him once asked him the reaſon thereof; he anſwered me, for that the necke of the Horſe was of that length, as not to be able to purge by *vomit*, which for the preſent I tooke for ſatisfaction; I then imagining the thing not to be knowne, untill ſuch time as I travelling into remote parts, where I had frequent commerce with famous *Mariſhals* and *Ferriers*, I at length faſtned upon one eminent for his faculty, who upon occaſion offered, uſed to adminiſter *vomit* to Horſes as frequently as he did either *Purgation* or *Clyſter*: which thing when I well obſerved, I demanded if a Horſe could *vomit*, and to what purpoſe he did adminiſter in that kinde; he anſwered me that a Horſe could *vomit*, and that he oft times adminiſtred for the ſame end, and thereupon both gave me his Receit, and did adminiſter in my preſence, and made me an *eye witneſſe* to the working, not in one Horſe alone, but in ſundry others. But now leaving this to its proper place, I come to aſſoyle your demand as touching *Clyſters*, their natures and vertues. *Clyſters ſecundum vulgus* are called *Gliſters*, but the more learned aſſume the name *Clyſter*, borrowed from the latine word *Clyſter*, from whence the *French* hath it *Clyſtere*. Now whereas all other kindes of Phyſick is received in at the *mouth*, *Clyſters* and *Suppoſitaries* are adminiſtred *per Anum*, whoſe natures for the moſt part are to *purge* the *guts*, and to cauſe the Horſe to voyd, (and to throw forth of his *belly* ſuch *humours* as doe offend him in matter of his health, to allay the ſharpeneſſe of bad *humours*, to cleanſe ulcers, to aſſwage the griefes and paines in the *belly* cauſed by winde or otherwiſe, and ſo likewiſe in many other caſes. Now *Clyſters* are not all of one and the ſame nature, neither are they all *laxatives* (as many doe imagine) or do ſerve to one and the ſame end: for ſome muſt be made to give eaſe, ſome are *reſtringent*, and doe binde, ſome do looſen and *purge*, ſome are to cleanſe *ulcers*, old and long running ſores, and ſome to prepare the *body* the better to receive its *Phyſicke*, whereby it may the better worke, which otherwiſe cannot be adminiſtred without much perill to the life of the ſicke creature. So that a *Clyſter* is (I ſay) commonly given for a *Preparative* or beginning to *purgation*. And a *Clyſter* by cleanſing the *guts*, refreſheth the *vitall parts*, and preparеth the way before. Wherefore I doe admoniſh every *Ferrier*, that when at any time they are to adminiſter *Phyſicke* to a Horſe, whether *Purgative* or otherwiſe, if the Horſe be not at the time ſoluble in *body*, that after *bloud-letting* the next day he give a *Clyſter*, and then may he be the bolder

bolder to administer what he shall thinke most requisite: lest otherwise by giving medicine, without further preparation, he stirre and provoke the *peccant humours*, which by reason they cannot finde present way forth, being hindred by oppilations in the *guts*, through costiveneſſe and ventosity, and other impediments do attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done, but with great hazard to the life of the poore beast.

Hippoph. *But of what ingredients doe you make your* Clysters, Hipposerus?

Hippos. We doe usually make our *Clysters* of *Decoctions*, of *Drugs*, of *Oyles*, and sometimes we adde *salt*.

Hippoph. *What is a* Decoction?

Hippos. A decoction is a broth made of certain herbs, as Mallows, Marsh-Mallowes, Palletory, Camomile, and sometimes of white Lilly roots, and other such like things, which we do boyle in water to a third part, and sometimes we use in stead of hearbs and water, to take the fat of beefe broath, or the broath of a Sheeps head, Milke, Whay, and some such kinde of liquor. *A decoction what it is.*

Hippoph. *What quantity of* Broth *or* Decoction *doe you usually put in, whereof to make your* Clyster?

Hippos. That we doe administer according to the age, strength, greatneſſe, and corpulency of the Horse; for if he be a Horse of a strong and able *body*, of large growth, and stature, fat and lusty; we use to put into his *Clyster* of the *decoction* three pintes, but if he be of a small growth, weake, sicke, feeble, or leane, then we doe put in but a quart of the same at most: of oyle we use to put in halfe a pinte, of salt two or three drams at most, and sometimes we put in Verjuyce, sometimes Honey, as we shall finde cause: *drugs* we use, as Sene, Cassia, Agarick, Anniseeds, oyle of Dill, oyle of Camomile, oyle of Violets, Sugar-candy, &c.

Hippoph. *What quantity of* drugs *is needfull for one* Clyster?

Hippos. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one *Clyster* at most, neither must you exceed of butter foure ounces, and you must be very carefull your *Clyster* be not administred more than bloud-warme.

Hippoph. *What time is fit for a Horse to keepe or retaine his* Clyster?

Hippos. When you give it him, let him be somewhat empty, but before he doe receive it, let him be raked, and then having administred it, let him keep it at least halfe an houre, to the end it may work in his belly, and so do him the more good, and to cause him the better to keep the same; let his *Keeper* (so soone as the Horse hath received it) hold his *tayle* close to his *tuell* for halfe an houres space, or more, for the longer he keepeth it, the more effectuall it will be unto him; the best instrument wherinto give it to a Horse, is a Clister-pipe made of purpose, which ought to be 12 inches in the *shanke*, which must also be put home, and when the *Clyster* is assumed, let the giver

draw away the pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Hippoph. *I pray ſet me downe ſome good Receits of* Clyſters.

Hippoſ. That ſhall I Sir moſt willingly: the firſt *Clyſter* that I ever gave, was to a ſmall *Nag* of a *Gentlemans*, which being very coſtive in his *body*, and refuſing his meat, did droop, languiſh, and pine away; inſomuch as the owner fearing his Horſes life, repaired unto me for counſell; when I had well conſidered the nature of his infirmity, together with its ſymptomes, I held it moſt requiſite to adminiſter a *Clyſter*, which I did, and it was this: *viz.* Take the fat of beefe broth one pinte and an halfe, of good Engliſh honey halfe a pinte, adding thereto of white ſalt two drams, mixe all theſe well, and ſo adminiſter it bloud warme *Clyſter-wiſe*, and ſo ſoone as he hath taken it, clap his *tayle* cloſe to his *tuell*, by the ſpace of halfe an houre together at leaſt, and if then it doe not worke, as I am confident it will, then let one take his backe, and ride him up and down a reaſonable round trot ſome times, (but not ſo as to cauſe him to ſweat) for halfe an houre more, and ſet him up warme cloathed and littered, and ſo let him ſtand upon his trench foure or five houres; during which time he will *purge* kindely; then unbit him, and give him ſweet hay, and an houre after he hath eaten, give him white water, nor let him drink any cold water in a day or two after. And this you ſhall finde to be the beſt remedy for this malady.

1 *Cliſter.*

This I have adminiſtred *ſæpe et ſæpius*, and have done great good therewith: for the nature of this *Clyſter* is, to open and looſen the *Body*, to bring away with it all offenſive *Humours*, to remoove Obſtructions engendred in the *Body* by meanes of exceſſive heat; it cleanſeth the *Guts*, and ſlicketh away all ſlimy ſubſtance which is reſiding in the *Guts*

Hippophyl. *Why but* Hipoſerus *I obſerve a contradiction in you, as touching the quantity of your* Decoction; *for where as you did before affirme that you uſe to put into your Clyſters at the moſt but three pints, and at the leaſt but a quart; you ſay that you did adminiſter to this* Horſe, *but a pint and halfe only, which is under quantity of what you did before preſcribe?*

Hippoſ. Sir, in anſwere hereunto you muſt underſtand that in caſes of this nature, *Phyſick* ought with judgement to be adminiſtred, and the reaſon why I put into the Clyſter of this broath ſo little; was for that the *horſe* was growne very weake, poore, and low of his *fleſh*, and in good yeeres, & was beſides a very ſmall *Nag*, fetched out of *Scotland* from the mountaines of *Galoway* or *Galwin*, and therefore if I ſhould have made his *Clyſter* ſo ſtrong, and have added ſo great a quantity of *Decoction* to him, as I might peradventure have put to a *Clyſter* for a great, large, fat, healthy, or corpulent *Horſe*, I might have repented it; and therefore I made it as I told you, whereby it wrought moſt kindly, & did him that good which I hoped, & deſired: But paſſing from this now, let us proceed to intreate yet farther of *Clyſters*,

Clyſters, and of their ſeverall kinds. Another.

3 *Cliſter Laxative.*

Take Pellitory two handfulls, or for want thereof Melelote two handfulls, or if that may not be had, then Camomile two handfulls, but Pellitory is the beſt if it may be had; boyle it to a *Decoction*, and then adde to it, of Sallet-oyle, and of Veriuice of the Crab, of each halfe a pint, of Honey foure ounces, of Caſſia two ounces, mixe all theſe well together, and ſo apply it bloud-warme *Clyſter-wiſe*. ✠ This we do call a *Clyſter Laxative*, for this will open the *Body* and *Guts* of the *Horſe* very well, it will take from him all noxious and offenſive *humours*; it will carry away all ſpungy matter: it will allay the biliouſneſſe and ſharpneſſe of *humours*; it will cleanſe old *Vlcers*; it will refreſh and comfort the *Vitall parts*, *&c.* But if you doe finde that by giving too great a quantity, your *Horſe* purgeth and ſcowreth longer and more violently than you would have had him to have done, or for feare it ſhould ſtir up in him upon the ſuddaine more bad *humours* than you may eaſily know how to allay, then give him this *Clyſter*, *viz.* Take the aforeſaid *Decoction* one pint, adding thereto as much of Cowes milke, (as it commeth warme from her) and put alſo thereto the yolkes of three new-layed Egges well beaten and well mixed with the ſaid liquour: and ſo give it your *Horſe* bloud warme. This is called a *Clyſter Reſtringent*, for this is only to be applyed to a *Horſe*, that is very *Laxative*, or that doth empty himſelfe too much, which is occaſioned oft times through overmuch debility, and want of ſtrength, or when nature is very much offended: you may apply this ſo oft as need ſhall require. ✠ Another:

3 *Cliſter Reſtringent.*

4 *Cliſter for a fat Horſe.*

Take Mallowes three handfuls, marſh mallow roots cleanſed and bruiſed, and Violet leaves, of each two handfuls, Flaxe ſeed three ſpoonfuls, ſo many of the cloves of white Lilly roots as you may eaſily hold in your hand: boyle all theſe in faire water from a gallon to a wine quart, then ſtraine it, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which muſt be infuſed or ſteeped in the liquor three houres ſtanding upon the hot embers; then put thereto of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and being bloud warme, adminiſter it *Clyſter-wiſe*, cauſing him to keep it at leaſt halfe an houre or longer if you may: and the beſt time to give this is three or foure dayes before the Full and change of the Moon; howſoever it may be given to very good profit (as occaſion may proffer it ſelfe) at any other time. ✠ This *Cliſter* is to be given to a Ketty or fat Horſe, which otherwiſe cannot be kept cleane, for it purgeth *glut* abundantly, and it is alſo principally to be given to a Horſe that is newly taken from graſſe. Another:

5 *A Cliſter for melancholy.*

Take of Whey a quart, of Anniſeeds in fine powder, two penniworth, of the leaves of Mallowes one handfull; boyle theſe till the Mallowes be ſoft, then ſtraine it, then put to it of ſweet Butter foure ounces, which when the butter is molten, adminiſter it bloud-warm. ✠ This purgeth melancholy, it cauſeth a good appetite which before was wanting, it refreſheth the *ſpirits* dulled, and occaſioneth good

good digeſtion if the Horſe be kept warm, and well tended. Another:

6 *Cliſter in caſe of deſperate ſickneſſe*

Take of the oyle of Dill, of the oyle of Camomile, of the oyle of Violets, of Caſſia, of each halfe an ounce, and of browne ſugar candy in powder, three ounces, then take of Mallow-leaves halfe a handfull: boyle the Mallowes firſt to a *Decoction* in faire water, then ſtraine it, and put to the broth all the forenamed ingredients, adminiſter this bloud-warme *Cliſter wiſe*. This is a moſt ſoveraigne *Cliſter* to be given in caſe of deſperate ſickneſſe; it helpeth all Feavers; it is good againſt the Peſtilence, and all languiſhing diſeaſes, moſt excellent againſt Surfets, either by Provender or otherwiſe, and it will occaſion great ſtrength in ſhort time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given. ✠ Another:

7 *Cliſter for the Peſtilence.*

Take the pulpe of Colliquintida, halfe an ounce, (I meane the ſeeds and skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary, and of Wormwood, of each halfe a handfull, of Caſtoreum a quarter of an ounce, boyle all theſe in three quarts of water to a quart; then ſtraine it, and diſſolve into the broth of Gerologundinum three ounces, and of white ſalt three drams, of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and bloud warme adminiſter it *Cliſter-wiſe*. ✠. This I have often proved, and doe finde it to be moſt excellent for the Peſtilence, and to helpe all Feavers. Another:

8 *Cliſters Lenitive.*

Take the decoction of Mallowes, and put to it either of freſh Butter foure ounces, or of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and give it him *Cliſter-wiſe*. ✠ This is the gentleſt *Cliſter* of any before preſcribed; for it is both a *Lenitive*, and a great cooler of the *body*, and doth infinitely eaſe paine. It is the beſt thing can be given to a Horſe that is taken, or againſt Convulſions, or Cramps, and moſt ſingular againſt Coſtiveneſſe proceeding from any ſickneſſe or ſurfet by Provender, foundring in the body, &c. Another:

9 *Cliſter for the Collick.*

Take ſalt water or new made brine 2 pints, diſſolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and ſo bloud-warm adminiſter it *Cliſter-wiſe*. This I never did experience, howſoever I have been oft perſwaded by many able Ferriers, who have averred it to be the moſt excellent that may be had for the Collick, or any ſickneſſe or gripings in the *guts* or *belly*. And let this ſuffice for *Cliſters*: onely by way of adviſe I counſell you that before you adminiſter any *Cliſter*, you firſt rake him; that you put in the Pipe (being firſt annoynted with ſweet Butter or oyle Olive) gently and by degrees, and that you alſo draw it forth very treatably; that you make him keep it at leaſt halfe an houre; that you doe adminiſter it but bloud warme at moſt; that you ſqueeze and preſſe between your hands the bladder ſtrongly; and laſtly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it be either a ſweet Maſh, or elſe white water.

§. 9. C.

Hyppoph. WHat is good to be applyed to a Horſe that is cloyed, prickt, or hath other hurt in the hoofe?

Hippoſ. You muſt firſt with your Butter, Drawing iron, or Paring knife, lay the wound bare as may be; then

Take waxe, Hogs greaſe, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Verdigreaſe two ounces, boyle theſe upon a gentle fire, your waxe and Hogs greaſe being firſt put in and molten, then put in your Turpentine, and laſtly your Verdigreaſe in fine powder, and being indifferently warme, dip Tow or Hurds into the oyntment, and ſo lay it to the Sore, then ſtop and ſplent it up, and dreſſe him twice a day, and this will make him whole and ſound in ſhort time. ✠ But of this more in its due place. *Cloyed.*

§ 10. C.

Hippophylus WHat ſay you to a Horſe whoſe Cods and Stones are ſwelled?

Hippoſ. This infirmity proceedeth from ſundry cauſes, as ſometimes by being bitten with a *Dog*, or with another *Horſe*, or by being ſtung with ſome venemous or evill creature: The French do call it *Enflure de Coullon's*: It commeth alſo by meanes of ſome evill *humours* and corrupt *bloud* which doe fall down to the *cods*, ſometimes after ſickneſſe, and ſometimes of rankneſſe of *bloud* and *ſeed*, for want of a *Mare*. If it come by rankneſſe of *ſeed* or of *bloud*, then let him have a *Mare*, and cover her two or three dayes together, and halfe an houre after, ride him into the water above the *cods* or *ſtones*, againſt the ſtreame, and he will doe well. ✠ But if this diſeaſe come by other cauſes, then *Cods ſwelled.*

Take the Lees of Claret Wine, and Comen-ſeed, made into fine powder, and a little Wheat or Beane flower; boyle theſe together to an unguent, and ſo warme as he may well endure it, annoint the *cods* therewith, which done, draw forth his *yard*, and waſh it, and his *ſheeth* alſo with white wine vineger; and three or foure houres after, ride him into the water above the *cods*, and let him alſo ſtand in the water ſome ſhort time, and ſometimes ride him againſt the ſtreame: doe this every day till the ſwelling be aſſwaged. ✠ This is a very good Cure. Another:

Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, and white ſalt, ſo much as will ſuffice, boyle theſe in faire water to an oyntment, and annoynt the *cods* therewith warme: and then apply this oyntment.

Take Goats greaſe, or for default thereof, Deeres ſuet, the white of an Egge, and Sallet oyle: boyle theſe over a gentle fire, and herewith annoynt the *cods*, but this muſt be applyed after he hath been ridden

ridden into the water and dry againe: doe this every day once till he be well. + This I have often tryed, and have found it to be right good. Another:

First, annoynt and bathe the *cods* in the juyce of Hemlock, and when it is dryed, then

Take Pigeons dung, and new Milke, and boyle it till it be as thick like to a Poulteſſe, and therewith annoint the *cods* every day once. Another:

First let him *bloud* in both the *ſpur* or *flanck veines*; Then take oyle of Roſes and vineger, of each a pinte, and of Bolearmonack in fine powder two ounces: make all theſe into one body, and being lukewarme annoynt the *cods* therewith, and the next day ride him into the water up to the *cods* againſt the ſtreame; then bring him into the ſtable, and when he is through dry, annoynt him againe: thus continuing to do, till he be well. But if the *cods* be ſwolne by meanes of any hurt, bite, or ſtroke, then apply to them this following charge:

A charge for ſwelled cods.

Take Bolearmonack in powder, vineger, and the whites of Egges as much as will ſuffice, well beaten, and wrought together, and annoynt him therewith daily till it be abated, and if it impoſtumate, where you finde it to be ſoft, open it either with a hot iron, or with your inciſion knife, if it breake not of it ſelfe, and ſo heale it up with the oyntment taught you in *lib* 2. *cap.* 10. § 4. and it will ſoone be whole. + This is very ſoveraigne.

§. 11. *C.*

Hippoph. WV*Hat ſay you to the* Collick?

Hippoſ. It is Sir, a diſeaſe which commeth of winde, and therefore we generally call it the *winde collicke*; the *French* call this diſeaſe the *Tranchaiſons*; it cauſeth great gripings, and extreame paine in the *belly* of the Horſe, ſo as he will oft times lye down and tumble; he will alſo ſtrike at his *belly* with his *hinder feet*, and ſtamp with his *fore-feet*, and the paine will be ſo great as to cauſe him to forſake his meat: theſe ſignes I have often obſerved in Horſes perplexed with this malady; and albeit I have ſundry Receits for it, and all or the moſt of them by me tryed and approved good, yet one of Maſter *Blundeviles* and Maſter *Markhams*, I hold inferiour to none of mine, for I have often tryed it; and this is it.

Collicke.

Take a quart of Muskadine, or of ſweet Sack, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon of each halfe an ounce, Sugar two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and give it him bloud warme: then annoynt his *flankes* with oyle de Bay, (but I often uſe to annoynt them with the oyntment of Acopum, I finding it to be much better) then bridle him up, and trot him out a good round trot, or gallop him ſoftly ſometimes the ſpace of an houre untill he doe dung, but if he will not, then take him, or elſe put an Onyon pilled and jagged into his *fundament:*

fundament: then for three or foure dayes, let his drinke be either sweet Mashes, or white water, and keep him warme, and he will doe well againe. ✣ Another: Keep him fasting over night, and in the morning give him this drinke.

Take of white Wine a quart, Fenugrick foure ounces, Bay-berries, and Pepper, of each foure ounces, Graines, and Ginger, of each one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfuls, Sage one handfull, Sengrene one pound, Mints a handfull, stampe the hearbs, and pound the spices, and put them into the wine, and let it boyle a little, then straine it, and put to it of life Honey two spoonfuls, and so give it him bloud-warme. ✣ This I have also found to be very good: notwithstanding if he be a *stoned Horse*, the best cure for him is to have a *Mare*, especially if he be so troubled with the *collicke*, so as that he cannot pisse; besides it helpeth and preventeth sundry sorts of sicknesses and diseases, and strengtheneth nature. ✣ Another:

Take of white Wine one pinte, and three or foure Cantharides: and make them into very fine powder, and give this to the Horse (well brewed in wine) bloud-warme. This I never tryed, for that these flyes being a strong *corasive*, have deterred me, howsoever I have been often invited thereunto by many good *Ferriers*, who have averred unto me, that they have often used it, and have found it to be right good. Another:

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each one ounce; all made into fine powder, and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Muskadine, and let it boyle a while; then take it off, and put to it of Honey one spoonfull; give it him bloud-warme: which done, cloath him up, and litter him, and so let him stand upon his trench foure houres; then give him meat, and an houre after a sweet Mash, or white water. This was taught me by a *Noble Knight*, who said he had often used it. But if your Horse hath the *collicke* and *stone*, then

Collicke and Stone.

Take of white wine one pinte, of Burr-seeds eight ounces, made into fine powder, of Parsley-seed two ounces, in powder also, of Isope, unset Leekes, and Water-Cresses, of each halfe a handfull, of black Sope halfe an ounce; stamp all the hearbs in a morter, and straine them with the Wine, then put to that liquor, your Burre and Parsley seeds, and so give it him bloud-warme; this will breake the stone, and bring it from him with much ease, and cure his *Collicke*. ✠ This I have often administred.

§ 12. *Concerning*

Hippophyl. *WHat Disease is that which is called the* Colt Evill?

Hyppos. It is a disease in the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods* of a *Horse* or *Gelding*, and it commeth to *Horses* by meanes of heat and rankenesse of *seed*; and to a *Gelding*, by weakenesse and coldnesse of *seed*, to the *Horse* through too great abundance of *seed*, which causeth

Colt. Ev.ll. seth a ſtopping in the *pipe* or *conduct* of the *yard*, and to a *gelding* for want of heat and ſtrength to ſend it forth, whereby the *yard* and *ſheath* ſwelleth very much. The beſt way to cure a *Horſe* is to give him a *Mare*, whereby he ſendeth forth his *ſeed* freely, and then two or three houres after ſwimme him, or elſe ride him up to the *flankes* to and fro a pretty while againſt the ſtreame. This diſeaſe is knowne by the ſwelling of the *yard* and *ſheath*; I have cured many *Horſes* and *Geldings* with this enſuing Receit. Firſt ſwimme him, but ſpecially againſt the ſtreame foure or five dayes together, then apply this *Plaiſter*.

Take Beane-meale, and Mallowes, of each one handfull, Hogs greaſe halfe a pound, chop the Mallowes ſmall, then put to the Hogs greaſe, and ſo boyle it with a pinte of white Wine, and when it is boyled, put it into a cloath, and wrap his *cods* therein; and ſo order it as that it may gather like a purſe, and make it faſt ſo, as it may neither fall off, nor hurt him: dreſſe him herewith every day till he be well. ✠ I have had great experience of this Receit: but if you be deſirous to have variety, then looke over Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham*, who are well ſtored.

§ 13. C.

Hippoph. *What is beſt to be given for a* cold?

Hippoſ. There are ſo many and ſo good, as that I am to ſeeke almoſt to know how to begin, they be of ſo many, and ſundry ſorts of them, for ſome are for *colds* newly taken, ſome for old *colds*, ſome for *colds* that bringeth the *Glanders*, &c. Wherefore for *colds* newly taken at firſt, you muſt underſtand (Sir) that a cold newly taken (a thing not to be prevented, by reaſon it oft times commeth by meanes and wayes unknowne) you muſt obſerve firſt, that if your Horſe be propenſe to many bad *humours*, whereof ſome Horſes are more than others, you muſt firſt then labour to expell them by purging his *head*, then ſearch betwixt his *jawes*, and if there you do finde any ſmall kernels, then be you aſſured he hath a new-taken cold, but if he have great kernels, then was not the cold ſo lately taken as you might have imagined; alſo if he doe rattle in the *head*, it is a ſigne his cold is newly taken, or if he doe voyd any thinne matter forth of his *noſe* or *eyes*, or if he hold his *head* into the manger; or if when he drinketh, the water commeth out of his *noſtrils*, or that he cougheth oft, and ſometimes perhaps cheweth mattrative ſtuffe betwixt his *teeth*, &c. Theſe and many others be certaine ſignes of a Poſe, Catarre, and newly taken cold, wherein is no danger if it be taken in time, otherwiſe it will come to a worſe matter; I will now give you ſundry good Receits, moſt of which I have often tryed and found to be right good. Firſt, I hold moderate exerciſe, and ſeaſonable ayering to be marvellous good without further applying

Cold.

of

of medicines, but if you finde that he is much ſtopped in the *head*, then,

Take a ſmall quantity of freſh or ſweet Butter, and of brimſtone made into fine powder; work them together til they be one entire *body*, & of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long wing-Gooſe-feathers, and annoynt them herewith to the very quils on either ſide; which done, rowle them in more of the powder of Brimſtone, and ſo put them up into either *noſtrill* one, and at the but end of the quils, put a ſtrong packthred, which muſt be faſtned over his *pole*, like to the headſtall of a Bridle: and then leap his back, and ride him moderately up and down an houre or longer, and this will provoke him to ſnort and ſnuffle forth of his *noſe* and *head* much of the congealed filth which is in his head, then tye him to the Racke for an houre after, and this will purge his *head* very cleane: then draw forth the feathers, and he will doe well, keeping him warme, and giving him Maſhes or white water every day for foure or five dayes after. This Receit was taught me for more than 30 yeares ſince by a famous *Mariſhall of France*, which ſince I found in Maſter *Markhams Maſter-piece*, but I hold it one of the beſt things can be preſcribed for this Malady. ✠ Another very ſhort, but as good.

Take of Time one handfull, boyle it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, till it come to a pinte, then ſtraine it, and adde thereunto of ordinary Treacle two ſpoonfuls, and give it him bloud-warme. ✠ Another.

An excellent drinke to be given to a Horſe for a new-taken cold, provided he be young, that is, not above five yeares old.

Take of French Barly halfe a pound, put it into a poſnet, and put thereto of faire water one quart, and ſet it upon the fire, and let it boyle a little, then take it off, and draine the water from the Barly, and caſt away the water, then adde the ſecond time the like quantity of water, and boyle it as much as you did the firſt time, and then draine it from the water, & caſt away the water again, then adde once againe the like quantity of a quart of water, as you did twice before, and boyle that alſo ſo long a time as you did the two former waters, draine this alſo from the Barly, but caſt it not away, but keep it, and then adde to the water of Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, make them into very fine powder, and ſearce them, and put the ſaid powder into the boyled water, and adde to it of white ſugar-candy, foure ounces, then ſet it upon the fire in a cleane skillet, and ſo boyle it up untill a third part be conſumed, then take it off and ſtraine it, and give it your Horſe bloud-warme; drench him thus three mornings together, and it will ripen his cold and cauſe it to come away. This is very good. ✠ Another:

Take of white wine vineger the beſt and ſtrongeſt, five ſpoonfuls, and put to it of oyle de Bay one ſpoonfull, warme it upon the fire, ſtirring it well; this muſt be made and given in the morning: but when you doe adminiſter it, you muſt firſt put your drenching horn

into faire water that is good and hot, to keep the medicine from ſticking to the horne, then taking it forth out of the hot water, before the horne can be cold, and whilſt it is yet moyſt with the water, put the one halfe of your medicine into the ſame, and ſo as ſpeedily as may be, convey it into one of his *noſtrils*, and after the other moity into his other *noſtrill*; this done, ride him for halfe an houre moderately, then ſet him up, and cloath and litter him warme, and let him ſtand upon the trench three or foure houres before you give him any meat, and after doe as is accuſtomed to be done to ſicke Horſes in *Phyſicke*. ✠ This I doe approve to be equivalent to either of the two former. Another:

Take water and ſalt ſo much as will ſuffice, brew them well together, it then being made bloud-warme, give it him, and doe after as is uſuall. ✠ This for a new taken cold I have often uſed, and I doe finde it to be ſingular good to be given to a young Horſe. Another:

Take of oyle de Bay, of Anniſeeds, and of Licoris, of each one halfe penny worth, and of browne ſugar-candy a penny worth, make all theſe into fine powder, and being well mixed, ſew it up into a fine linnen rag, and ſo faſten it unto the Bit or Snaffle of the Horſe, and ſo ride a journey, and travell him, and in ſhort ſpace he will be cured, if it be a new-taken cold onely. ✠ This I have alſo proved, and I doe finde it good, for it will cure both cold and cough if it be rightly applyed, to wit, with riding and exerciſe. Another:

Take of white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, Rubarb and Aloes, and Saffron, of each two drams, Nutmeg, Sene, Agarick, Bay-berries, Duke or Dutch powder, and of Cordiall powder, of each halfe an ounce: mixe all theſe together, and then adde to it of Honey foure ounces, warme them well in a Pipkin, and give it him to drinke bloud-warme, but let him ſtand upon the trench at leaſt three houres before, and three houres after, neither let him for all that day eate any Oates, but in its ſtead, let him have Wheate-bran, and let his drinke be that day either a warme Maſh, or white water, and no cold water, but this white water for foure or five daies after, and put into his Provender for ſome time Fennugrick made into groſſe powder. ✠ This is a moſt ſoveraigne drinke to be given for a cold. But if you do finde, that his *head* is very much oppreſſed with a *Poſe* or *Catar*, then give him this drinke twice a day, *viz.* Take Fenugrick one ounce, and boyle it in a good quantity of water till it burſt, then mixe with the decoction thereof wheate meale, as much as will ſuffice, and give it him to drink. Another:

Take a quart of the beſt Ale, and warme it upon the fire, and put into it ſo much Tobacco made into fine powder, as you can take up upon a ſhilling at twice, and as much dryed Roſemary in fine powder as you may take up upon a ſhilling at once; give him this to drink bloud-warme in a morning faſting. This drinke is called *Potio-*

Necotiana,

Necotiana, but I did never make tryall thereof, for that I once ſaw it given by a *Ferrier* to a ſicke Horſe, which ſo wrought with him, as that with all his *Lenitives* and *Cordials*, the *Ferrier* had much labour to ſave the life of the poore Horſe; this potion was ſo violent, which notwithſtanding drove the Horſe into a moſt dangerous *Calentura*. But the next is better.

Take a Hens egge, and make a hole in the top thereof, no bigger than that you may get forth the white and yolke: Then take Tarre and ſweet Butter, of each like much, as much as will ſuffice, incorporate theſe well together into one body, and ſo convey it into the egge ſhell, and give it your Horſe three or foure mornings together, and either journey him gently, or elſe ride him three or foure houres after it; which done, bring him into the Stable and cloath him up warme, and litter him well, and let him be well rubbed, and ſo keep him upon the trench two houres after, and then give him Hay, and an houre after give him either a warme Maſh, or white water; and this will help a cold newly taken. ✠ This will not make him ſicke, for I have often made tryall of it. Another as good as this.

Take the long white moſſe that groweth upon an old dry Parke pale, one handfull, chop it ſmall, and put it into a pottle of good Ale or Beere, till one halfe be conſumed; then take it off, and ſtraine and preſſe it hard, and put into the liquor of Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each halfe a ſpoonfull, and a piece of ſweet Butter, and ſo give it him three mornings together faſting, and it will cure him. ✠ Another, if he hath taken a cold or poze in the *head*.

Take a quart of Muskadine, or ſweet Sacke, of Nutmegs, Pepper, Cominſeed, Graines, Bay-berries, of each three drams, all made into fine powder: boyle theſe a waume or two, then take it off, and put into it a piece of ſweet Butter, and give it your Horſe three mornings together bloud-warme; let him all thoſe three dayes be kept warme, neither let him drinke any cold water, but either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, yea and that three or four dayes after; and during theſe three dayes, let him faſt three houres after the receit of his ſaid medicine. Alſo three dayes after when you perceive the cold to begin to breake from him, and to rot, cauſe him to ſneeze, by blowing into either *noſtrils*, either the powder of Tobacco, or of Pepper, or of Elebore. ✠ Another which will cure a longer-taken cold, yea though it be accompanyed with a dry cough and ſhortneſſe of breath, or purſiveneſſe, which I had of Maſter *Markham*, and I have often made tryall thereof, and it hath done cures which have been held impoſſible to have been effected.

Take of the conſerve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and diſſolve it in a pinte and a halfe of ſweet Sacke, and ſo give it your Horſe with a horne in a morning faſting, and ride him gently a little after: and thus doe ſundry times untill you doe finde the infirmity to decreaſe.

But

Hippoph. *But* Hippoſerus, *this Conſerve of Elecampane I doe ſuppoſe is hard to come by, for ſurely every* Countrey Apothecary *hath it not; how then may a Man make this Confection you ſo much commend?*

Hippoſ. Sir, this Conſerve I make my ſelfe, and I will give you the receipt hereof. You muſt underſtand that there bee two kinds thereof, the one is called particularly a *Preſerve*, and the other an abſolute *Conſerve*. The firſt is *Simple*, the other *Compound*, both very ſoveraigne for this Infirmity, but the *Conſerve* is evermore to bee eſteemed the better, and I do counſell you never to be without either of them: for they will keep the whole yeere through, if they be reſerved cloſe ſtopped. Wherefore as touching the firſt which is the *Simple*, you muſt preſerve it like as you doe all other greene rootes, and ſo keepe them in a Gally pot or Glaſſe in a good quantity of its owne Sirop, till you have occaſion to uſe the ſame; and when you are to uſe it, let it bee beaten well in a Morter together with its Sirop and refined Sugar made firſt into very fine powder. Now your *Compound* or *Conſerve* is thus made: Firſt, let your roots of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the beſt and youngeſt Rootes can be had, which muſt be kept alſo in a Gally pot or Glaſſe cloſe ſtopped, in a dry and warme place where they may not give againe; and when you would uſe them, take ſo much as will ſuffice, and beat it in a Morter with the Sirop of Colts foote, and the powder of refined Sugar, ſtill working it till you have brought it to be a perfect *Conſerve*, and ſo given to your *horſe* in good ſweet Sacke or Muskadine. The firſt of theſe two, to wit, the *Simple*, is of moſt excellent uſe, for it helpeth any ordinary cold or ſtopping, it comforteth the *Lunges*, enlargeth his *Winde*, purgeth the *Head* from all filthy matter, and diſſolveth many other obſtructions, as well in the *Body*, and *Head*. But the *Compound* or *Conſerve* worketh better effects in the *Body* of the *Horſe*, eſpecially if the Malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any taint, in the *Lunges*, *Liver*, or inward parts: This *Conſerve* in time, by frequent uſe thereof will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable, it helpeth the heaving of the *Belly* and *Flankes*, it cauſeth the *Horſe* to take his *Wind* kindly and temperately, and freeth him of his dry Cough which before did greatly annoy him; but if you have not theſe *conſerves*, take this other Receipt little inferiour to the former for theſe Maladies.

Take of the ſirop of Colts-foote, one ounce, of Elecampane rootes dryed, Anniſeeds, and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, all made in to fine powder, browne Sugar Candy powdred one ounce, which muſt be divided into two parts, then take ſweete Butter ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo make this into three Pills good and ſtiffe; which done, rowle them in the other moyty of your powdred Sugar Candy, and ſo give them your *Horſe* faſting, then ride him gently for halfe an houre, and after ſet him up warme, and let him faſt three houres after, cauſing him to be well rubbed: let him drinke no cold

water

water, unleſſe it be with exerciſe, and let his Hay be ſprinkled with water, and his Oats wet in ſtrong Ale, or elſe with Beere. ℔. Another very good.

Take the cankerous Moſſe of an old Pale, or of the lymbes of an old Oake two handfulls, chop and ſhred it ſmall, and boyle it in a pottle of new Milke, and with it a roote of Alecompane, let theſe boile together till halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and preſſe the Moſſe and Roote very well; which done, put to it of ſweete Butter the quantity of a Ducke-Egge, and ſo give it him in a morning faſting bloud warme, and ride him moderately an houre after: then ſet him up, cloath him and litter him warme, and order him as is accuſtomed with *Horſes* in *Phyſicke*: Let him have this drink three mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough wet or dry, or his Poze if he have it. But if you find your *Horſe* to be ſtopped in the *Head*, and that he voydeth filth, and ſtinking matter out from his *Noſe*, then ſhall you every morning adminiſter this fume.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts-foote made into powder, of each two drammes, then with Venice Turpentine worke them into a ſtiffe paſte, and make them into ſmall Cakes the breadth of a ſixpence, and dry them a little, and then put fire into a Chafing-diſh with coales, and ſo put one of theſe Cakes upon the coales, covered with a Tunnell, and ſo fume him, and this not only during his *Phyſicke*, but at other times after, and let his drink be either ſweet maſhes or white water. ℔. Another, if your *Horſe* hath a new taken cold, then give him this Caudle, which I have often uſed and do find it to be very good.

Take the yolkes of foure new layd Egges, and beate them well together and diſſolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three good Nutmegs with a little Anniſeeds & Licoras, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can take up upon a ſixpence; put theſe into the Ale, with a peece of ſweet Butter ſo much as will ſuffice, and two ſpoonefulls of ordinary Treacle, and of browne Sugar Candy foure ounces, warme all theſe upon the fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, then give it him bloud warme, foure or five mornings together; and this is an infallible cure. ℔. Another very good.

Take a pottle of ſweet Wort, three heads of Garlick pilled, of ordinary Honey halfe a pound. boyle theſe till one moiety bee conſumed, and give it your *Horſe* three mornings together: Then for three mornings together after, give him theſe Pills. Take Boxe leaves and Harts-tongue, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, ſtamp them well together, and with ſweet Butter make it into Pills; and ſo every morning give him three of theſe Pils. ℔. But if he hath a cold which breaketh and runneth from him, then muſt you be carefull to keepe his *Head* and *Pole* warme, by putting on a double Hood, and every

Morning

Morning fasting, ride him with two long Goose-feathers put up into either *Nostrill*, well dipped before hand in Oyle de Bay, and with a strong Packthread from the ends of the quils fastned over his *head* like a Headstall of a Bridle, so as the feathers may not get forth, and fasten also to his Bit or Snaffle one Rooteor two of *Polipodium*; having beene all night before laine steeped in the oyle of Spike, and every time you ride him annoint the Bit thus before hand prepared with the said Oyle, and when he commeth home, put upon his *pole* his double hood, and rub him against the hayre all over, especially his *Neck* and *Pole*, (for friction in this case is most soveraigne) then whilst he is yet warme perfume his *Nose* with Frankinsence, Storax, and Beniamin, of each like much; do this nine daies together, and let his drinke be white water: for all Rhumes having had time to worke their malice will become dangerous, yea and many times cureless.

+. Now if your *Horse* hath taken an extreame cold; then:

Take Cloves, Nutmegges, Ginger, Galls, or the fruit of the Oake and Cardimums, of each like quantity so much as will suffice, and of Fennell-seeds more than any one of the other Ingredients, make them into fine powder, and searce them, then put two Spoonefulls of this powder to a quart of Sack or muskadine, and straine these into two penny-worth of English Saffron, and the yelkes of two new laid Egges well beaten together, give this to your *horse* bloud warme fasting, and let him have none other drinke than white water for three or foure daies after, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and every day at noone give him the blades of reed, or the leaves of Sallows to eate out of your hand, for they be very good for him, and cooling for his *body*: do this divers mornings together, and it will not only cleanse his Cold, but also open his Pipes, and set his wind at liberty. But if your *horse* have an inward cold, which lyeth lurking in his *Lunges* or *Stomacke*, then give him this Medicine.

Take Oyle de Bay and good Tar, of each the quantity of three Wallnuts, halfe as much Hony, browne Sugar-candy in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe these with a quantity of powdred Brimstone so much as will suffice, and sew them into a fine linnen cloth, and ty it to his Bit or Snaffle, and so ride or journey him moderately till all be dissolved into his *body*, then bring him into the stable, and cloth and litter him warme, and three houres after give Hay, and after a warme Mash; use him thus three mornings together and longer, if you shall see cause. +. Another.

Bran prepared.

Take bloud from him, if you have ground for the same, otherwise not, then insteed of giving him Oates, you shall give him bran boyled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost full of water, & when it beginneth to boyle, put in your bran, and let it boyle a full quarter of an houre at least, then take it off, and let it stand till it bee almost cold, and about foure or five a clocke in the morning, give him this Bran so hot as he can eate it; then for his drinke,

drinke, give him the ſame water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be covered and littered warme; if it be in Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, for that will take away his *ſtomacke*, and make him faint and ſweat too much; and at night give him the quantity of what you can put into an Egge-ſhell among his Oates of this powder following, to which you muſt keep him for eight dayes together or longer, if you ſhall ſee cauſe. You muſt underſtand that the boyled Branne is that which dryeth up all his groſſe and corrupt *humours*, which was the cauſe of his cold. Now the powder is this, *viz.* Take of Comen-ſeed, Fenugrick, Silleris-Montani (*alias* Siſileos) Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linſeed, of each two ounces, Quick Brimſtone ſixe ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and let them be well mixed: this muſt be given with his Oates, as is before inculcated; but he muſt firſt be watered; and then preſently let him be well rubbed, *body*, *necke*, *pole*, *legges*, *breaſt* and *belly*, and cloathed and littered warme, and an houre before you give him his Oates, put into his Rack a little ſweet wheat ſtraw, and ſo (I ſay) let him eate thereof the ſpace of one houre or better, and then give him his Oates mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleaſure; and thus doing in ſhort time you ſhall perceive his Cold to be quite gone, and the ſooner if he ſhall be moderately ayered an houre after Sun-riſing, and an houre before Sun-ſet, if the Sunne doe ſhine. Now if this Cold bring with it a violent cough, as is often ſeen, then give him the aforeſaid Wheat Branne boyled, together with the ſaid powder with his Oates, but then not above three or foure dayes, for that the ſaid powder diſperſeth the corrupt and groſſe *humours* that are in the *body*, which doe occaſion the ſaid cough, and when you doe perceive that he hath purged ſufficiently, keep him notwithſtanding to his white water, but an houre before you doe water him;

Take a ſticke of the bigneſſe of your thumb or better, of well nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen clout about it four or five times, firſt dipped in oyle de Bay, and put it into his *mouth*, and with ſome piece of leather thong, or other ſmall cord faſten it to either end of the ſticke, and ſo faſten it over his *eares* like the Headſtall of a Bridle, like as Smiths uſe to do when they burn a Horſe for the Lampas, and let him drinke with this ſticke in his mouth; which done, let him ſtand with it thus in his mouth an houre after at the leaſt, to the end he may licke and ſucke up the ſaid oyle, and when he is to eate his Oates, put among them this other powder following, *viz.*

Take Fennell ſeed four ounces, Fenugrick two ounces, Cardimums one ounce, pound theſe groſly, otherwiſe he will blow them away in eating his Oates, and with his Oates put every night of this powder one ſpoonefull, and keep him warme, and ſo uſe him as before is preſcribed. ❧ Another.

Take Ivy-berries and dry them, and make them into powder, and

ſo give it to your Horſe in Ale or Beere. This I never tryed, and this is onely for a cough. Another for a cough. Take of ſalt one pinte, of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, oyle of Anniſeeds one ounce, browne ſugar Candy in powder three ounces, give this with your horne to your Horſe three mornings together, and it will rid him of his cough, and heale any putrifaction in his *lungs*, or any other inward parts whatſoever. This alſo I never tryed, but it was highly commended to me. Another Receit for a cough, which I have found to be very good.

Take two new laid Egges, and open the crownes, and get forth ſome of the white, and then put into theſe Egges ſo much of the powder of Brimſtone as you can take up upon a ſhilling into either Egge: give him this every morning for ſome time, or till you ſee the cough to goe from him. Another:

Take three new laid egs, and put them into a pinte pot, then put ſo much of the beſt and ſtrongeſt white wine vineger into the pot as will very well cover the Egges, and let them lye in the Vineger 24 houres at leaſt, then beat the Vineger and Egges together ſhels and all, and ſo give it your Horſe cold, and then ride or walke him an houre, and againſt his comming in, have this drinke in a readineſſe, and give it him, *viz.*

Take Iſope, Anniſeeds, Licoris, Graines, Long Pepper, Gentiana, Elecampane dried, of each three drams, make all the ſpices into fine powder, and ſtamp the Iſope well, and ſo put all into good Sack one pinte, and of good Ale alſo one pinte, and of Honey one ſpoontull, and ſo boyle it, and give it your Horſe bloud-warme, and ſet him up, and cloth him, and litter him warme, cauſing him to faſt three houres after it, and give him no cold water, but ſweet Maſhes or white water; and this will cure him, for it is an approved good receit. + Another very good.

Take Wheate meale, Anniſeeds, Licoris, Polipodium of the Oake dryed, Elecampane dryed: make all theſe into powder, and mixe them well: Take two ſpoonfuls of this powder, with a head of Garlicke pilled and bruized, mixe all theſe well together, and with your Wheate meale and honey as much as will ſuffice, make pils thereof to the bigneſſe of a great Walnut, and give your Horſe every morning three or foure of theſe Pils, and ſo ſoone as he hath taken them, give him two new laid Egges with their ſhels. X Another:

Take of life hony three ſpoonfuls, of the beſt and whiteſt refined loafe ſugar one ſpoonfull and an halfe, made into fine powder, dryed Elecampane root made alſo into fine powder one ſpoonfull, and of Amber-greece two graines, mixe all theſe very well together, and put it into an Egge-ſhell, and give him hereof at night late, and in the morning faſting, and ſo let him faſt for three houres after, and be the cough never ſo violent, it will both ſtay and cure the ſame. X This is right good, for I have had very great proofe thereof. Another: Take

Take Benjamin and Brimſtone made into very fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, give this your Horſe with one pinte of Muskadine, putting into it two new laid Egges ſhels and all, broken and well beaten together, let it be given three mornings together. This was commended unto me for a ſpeciall good Receit, but I never did make tryall thereof. Another:

Take Nettle-ſeeds, Anniſeeds, Reyſins of the ſunne ſtoned, Elecampane in fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, make all the ſpices and ſeeds into very fine powder, and cut the Reyſins very ſmall, and ſo boyle all theſe in Muskadine or Sacke a quart, with three ſpooneſuls of life Honey, then ſtraine it, and give it him three mornings together bloud-warme. This I never proved. Another:

Take of Rue one handfull, chop or ſtampe it very ſmall, and put to it a penny worth of Anniſeeds in very fine powder, make it up into Pils with ſweet Butter, and ſo give it your Horſe. ✕ This I have found to be moſt ſoveraigne for a Horſe that hath a cold whether newly or formerly taken, either wet or dry cough; it is alſo moſt excellent for a Horſe that hath been over-ridden, or any way wronged by labour. Now if his cough be ſo violent as that it may endanger his *winde*; then,

Take Calamint, Gentiana, Comin-ſeed, Licoris, Elecampane, of each two drams, make all theſe into fine powder, and confect them with life Honey and Butter mingled together and molten; and when it is cold, make it up into Pils; then rowle them in the powder of Anniſeeds, and give him of theſe Pils three or foure every morning, for two or three mornings together faſting, and after keep him warm, and let his drinke be Maſhes or White-water. ✣ But if hee hath a Cough of the *Lungs*, give him theſe Pills. Take the Rootes of Mallowes newly gathered, Elecampane Rootes newly alſo gathered, of each one handfull, ſlice them thin, and boyle them in faire water with Barly two handfuls, till the roots be ſoft, then ſtraine forth the liquor, and put into it a penny diſh of ſweet Butter, of life Honey three ſpoonfuls, and as much Beane meale as will make all into a paſte; then make it into Pils, and rowle them up in the powder of Anniſeeds, and give him three or foure of them every morning faſting for three or foure mornings together, keepe him temperately warme, and during the time he taketh theſe Pils, let his drinke be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and every day about mid day, give him boyled Barly or Brewers graines. ✠ Another for a Horſe that hath his *winde broken.*

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horſe-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine powder, and then make them up in Bals or Pils with ordinary Hony ſo much as will ſuffice: let theſe Pils be made of the bigneſſe of an Egge, and give him of them three at a time, fourteen or fifteen dayes together, or longer if you ſhall ſee cauſe, and let him not drink any cold water, during the time,

and for a while after the giving of his Pils, and let his exercise be very moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and his Oates wet with good Ale or Beere, and in short time he will be well and sound againe. + This is a most approved good Receit, with which I have done cures held impossible to have been effected. Another:

Take Comen halfe an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, dryed roots of Elecampane three onnces, make them into fine powder, and then boyle them in a pottle of Ale or Beere to a quart, then straine it, and give the liquor to your Horse in a morning fasting bloud-warme, and ride him moderately upon it, two or three houres, then set him up warme, and use him *ut supra*. This I never tryed, but he that gave it me did highly commend the same unto me. Thus have I given you many Receits for a cold, and such diseases which are thereof dependant, whereof many are to my knowledge right good, and by my selfe experimented, with which I have done cures which have been held very strange, and beyond expectation.

Hippoph. *Truely* Hippocrus *as touching these maladies, something there is in them, wherein I doe earnestly desire to be yet better informed; and first I would gladly know what be the diversities of the diseases which doe proceed from Colds; and how wee may come to know one malady from another.*

Hippoc. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand, that from a cold taken doth issue many infirmities, if the said cold be not speedily prevented; as namely, first Coughs, as well wet as dry, Catars, Murs, Rhumes, Pose, Ratlings in the *head*, Kernels, and inflamations under the *Chaule*, with Bunches, Knots, Pustils, &c. It causeth also Hide bound, Feavers, Head-aches, Frenzy, Sleeping-Evill, weeping-Eyes, Canker in the Nose, Strangles, Quinsey, to have Gourded or swolne legges: It will cause the *hayre* to stare, it will in time cause the mourning of the *Chine* (if there be such a disease) shortnesse of breath, pursiveness, purtifick, broken winde, (also if there be such a disease) Freliſed, broken and rotten lungs, glanders incurable, if it be not in time prevented, griefe and paine in the *breast*, Antecor, it will also cause the evill habit of the *stomacke*, dropsie, loathing of meat, foundring both in the *body* and *feet*, tyrednesse, putrifaction and inflamations in the *bloud*; it will also cause many diseases and inflamations in the *liver*, together with the ficcity and aridity thereof, obstructions, opilations, costiveneſſe and stoppings both in the *body* and *pores*, a consumption in the *liver*, the overflowing of the *gall*, the unnaturall working of the *spleene*, the Yellowes, Stavers, the Collick and gripings, *belly-bound*, laxe and *bloudy-fluxe*. All these and many more diseases and maladies doe depend upon this one onely infirmity we call the *cold*, and therefore how needfull a thing it is for a man who is the true-lover of his *Horse*, to be carefull what in him lyeth both to keep his *Horse* from cold taking, as also to know how to cure the same

same so soone as it shall appeare, in performance whereof no small diligence and art is required.

§. 14. C.

Hippoph. *You make question whether or not there bee such a disease which is so commonly called the Mourning of the Chine, why is there not such a disease?*

Hippos. No truely, there is no such disease, for that which is called the mourning of the *Chine*, is none other thing than a plain and rank Glanders, which very few of our *English Ferriers* doe know how to cure, which hath its first source and origen from a cold which being let run long, commeth to be a Glanders, which in time doth waste the *liver* of the *Horse*, whereby he dyeth; for if for your better understanding you shall be pleased to open *Horses* which doe dye of this disease, you shall evermore finde the *chine* and *pith* of the *Horse* to be sound and whole, but the *liver* perished, and his *lungs* putrified, by reason whereof the *Horse* long before his death casteth forth of his *nose* much corrupt and stinking matter and filth; wherefore this malady cannot in reason be stiled the *mourning of the Chine*, but meerely the Glaunders; and for remedy thereof, you shall have sundry excellent Receits when we shall come to handle this disease, and therfore till then I forbeare to speake any more thereof.

Hippoph. *You question also another disease called a* broken winde, *why this is so generall a malady as that no man but giveth it that name, what doe you call it?*

Hippos. Sir, as touching this infirmity, I say there is none such, for you must understand that this disease so vulgarly called a *broken wind*, is truely a shortnesse of breath, or a taint or defect in the *winde*, Pursiveneſſe, the Asmat or Purtisick, as Artists doe call it. Three causes there be of this infirmity, two whereof proceed from a cold formerly taken, and the third from another cause, as shall presently be demonstrated. The first is an exulceration of the lungs, which doth begin from a cold; the second by clinging and growing together of the *lights*, whose origen came also of cold; and the third is a dislocation of the *lungs*, and this last commeth by meanes of some violent or sudden act or motion of the body, or by some fall whereby the *lungs* were become dislocated, displaced, or turned in the *body* of the *Horse*, every of which doe occasion *shortnesse of breath*, by reason the lungs have not power sufficient (being the bellowes of the body) to open, shut, and play at pleasure; and this is the cause why the Horse heaveth at the *ribs* and *flankes*, fetcheth his breath short and hot at the *nose*, wheeleth, and oft times reeleth when he is put to little that doth straine his *winde*, and therefore so long as he is kept in the stable at dry and hard meats, he heaveth more then when he is at grasse, for if you doe wash his Provender in Ale or Beere, and sprinkle his Hay with

with water, you ſhall perceive him to heave the leſſe: but when he runneth at graſſe, he heaveth ſo little, as hardly to be ſeen, and the reaſon is, for that the *Horſe* having naturally a very moyſt body, the cold which he hath taken doth ſo condenſe and make thicke thoſe *humours* which before were thinne, which doe (whilſt they were *teoues*) paſſe moſt eaſily through the pores, but now they are become thick, viſcous, and ſlimy, ſtopping the pores in ſuch ſort, as hardly to be able to *breath*, but with great labour and no leſſe paine, which doth provoke him to heave and lift, by reaſon that the *lungs*, *pores*, and *pipes* are ſo ſtopped and oppreſt, as not to be able to performe their function and naturall office, for which nature hath created them, and beſides thoſe ſtoppings doe conſtraine him to cough and labour ſo extreamely, as to endanger oft times the breaking of a *veyne*, from whence enſue many more inconveniences then this one: nevertheleſſe you may have meanes to help his *winde*, but to recover him perfect and ſound againe, I dare not abſolutely promiſe you, and if you be ſolicitous to underſtand more of this ſubject, to ſave both your owne labour and mine, if you will be pleaſed to peruſe Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham*, they are able to give you ample ſatisfaction.

§. 15. C.

Hippoph. *WHat meanes have you to helpe a* conſumption?

Hippoſ. We have two kindes of *conſumptions*, the firſt is called the dry malady, the other the conſumption of the *fleſh*: as touching the firſt, which commonly commeth at the firſt of a cold taken, then it exulcerateth the *lungs*, which in the beginning ſendeth forth thinne matter from the *noſe*, but after when it is growne more tough and viſcous, it runneth no more, but cauſeth a maceration and leanneſſe through the whole *body*, whereby he droopeth and pineth away, and albeit he eateth and drinketh, yet it is without appetite, his meat doing him little good. The ſignes to know it are theſe; his *belly* will be gaunt, and he will be Hide-bound, his *fleſh* will conſume almoſt to *skinne* and *bones*, if you ſtrike him on the *belly*, it will ſound hollow, his *haire* will ſtare, neither will he caſt it in due ſeaſon, when other *Horſes* which be ſound will doe, he will cough hollow and faintly: the *Horſe* that is troubled with this diſeaſe, well may he be kept for ſome time alive, but long he cannot be, for the malady is incurable, if it be too long let runne, and therefore I leave him to Dogs and Crowes in his languiſhing plight. The other *conſumption* is that of the *fleſh*, which alſo beginneth of a cold formerly taken, which for want of remedy in time, occaſioneth a generall diſlike and maceration throughout the whole body: it commeth from immoderate labour or travell by violent heat and cold taken upon it: it commeth alſo by riding him into the water after a great heat given, and then

Dry Malady.

ſet

set up presently negligently, as once it hapned to a young *Nagge* of good mettell and spirit, and of very great hope, the owner of which *Nagge* delivered him to an *Ambler* to pace, who whilst he had him in agitation, hearing Hounds abroad made in to them, who rodde him hard all day to the death of the Hare, then comming home hot and all in a sweat, neere to the *Amblers* House was a River with a Water-Mill, where he set him up to the skirts of the Saddle, & then brought him into the Stable where was neyther cloath, litter, or other thing to keepe him warme, or wherewith to rub him, at which time hee tooke so desperate a cold as never after to be cured: for in short time after, he brought him to the *Gentleman* that did owne him, when upon his comming home the *Nagge* drooped, forsooke his meate, and became very sick; the *Gentleman* desired me to endeavour the best I might for his recovery, for that he loved the *Nagge* well. I ignorant of the cause of his Malady, went as I thought according to Art, I tooke *bloud* from sundry *veines*, I gave him a *Suppository*, and after certaine *Clysters*, which I assured me were most needfull for him, all that I did administer wrought very kindly and well, but yet nothing could provoke in him an appetite, or be the meanes of any amendment, I then sayed him then with frictions, and Cordialls, but all was cast away, ayring or ought else would not prevaile; then I perswaded the *Gentleman* to turne him to grasse, it being in the middle of *May* and a very seasonable time, for I found him to bee inwardly sound, he ran at grasse about a month, but still grew weaker, and every day more meager then other, and at length he grew to be so much enfeebled by continuall languishing as that being downe, he was not able to rise, but with helpe, in fine, shortly after the *Nagge* died: then for my better experience I would needs have him opened, which being done; a sounder *body* in a Horse could not be seene, but I discovered the cause of the disease and death of this *Nagge* in his *skinne*, for it being taken from him, you might most evidently see the *Fat* which did ly next unto his *belly*, *brisket*, *ribs*, and *sides*, to be so caked and hard, as that it, not being dissolved, the *Nagge* could never after enjoy himselfe, which caused him to wast and dwindle of his *flesh*, and languishing dy, which so soone as I espied, I presently told the *Gentleman* the owner of the *Nag*, that the *Ambler* had given him that Infirmity (the *Nagge* being then very fat) and after in his heate put him into the water, which the owner examining found to bee most true, as well from the report of honest neighbours who lived adjacent to the *Ambler*, as (after some small pressure) from the ingenuous confession of the very *Ambler* himselfe. And this I think fit to bring you for an instance, to the end you may be the more carefull in avoyding the like inconvenience, and be the better able to judge of a Malady of this nature. But now as touching the best cure for a *Consumption* of the *flesh* (albeit there be many) yet I can recommend but only this one, which both Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* have

Consumption.

Conſumption of the fleſh.

have recorded, which is this, *viz.*

Take a Sheepſhead with the wooll on, cleave it, waſh it, very cleane, and boyle it in a gallon of faire water, untill the fleſh come from the bones, then ſtrayne the liquor from the fleſh, and put into the broath of refined loafe-Sugar halfe a pound, of Cinamon, conſerve of Roſes, conſerve of Barberies, conſerve of Cherries, of each three ounces, and give your Horſe of this broath a quart, every morning faſting bloud warme, uſe this till foure or more Sheepſheads be ſpent, and after every of theſe drinks let him be walked abroad, (if the weather be warme and not windy) otherwiſe walke him in ſome barne, or warme place, and let him faſt two or three houres after, & let him not drinke any cold water in fifteene daies after at the leaſt, but let his drink be eyther ſweet maſhes, or white water, and for his Diet let that be what himſelfe beſt liketh, and that given by little at once and often: and by this meanes he may recover both *Fleſh* and ſtrength againe in reaſonable time, ✠. Nevertheleſſe when he hath gotten *Fleſh*, depart with him ſo ſoone as may be, leaſt upon any hard travell he happen to relaps, as is moſt probable he may. With this Receipt I have recovered three Horſes, whereof one was a Horſe of a high price.

Hippoph. *But tell me I pray you, were it amiſſe (for this diſeaſe) to take* bloud *from him before you* drench *him?*

Hippoſ. Yea, that it were Sir very much amiſſe, for ſo to do, were certaine death, for in caſes of *Conſumptions* you muſt take no *bloud* at all, but rather labour to cheriſh the *bloud* he hath, for his debility and feebleneſſe wilbe ſuch, as that he conſuming ſo much in his *Fleſh*, you muſt rather endeavour to procure his ſtrength then any way to hinder the ſame, which the loſſe of *bloud* may moſt eaſily do. Neither muſt you be too buſie in adminiſtring unto him *Purges*, but *Cordialls*, as *Diapente*, *Diateſſeron*, *Duke* powder, *Cordiall* powder and ſuch like reſtoratives, alſo by giving him good meat, as good ſtrengthning bread and hartning, well made and of purpoſe for him, if he will eate bread, ſometimes boyled Barley, and Oates, alſo boyled Beanes, and ſuch like hearty meat, as will reſtore him, and to give him ſometimes about midday a quart of ſtrong Ale or Beere, is very good, and will greatly comfort him. And thus keeping him warme, feeding him, and ordering him well, you may in time recover him againe. ✠. And this is the beſt Counſell I can give you for this Infirmity.

§. 16. C.

Hippoph. *Now what ſay you to a* Convulſion *? How doe you cure that?*

Hippoſ. A *Crampe* and *Convulſion* is one and the ſame Malady, which is a violent contracting or drawing together of the *Sinewes*, and

and *Veines*, and *Muskles*, as well through the whole *Body*, as in any one member of the ſame: yet doth it not alwaies apprehend or ſeaze the whole *body*, but takes one member or other as, ſometimes it laieth hold upon the *Eye*, ſometimes upon the *Tongue*, the *Iawes*, *Lips*, *Legs*, *&c.* which albeit it commeth by ſeverall meanes, yet principally it comes eyther through cold in the *body*, or elſe for want of *bloud*, or laſtly by over much *purging*. The ſignes to know this diſeaſe are moſt eaſie, for that *horſe* that is therewith troubled, will have that member (for the time the fit is upon it) ſo ſtiffe, that a man with the utmoſt of his ſtrength is not able to ſtirre the ſame, by reaſon that the *Sinewes* and *Muskles* wilbe ſo much contracted as not poſſibly to bring the limb to its priſtine ſtate but only by rubbing and chafing, the limbe or member with warme cloths, and after the fit is over, it were very requiſite to ſweate him in the Stable in his cloaths, for two or three houres together, and if the Malady bee in the lower parts, as in the *Legges*, then let that member which is taken be wiſped up with thumb-bands of Hay made wet firſt, and after when the member is thus wiſped, to caſt thereon cold water, and after this his ſweating, let his whole *body* (but eſpecially the member taken) be annoynted with the oyntment of *Acopum* before mentioned in the ſecond booke *cap.* 14 §. 1. *A.* and to give him ſome of it inwardly with ſweet Sack, or Muskadine: and thus have I recovered ſundry *horſes* perplexed with this diſeaſe, giving him two or three drinks after of *Diapente* & then to keepe him warme, and to continue him for ſome time with ſweet maſhes or white water, but when you come to give him cold water againe, let it be with exerciſe and ayrings after Sun riſing, and before Sunne ſet, the Sunne ſhining, and when there is no wind, or other cold nipping weather. But if you have not of this *Acopum* in a readineſſe, then apply this *bathe* or oyntment to the greived place or *member*, *viz.*

Convulſion.

Take Pinpernell a good armefull, Primroſe leaves, Camomile, Crow-foor, Mallowes, Fennell, Roſemary, of each ſix handfuls, & fine up-land Hay, cut & made about Midſomer, when the ſtrength and heart of graſſe is at the beſt, a good quantity, put all theſe into a Lead or Chalderon, and fill up the Chalderon with faire water, and ſo let it ſteepe eight and forty houres, then boyle it untill the hearbs be ſoft, and *bathe* the the greived *member* therewith foure daies together, morning and evening warmed, which done, apply ſome of theſe hearbs to the places or limbs greived and keep them on with a thumb-band of Hay, wet in the ſaid decoction, and every day about noone anoynt the ſaid viſited *member* with Petroleum, and Nervall, and Oyle of Spike, mixed together, and keep him warme, give him good meat and maſhes or white water, not only during the time of his cure, but a good time after, and let his ayrings be temperate, and his exerciſe moderate, and take heed of waſhing him after labour, for that probably was the cauſe of his *Convulſion*. ✠. Another.

Take ſtrong white Wine vineger, and Patch-greaſe, *alias* Peece-greaſe, of each like much, melt them upon a gentle fire, then with Wheat-flowre make it into a Poulteſſe, and apply it to the grieved *member* good and warme, renewing it morning and evening, but before you doe adminiſter this charge (by holding a barre of iron, or a chafing diſh of coales neere) let him be annoynted with Petroleum, Nervall, and Patch-greaſe, and oyle of Spike, of each like much) very well, and after binde on the charge all over the grieved place, dreſſe him thus morning and evening, and give him moderate exerciſe and ayrings, and let him have Maſhes and white water to drinke, and keep him warm. This is very good ✠ Another:

Firſt rake him, then give him the Cliſter preſcribed in booke 2. chap. 11. § 8. Cliſter 4. then let two men (on either ſide of the *horſe* one) rub him well with ſoft cloaths all his *body* and *limbs* over, eſpecially the diſeaſed *limb*, then cloath him up warme, and let him ſtand upon the trench foure or five hours, to the end the Cliſter may work the more kindly, after give him meat and white water, and ſo feed him for that day. But I muſt tell you, that ſo ſoon as you have given him this Cliſter, and before his friction, give him this drink whereby to cleanſe his *body, viz.*

Take of white wine one pinte, Aloes halfe an ounce, Agarick half an ounce, all beaten very ſmall, and infuſed in the Wine, putting thereto of the pureſt clarified Hogs-greaſe one ſpoonfull, or for want thereof (and which is much better) of ſweet Butter ſixe ounces, and give him this bloud warme. The next day prepare in a readineſſe this unguent.

Take of ſtrong Ale two quarts, and of black Sope two pound, boyle them together till they look black like Tarre, and herewith annoynt, rub, and chafe him all over that the unguent may ſinke in: that done, cloath him up, and ſtuffe him warme that he may ſweat well, but ſtuffe *head, necke,* and *breſt* well, let him ſweat thus two hours, then coole him by degrees, taking now a little from him, then a little. till he be brought to a good temper againe, then keep him ſo, and about one of the clock at afternoon, give him a warm Maſh, or white water, and then ſome Hay, and an houre after that Provender. Let not this drink be given him above once during his whole Cure, but his *Cliſters, Sweats,* and *Frictions* till he be well; yet the *Cliſters* not every day neither, and let his drinke be white water, wherein Mallowes have been boyled, unleſſe ſometimes you give him wherewith to comfort him a ſweet Maſh, but if he will not drink his white water boyled with Mallowes, then let him have it without, and let his food be that which is ſweet and very good. This did I never try, but two ſeverall *Ferriers* who lived more then 100 miles diſtant the one from the other, gave me this Receit *verbatim* without ſcarſe altring one word, and they both proteſted unto me they have cured ſundry *Horſes* which have been ſorely perplexed with this diſeaſe.

Hippoph.

Hippoph. *What meane you by moderate and temperate* ayering *of a* Horſe ?

Ayering.

Hippoſ. I doe meane by moderate ayering, that he be not forth in ayering too long, and by temperate ayering, that a ſicke *Horſe* if there be cauſe why he ſhould be ayered, it be not done too late in the evening, nor too early in the morning, for that ſuch kinde of ayerings will take too much from a Horſe that is feeble or ſick, but in ſuch caſes, let him be walked to his ayerings in a warme evening, an houre before ſunne-ſet at leaſt, and in a morning an houre after the ſunne is up, eſpecially if the winde be not too high, or blow too cold, and that the ſunne ſhine warme: for by ayering before ſunne riſing, and after ſunne ſet (like as is to be uſed with Running and Hunting *Horſes*) will make a fat ſtrong *Horſe* both ſo poor and leane, as not to have a Crow of *fleſh* on his back, as the proverb is, and ſo feeble as not to be able to arite being layed, and therefore give not ſuch kinde of ayerings to a *Horſe* that is infirme; but thoſe which I do tearme the temperate ayerings, will greatly comfort the ſpirits of your *Horſe*, give him a very good appetite to his meat, and encreaſe his *fleſh* and good liking, whereas the late ayerings will be (as I ſaid before) very noxious to ſicke, diſeaſed, or leane *Horſes*.

§ 17. C.

Hippoph. *How doe you helpe a Horſe* that groweth *coſtive* or *belly-bound*?

Coſtiveneſſe or Belly-bound.

Hippoſ. The nature of this diſeaſe is ſuch, as that the *Horſe* that is therewith troubled, cannot diſcharge himſelfe but with great paine and trouble, his ordure comming from him both very dry and hard. *Horſes* that are kept too much to hard, dry, and hot meats, are moſt incident to this malady; ſometimes it commeth by eating too much Provender, eſpecially Beanes, Peaſe, Tares, or Wheat, which albeit theſe graines be more hearty then any other, yet they ſiccicate and dry up the moyſture, becauſe they beget more heate and coſtiveneſſe in the body, then other graines doe, yea and *winde* too, and bad *humours* cauſing obſtructions: and ſometimes this coſtiveneſſe commeth to a *Horſe* by reaſon he hath been kept too too ſpare a dyet, as is uſually ſeen in *Horſes* in dyet; for this hot and dry food doth ſuck up (like to a ſponge) the *flegmaticke* moyſture of the *body*, giving way thereby that *choller* is become the more predominant, ſo that the meat he eateth cannot be ſo well digeſted. This is a diſeaſe very perilous, and the origine of many maladies: and it is eaſily knowne by its ſymptomes. And you may cure him after this manner, *viz.*

Take the decoction of Mallowes one quart, Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, or freſh Butter halfe a pound, *Benedicte laxative*, one ounce, give him this bloud-warme cliſter-wiſe, and then clap his *tayle* to his *twell*, and ſo cauſe him to keep it halfe an houre at leaſt, being walked

up and downe, then ſet him up warme, and it will worke, whereby he will empty himſelfe, and in due time give him a ſweet Maſh, and after Hay, and ſo keep him to Maſhes or white water two or three dayes, but withall faile not to rake him before you adminiſter your Cliſter. ✠ This is a moſt excellent Receit which you ſhall finde in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 6. § 7. Cliſter i. c. ✠ There be many other good *ſuppoſitories*, and Cliſters, which I have already and will hereafter ſet you down, which be very ſoveraigne for this malady.

§ 18. *C.*

Hippophyl. WHat diſeaſe is that we call the crowne-ſcab; *Hyppoſ.* This ſorance is a ſcab or cruſt which groweth upon the cronet or top of the *hoofe*, next unto the *hayre*; it is a filthy ſtinking and cankerous diſeaſe, and not onely troubleſome, but painefull to the beaſt, and it commeth commonly in the winter, whilſt the *Horſe* is in the Stable, like as doth the Scratches, and it is ingendred firſt by reaſon the *Horſe* from a *Colt* till he came to be handled, was for the moſt part kept in moyſt, wet, and cold grounds, for no *Horſes* are inclinable unto this diſeaſe, but thoſe that are bred up in ſuch like grounds. The ſignes to know this malady is, that the *hayre* will ſtare about the *coronet*, and become thinne and briſly. The way to cure the ſame is,

Crown ſcab. Firſt to waſh and bathe the place well ſo farre as the ſcab or ſorance goeth, which is commonly round about the *coronet*, then ſhave or clip away the *hayre* cloſe; then

Take Turpentine, tryed Hogs-greaſe, and honey, of each like much, a little of the powder of Bolearmonacke, the yelkes of two Egges, with as much wheate flower as will thicken it by working it to a ſalve, and apply this *plaiſter-wiſe* with a linnen cloath to the ſorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole, but let him not come into any wet during his cure. ✠ This is a very good one. Another:

Take old Chamberly, and ſet it upon the fire, and as the ſcumme ariſeth, take it off, then put to it of white ſalt as much as will ſuffice, and as the ſcumme ariſeth the ſecond time, take it away; with this liquor waſh and bathe the ſorance three or foure times a day till it be whole. ✠ Another very good which I have often uſed.

Take ſoft ſope, tryed Hogs-greaſe, of each halfe a pound, Bolearmonacke in fine powder, as much as will ſuffice, Turpentine foure ounces, make all theſe into one body, and ſo plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the place, binding it on with a clout that it come not off, renewing it daily till it doe leave running, then waſh and bathe it in vineger warmed, till the ſorance be cleane dryed up. ✠

§. 19. *C.*

§. 19. C.

Hippoph. *How doe you take away a* Curbe?

Hippoſ. This is a ſwelling a litle beneath the *Elbow* of the *Hough* upon the great *Sinew* behind, and above the top of the *horne*, which cauſed the *Horſe* to halt eſpecially when he beginneth tobe hot, for by reſt it payneth him the leſſe: it commeth either by a ſtraine, or by carrying of ſome heavy burthen, or elſe he taketh it hereditarily from his *Sire* or *Damme*. The ſignes to know it is, by the long ſwelling in the place before mentioned. The cure is.

Curbe.

Firſt, ſhave away the hayre, then with an Incle or Filliting bind the *Hough* ſtreight above the joynt, then with a ſmall ſticke beat, rub, and chare the *Curb* like as you uſe to doe in the cure of the *Splent*, then with a Fleame or Knife pierce the *skinne* through in two or three places, and ſo with your *Thumbe* thruſt forth, and cruſh out the corrupt *bloud*, and after convey ſo deepe as you can get into every hole the bigneſſe of two barley-cornes, of *Arſnick*, and ſo having bound up the place let it ſo remaine by the ſpace of foure & twenty houres, then open the place, and anoynt it every day once with molten Butter, till it be whole. ✠. Another.

Take Wine Lees one pint, a porrenger full of Wheate-flower, of Cummine in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe all theſe well together, and being made warme upon the fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it every day once, by the ſpace of three or foure dayes together, and when you do perceive the ſwelling to be almoſt gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with Pitch and Roſin molten together, which muſt be applyed warme, to the end, the charge may ſtick on the better, and then preſently clap on Flocks, and let it ſo reſt till of it ſelf it fall awav, and let him come in no wett or water by the ſpace of twelve or foureteene dayes after, and he wilbe perfectly cured. ✠. Another.

Take a Barre of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it neere to the place till it become warme, then with your Fleame prick ſix or ſeven holes through the *Skinne*, and anoynt the Sorance with Nervell, then take of ſalt a Spoonefull, and of Verdegreace a penny weight in fine powder, with the white of an Egge, let theſe be well incorporated together, then take a little Flax or Hurds, and wet it in this Medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in ſhort time it wilbe perfectly cured. ✠. All theſe receipts I have uſed, and I have found them to be right good.

Chap.

Chap. VII.

Quæst. D.

Hippophylus.

Dangerous sickneſses how it commeth.

Well now that we have made an end of this Chapter, let us proceede on to another: Tell me I pray, how may a Dangerous Sickneſſe *come to a Horſe?*

Hippoſ. Sir, that which you call *Dangerous Sickneſſe* is of divers natures, proceeding from ſundry cauſes, having everyone its diſtinct ſymptoms, and therefore do require ſeverall remedies; wherefore that you may the better know how and when any ſickneſſe commeth, obſerve I pray, but theſe foure principles following, and you ſhall never erre. *viz.*

1 Firſt, that all ſickneſſe commeth either by heates in over violent exerciſe, as when the Horſe (*v. g.*) hath his greaſe molten, the *heart* overchaged, the *vitall bloud* forced from the inward parts, and the large *Pores* and *Orifices* of the *heart* ſo obſtructed, and ſtopped, that the *ſpirits* cannot returne backe to their proper places, ſo as the Organs of the *Body* cannot rejoyce, but by this meanes the *body* muſt of neceſſity languiſh, founder, and mortifie.

2 Secondly, dangerous ſickneſſe commeth alſo by colds, as by indiſcreete or negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exerciſe, and then is the *head* perplexed, the *eyes* dulled, and pained, the rootes of the *tongue* inflamed and ſwelled, the *lunges* with rhumes tickled and offended, occaſioning ſtrong, and laborious coughing, and the *Noſthrills* often diſtilling and powring forth filthy and corrupt matter.

3 Thirdly, dangerous ſickneſſe commeth alſo by ſurfet of foode, either by eating too much, or too little of what is good, or alſo of that which is not wholeſome, ſo as the firſt killeth, or at leaſt debilitateth the *Stomacke*, oppreſſeth the *Heart*, and ſendeth up thoſe evill fumes into the *Head* by which are ingendred the Stavars, Frenzies, and other mortall diſeaſes, the ſecond putrifies the *bloud*, and converts all its nutriment into corruption, from whence proceedes the Yellows, Farcin, Feavers, Mainges, and other ſuch like peſtilent, leprous and loathſome diſeaſes, which ſuffocating the *heart*, and clogging the *Stomacke*, dilates and ſpreads it ſelfe univerſally over the whole *body*, leaving no *member* free, and confoundeth every *faculty*, and *member* thereof.

Fourthly, and laſtly, dangerous ſickneſſe comes alſo by *accident*,

as

as when a *Horſe* (*v. g.*) receiveth ſome deep or perilous wound or hurt, either in his *body* or elſewhere in ſome *vitall* or dangerous part, by meanes whereof nature is ſo farre offended, as that incontinently a general ſickneſs ſeazeth upō the *Horſe*, which (not in opportune time prevented) death ſuddenly enſueth; and theſe infirmities are called by the more expert *Ferriers*, *Accidentall feavers*: for if you be pleaſed to obſerve well, you ſhall finde the *Horſe* ſometimes trembling, ſometimes ſweating, ſometimes cold, ſometimes burning, but never in good temper. And thus much briefly of theſe foure points or grounds, which be the occaſion of moſt *dangerous ſickneſſe Accidentall*.

Hippoph. *What meanes hath a man to know the ſignes, whereby to diſtinguiſh theſe ſeverall ſickneſſe the one from the other?*

Hippoſ. Very eaſily Sir, for it ſickneſſe doth proceed from the firſt of theſe foure principles, to wit from heats, then are the ſignes theſe, *viz.* The heavineſſe of his countenance, ſwelling of his limbs, eſpecially of his hinder legges, ſcowring and looſeneſſe of his body, in the beginning of ſickneſſe ſhort, and hot breath, a loathing and forſaking of meat, &c. 1

If from the ſecond, *viz.* cold, then the ſignes are, a dejected *countenance*, dulneſſe or ſleepineſſe of the *eyes*, Puſtils or hard knots under the *Chaule*, yea and many times inflamed kernels and ſwellings ſo high as to the very roots of the *eares*, a rotten or moyſt inward hollow cough, he many times chewing betwixt his teeth, ſome looſe, filthy, and flegmaticke matter, immediately after his coughing, which in ſome caſes is not an evill ſigne by reaſon that thereby the cold rotteth and goeth away; whereas on the contrary ſide for a *Horſe* to cough cleare and dry, doth demonſtrate a dry cough, which hath long time lurked in his *body*, ſorely feſtring and tormenting him inwardly, which is very difficile to cure, but at length diſcovers it ſelfe by reaſon the *creatures* languiſhing, and generall falling away of his *fleſh*, for his *belly* will be ſhrunke up, and when he drinketh much of the ſame, water will iſſue forth of his *noſe*, his *eyes* will be either watry, or materative, and runne continually through paine which he hath in his *head*, procured by meanes of this cold, and his *hayre* will be rough and ſtaring, &c. 2 *Dangerous ſickneſſe how to know*

From the third, to wit from ſurfet by meate, either naturall or unnaturall; the ſignes be theſe, a dulneſſe of the *head*, *eyes*, and *countenance*, yea and that in ſuch a violent manner, ſo as the *Horſe* will be hardly able to lift up his *head* from the manger, a dull and dead *eye*, and ſunk into his *head*, his *eares* prickt upright, and the tops of them cold, as alſo his upper *lips* and *ſheath*, his pace reeling and ſtaggering, and (if the diſeaſe be farre gone) he will be of a frenetike and mad comportment, as by biting and gnawing the Racke and Manger, or whomſoever ſhall come within his reach, and ſometimes by biting of himſelfe, and by beating his *head* againſt the wall and floore, and 3

other

other ſuch franticke poſtures and paſſions: but if the malady be not yet gotten into the *braine*, or doe not occupy that place; but that it hath ſettled it ſelfe more intrinſecally in the *body* or *heart*, then you ſhall perceive by the whites of the *eyes*, the *lips* and *tongue*, this diſeaſe to be the plaine yellowes, and if the diſeaſe be farre gone, then will the Yellowes be diſperſed all over the whole *skinne*, and the *Horſe* ſweat in the morning when firſt you come to him, as if he had beene lorely ridden, or had an *Arcticke feaver*, and have a deſire rather to be lying then to ſtand, and when he ſtandeth, it will be with his *fore-legs* ſtraddling the one from the other, and he will alſo have a looſeneſſe or ſcowring, eſpecially if the *Horſe* hath taken his ſurfet by eating too many Oates, or other provender, and by drinking ſuddenafter, which you ſhall the better know, becauſe the *Horſe* will in his *ordure* voyd ſome of his Oates or other graine whole, as not being diſgeſted, by reaſon that the cold water ſo ſuddenly taken, upon his over-haſty eating (not being all chewed) will coole his *ſtomacke*, and make him to ſwell: beſides the *Horſe* will have a generall loathing and forſaking of his meat, which is likewiſe the common ſymptome of every kinde of ſurfet, and almoſt every degree of ſickneſſe.

4 The fourth and laſt ground or principle is, that if his infirmity and ſickneſſe doe proceed from *accidentall* meanes, then are the ſignes, a perplexed and troubled *body*, ſometimes ſweating at the roots of his *eares*, in the *flankes*, and behinde the *ſhoulders*, againſt the *heart*, ſometimes he will be taken with a trembling all his *body* over, and ſometimes with a glowing and burning in his *vitall parts*, as in the *temples* of his *head* againſt his *heart*, on the inſide of his *fore-legs* next to the *body*, and on the inſide of the *hinder legs*, alſo his mouth will be dry and hot, his *tongue* will be ſubject to be enflamed and furred; in fine he will have a loathing and averſion from meat; but onely that he muſt eate, and a great draught and thirſt, and a great longing to drink cold water, and when he hath drunke what him liketh, yet will he nevertheleſſe deſire to keep his mouth continually in the water. Many other ſignes there be, whereby a man who is any thing at all skilfull and cautelous, may by obſerving, diſcover when his *Horſe* falleth into any infirmity and ſickneſſe, as when you doe perceive that his countenance and poſtures do alter from their uſuall cuſtomes, then be you well aſſured, your *Horſe* doth alter and decay in his health. Alſo you muſt obſerve his feeding, and how he doth eate, as whether with a good *appetite*, or with a weake *ſtomacke*, the firſt being good, the ſecond unkindely and unhealthy, as alſo how he doth diſcharge or empty himſelfe, and how his *urine* and the colour of his *doung* or *ordure* doe alter, which if his *doung* or *excrements* be pale, and full of graines, then is it good, but if blackiſh and dusky (according as I have before in its due place handled) then be you confident, he hath much heate and dryneſſe in his *body*, by which meanes probably enſueth great and dangerous ſickneſſe: very many other ſigns of ſickneſſe

neſſe there are, as the not caſting or ſhedding of his hayre, in its due and proper ſeaſon, *hide-bound*, coſtiveneſſe, laxativeneſſe, the clinging up of his *belly* to the *flankes*, continuall diſlike, drowſineſſe, dulneſſe and heavineſſe, when he hath wanted due ordering and feeding, &c. all which ſymptomes are ſo well known to every man, as that they need not be handled further in this place.

Hippoph. *But now* Hipposerus, *ſithence you have thus farre diſcourſed, what are the cauſes and ſignes of dangerous ſickneſſe, I would gladly you would ſhew me how I may either prevent ſickneſſe before it commeth, or cure the ſame at firſt appearance?*

Hippoſ. Sir, in this caſe two things are principally and diligently to be conſidered. The firſt is to prevent ſickneſſe before it ſhall approach, whereby it ſhall not offend at all, and the ſecond is, to take it at the firſt appearance, and ſo to prevent and hinder it, whereby to prevent the danger thereof. As touching the firſt, the beſt way will be three or foure dayes before you put forth your *Horſe* to graſſe, to take *bloud* from him, and the next day to give him the drinke of *Diapente* halfe an ounce, with a pinte and a halfe of ſweet Sacke, which you ſhall finde mentioned in *lib.* 2. § *ſequent*, and ſo by degrees to abate his clothes if he have had any, and it is alſo very good that when you doe take *bloud* from him, you doe receive it in a *baſon* or *bowle*, and therewith annoint his *backe*, *loynes*, *fillets*, *breaſt*, and all ſuch like places about him with the ſaid *bloud*, for it is moſt wholeſome, and doth comfort the *body* very much, cleanſeth the *skinne*, and begetteth a generall rejoycing throughout all the *vitall parts* of the *Horſe*. But if you have no intent to put him forth to graſſe, and yet would prevent inward ſickneſſe, then faile not (when you have beſt meanes) to give him reſt take no *bloud* from him at all, (unleſſe you may juſtly ſuſpect his *bloud* not to be very good) but give him onely a drinke of *Diapente* or *Diateſſeron*, for either of theſe are the greateſt and beſt refiners and purifiers of the *bloud* of any thing can be adminiſtred, and doe cauſe the *Horſe* to avoyd all yellow-*cholerick-matter*, and all evill indigeſted *humours*, which may any way putrifie, inflame, or corrupt the *bloud*. And obſerve moreover, that in adminiſtring of theſe drinks, if Sacke or Muskadine be not at hand to be had, that then in the place of a pinte and a halfe of either of theſe (which is the proportion I limit to a *Horſe* of a ſtrong, able, and corpulent *body*, but to a ſmall or weake *Horſe* one pinte) you doe take of good Ale or Beer, one quart, and the ſame quantity of *Diapente* or *Diateſſeron* formerly preſcribed: and if the Ale or Beere be made warme upon the fire, it will be the better. And thus much as touching the firſt poynt, to wit, the prevention of ſickneſſe before it come; that it may not offend your *Horſe* at all. Now I come to the ſecond poynt, *viz.*

1

Dangerous ſickneſſe how to prevent.

The cure of ſickneſſe at its firſt appearance, whereby to ſend it packing before it hath taken deep root in the *body* of the *Horſe*, ſo that it ſhall never come to danger of *life* or *limb*, then thus in a few words.

2

Dangerous ſickneſſe how to cure.

You muſt be very cautelous and vigilant in obſerving your *Horſe* well, and to pry into him ſo narrowly, as to diſcover the leaſt ſymptome of ſickneſſe, that may be able to peep out its *head*, which ſo ſoon as you ſhall deſcry, then preſently (if reaſon ſo require) let him *bloud*, and three ſeverall mornings together, give him the drinke of *Diapente*, and let him be kept warme, well rubbed, and have Maſhes or white water during that time, and ſome dayes after, which will be a very good meanes for him to remaine in perfect health, ſtrength, and good eſtate of body; But if this *Diapente* or *Diateſſeron* be not to be had on a ſudden, then

Take Selendine halfe a handfull, as well the roots as the leaves, well waſhed and picked, Worm-wood and Rue of each halfe a handfull, boyle all theſe in ſtrong Ale or Beere, from a pottle to a quart, and then ſtraine it well, and put into the liquor of ſweet Butter halfe a pound, and of ordinary Treacle two ſpoonfuls, and ſo give it him bloud warme. ✠ And this is moſt effectuall to the ends before recited.

§. 2. *D.*

Hippoph. *YOu ſpeake very much of* Diapente, *giving it very great commendations, I pray how doe you make the ſame?*

Hippoſ. The receit of *Diapente* doth merit many more *Encomiums* than I am able to give it, for that it is ſo pretious and ſoveraigne a powder for *Horſes*, and it is compounded of five ſeverall ſimples it it be rightly made. It is (I ſay) the moſt ſoveraign thing which can be given to a *Horſe* by way of drench, whereby to cure him of very many inward diſeaſes. It is good againſt all infectious maladies, as feavers of what nature ſoever, all ſorts of Peſtilences, or contagious colds, Coughs, wet or dry, Glaunders, Surfets, inflamations in the *bloud* or *liver*, Frenzies, Yellowes, it purifieth, refineth, and purgeth the *bloud* from all infection and corruption, it eaſeth the overflowing of the *gall*, and the working of the *ſpleene*, and in a word it cureth whatſoever diſeaſes the *body* of the *Horſe* may be inwardly inclined unto; And it is thus made, *viz.*

Diapente. Take Ariſtolochia-Rotunda, Gentiana, Baccalani, Myrrha, Eboraci, of each alike much, let theſe be firſt pounded ſeverally and finely ſearſed, and after weighed, ſo as the quantities may be juſt and even, not any one leſſe, or more then another, and after ſo well mixed as may be poſſibly, and ſo put into a Gally-pot preſſed as hard as may be done, and after ſo cloſe ſtopped, as that no ayre can get into it; and thus you muſt make it, and reſerve it for your uſe. This muſt be adminiſtred to a *Horſe* in Muskadine, if you drench him for a cold or Glanders. If for other maladies, then in ſweet Sacke, and the quantity muſt be a pinte and a halfe: but if Sacke or Muskadine be not to be had, then give it in ſtrong Ale or Beere, and the quantity of this

powder

powder of *Diapente* must be two or three ſpoonfuls, unleſſe to a ſmall, ſicke, or feeble *Horſe*, then the leſſe quantity, according as in your owne judgement and reaſon you ſhall thinke to be moſt requiſite. ✠ And thus is this ſo excellent powder of *Diapente* made, and ſuch are its vertues.

§. 3. *D.*

Hippoph. *HOw doe you make alſo your* Diateſſeron *?*

Hippoſ. This *confection* I have heard ſome call *Horſe-Mithridate*, and ſome *Horſe-Treacle*, by reaſon of the inward vertue thereof, whereby to expell all poyſonous and contagious annoyances, and to drive them, and all manner of ſickneſſe from the *heart*. And thus it is made, *viz.*

Diateſſeron.

Take firſt of the powder of *Diapente* two ounces, and put it into a cleane ſtone morter, that is not over-great, and put thereto of life or clarified honey the like quantity, let the morter be made hot againſt the fire, before you doe put in your powder or honey, and then with a peſtell of wood worke it, till it come to a very *Treacle*, which when you ſhall finde to be ſufficiently compounded, then take it forth, and put it into a cleane gally-pot or glaſſe, and ſo keep it very cloſe ſtopped for your uſe, and when you have occaſion to make uſe of it,

Take of this *confection* halfe an ounce, and diſſolve it in Muskadine or ſweet Sacke a pinte and a halfe, and ſo give it your *Horſe* bloud-warme, and as occaſion is profered, adde to it of *London* Treacle one ounce. ✠ This *Diateſſeron* is a *confection* ſo ſoveraigne, being as I ſaid before, an *antidote* againſt all infectious diſeaſes, it is a preſent cure for all ſorts of Feavers, or any other deſperate or dangerous ſickneſſe, taking firſt *bloud* from the *Horſe* if there be cauſe.

§ 4. *D.*

Hippoph. *IS there nothing good beſides theſe in caſe of deſperate and dangerous ſickneſſe, ſuppoſing that neither* Diapente *or* Diateſſeron *can be had?*

Hippoſ. Yea Sir, if neither of theſe may be gotten, and that you are fearefull of the *life* of your *Horſe*, then doe I counſell you thus.

Deſperate and dangerous ſickneſſe

Take of the beſt Tarre two ounces, of honey one ounce, blacke ſope two drams, and bay ſalt a handfull, incorporate all theſe well together, then fill two egge ſhels, the crownes onely being broken, ſo as you may get forth the meat, and fill them up againe with this medicine, and put them downe his throat, and walke or ride him gently up and down a quarter of an houre or more warme cloathed, that done, ſet him up warme, and litter him well, and let his drinke be either Maſhes or white water for foure or five dayes after, but let him faſt three houres after his medicine, and let his Hay and Pro-

vender bee tweete and good, ✠. This I have often experimented.

§. 5. D.

Hippoph. I *Should thinke* Hippoſerus, *that for change, Bread were good to be given ſometimes to a* Horſe; *I pray you what is your opinion thereof?*

Hippoſ. If you meane ſuch ordinary *Horſe bread*, which our common Bakers uſed to make for *Horſes*, (which is now long ſince out of date and uſe) I ſay it cannot be good for a *Horſe*, by reaſon it was ill made, and the Materialls whereof it was compounded, nouriſh very little, nay it hurteth a *Horſe* much more than it can do him good, for it breedeth evill *humours*, and worſe *bloud* in his *body*, it being made of bran and chiſell for the moſt part with a little courſe Rye meale, to make it ſtick together, and ſo made up and kneaded with cold water, and after the outſide of the loaves or roules are rowled in ground or rather bruiſed peaſe, which can in no caſe bee good or wholeſome. But if you have a deſire to give your *horſe* bread, whereby hee may the better endure labour, eyther in his travell or long journeys, or in Tilting, Hunting, or otherwiſe, then if you pleaſe to give him this bread which I do heere preſcribe you, it will give him ſtrength of *body*, be very much helpfull to his *winde*, keep him from fainting in his labour and exerciſe, be it never ſo ſore.

Horſe bread

1 Take Wheate meale, Oate meale, and Beanes, all ground very ſmall, of each one peck, Anniſeeds foure ounces, Gentiana, and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, Licoris two ounces, let all theſe be finely powdred and ſearced; and ad the whites and yelkes of twenty new layd Eggs, well beaten together, and put to the other ingredients, and ſo much ſtrong Ale, as will knead it up, then make your loaves like to *horſe-bread*, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned, let not this bread bee given to your *Horſe* too new; and when you doe give it too him, let it be five or ſix mornings together without other provender; and thus you ſhall have him well *winded*, luſty, ſtrong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retaine his mettle to the laſt. Alſo when he is to bee uſed or employed:

2 Take a thinne linen cloath, and put therein of white Sugar candy, one ounce, and as much powder of Anniſeeds, ſew up this to the Bit or Snaffle in a fine linnen cloath, when you are to ride his backe, firſt dipped in White or Claret Wine, and ſo let him bee exerciſed, or travelled with this in his *mouth*: this giveth moyſture to his *mouth*, and *ſtomacke*, it expelleth inward heat, and faintneſſe from his *body* and *heart*, and cauſeth him to forget his labour and travell, for it doth revive his *vitall ſpirits* ✠. Another kind of bread I will give you

you not much unlike the former, but somewhat better and a greater cooler.

Take Wheate-meale one peck, Rie-meale, Beanes, and Oate meale, both ground very small, of each halfe a peck, Annifeeds, Lycoris, of each one ounce, and white Sugar candy foure ounces, all in fine powder, the yelkes and whites of twenty Egges well beaten, and so much white Wine as will knead it into a past, make this into great loaves, bake them well, and after they be two or three dayes old, let him eate of this bread, but chip away the outside. ✠. 3

Hippoph. *What is the reason you choose of these graines, meale rather then flower, wherewith you doe make your bread?*

Hippos. Sir, I preferre Meale far before Flower, by reason Flower is much more hot, and binding, and therefore the courser the bread is, the better it is for the *Horse*, and the more wholesome; and the reason, why I doe put Rie into my latter bread, is, because Rie is a loosener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

§. 6. D.

Hippoph. *What is good to dissolve and mollifie Tumors and hard swellings in the* Legges, *or other parts and* members *of the* Horse?

Hippos. Tumors and swellings sometimes comes by heats gotten with over hard riding, whereby the *creature* being over much heat, the grease falleth downe, and setling in the *Legges* and other parts, doe grow dry and hard, this breedeth Splents, Spavens, Curbes, Ring-bones and the like Sorances, which in trueth are none other things then proper *Tumors*, besides it doth occasion other knots and swellings, which are to be cured after this manner, *viz.*

Dissolve Tumors.

Take of the roots of Mallowes, or of Holliocks of each two ounces, of Linseed, and of Fenugrick, of each six ounces, of the fat or grease of Hennes or Capons, or for want thereof, of Neats foote oyle, a Wine quart, of Wake six ounces, steepe the roots and seedes being bruised, in a pottle of white Wine, when it is scalding hoat, for three dayes and three nights, and the fourth day boyle them in the same liquor, and adde thereto when you beginne to set it upon the fire, your grease and waxe, putting also thereunto of Rosin three ounces, then let all these boyle together a good while, and at the taking it from the fire, put thereinto of Venice Turpentine two ounces, and so stirre them together, and thus it is made fitting for your use, which being well reserved, will dissolve all hard swellings and *Tumors*, the Sorances being dayly anoynted therewith, ✠. This I have by much practise found to be very good. Another.

Take white Lilly roots, Hemlock, Mallowes, Beares-foote, Scabe ous, Cuccoe-pits, of each one handfull, chop them small, and infuse

fuſe them for twelve daies together in white Wine, and Sallet Oyle, of each one pint, then take wax foure ounces, and Beane Flower, twelve Spoonefuls, and ſo boyle it, and after ſtraine it, and bring it to an Vnguent, and therewith anoynt the *Tumors* and ſwelled parts, which being done, apply this Plaiſter to the places. Another.

Take Darnell and red Docks, of each two handfuls, bruiſe them, and then boyle them in wine, and Salet Oyle, of each one pint, and Beane Flower foure Spoonefuls, and put thereto of Aſſes or Oxes dung, ſo much as will ſuffice, when it is boyled to a pultis, apply it *Playſter-wiſe* and uſe this every day once, till it be well, ✠. This is alſo very good. Another.

Take Linſeed and pound it in a Morter, and of Fenugrick in powder, of each foure ounces, Pitch, and Roſin, of each three ounces, Damaske Roſe leaves dryed, two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* ſix ounces, boyle all theſe together, and when you are ready to take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine two ounces, Honey ſix ounces, and Sallet Oyle, ſo much as will ſuffice, and thus applying this Salve Plaiſter wiſe to the place, it will mollifie any hard ſubſtance. ✠. This I have often tryed and have found it to bee very good.

§. 7. D.

Hippoph. BVt Hippoſerus, *is there any cure for a ſick Horſe? whoſe infirmity is ſo deſperate, and he ſo farre ſpent, as to bee generally judged to be almoſt at the poynt of death?*

Hippoſ. Truely Sir, both my Maſter and my ſelfe have done ſuch cures upon *Horſes*, which have beene ſo deſperately ſick as you ſpeak of; inſomuch as the beholders have pronounced ſentence of death upon them, and the owners would have beene well content to have beene ſatisfied, and well appayed with their skinnes and ſhooes, and I will ſhew you what our cure is.

First open the neck veine, and let him bleed well, then two houres after his bleeding,

Deſperate ſickneſſe.

Take of *Diateſſeron* halfe an ounce, and give it him bloud warme in Muskadine a pint, or Sack, for want thereof, or elſe if theſe be not on the ſuddaine to be gotten, then take good Ale or Beere, with the like quantity of *Diateſſeron*, then having given it, walke him halfe an houre (if he be able) in the warme Sunne, or if there be not Sunneſhine, then in ſome warme Stable, or Barne, then ſet him up warme cloathed, and littered, and let him be rubbed all over, as *Head*, *Pole*, *Neck*, and *Legges*, and eſpecially twixt the *Eares*, for that greatly eaſeth the payne in the *head*, by reaſon it diſſolveth and diſperſeth the *humors*: at noone unbridle him, and offer him a little ſweet Hay, ſprinkled with water, which if he ſhall refuſe to eate, (as tis likely he will)

will) then offer him ſo much bread as the quantity of a penny loafe, and let him eate it all if he will, but if he do refuſe to eate thereof alſo, then give him one gallon of the ſtrongeſt Ale-wort you can get of the firſt runnings ſo ſoon as it is maſhed, but let it not be over-hot, and before barme be put unto it, give him this I ſay bloud warm, but if that cannot be gotten, then provide him in a readineſſe againſt the ſame houre, a ſweet Maſh, which when he hath taken, fume his head with Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamin, and then let him be rubbed againe as before, and ſee him warme kept as is uſuall for ſicke *Horſes* in *phyſicke:* and thus doe for three dayes together in all poynts (*bloud-letting* excepted) for that muſt be once onely (unleſſe extraordinary cauſe doe require the ſame) and aſſure your ſelfe your *Horſe* will mend daily, and recover his health and ſtrength in ſhort time, and at three dayes end, give him no more Maſhes, but in their ſtead, let him have white water onely: if by meanes of this ſickneſſe he hath any Puſtils or inflamations riſen under his *chaale*, then clip away the *hayre*, and apply ſuch things thereunto, as may ripen them and bring them to a head; and after breake them with Shoomakers waxe, or other ſuch like good things, and ſo let them runne and heale at pleaſure. Alſo if you doe finde your *Horſe* to be coſtive by meanes of his ſickneſſe, as commonly *horſes* will be after Phyſicke, then firſt rake him, and finding his doung to be hot, dry, and hard, give him the ſuppoſitory of a candle, ſhewed you in chap. 18. § 27. Suppoſ. 1. of this ſecond Booke. And this is the beſt Suppoſitory can be given him in a caſe of this nature. ✠ But if contrariwiſe you finde him to have a ſtrong and violent laxe, or ſcowring upon him, whereby he purgeth overmuch, and ſo continueth, then be you aſſured that hee hath ſomething in his *body* wherewith nature is offended, which you muſt labour to remove, and for remedy thereof,

Take of new milke one quart, and put to it of Beane flower two ſpoonfuls, and as much of the powder of Bolearmonack ſearſed, boyle theſe untill the milke thicken, and ſo bloud warme give it your *Horſe*, and in a morning or two faſting with a horne, and it will ſtay his looſeneſſe: ✠ but if this doe it not, then ſhall you

Take of red Wine one pinte, or Tinto the like quantity, and put into it of Burſa-Paſtoris, one handfull, and of Tanners Bark in fine powder, half a handful, the outſide being firſt taken away, then boyle it till the hearb do begin to be ſoft, then ſtraine it, and put thereto of Cinamon powdred two ſpoonfuls, and ſo give it him bloud warme, one or two mornings, and this will infallibly ſtay his fluxe: and if you cannot get *Diapente* or *Diateſſeron*, then give him this drinke.

Take of *Dragon-water* one pinte, *London Treacle* one ounce, warme it till the Treacle be diſſolved, and ſo give it him bloud warm; give him this drinke three mornings together, and for his drink otherwiſe, let him have ſweet Maſhes three mornings onely, and after till he be well recovered, let him have no cold water by any meanes, but onely

onely white water, and through Gods assistance he will be soone restored to his former health. ✠ These things I have often practised to good purpose.

§ 8. *D.*

Hippophyl. *What is to be done to a* Horse *that droopeth, pineth, or languisheth?*

Hippos. This disease commeth by a cold taken, or by some unnaturall surfet, by reason of over-hard riding, or by being washed after an extreame heate; the signes to know it, is, he will feed, but with no appetite, neither will the meate he eateth, disgest well with him, for, give him Oates and you shall finde many of them come forth whole in his *ordure*, besides, he will be lanke in the *belly* and *flankes*, and his *flesh* will fall away. The cure for such a malady, is first to

Drooping. Take *bloud* from him as well in the *necke* as *spurne veines*, for that the *bloud* is most corrupt, and naught, the next day take him, and administer unto him the *Clister* prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 6. and § 7. *Clist.* 3. *C.* the next day after he hath taken his *Clister*, give him this drinke.

Take of new milke warmed as much as will suffice, the yelkes of three new laid Egges, of pepper, made into very fine powder, a halfe penny worth of Annisseeds, Myrra, Bay-berries, Turmaricke powdred also, of each halfe a dram, of ordinary Treacle one penny worth and a little saffron powdred, pound all the simples that are to be pounded, every one by it selfe, and mixe them well with the residue, and let them infuse in the milke a whole night, and the next morning give it to the *Horse* bloud warme, and after order him as you are accustomed to doe to sicke *Horses* in *Physicke*, but let him have this drink five mornings together, and keep him to Mashes or white water, and if during that time you doe not finde his appetite to come unto him better then before, then let him rest foure dayes, and at foure dayes end give him this drinke, *viz.*

Take Bay-berries, Iuniper-berries, Aristoloch. rot. Ivory, Myrra, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searse them, and let them be well mixed, boyle of this powder two spoonfuls in strong Ale one quart, or Muskadine or Sacke one pinte; which is much better, adding thereto when you take it from the fire, so much Pepper finely beaten, as will lye on a sixe pence, and so much grated Ginger as will lye upon a shilling, and so bloud warme administer it to your *Horse*, then so soone as he hath taken this drinke, trot him gently a mile or two upon faire ground, and then set him up warme, and cause him to sweate in the Stable an houre, but not too violently, and after coole him discreetly, and by degrees, and give him this drinke and sweats three times, to wit, every other day, and after the taking of these three drinkes, Take of burnt Sack one pinte,

pinte, and put to it of Arement two good lumps made first into fine powder, and give it your *Horse* two mornings, that is to say, having given it him once, let him rest, and then give it him for the second drinke foure dayes after. ✠ And thus have I cured sundry horses of this infirmity.

§ 9. *D.*

Hippoph. *What care have you for a* Dropsie?

Hyppos. This disease hath an apparant ground more then conjecturall, for it never commeth to be knowne by any symptomes, but onely when the *horse* falleth into dislike, and loseth the true and perfect colour of his hayre and skinne, and when he loseth his *spirit*, *mettle*, *strength*, *cheerefulnesse*, and *stomacke*, and therefore we see it commeth principally for want of good nourishment and digesture, which passeth into melancholy, it proceeding either from the *spleene*, or from the *liver*, or both, the *bloud* being corrupted, and converted into a thin and watry substance, and sometimes it commeth of over-much rest, for want of moderate exercise, which I doe judge to be the more probable. Some *Ferriers* doe affirme that there be three kindes of this disease, but I could never observe more then one only, which hath its origen either of *melancholy bloud*, *water*, or *winde*, but chiefly of water, by reason that the *belly* & *legs* of a *horse* will swell, and that a *watry humour* runnes 'twixt the *skin* and the *flesh*, and if you lay your finger hard upon the swolne places, when you shall take it away, there will be in the place a pit for a small time after. The signes to know it are, that he will be swelled both *body* and *legges*, he will be also short-breathed, lose his *stomacke*, have in his *body* a continuall drought, but yet when he commeth to drinke, he will not drinke much, but pudder long with his *nose* in the water, he will be as if he had a generall consumption over all his *body*, and in time he will pine and fall away to the very *bones*, and his *flankes* and *buttockes* will be dry, and his *hayre* will shed and pill off with every rubbing, &c. The cure is, first let him *bloud*, to take away the cold, thin watrish or wheyish *bloud*, that better may come in its place, then cover him warme, and give him a sweat in the Stable, but if he will not be brought to sweat in the Stable (as many times it so falleth out) then exercise him abroad till he sweat, and bring him into the Stable againe, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him be well rubbed, and give him Sallow leaves, or the leaves of the Elme tree greene, Rye blades, Sedge, or Grasse, to keep his *body* open, and when you doe give him Hay, let it be sprinckled with water; then give him this drinke: *Dropsie.*

Take of Ale one gallon, set it upon the fire, and scum off the froth as it riseth, then put into it of Worm-wood, and of Rue the tender tops and leaves without stalkes carefully picked, of each a handfull,

and to boyle the Ale to a quart, then take it off, and ſtraine it well, and diſſolve into it of the beſt *London* Treacle three ounces, and put alſo unto it of long-Pepper and Grains both made into fine powder, of each one ounce, then brew all theſe well together till it be but blood warme, and ſo give it him to drinke, then bathe and annoynt the legs that be ſwelled with Trayne-oyle twice a day, till the ſwelling goe away; and give him Maſhes or white water, and feed him with ſuch meate as he will beſt eate, changing his dyet daily, and give it him by little at once, and after ſome ſmall time thus ſpent with him, if the weather be ſeaſonable, turne him to graſſe, and he ſhall doe well and become ſound againe. ✠ This is all the Dropſie I doe know, howſoever many *Ferriers* doe talke much of another kinde which they doe call the *Feltrick*, which is not truely a Dropſie, but a diſeaſe diſtinct from the Dropſie, unto which young *Horſes* are inclinable, that from *Foles* and *Colts* are bred in Fennes, Moores, Marſhes, moyſt and wet grounds, and Commons, by meanes whereof they will ſwell exceedingly under the *belly*, and ſo ſoone as they doe come to be handled and backed, whereby they may be provoked to ſweate, they will preſently have inflamations under the *Chaule*, runne at *noſe*, fall into an incurable Glanders, and in a word become inwardly rotten, The cure is,

Feltrick.

Firſt with your fleame ſtrike him in ſundry places under the *belly*, where the ſwelling is moſt ranke, and ſo let the corrupt *blood* and filth iſſue forth, by the ſpace of an houre or two, then wipe the places cleane and dry, and then

Take of Buck-lye made very ſtrong with chamber-lye, and the aſhes of Aſhen wood, and diſſolve into the lye of Vnguentum Populeon, and Dialthea, of each one ounce, or as much as will ſuffice, according to the Lye you have, and being made good and hot, waſh, bathe, and annoynt the ſwelling therewith morning and evening till the ſwelling be quite gone, and after every dreſſing, trot him up and downe by the ſpace of a quarter of an houre, which will be a very good meanes to cauſe the *humour* to diſſolve, and ſo to depart the ſooner and the better, and for two or three dayes, give him faſting a quart of good Ale, and of *Diapente* two ſpoonfuls, which muſt be immediately before his trotting forth, after his dreſſing, and ſo let him up warme, and give him white water. ✠ And thus have I cured many *Horſes* of the *Feltrick*.

§ 10. *D.*

Hippoph. *VVHat is good to take dead fleſh out of a ſore?*

Hippoſ. We uſe ſundry ſorts of corroſives wherwith we eate away ſuch ſores, and ſo conſume dead, proud, and naſtie fleſh about the ſame, to the end they may heale and cicatrize the more kindly: but yet omitting all ſorts of powders,

and I

and other corrosives to corrode and eate away dead flesh, I will teach you a most precious Vnguent, which will take off any dead, proud, spungy, or bad flesh, in the *foote* or any other part of the *Body*, be the wound never so deep or ulcerated, and it will not only take away all proud, dead, and naughty flesh, but it will also clense, and heale up the same very soundly in short space, And this Vnguent is thus made and compounded.

Dead flesh.

Take of common Hony two ounces, Roach-alume, Verde-grease and Vinegar, of each one ounce, sublimat two drammes, let all bee made into fine powder, and boyle it a few waumes, keeping it still stirring, and then take it from the fire, and keep it in a gally pot stopped, for your use. Apply this Vnguent upon lint or fine hurds, to the Sorance once a day, and it cureth speedily, and soundly, but then observe that every day before you dresse the sore, you cleanse, wash, & inject into the wound the water taught you in the next §. which I will shew you for a Puncture or deepe wound, ✠. And this is an approved cure, and beyond all peradventure.

§. 11. *D.*

Hippoph. *WEll shew mee then, what is good for a* Puncture *or deepe wound?*

Hippos. If it be in the *foote*, or any other part of the *Body*, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Impostumation unbroken, scald it first with the medicine of red-Tarre, Hogs-grease, Bay-salt, and greene Copporas, described in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 16. §. 10. for the *Poll-evill*, then wash the wound with this water.

Deepe wounds.

Take red-Sage, Plantane, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble-leaves, Rosemary, Hope, and Honey-suckle-leaves, of each one half a handfull, boyle them in white Wine one pint, and as much of Smithes, or coletrough-water, then adde thereunto in the boyling, of common Honey one Spoonefull, and as much Alume, as a wall-nut, and a bright black peece of Sea-cole, the bignesse of an Egge unbroken, then let this boyle till the one moiety bee consumed, then strayne it hard, and wash the Sorance therewith, and if the wound bee deepe, inject of this water with a firing or squirt every day: when you dresse him, and by thus doing you shall cleanse the wound, take away all dead and bad flesh, and heale up the wound, both soundly and speedily. ✠. This is a most approved Receipt.

§. 12. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is best to be applyed to a desperate* Straine?

Hippos. If it bee so desperate an old *Straine* as that it be holden incurable, if it lyeth in the *Shoulder*, or other hidden

and fleshy part of the *Body*, or that the *Horse* have a *Fistula*, *Poll-evill* or other inflamation, or swelling, then use but this one Medicine, and it will cure the same. *viz.*

Desperate straine.

Take a large earthen vessell, or crock of one, two, or three gallons or more, and fill it almost to the top, with *Asmart* and *Brooke-lime*, of each like much, and mix them well, then fill it up to the top with old chamber-lye as can be gotten, so that all the herbs be quite covered and more, then stop it close with a board or some such like thing, and so keep it for your use, for it never can bee too old; now when you have occasion to use this Medicine for any griefe aforesaid, then take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto aswell of the liquor, as of the herbs so much as shall suffice, for your present use, and boyle it well upon the fire. Then if it be for a straine in the *shoulder*, you shall take an old boote, and cut of the foote, so as you may draw it over the *Horse-foote* and bring it up above the *knee*, almost to the *Elbow* of the *Shoulder*, keeping the neather part of the boote as close and straight to the legge as may be, but the upper part which is to cover the *shoulder* must be wide and spatious; then into this boote thrust all this mixture, so hot as the *Horse* can suffer it, and lay it fast, and close about the *shoulder*, especially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the *Mane*, and about his *Neck*, as that it may not by any meanes slip downe, but keep constant and firme; and thus you must apply this Medicine to the place, till the griefe depart; this is the most violent of all medicines, and fit for no *creature* but a *horse* to endure, yet in short time it will bring forth whatsoever evill matter lyeth in the *Ioints*; and if you have occasion to apply this to a *Fistula*, *Poll evill*, or any Impostumation, or swelling, then may you spare the boote, and only lay on the medicine in manner of a *Pultis*, and it will be sufficient. ✠. This is a very approved Receipt.

§ 13. *D.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat meanes have you to dissolve Grease or Glut in a fat or ketty* Horse, *after a strong heate or violent exercise?*

Hippoc. For a thing of this nature, I have seene this scowring administred, *viz.*

Dissolve grease.

Take of sweet Sack one quart, and set it upon the fire, eyther in a Basin, or open Skillet, and when it is scalding hot, put into it of Rosin one ounce, made into very fine powder, then by degrees a little after a little, convey it into the Sacke, continually stirring it as you put it in, for feare of clotting, and when the Sack and it is very well incorporate, take it from the fire, and put into it of Sallet oyle halfe a pint, and so stirre them well together, and as it cooleth, put also into it of browne Sugar-candy, made into fine powder one ounce, and when

when it is only bloud warme, give it to your *Horſe* ſo ſoone as hee commeth from his exerciſe, and then being ſet up, let him bee well rubbed, and cloathed warme and well littered, and let him faſt three houres after it, and let the *Groome* remaine continually with him during theſe three houres, till you do give him meate, yea and an houre after, neyther let your *horſe* all that time ſtand ſtill long, nor ſleepe, but be kept ſtirring, and mooving, for that the medicine will by that meanes worke the more kindly, and when you ſhall give this or any other ſcowring, be you ſure that neyther the ſame day, nor the next, you give him any cold water, but eyther a ſweet maſh or white water. This ſcowring I once did ſee made, and given by a *Iocky* to a ſtrong, luſty, able hunting *Horſe*, which he had in agitation for a hunting match, but it wrought ſo violently, and made him ſo extreame ſick for more then twenty foure houres after the taking thereof, as that I never durſt be ſo hardy, as to put the ſame in ure, nevertheleſſe the *Creature* did very well recover againe, and wonne his match.

§. 14. *D.*

Hippoph. *How may a man come to know, what are the diſeaſes of the* Liver?

Hippoſ. Aſſuredly Sir the diſeaſes of the *Liver* are many, but yet the true and certaine grounds, how to diſcover them is beyond every *Ferriers* skill to compaſſe; nevertheleſſe that there be many, and thoſe ſeverall and diſtinct Infirmities in the *Liver*, no man needes make doubt: for if the *Liver* be eyther too hot, or too dry, too moiſt, or too cold, may eaſily be diſeaſed, which muſt needs occurre to the *Horſe*, eyther by intemperate riding or labour, or by evill foode, or by meanes of evill and corrupt *humors*, which do gather to the place, or by the over flowing of the *Gall*, or when *Choler* is predominate, it being cheifly ingendred through heat, like as cold begetteth *Flegme*, which cauſeth the ſickneſſe and ill diſpoſition of the *Liver*, together with its payne and anguiſh, whence proceede inflamations, and Impoſtuma ions, ſtoppings, obſtructions, knobs, yea and very pernicious Vlcers, every of which do cauſe the generall Conſumption and diſeaſe thereof. If the diſeaſe of the *Liver* do proceed from any hot cauſe, it is more eaſie to bee diſcovered, then if it came from any cold cauſe, for that it doth diſcover it ſelfe by theſe apparant ſignes *viz.* He will bee leane and fall away of his *fleſh*, hee will loath his meate, and that which he eateth doth him little or no good, for want of ready digeſtion, his *ordure* wilbe very offenſive, his thirſt great, and he will be very much ſubject to a looſeneſſe: whereas on the other ſide, if the diſeaſe ariſeth from any cold cauſe, you cannot diſcerne it by any of theſe ſignes, for that he will be in very good liking & ſtate of *body*, eate his meat with a good appetite, his *excrements* will

have

have no evill ſavour when he diſchargeth himſelfe, he will drinke orderly and temperately, neither will he be looſe or coſtive; wherefore if it come of any cold cauſe, we muſt then endeavour to finde out its ſymptomes. Now if a *Horſe* be diſeaſed in his *liver*, the infirmity muſt (I ſay) proceed from an inflamation and impoſtumation, or from an ulcer. If it come from a cold cauſe, it cannot be an inflamation, nor an impoſtumation, for that theſe two doe both come from a hot cauſe, as all the learned doe know full well, and therefore of neceſſity it muſt be an *ulcer* which proceedeth from a cold cauſe, and the ſignes to know it is, continuall coldneſſe of his *body*, his *hayre* will ſtare, and he will be ſubject to great feebleneſſe, faintneſſe and debility of *body*, and the reaſon is, for that the exulcerated matter doth diffuſe throughout the whole *body* its evill vapours, which corrupteth and very much offendeth the *heart* in ſuch wiſe, whereby to occaſion and haſten the death of the poore beaſt: if in time the malady be not diſcovered, and skilfully and by Art cured. I have intreated ſufficiently upon this ſubject, to wit, of the nature of this infirmity, and the ſignes how to know the ſame. And therefore I thinke it time we doe goe to the Cure.

Diſeaſe of the Liver.

So ſoone as you have diſcovered this diſeaſe: firſt let him *bloud* on both ſides the *necke* the firſt day, and the next day let him *bloud* in both the *ſpurre veynes*, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Take Hope, Cowes-lip-leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, alias Molin or Molet-leaves, Harts-tongue, of each a handfull, then take Gentiana, Ariſtolochia rotunda, Fenugrick, Enulacampana dried, and long-Pepper, of each like much, ſo as when they be pounded and ſearſed, you may have of each a ſpoonfull; chop the hearbs, and then mingle them with this powder, and put to it of life honey one ſpoonfull, then boyle all theſe ingredients in a quart of ſtrong Ale, untill a moyety be conſumed, and ſtraine it well, and ſo give it him bloud warme, and keep him warm, and having made him faſt three or foure houres after this drinke, give him Barly boyled, but if he ſhall refuſe to eate thereof, by reaſon the drinke hath made him dry and thirſty, then give him a warme Maſh, and after the boyled Barly againe; but let him not have this drink, but the day after he hath been let *bloud* in the ſpurre *veynes*, give him this drinke three times, but let him alwayes reſt three dayes betwixt every drench, and give him white water for fifteen dayes after his laſt drinke, and let him every day be well rubbed, and thus will cure him. ✠ I have often made tryall of this cure, and I have found it to be very good, and it is alſo ſingular for the *lungs*; but if you doe ſuſpect the *liver* to be waſted, then give him this drinke, *viz.*

Take of ſtrong wort, either of Ale or Beere, and give it him to drinke in a morning, having faſted all night from meate and drinke, and three houres after he hath drunke his Wort, give him Oates baked in the Oven, and doe thus for three or foure dayes together or

longer

longer, as you shall see cause, and he will be sound ere long. ✠ But if you doe suspect his *liver* not to be very sound then

Take a good root or two of Polipodium of the Oake, make very cleane, and of Liverwort, *alias* Mullet one handfull, cut them very small, then take of Rubarb scraped or grated into fine powder, sixe penny weight, and three or foure dryes in a moneth give it him in his provender early in the morning two or three houres before hee drinketh, and let his drinke be white water during his cure, and once in sixe moneths make tryall of his *blond* by opening a veyne, whether it be pure or corrupt, so as you take it from him accordingly, that is, the greater quantity if the same be bad, and the lesse if it be good, and administer helpe as cause shall require it. ✠ This is also a most soveraigne receit.

§ 15. D.

Hippoph. *YOu have formerly delivered me many good Receits for colds, but yet would I gladly have something which should be good for a* Horse *that runneth at the* nole.

Hippos. Very well Sir, I will therefore give you that which shall be very good, and which I have often my selfe proved. First then if you shall finde your *Horse* to have taken a cold, and therewith he runneth at the nose whereby he may be in danger of a Glanders, let him *bleed* at the *necke veine* well, then

Take of Assetetida, the quantity of a hasle nut, and dissolve it in a saucer full of white Wine vineger, then take Lint or fine Hurds, and dip it into the medicine, and so stop it into the *eares* of the *Horse*, and with a needle and threed stitch up his *eares*, so as the medicine get not forth: the next day, take the dry mosse which groweth upon an old pale of a Parke, or other pale, or upon the limbs of an old Oke, one handfull or better, chop it small, and boyle it in a pottle of new milke, together with a green root of Elecampane cut into thin and small slices, and so let it boyle till halfe the milke be consumed, then straine it and presse it throughly, and before it be cold, put into the milke a good peece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him bloud warme. ✠ This is also good for the *Headach*, Frenzy, Stavers, Pose, Cold, Cough, wet or dry, shortnesse of breath, rotten *lungs*, Glaunders, mourning of the Chine, Laxe, Loosenesse, Bloudy-fluxe, of the like diseases.

Cold or running at the nose.

§. 16. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat may a man apply to a* Horſe *to cauſe him to draw up his* yard?

Draw his yard.

Hippoſ. This is a diſeaſe which commeth of weakeneſſe in the *backe*, or *kidneyes*, either through over-riding, or ſome leap or ſtrain; or by meanes of a cold, and ſometimes it commeth by a terrible ſtripe given him upon the *loynes* againſt the *kidneyes*, or upon the *yard* it ſelfe, or by wearineſſe or tyrednesſe; the ſignes to know it, is by the unſeemely hanging of the *member*, and the cure is thus:

Firſt waſh and bathe all the *yard* and *ſheath* with white Wine made warme, and after that annoynt it with oyle of Roſes, and life honey mingled together, and ſo put up the *yard* into the *ſheath*, and with a ſoft boulſter of Canvàs, keep it from falling downe, and dreſſe him thus every day once till hee we well, and let his *backe* and *fillets* be kept warme, and annoynted with Acopum, or if you have not Acopum, then apply this charge unto his *backe* and *fillets*.

Take Bolearmonacke, the whites of Egges, Wheate meale, Sanguis Draconis, Venis Turpentine, and ſtrong white Wine vineger, of each of theſe as much as will ſuffice, mixe them well, and charge his *backe* therewith, his *ſheath* and his *ſtones*, and he ſhall be well. Another:

Take the aſhes of Aſhen wood, the whiteſt, fineſt, and beſt burned, and ſearſe them, one pound, or red-clay dryed, and made into fine powder, halfe a pound, Bolearmonacke halfe an ounce powdred, boyle all theſe in as much Verjuyce of the crab, as will make it liquid like pap, and with it, annoynt his yard, ſheath, and ſtones morning and evening, and he ſhall be preſently cured. ✠ This is ſpeciall good.

§. 17. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to draw a thorne, ſtub, iron, ſplinter, naile, or what elſe out of the* fleſh *of the* horſe?

Draw a thorne.

Hippoſ. If the ſtub, thorne, or whatſoever elſe it be, that is gotten into the *fleſh* be ſo deep as that you cannot come to it to plucke it forth with your fingers or plyers, then lay to the place a good quantity of blacke ſope, and ſo let it lye all night, and in the morning it will make it to appeare, ſo as you may come to take hold of it with your Inſtrument: but if it be gotten into the *fleſh* ſo deep, as that the ſope cannot doe it, then muſt you open the *fleſh* by the way of inciſion, ſo deep till you may come to take hold thereof with your Inſtrument, and ſo plucke it forth, which done, heale up the wound with the oyntment taught you in *lib* 2. *cap.* 10. § 4. *G.* and ſo heale it up, but be you certaine that you doe heale it from the bottome, leſt

it

it breake out againe. ✠ This is the moſt certaine way for this cure that I doe know.

§. 18. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat good drinke is to be given, whereby to preſerve the lungs?*

Hippoſ. If you have no great occaſion to feare your *horſes lungs*, then you may adminiſter to him in his Provender onely ſuch powders as you ſhall finde preſcribed you already in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 2. § 43. but if you have juſt cauſe to ſuſpect that his *lungs* may be rotten, fretized or broken, then to heale or make them ſound againe, or at leaſt to give him great eaſe, for you may know it by theſe ſignes, *viz.* his *flankes* will beat when he cougheth, which he will often do, but principally when you give him riding or exerciſe, and the ſlower they beat, the older and more dangerous the diſeaſe is; he will alſo draw his *winde* ſhort, he will grone oft, but moſt in lying downe, and riſing up, and be very fearefull and loth to cough. The cure is, *Drinke to preſerve lungs.*

Take Tartar made of white Wine Lees, which you may have of the *Apothecaries*, or if you pleaſe you may make it your ſelfe, (for it is none other thing then the thickeſt of the Lees of white Wine well dryed and made into powder.) Take (I ſay) of this one ounce and a halfe, of Iſope and of Colts foot, of each halfe a handfull, of Horehound one handfull, of Elecampane in fine powder, Anniſeeds, and Licoris of each one ounce, of browne ſugar candy foure ounces, boyle all theſe together in good Ale one quart, and when it is halfe boyled, put into it of Iſope water, and of Colts-foot water, both twice diſtilled, to take off their crudities, of each one pinte, and ſo boyle all againe together, and then ſtraine it, and give it your *Horſe* bloud warme. ✠ If your *Horſe* have been exerciſed, being foule, or having been in dyet, then he hath been over-much uſed to Cliſters, Drinkes, Rakings, Purgations, Sweats, Vomits, and the like; give him this drinke then, and you ſhall finde it to be moſt ſoveraign for him, and the cleaner he is within, the better is its operation, and will worke more kindely in his *body*; and at what times you are to Tilt, Hunt, Travell, or exerciſe him, give him but one pinte of this drinke in the morning faſting before his going forth, for it will ſo helpe his *breath*, whereby (through moderate exerciſe) he will be much the better able to goe through with his worke, then otherwiſe he could have done. ✠ And this drinke I have often proved. Alſo if you doe finde him to be either diſeaſed, or ſicke in his *lungs*, or that they be any way fretized, then give him this drinke.

Take of tryed Hogges-greaſe two ounces, and of *Diapente* three ſpoonfuls, put theſe into a quart of water, wherein Barly hath been boyled till it burſt, and warme it in the fire till the Hog-greaſe be diſſolved, and ſo bloud warme give it your ſicke *Horſe*, and three

houres after, give him of the Barley warme to eate, and either ſweet maſhes, or white water to drinke, ✠. This was taught mee by an *Italian* Rider in *Paris*, and I have often made uſe thereof, and have found it to be ſpeciall good, howbeit for the time it will cauſe him to bee very ſick, but have no feare, for it is right good for this Malady. Another.

Take Muskadine or ſweet Sack one pint, life-honey three Spoonfuls, Myhrre, Saffaron, Caſcia, and Cinamon, of each like much, make all theſe into fine powder, and mixe two Spooneſuls of this powder with your Muskadine and Hony, and give it him warme with a Horne, give him this drinke fifteene daies together, continuing to give him maſhes and white water, and this is a moſt certaine Cure, ✠. But if you do find that his Lungs be rotten and impoſtumated, then

Take of the juyce of Purſlaine halfe a pint, and mix therwith of the Oyle of Roſes ſo much as will ſuffice, and put thereto a little *Tragantum* ſteeped before in Goates, Ewes, or Cowes milke, and give him thereof to drinke ſeven mornings together: but this drinke will but only ripen and breake the Impoſtume, which you ſhall know to be done, by his exceeding ſtincking breath, then ſhall you give him in fine powder Caſſia three ounces, and ſeaven Raiſins of the Sunne ſtoned, boyle theſe in Muskadine one pint, and bloud warme give it him, and it will heale up his *Lungs* againe. ✠. This is very goo d

§. 19. *D.*

Hippoph. *IS there no good thing to be given to a* Horſe, *wherewith to prevent diſeaſes all the whole yeare?*

Hippoſ. As touching the prevention of all diſeaſes, I have ſpoken before, I thinke, ſufficiently, but yet I will teach you one thing, (for that youare deſirous to learne, and learning is no burthen) which may bee worthy your notice, for I will keepe no ſecret from you; Sithence it is my *Maſters* pleaſure, I ſhould dilate the utmoſt of my skill and Art.

Firſt, therefore the ſpring of the yeare comming on, a time when new *bloud* beginneth to come, and that ere long graſſe wilbe able to take heart whereby the better to give nutriment to a *Horſe*; The firſt day of *April* open a *veine* in the *Neck*, to ſee the better how the *bloud* is: if good, take the leſſe, if bad then the more: then from that day untill the firſt of *May*, give him this which I ſhall preſcribe you, and let him have it every day without fayle, Morning and Evening during the whole month of *April*, from the firſt day to the laſt, which is before his turning out to praſſe, or foyling, which ſhould be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the ſame alſo all the whole month

month of *October* (like as you muſt do in *April* after you have taken him from graſſe, about *Bartholmewtide*, and do as you before have bin taught in all poynts. That which I preſcribe is this.

Diſeaſes to prevent.

Take a Buſhell of old Rie, ſweet and cleane, well purged, or ſifted, from duſt, ſtones, lome, feathers, cobwebs, or any ſuch like filth, and put it into a cleane iron pot, dry, and without water, I meane ſuch an iron pot, in which uſually fleſh meat is boyled, for ſuch a like veſſell, is beſt for this our purpoſe, it taketh leaſt harme, and is much more wholeſome then Braſſe, Copper, or any other mettall : ſet this pot thus dry, and without water over the fire, and put into it your Buſhell of Rie (for a leſſe quantity you cannot well have) and as it beginneth to wax hot, keepe the Rie with continuall ſtirring, even from the bottome, without any intermiſſion, untill you have ſo parched the Rie, that it becommeth black and hard, which to be ſo, will aske good heat, and no leſſe labour to ſtirre it up and downe in the pot, when you do find that the Rie is ſufficiently parched, which you ſhall know by its blackneſſe, dryneſſe, and hardnes, take it from the fire, and put it into ſome other cleane, and dry veſſell, which ſo ſoon as it is cold, let the veſſell be kept cloſe ſtopped, and ſo kept for your uſe. Now when you are to uſe of this Rie, take two or three good handfuls of it, and let it bee beaten to fine powder and given to your Horſe mingled with his Provender, at every watring, morning and evening, or other times when you uſually give him Oates ; doe this theſe two entire months of *April* and *October*, for that all men doe hold, that in theſe two months the *bloud* turneth and altereth, as wee alter his diet from hard and dry meate, to graſſe ; and ſo likewiſe from graſſe to dry meate, for this Rie thus parched and ordred, doth refine the *Bloud*, coole the *Liver*, and purgeth the *Spleene*, ſo as the whol ſtructure of the *body* is thereby the better eaſed and freed, from all ſuch bad and unnaturall *humors*, which would otherwiſe make the *body* inclinable to ſundry Maladies and diſeaſes, which this Rie preventeth, and therefore if you bee willing to keepe your *Horſe* ſound, and free from diſeaſes, order him in theſe two months according as I have preſcribed you, and you ſhalbe ſecure, ✠. This I have oft made uſe of, and it is good.

§. 20. *D.*

Hippoph. *Have you any comfortable drinke to adminiſter to a* Horſe *that is very ſicke ?*

Drink comfortable.

Hippoſ. I have heretofore ſhewed you divers, but yet I will give you one more.

Take of good white Wine one pinte, of white Sugar Candy, and of Cinamon, of each one ounce, of Cloves halfe an ounce, Saffron three drammes, of Sugar refined three ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, then take Mithridate two ounces, Honey of Roſes

foure ounces, mixe all these well together, and put it to the Wine, and make it bloud warme over the fire, and so give it him, and now and then as he standeth upon the trench, let him chew upon the end of a Buls pizell, some *Arman*, let him be cloathed and littered warm, and remaine fasting upon the trench three houres, and after give him a sweet Mash, or white water, and after order him as is usuall for a sicke horse. ✠ This is one of the best preservative drinkes that I know, and I have had great proofe thereof.

§. 21. *D.*

Hippoph. WV*Hat remedy have you for a dislocated joynt?*

Dislocated joynt.

Hippoc. Let it be first put into its right place, then in the binding up apply this plaister.

Take Wheate Bran, and Hogs-grease, of each as much as will suffice, make them into one body, and make thereof a Plaister of Hurds, and so apply it to the place, and after binde and swathe it up, and the *joynt* and *member* will be well againe having rest.

§ 22. *D.*

Hippoph. W*Hat disease is that is called* Tranchailons?

Disease of Tranchaisons or the chollicke.

Hippoc. This tearme we have from the *French*, which is onely a paine or griping in the *belly*, caused partly of winde, and partly of cold, and eftsoones of both, and our *English* tearme is, the *Chollicke*, which is a most grievous paine, ingendring many infirmities, as I have before declared in its due place: notwithstanding because you have given me the *French tearme*, I will give you two or three *French* Receits for the same disease, albeit I did never experiment any of them, yet I doe hold them to be good.

Take of Arqueqnamis one ounce, make it into juyce, and put to it of white wine one pinte, and so give it to the *Horse*, which done, annoynt his *privy members* with this unguent, Take of Garlicke unpilled, as much as will suffice, and stampe it well, and mixe with it of Sallet oyle as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an unguent, and therewith annoynt the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods*, and it will both give him ease, and cause him to stale suddenly, by which meanes he will amend. Another:

Take Cinque-foyle halfe an handfull or Pantaphillon, beat and stampe it well, and moysten it with warme water, and so give it him to drinke. Another:

Take of the powder of Siliris Montani, D' quare, and of Comin, of each an ounce, and put them into white Wine one pinte, and so give it him, then so soone as he hath taken this drinke, trot him out for halfe an houre, a good round trot, especially up the hill, and after bring him into the Stable, and cloathe and litter him warme. Another:

Take

Take of Fenugricke and of Comin, of each one ounce, make them into fine powder, and with white Wine a pinte, give it him bloud warme, and trot him out as before.

§ 23. *D.*

Hippoph. *Have you no way to dry soares?*

Hippos. Yea Sir, and I will give you some receits for that purpose. Take egge shels and burne them almost blacke: take also the upper leather of old shoes, and burne them to a cole: take also a Char-cole, quick lime, and greene coperas, burned in a well nealed earthen pot, untill it be red: Take of each of these a like quantity, and beate them together to fine powder, and strew this powder upon the soare or galled place, and every time you dresse the soare herewith, wash it well with strong vineger or chamber-lye warmed. ✠ But if it be an old ulcer, or cankerous soare, then take Masticke, Frankincense, Cloves, greene Coperas, Brimstone, of each like much, Myrra double as much as any of the former ingredients, beate all these by themselves to fine powder, and mixe them well, then take of this powder and burne it upon a chafing-dish and coles, but be carefull it flame not, then as the smoake or fume thereof ariseth, take of fine lint a good handfull or two, and hold it over the said smoake or steame, so as it may receive all the said steame into the said lint, then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the lint into a box, pot, or glasse, and be sure to stop it up so close, as that none the least ayre can possibly come into it (for the least ayre will deprive the lint of its vertue) and so keep it for your use; and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first wash the soare with new made chamber-lye warme, either as it commeth from the man, or else warmed upon the fire, then dry the soare againe, and lastly lay some of this lint to the soare, and so make it up, and doe this twice every day, and you shall finde it to be a speedy and perfect cure. ✠ But if you would dry up the scratches in the *heeles* of your *Horse*,

Dry up soares.

Lint wherewith to heale ulcers or old soares.

Take then chamber-lye which is old made, or stale, and rock or roch-Allum as much as will suffice, boyle them together, and reserve it thus well boyled in a glasse, or other cleane vessell well stopped, then take of greene nettles the strongest, most angry and keene, two handfuls, and lay them thin upon some plate, or other broad thing, and so dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after household-bread is drawne, then make it into powder very fine, this done, take of Pepper, and make it also into very fine powder, being finely searsed, so as it may be of like quantity with the powder of nettles, and so mixe them well together, then keep this powder in a dry glasse, close stopped, and when you may have occasion to use this powder, first wash the soare with the said liquor of Allome and Chamber-lye made bloud warme, and so having purged, cleansed, and dryed the

sorance

forance well with a cleane linnen cloth, ſtrew and lay on your powder, and thus doe after travell or exerciſe every day once during the time of his reſt, and this will cure him throughly. ✠ This cure I have often practiſed.

§. 24. *D.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat diſeaſe is that which is called the* Arraiſtes, *and how is it cured?*

Arraiſtes or Rats-tayles.

Hippoſ. This is alſo a *French Epitheton,* which we call the Rats-tayles, being a kinde of ſcratches: of this diſeaſe I have ſpoken before in the letter *A.* and therefore I will now leave entreating further thereof.

Chap. VIII.

§. 1. *E.*

Hippoph.

WHat is to be given to a Horſe *that hath eaten a* Taynt?

Hippoſ. A *Taynt* is a kinde of red worm which many *Ferriers* will ſay can doe a *Horſe* no harm, but they are much miſtaken, for I have knowne *Horſes* to dye with eating it; but if he have eaten a *Taynt,* the ſignes will be, that he will be ſicke, and forſake his meat, and he will ſwell in all his *body*, alſo his *eyes* will ſo ſwell that you would thinke they would fall out of his *head*, he will draw in and out his *breath* very ſhort, and his *tongue* and mouth will be very dry and hot, and peradventure bliſtred, but he will be eaſily cured, for ſo ſoone as you ſhall perceive him to forſake his meate, and that he doth begin to ſwell, then be you confident that he hath eaten ſome unwholeſome thing, for this inconvenience ſeldome commeth to any *Horſe* but at graſſe onely. The cure is,

Eate a Taynt.

Take of the urine of *man* as it commeth warme from him, one pinte, and of bay-ſalt one handfull, ſtirre theſe well together, and give it him with a horne, and after walke him up and downe halfe an houre, and he is cured. ✠ This I have ſundry times tryed, and it is a certaine cure.

§. 2. E.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a* Horſe *that hath eaten a* Feather?

Hippoſ. This may be gotten aſwell in the Stable, as abroad at graſſe: in the Stable through the negligence of the *Keeper* or *Groome*, in not duſting, ſhaking, or picking, and ſearching his Hay and Provender well, and by not looking narrowly, that no Feathers bee among his Hay, Oates or Provender, when he giveth him his meate, eyther in the Rack or Manger, he may alſo get a Feather at Graſſe, as hee feedeth in a Meadow or Paſture, where Swannes, Geeſe, Ducks, Turkies, or other Poultry or Foules doe lye and feed, they in the Summer ſeaſon, mowting, and mewing their Feathers, whereby the *Horſe* graſing and feeding in thoſe places, may eaſily and unwares eate a Feather, which being taken into the *Weſand*, will ſtick faſt there, which will ſo ſuffocate him, as that it will provoke him to cough ſo vehemently, as if his *Heart* would breake, for it will ſticke ſo faſt in his *Throte* or *Weſand*, as that he can neither ſwallow it downe into his *Body* nor caſt it up at his *Mouth*. The cure is.

Eate a feather.

Put the cord of your Drenching Staffe into his *teeth*, and hold his *head* up on high, then take of Verjuyce of the crab one pint, and two new laid Egges, and beate them together, ſhels and all, with the Verjuice, and ſo give it him with a Horne, and ſo ſoone as hee hath ſwallowed the ſame, give him a few ſmall branches of Savine, and this will carry away the feather into his *ſtomacke*, ✠. This I have very ofttentimes done, and made him well againe.

§ 3. E.

Hippoph. *But then what Cure have you for a* Horſe *that hath eaten a* Spider? *which I take to be much more perillous to the life of the* Horſe?

Hippoſ. The ſignes to know this, is like to that of the *Taint*, but only that he will ſwell much more, and this may befall him rather in Winter then in Summer: for which give him this drinke.

Eate a Spider.

Take Vrine of a Man newly made one quart, of Rue, Bittony, Scabious, Pimpernell, Dragons, of each a like much, but in ſuch a quantity, as in the whole, all will amount but only to one handfull, chop theſe hearbs together ſmall, and let them boyle together in the Vrine a little, adding thereto of Bay-ſalt, and Sallet-oyle of each one Spoonefull, and ſo give it him bloud warme, ✠. Now if it be in Winter,

Take of Vrine one quart, Arement one lumpe, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Mithridate, of each one dramme, *Engliſh* Saffaron, one ſcruple, Sallet-oyle one Spoonefull, Bezar-ſtone three graines, let theſe bee ſet

ſet on the fire and given him bloud warme, if it be in Summer, turne him to graſſe, and if need be rake him, and then convey into his *Tuell* a ball of freſh Butter. But if it be in Winter let him be alſo raked, and give him of the blades of Greene Rie, to a good quantity, and for his Provender, let it be for two or three meales, of ſcalded bran and Hempſeed, and let his drinke for three or foure dayes bee white water. ✠. Theſe are all approved medicines.

§. 4. *E.*

Hippophyl. VV*Hat is good for a blow on the* Eye, *whereby aſwell to ſave the* Eye, *as to aſſwage the ſwelling thereof?*

Hippoſ. This needes no ſtudy as well to find out the meanes how it commeth, as the ſignes how to know it, for both are apparant enough, there only remayneth to treate of the Cure.

Shave off the hayre from off and about the place ſwelled, having firſt well bathed it in warme water. then

Eye a ſtroak

Take the tenderſt tops of wormwood, Pellitory, and Branca-Vrſina, of each halfe a handfull, chop the hearbs very ſmall, and then beate them to an oyntment with old Boares-greaſe ſo much as will ſuffice, then put to it of life hony, and Wheate flower, of each one Spoonefull, and of Lynſeed-oyle three Spoonefull, boyle theſe over the fire very well, keeping it with continuall ſtirring, and when it is ſufficiently well boyled, ſtraine it into a gally pot, and keepe it ſtopped, and as occaſion is offered, anoynt the place ſwelled herewith ✠.

§. 5. *E.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat remedy is to bee had for the* Eye *that is charged with a Filme, Pinne and Webbe, or with Dragons, &c?*

Hippoſ. Theſe diſeaſes in the *Eye*, do come ſometimes by meanes of ſome payne in the *head*, which cauſeth a Rheume to fall into the *Eyes*, and ſometimes by meanes of Rheumes themſelves, which cauſing the *Eyes* to water, do ingender theſe diſeaſes, and ſometimes againe it is occaſioned by meanes of a ſtrip or hay-duſt, or ſome hame which may be gotten into the *Eye*. I need not deliver you the ſignes whereby to know them, they are viſible to your ſight. The cure therefore is thus.

Eye Filme, Pin and web Dragons.

Take Camfire or Sol-*Armoniacum*, or for want of eyther of theſe, white-Sugar-Candy: any of theſe three being made into very fine powder, and blowne into the *Eye*, three times a day, are moſt ſoveraigne to cure theſe diſeaſes in the *Eyes* of a *Horſe*, but Sol-*Armoniacum* is the very beſt of them all. ✠. But if a Filme or Pearle, without

out a Pin and Web, do grow in the *Eye*, then, take up both the two *weeping-veines* first, which are under the *Eyes*, and then give a *Cauterize* to eyther place, *viz.* to open the *skinne* all a long to the very *Eyes*, and put into each of them, a quill cut in the middle, then oftentimes cleanse them, and comfort the places *Cauterized* or *roweled* with *unguentum Populeum*, and wash the *Eyes* every day three times with *Eye* bright water, mingled with the juyce of Smallage, and about fifteene dayes after, take away the quils, and after wash the *Eyes* with cold Fountaine-water. Another. But if it be a Pin and Web, then

Pin and web

Take Cuttle bone, Tartar, Salt-Gemme, of each like much, make them all into pure fine powder, and with a quill blow of this fine powder well mixed, into his *Eye* two or three times a day or ofter. +. This have I tryed, and have found it to be speciall good. But if be a Pearle, that the *horse* hath in his *Eye*, then

Pearle or Filme.

Take the angriest tops of red-Nettles, and stamp them well, and put them into a fine cleane linnen Rag, then dip the Nettles as they be in the Rag, into Beere, but yet very slightly, and so wring forth the juyce of the said Nettles, into some cleane thing, which done, put to it a little salt so much as will suffice, made first into fine powder, and when the salt is dissolved, convey one drop of the medicine into the grieved *Eye*, morning and evening, and this will take away the Pearle, and the *Eye* will become as cleare as the other, ✠. This I have often tryed, and found it to do rare cures in this kinde. Now for a Pin and web, any of these ensuing will cure it.

Pin and web

Take the sword of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and make it into powder, & blow thereof into the grieved *Eye*. +. This is good. Another.

Take the juyce of ground-Ivy, alias Ale-hoofe, Selendine, life-hony, and womans milke, of each of these so much as will suffice, mixe all these well, and put it into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, ✠ Another.

Take the powder of the bottome of a Brasse pot, the outermost black being first taken off, & the next powder let it be blown into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, and it will helpe him. Another.

Take the powder of burnt Alume, or of a black-flint, or the powder of Ginger, eyther of these made into fine powder and blowne into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, will helpe a Pinne and webbe. Another.

Take salt-Arment, and make it into very fine powder, and put thereto of life-honey and fresh butter, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these well together, and so convey of this medicine into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, and this will cure a Pin and web. ✠. But if there be a *Hawe* in the *Eye*, this every *Smith* can take away; nevertheless whereas all other *Ferriers*, that ever I saw worke upon this disease, do use to take it away from the out-side of the *Eye*, I doe

Hawe.

take it away from that part which lyeth next of all to the *eye*, and I doe finde my way to be much better, and a safer way, as well whereby to preserve the *sight* of the *eye*, as also the *wash*, and so soone as I have cut out the Haw, I doe use to wash the *eye* with white Wine, and the juyce of selendine mingled together, of each a like much, for this healeth the sorance, and keepeth the *eye* from rankling. Now I have oft times seene the *French Marishals* take up the *wash* of the *eye* with a Spanish needle, threeded with a double brown threed, and to pluck forth the Haw so farre as he well can, then with a payre of sizers to clip off the Haw so close as he can: but I cannot commend this manner of curing the Haw, for by that meanes he cutteth away the *wash* of the *eye*, which indeed is the beauty of the *eye*, whereby the *Horse* becommeth *bleare-eyed*, which is in him a very great eye-sore, he being thereby very much disfigured. ✝ But if your *Horse* have gotten a *canker* in his eye, then

Eye a Canker.

Take Ale-hoofe (which is indeed your true ground Ivy) and stamp it well in a morter, and if it be very dry, then moysten it with a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, as much as will suffice, and so straine it into a cleane glasse, and therewith wash, bathe, annoynt, and taint the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure it. ✝ This is very good to cure a Canker, a Pin and Web, *bloud-shotten eyes*, or any such griefe in or about the *eyes*; and I have often made use of this medicine. Another much better.

Take of stone Coperas (a thing knowne to few, and therefore very hard to get) but in the stead thereof you may use ordinary white Coperas, make it into fine powder, as much as will suffice, (for I must leave the quantity to your owne discretion) and put it into a small Pipkin, and put thereto so much very faire, cleare running, or Well water as will fill up the Pipkin to the very top, then set the Pipkin upon a few coales, and cause the water to boyle, but so treatibly, as it may but onely simper, and as the scum doth arise, take it away with a feather, continuing so to doe, till the scum doe leave to arise any more, and when you have sufficiently well boyled it, take it off, and let it stand till it be through cold, then poure away the cleare from the bottome, which must be cast away, and the cleare kept in a glasse viall, very close stopped and bound up for your use, which being thus carefully kept, the water will remaine in its perfection long, yea a whole yeare together or longer. This water cureth almost all diseases in the *eyes*, as Filmes, Pearles, weeping eyes, Pin and Web, Dragons, Cataracts, dimnesse of sight, Blindenesse, Rheumaticke, watry, stroake, blow, or stripe of or in the *eye*, and so consequently in many other cases of the like nature. ✝ And of this water I have had great experience. Another:

Take Sal-Armoniack, Lapis-Tulia prepared, Sagina, called in Latine Panicum-Indicum, and of Ginger, of each halfe an ounce, and of white sugar candy two ounces, powder all these and searse them,

and

and being well mixed, put this powder into a cleane and dry boxe very close stopped, and so keep it that no ayre come to it for your use, and when you have occasion to use of this powder, take a little thereof, and mixe with it of the juyce of ground Ivy, *alias* Ale-hoofe, as much as will suffice, and so twice a day convey thereof into his *eye* with a feather, till it be throughly whole. ✠ This is a principall good receit; I will give you another speciall good receit, which will cure all manner of sore eyes.

Take the leaves and roots of Vervine, ordinary honey, and Roman Vitrioll, of each like much, beat, bruise, and mixe these together, and put it into a stillitory glasse, and distill it by Balnea-Maria, with a gentle fire, and the water you take into your Receptacle, put into a viall glasse, and keepe it very close stopped, that no ayre get into it, and when you are to use of the same water, poure of it a little into a silver spoone, and mixe with it of the fat of a Henne or Capon, a small quantity, and therewith annoynt the sore *eye* twice a day, and it will cure the same perfectly. ✠ I will give you another receit which will take the filme from off the *eye* albeit there be a very great and thicke *skin* growne.

Take the gall of a Hare, and life honey, of each like much, put them together into a spoon, and hold the spoone over the fire, till the medicine be bloud warme, and with a feather convey part of this medicine into the *eye* of the *Horse*, and thus dresse him morning and evening, and in short time it will take it quite away, so as the *eye* will become as bright and cleare againe as ever it was before. ✠ This receit I doe hold no whit inferiour to any of the former, for I have often made use thereof. But if your *Horse* have gotten a stripe in the *eye*, then let him *bloud* in the *necke*, and in the *weeping veyne*, on the same side where the stripe is, then

Take white Rose-water, and the white of a new laid egge, beat them very well together, then wash and bathe the *eye* well therwith, and lay round about it with your splatter this charge restringent.

Eye a charge.

Take Masticke, Bolearmonacke, Sanguis Draconis, the white of a new laid egge, and white wine vineger of the strongest, beat first the hard simples to very fine powder, and then searse them, and they must be beaten severally, then mixe them all together with the white of the egge, and the vineger so well wrought, as that the medicine come to a thicke oyntment, and with this charge the forance round about the *eye*, and this will keepe off the *humour*, and when that you finde that the *eye* doth begin to amend, then wash and bathe the *eye* twice or thrice a day, or oftner, with cold fountaine or Well water, so fresh as it is taken or drawne out of the Well or Fountaine, and if after you shall perceive that there doth grow a *filme* or *skin* over the *eye*, then take it away by blowing, or putting the powder of Camphire, or Sol Armoniacum, or white sugar-Candy in fine powder, according as I have before prescribed you. ✠ This is a most sove-

raigne receit. Alſo if your *Horſe* in his *eye* have gotten a ſtripe,

Take of freſh Butter wherein never came ſalt, the quantity of a Walnut, and put it into his *eare* on that ſide where the ſtripe is, and it will helpe him. Another:

Take Lentels or Gray-Peaſe, and champe or chew them in your *mouth*, and then whilſt they be in your *mouth*, blow and breath into your *Horſes eye*, but not any of the Peaſe by any meanes, doe this every day often, and a little after waſh the ſore *eye* with cold Fountaine water till it be whole. ✠ But yet I will teach you another receit which will take off a Pin and Web, Filme, Thickneſſe, or any other foulneſſe which may be in the *eye* whatſoever, whereof I have had great experience, and have done many rare cures in this kinde, *viz.*

Take the ſhels of ſeven or eight egges, cleanſe them from all manner of inward ſlime, and dry them well within, then lay thoſe ſhels betweene two new Tyles, or old, ſo they be made very cleane and free from Morter, and then lay them in the glowing embers, and cover them all over, and on every ſide with burning hot embers, and ſo let them ly a good ſpace, untill the moyſt ſubſtance be quite taken from them, then take them up, and beat the ſhels to very fine powder, and ſearſe the powder, then with a gooſe quill blow of this powder into your *Horſes eye*, doe this twice every day, and it is a certaine cure. ✠ But if you doe finde the *eye* to be fed with any Rhumaticke *humour*, or that it be inflamed, or that it hath gotten a bruiſe, ſtripe, or the like, then

Take of the pureſt and whiteſt refined loafe ſugar, one ſpoonfull and a halfe, let it be made into fine powder and ſearſed, or elſe of the beſt white ſugar-Candy (which is much better) the like quantity, let it be finely powdred and ſearſed, and mixe with it ſo much May or ſweet butter (wherein never came ſalt) as a Walnut, and adde alſo to it ſo much of the former powder of Egge ſhels, as of ſugar-Candy, make theſe into one body, and bring it to a ſalve, and put thereof into the *Horſes eye*, morning, evening, and noone, and this will make the *eye* to be cleare, ſound, and whole againe. ✠ This unguent doth purge, cleanſe, coole, and comfort the *eye* of the *Horſe*, and helpeth greatly his *ſight*; make uſe of this, for it is very good. But if the *eyes* be inflamed, which you may eaſily know by the red ſtrakes which will be in them, then

Take Thuris Maſculi, the marrow of a Lamb, Saffaron, Cuttle-bone, of each one ounce, of the oyle of Roſes one ounce, and the whites of ten new laid egges, beat and incorporate all theſe very well together, and then with a feather put ſome of this medicine into his *eyes* once every day. ✠ This receit is very good, for I have had great triall thereof. Another:

Take of white Starch made of wheate, Frankincenſe, life-honey, of each as much as will ſuffice, make all theſe into one body, and with

a feather apply it to the grieved *eye*. + Another:

If the inflamation be great, let him *blond* in both the *temple veynes*, and in the *weeping veynes*, and then wash his *eyes* with *womans milke* and life honey mingled together. + Another for a wart or spungy *excretion* growing neere to to the *eye* of the *Horse*, which commonly doth proceed from a condensed flegme that descendeth to the *eye*, which in time will cause the *eye* either to consume, or to grow little, if it be not prevented, which must be done thus.

Eye a Wart.

Take Roch Allum and burne it, and then adde unto it so much white Coperas unburnt, grinde them together to very fine powder, then lay a little of this powder just upon the top of the wart, but take heed none get into the *eye*, for it is a strong corrasive, and will corrode; let the Wart be thus dressed once every day, and in short time it will consume and eate it quite away never to come more. +

Lunaticke eyes.

But as touching Lunaticke eyes, this word Lunaticke is derived from the *Latine* word *Luna*, which signifieth the *Moone*, and the reason why this disease takes its denomination from thence, is, for that at certain times of the *Moone* he will see well, and at other times a little, but then at other times no whit at all; and therefore this disease is called *lunaticke*, and this kinde of blindenesse we do hold to be the very worst of all other, but when he doth see, you may know it by the colour of his *eyes*, for then they will be dimme and yellowish, but when he seeth nothing, then will they looke fiery and red. This disease commeth sometimes naturally, taking it hereditary, either from the *Stallion* his *Sire*, or from the *Mare* his *Damme*, by whom he was begotten and foled: it commeth also sometimes by meanes of evill *humours* which descending from the *head*, make their residence in and about the *eyes*, and these naughty *humours* are occasioned by the meanes of intemperate riding, drawing, or other laborious exercise, in which the poore *creature* hath bin put to doe more then nature was well able to performe; wherefore by one of these wayes, this malady commeth; the cure is thus.

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Masticke, of each like much, melt them together, and having before hand provided in a readinesse two round plaisters of leather, the breadth of a 20 shilling piece of gold, lay and spread the medicine hot upon these two plaisters, and so hot as the *Horse* can suffer them, apply them to his *temples*, causing them to stick fast to the *skinne*, and let them there remaine, untill they shall fall off of themselves, then rowell him on the face just under his *eyes* with a very small *French Rowell* the bredth of a three pence at the most, and let it be turned every day once, the space of 12 or 15 dayes, then take forth the *Rowell*, and heale up the *orifice* with the greene oyntment prescribed you in *lib.2. cap.10. § 4. G.* and this will undoubtedly very much help his *sight*. ✠ Another:

Shave [illegible] *hayre* the bredth of a shilling on either side of the *head* u[illegible] *veines*, and after apply to the place this charge.

Take

Take Taca-Mahaca, and lay it upon thoſe places which were ſhaven, and clap upon them flocks of the ſame colour, then make inciſion and put in two *French Rowels*, as is ſhewed in the cure going before, to bring downe the peccant *humours*, and let the *eyes* be waſhed twice every day with the medicine before taught you, made of ground Ivy, Honey, Selendine, and womans milke. ¶ This is very good for this diſeaſe, and this I can boldly commend unto you to be a very good medicine, for I have often uſed. Now as touching *ſore eyes* which muſt be cured by medicine, you muſt underſtand that the *eye* is the moſt delicate part of any one *member* in all the whole *body*, it is the *Torch* or *Candle* which doth give light to the whole *body*, it is the guide which doth uſher the *body*, and to carry it from danger, ſo as it ſhall not at any time either ſtumble upon rockes, or blockes, or fall into any precipice; wherefore great regard ought to be had, how you doe at any time tamper or meddle with this ſo choyce a *member*, leſt in ſtead of endeavouring to cure one *ſore eye*, you put out both, a thing often ſeene and knowne, and therefore the medicines which you apply to the *eyes* ought evermore to be new made, yea in a manner every day, for that when once they begin to grow ſtale, they become ſharp and aſper, perplexing the poore beaſt, much more then otherwiſe, neither are they ſo wholeſome, nor ſo powerfull whereby to performe their office for which they were made and compounded. If you have a *Horſe* which is but weake of ſight, the leſſe *bloud* you take from him, the better it will be for the continuance of his *ſight*, for by taking much *bloud* from a *Horſe* weakely ſighted, will on a ſudden cauſe him to become *ſtone blinde*, like as by experience I have often knowne and obſerved. But now to conclude this Paragraph, becauſe I have not yet handled one part appertaining to a *ſore eye*, *viz.* for an *eye* which by an *unlucky ſtroke* or *ſtripe* is broken and beaten out of the head of the *Horſe*. I will give you one onely receit, which can never be parallelled: to wit,

Eye broken. Take Allum, and firſt burne it in a fire-pan, and after when it is burned ſo, put it upon the hot coales, and let it burne there till all the moyſture be quite conſumed, that it becommeth as light as a feather, and as white as ſnow, and ſo brittle as that it will breake with every touch, unleſſe it be very carefully handled, when it is ſo brittle as that it will runne to aſhes with every ſmall preſſure, and that the taſt of Allum remaineth little in the ſaid Allum, then is it ſufficiently burned, then take of this powder as much as will ſuffice, and mixe it with life-honey, and ſtirre them well together, as that you do bring it to an unguent; put of this every day morning and evening into his *eye* with a feather, and ſo hold your hand upon the *eye* a pretty while, that the medicine cannot ſuddenly get forth, and by thus doing, in few dayes it will be throughly cured, though the *eye* be utterly loſt.

§ 6. E.

Hippoph. *What is good to take away a* bony excretion, *or a fleshy?*

Hippof. This malady of a *bony excretion* commeth moſt commonly by the meanes of *cauſticks* and burning *corroſives*, which be laid to wounds that are neere to the *bone*, as when the wound is either in the *legge*, or about the *paſterne*, for that the fleſh being extreamely burned and mortified by ſuch *cauſticks* and *corroſives*, it doth cauſe an *excretion* to grow upon the *bone*, which through the unskilfulneſſe of the *Ferrier*, the wound is healed up, but the *excretion* doth remaine ſtill upon the *bone*, which becommeth an *eye-ſore*, unleſſe it be afterwards taken off, which occaſioneth a new cure, and over and above it enforceth oft times the *Horſe* to hault: ſometimes againe an *excretion* commeth by the *Horſe* being galled with a locke or fetters, having beene long continued upon the ſame *foot*, without changing or removing in time convenient. But howſoever it commeth, the cure is, *Excretion.*

Take Elecampane root newly gathered, and cleanſe it from its earth, and wrap it up in a brown paper, then wet the paper, and ſo heale it in the hot embers, and ſo roſt it as you would doe a Warden, when it is throughly well roſted, that it be like to pap, ſo hot as your *Horſe* can ſuffer it, (for it muſt not ſcald him) after you have with a ſticke, (like as you doe a ſplent) rubbed, knocked, and chafed the *excretion*, binde this roſted root cloſe unto the place, and ſo let it remaine on 24 houres before you doe remove it, and in two or three times thus dreſſing it, the *excretion* will rot and conſume to nothing, and this will alſo take away a ſplent. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take the oyle of Origanum, and every morning and evening, or oftner, take a little upon the brawne of your thumb, and rubbe the place, and it will therewith in time conſume, and quite take it away. ✠ And this will alſo take away a ſplent.

§. 7. E.

Hippoph. *What will cure an Impoſtume in the* eares *of a* horſe?

Hippof. This diſeaſe proceeds from ſundry cauſes, as by means of ſome blow with ſome ſtaffe or other ſuch like thing, which he receiveth about the *eares*, or *poll*, or elſe by meanes of ſome hurt he may get by being wrung or galled with a new or hard hempen halter, ſpecially if a knot be neer or upon the place; ſometimes it comes alſo of a cold taken in the *head*, and ſometimes againe by meanes of bad and *peccant humours*, which reſiding in the *head*, doe make its paſſage by the *eares*; it is eaſily known by its much burning, glowing, and ſwelling, and by the *Horſes* unwillingneſſe to be touched and handled about that place; if it be an impoſtumation, then thus it muſt be cured. Take

Eares impoſtumated.

Take Linſeed and make it into fine powder, and Wheate-flower, of each halfe a pint, ordinary honey one pint, tryed- Hogs-greaſe one pound, mixe all theſe well, and warme them upon a fire, keeping them continually ſtirring: then take of this oyntment and ſpread it upon a linnen cloath, or upon a plaiſter of leather, the breadth of the ſwelling only, and apply it warme to the place, and renew it once every foure and twenty houres, till it eyther do breake or be ſo ripe, as that it may be opened; which muſt be ſo done downewards, that the corruption may eaſily iſſue away, then heale it up with this ſalve.

Take Mel-Roſatum, Sallet-oyle, and ordinary Turpentine of each two ounces, incorporate them well together, and make for the *Horſe* a biggen, or night-cap to keepe on the medicine, taint the ſore to the bottome dipped in this oyntment, and apply alſo a plaiſter of the ſaid ſtuffe upon the ſore, renewing it every day till it be whole and ſound. ✣. But if the Impoſtumation be broken of its own accord before you do perceave it, then

Take oyle of Roſes, Venice Turpentine, and common Honey of each like much, mixe them well together, and ſo making it bloud warme upon a few embers or coales, dip ſome black wooll in the medicine, & ſo ſtop up that *Eare* therewith, which is grieved, renewing it once a day till it be whole. ✣. But if the *Eares* be only inflamed, then ſtop of this foreſaid medicine into them, and it will both eaſe him and take away the inflamation, ✣. Another.

Take of pepper made into fine powder diſt. tryed Hogges-greaſſe one ſpoonefull, the Iuyce of Rue one handfull, the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar two ſpoonefull, beate all theſe very well together, and if the ſwelling, Impoſtumation, or Inflamation, be eyther in the *Eares*, *Face*, *Head* or *Throte* of the *Horſe*, if you take eyther black-wooll, fine lint, Flax, or Hurds, and dip it into this medicine, and ſo ſtop both his *Eares* therewith, and then ſtitch them up, that it get not forth, renewing it once in two dayes, till the ſwelling bee cleane gone, your *Harſe* will be certainely cured ✠. But if the griefe be in any other part of the *Body*, then with this Vnguent, you ſhall anoint the grieved or ſwolne place, once or twice a day, till it depart. ✠. But if the ſwelling be neere or about the *Cods*, or privy parts, then

Firſt Bathe the place well with cold water, and after being made dry againe with a cloath, anoynt it with the ſaid oyntment, every day once or twice, and you ſhall find it to be a preſent cure ✣. This alſo cureth the *Vlcer* and *Canker* in the *Noſe*, and it is a ſure Cure for the Vives ✠. I have often cured all theſe maladies with this Receipt.

Chap.

Chap. 9.

§. 1. F.

Hippophylus.

What cure have you for the Farcin?

Hippoſ. Of all the diſeaſes whereunto *Horſes* are inclinable, this of the *Farcin* is the moſt loathſome, the moſt ſtinking, and the moſt filthy, wherefore for the ſame I ſhall ſet you downe many cures, but firſt I intend to diſcourſe ſomewhat of it's Nature, and how it comes to a *Horſe*; This diſeaſe we here in *England* do for the moſt part call the *Farcy*, and (*Secundum Vulgus*) it is called the *Faſhions*, for ſo Maſter *Markham* doth ſtile it; But Maſter *Blundevile*, the *Italians*, and the *French* do give it the name of *Farcin*, to which denomination I doe the rather incline, by reaſon we take the ſaid name from the *Italians* and the *French*, for that truely I do find that to be the proper name of the ſaid Infirmity, derived from the word *Farcina*, which is a diſeaſe moſt infectious, poyſnous, and dangerous, being never ſo little let alone, or neglected: It is a kind of creeping *Vlcer* beginning with hard knots, and Puſtils, and after dilating and ſpreading it ſelfe into branches (like to a Vine or Ivy) doth not ceaſe from running, untill ſuch time as it hath viſited every part and member of the *Body*, for *Quaſi Cancer ſerpit*, it commonly beginning either in a veine, or neere to ſome *Maſter veine*, which feedeth and nouriſheth the diſeaſe, that is the cauſe of it's diffuſion. It is ingendred ſometimes of corrupt *bloud*, which heats and ſurfets have occaſioned in the *Body*, ſometimes by hurts and wounds received, as alſo by ſome Cankerous & poyſnous thing, as ruſty ſpurres, ſnaffles, bits, or the like, it is alſo taken from another *horſe*, which is faln into the ſame diſeaſe, alſo by hewing one *legge* againſt another, and being ſmitten with ſome ſtaffe, whereon are hard knots, and ſundry ſuch like meanes and wayes; it comes alſo to a *Horſe* by ſurfets given him, which finding no other way of avoidance, lais hold of this diſeaſe, wherby the *bloud*, being over much heat, his greaſe molten, and his taking a ſuddaine cold, which is moſt frequent after great heates, then growing in the *body*, and eſpecially in the *bloud*, ſuch obſtructions, corruption, and putrefaction, not having any meanes to vent it ſelfe, or to voyde, or evacuate, but by this way only, by growing into knots, Puſtils, Vlcers, or the like, which be ſo contagious and infectious, ſo as if but any other *horſe*, doe but gnaw or lick with his teeth or tongue, upon the place infected, hee

will be assuredly within a short time after himselfe infected also, and when once a *horse* is strucken or infected with this leprous malady, if he be not presently and skilfully cured, it is as infallible death to him, as if he had eyther his *throate* cut, or his *braines* beaten out, with a *Butchers Axe*; wherefore if in this case, your *horse* be visited with this sinistrous disease, I could wish you would carefully observe two things: the first is, that so soone as you doe perceive this Malady to appeare upon him, that you presently sequester him from his fellowes, into some other Stable or stall by himselfe alone, for feare he might infect them, for that it is catching; And secondly, to be very diligent in omitting no time or opportunity, in getting him administred unto for his Cure: The signes of this disease are so plaine and familiar, as that it needeth no description. I will passe to the cure. To the end therfore you may go the more securely to work, wherby you may make it an able and perfect cure, especially if you do finde the Pustils to be malevolent, and greatly inflamed, then the first day let him *bloud* in or neere to that *Master veine*, which doth most feed and nourish the *Farcin*, then so soone as you have well *bloudied* him, give him this purge, *viz.*

Farcin, 1

2

Take of Aloes, made into fine power one ounce, and a quantity of London Triacle so much as will suffice, and of life hony so much as will suffice, mixe these well together, and give it him in a morning fasting, and six houres after, give him white water, neyther needeth this *bloudying* him, or Purgation, any way hinder him from being dressed for his disease, for that *bloud-letting* doth but only hinder it from running any farther for that time, and the Purge sendeth the disease from the *heart*, to the end it may no way annoy that place, wherefore for the perfecting of the cure.

Take of oyle de-Bay two ounces of Euforbium made into fine powder one ounce, incorporate both these so well together, that they may become but one body, then search for the first origin, or spring, where the first knots did begin, and so continue searching till you find out the last, clip away the *hayre* from off, and about all these knots, and annoynt them very well with this oyntment once every three dayes; and after you have thus dressed him three times, if you do not find the Farcins to be killed, and that the knots do not dry up. then bathe the places three dayes together with the stale or vrine of a Cowe, or Oxe, and with the hearbe called *Lions-foote*, in latine, *Leontipodium*, both boyled together, and this will cure him. ✣. This medicine I never made use of but once only, and it cured the *horse* unto which I did administer the same. ✣. Another.

Take nine leaves of the pot herbe called Beetes, of the smallest but soundest leaves, and nine grains of Bay-salt, beat these very well together to salve, and in a morning before Sun-rising, put this medicine into both his *Eares* by equall portions, and put into them after it, a little wooll, to keepe in the medicine, and so stitch up his

Eares,

eares, and let him ſtand ſo with meate and white water 24 houres at the leaſt, then take forth the wooll and ſtuffe, and he is cured. ✠ With this receit I have cured ſundry *horſes*. Another. If your *Horſe* have a *farcin* in any of the foure quarters of his *body*, let him *bleed* well in the *necke veyne* faſting, then

Take of Arſenick two ounces, and put it into a piece of new cloth, and binde it up with a piece of new Pack-threed, and faſten it unto the *mayne* of the *Horſe*, this is to be thus adminiſtred, if the farcin be onely in the fore parts, but if the diſeaſe be as well in the hinder-parts, as in the fore-parts, then hang alſo the like quantity of Arſnick, made up in a cloth like as was the former, and hang that alſo upon his *tayle*, and the more you ride, work, or travell, and exerciſe him, the better it will be for his diſeaſe, to qualifie and rid the ſame, and the more ſpare his dyet be, the ſooner is he cured, provided you keep him warm in the ſtable, and for ſome time you muſt give him white water. This cure I did never try, but it was taught me by a great *Mariſhall of Paris*, one who had the repute of a very honeſt man, and a moſt skilfull Ferrier, who proteſted unto me that he had perfectly cured many *Horſes* with this receit. Another:

Take white Bran prepared, like as you ſhall finde preſcribed you, *lib.2. cap.2.§ 4. F.* how to make fat a *Horſe*, and give it him a day before he is to be dreſſed, and let him eate it ſo hot as well he may: continue him to this dyet three mornings together, then let him *bleede* well in the *necke veyne*, but give him no Hay that day he *bleedeth*, but ſweet wheat ſtraw onely, neither let him either eate or drink in four houres after, and then let his drink be white water. And two dayes after his *bleeding*, you ſhall begin to give him again his wheat bran prepared as before, which ſhall continue for ſixe dayes together, during which time you ſhall give him every evening with his Oats, this powder and theſe roots following, *viz.*

Take of Comin, of Linſeed, of Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, of each two ounces, quick Brimſtone, foure ounces, let all theſe be powdred, and mixe them well, and give it at one time with his Oates, ſo much as you may put into an egge ſhell, the meat being firſt taken out; let him be thus uſed daily, by the ſpace of ſixe dayes. Thoſe dayes being ended,

Take the root of Salerick, the root of Taſſus-Barbatus, the root of Valerion, and the root of Lappaizon, of each like much, chop them all very ſmall, as hearbs to the pot, which being thus well mixed, give them to the *Horſe* without Oates if he will eate them, if not, then otherwiſe in Pils; and when you give him the roots, do not give him the aforeſaid powder, and ſo continue him with theſe roots ſixe dayes together, which ſixe dayes ended, cauſe him to be *bloudied* againe on the other ſide of the *necke*, but then let him not *bleed* ſo much as before, and order him as before after the firſt *bleeding*: nor ſhall you give him either powder or roots, but let him be ſtill kept warm,

and have his ordinary allowance of meate, as well of Hay as of Oats, and then for fixe dayes after, every evening after he hath drunke white water, give him one evening of this powder with his Oates, and the next evening of theſe rootes, and if you finde not the *Farcin* to dry up to your minde, continue then this powder and theſe roots for fixe dayes more, and thoſe dayes being paſt, give him good Hay and good Oates, and not any longer the powder, or the rootes: and thus following theſe directions punctually, your *Horſe* ſhall be perfectly cured, and be brought into good ſtate and health again, neither ſhall the relicks of the *farcin* remaine in any part of his body, and if there be any knots remaining, they ſhall breake, purge, cleanſe, heale, and dry up, the maine cauſe being taken and purged away. Of this my ſelfe had never tryall by reaſon that many of the ingredients were not eaſily to be had. Another:

Take blacke Elebore, and adde to the hearb ſome of its juyce, put unto it old Boares-greaſe, and boyle it untill the juyce be quite boyled into it, whereby to bring it to a perfect unguent, with which you ſhall annoynt and rub the knots, or buttons of the *farcin*, but before you doe apply this unguent, let the *hayre* be ſhaven or clipped away from and about the knots. ✠ With this receit I have cured onely one *Horſe*. Another:

Take five or ſixe handfuls of four-leaved Plantane, with the roots, of Bay ſalt one handfull, and ſo much Comin as you may well take up, with your thumb and two fingers, beate the Comin to fine powder, and then ſtamp the Plantane and Salt well together with the Comin, and after they be well incorporate, let it ſteepe and infuſe 24 houres, then ſtraine and wring it hard, and give the liquor thereof to your *Horſe* in a morning faſting, but you muſt take *bloud* from him the day before, and he muſt ſtand upon the *Trench* ſixe hours before you give him the ſaid drinke, and you muſt alſo put into his *eares* the juyce of Rue, and then ſtitch up his *eares*, and ſo let them remaine 24 hours, but if the malady ſhall continue (which I think it will not doe) then muſt you let him *bloud* againe, and give him the aforeſaid drink. This I never tryed, but he that taught me this, did aſſure me that there is no kinde of *farcin*, but this receit will cure. Another:

Moly or Aqua-Plantique.

Take firſt the hearb *Moly*, it groweth in mariſh grounds, you muſt take 10. 11. 12. or 13. of the roots, (or according to the ſtrength, greatneſſe or corpulency of your *Horſe*) let your roots be in number or quantity. Take alſo of white Wine one pinte, then take of bay Salt one handfull (which was never uſed) and put it into the white Wine, then take of white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte more or leſſe, but firſt note, you muſt take the roots of the ſaid *Moly*, and let it be gathered a day before you are to uſe it; you muſt onely take the roots thereof, (and caſt away the reſidue) for that they are moſt uſefull, and after you have ſo done, take theſe great roots, and waſh them cleane, ſo as no filth do remain upon thē, then take the ſaid roots and bruiſe them,

and

and ſteep them in the Wine with the Salt & Vineger, in an earthen Pipkin, and ſtop it cloſe, that no ayre get into it, and let it infuſe ſo a whole night, then about 7 or 8 of the clock in the morning, ſtrain it. and give it him to drink, and after he hath taken it, cover him up warme, and let him be walked four hours. but above all things, you muſt not give him any Oats in four dayes after, but in ſtead of Oats, give him wheate bran prepared, and let his drink be white water, neither muſt you ſuffer him to goe forth of the ſtable in three or foure dayes after at the ſooneſt; and then after that, you may ride or work him at your pleaſure; neither muſt this drinke be adminiſtred warm, but cold. ✠ This is a known certain cure among the *Mariſhals* in *France*, but by reaſon I could never finde the hearb *Moly* growing in *England*, I could never come to practiſe the cure here, nevertheleſſe I will give you the deſcription of this ſaid hearb *Moly*, and how it groweth, together with its true effigies: It groweth (as I ſaid before)

in mariſh and wet grounds, it reſembleth the hearb called Scolopendion

dion, or Sorrell, onely the leafe is bigger and broader, the flower is like to the white Violet, but leſſe, about the bigneſſe of a purple wild Violet, and it is as white as milk, it ſmelleth ſtrong like Garlicke; its root is little and round, which is moſt ſoveraigne to heale the overtures of the *matrix*, being beaten with the oyntment of Ireos, applyed as a Peſſure or Plaiſter: *Homer* ſaith that the *god Mercury* was the firſt inventor or finder out of this *plant*, and the *gods* for the excellency thereof, named it *Moly*: ſee *Theophraſtus*, *Paracelſus*, and *Dioſcorides*.

Albeit that all theſe receits be very good for the *farcin*, yet are not all *Horſes* cured with one and the ſame medicine; and moſt certain it is, that the moſt infallible way to cure the *farcin*, is to give him the *fire*: in the practiſe not onely of this cure, but of many others alſo, which are to be adminiſtred inwardly, it is greatly behoofefull that the *Ferrier* be mindfull to obſerve the ſtrength, age, quality, and ability of the *Horſe*, to which he is to adminiſter, and accordingly to mixe and apply his ingredients. Another:

Firſt let him *bloud* on both ſides the *necke* and *ſpurre-veynes*, and let him *bleed* a good quantity, then take Hemlocke, Cinque-foyle, or five leaved graſſe, and Rue, of each like much, ſtamp them and ſtrain them, and put the juyce thereof into his eares, and then ſtitch them up 24 houres, and it is a certain cure. ✠ For with this I have cured ſundry *Horſes*. Another:

Firſt let him *bleed* well at the *necke veyne*, then take Trifora-Magna, and Aloes Platice, of each two ounces, and as much Barly bran, mixe all theſe, and diſſolve it in oyle-olive one pinte, and put thereto of white wine one pinte, and then divide it into two parts or moyities, and ſo give it two mornings together to your *Horſe* faſting with a Horne, that is to ſay, either morning the one moyity: this done, take as much black ſope as a Walnut, halfe as much Arſnick in fine powder, and work them into one *body* to a ſalve, then with the poynt of a knife ſlit or open all the hard knots or puſtils, and ſo put into every of them the quantity of two Barly cornes of this ſalve, which will eate forth the cores, and kill the poyſonous *humours*, then where you ſee the wounds, and places red and faire, heale them up by annoynting them with freſh Butter molten and made hot, and then ſtrew upon them the powder of Bolearmoniack. ✠ This is a moſt approved good receit, and by my ſelfe often practiſed. Another:

Take the juyce of Rue, and of Aqua-vitæ, of each one ſpoonfull and a halfe, beat them well together, and by equall portions convey it into both his *eares*, then ſtitch them up for 24 houres ſpace, and he is infallibly cured. ✠ This is an excellent cure, and by me often uſed. Another:

Firſt waſh all the places that be raw or ſwelled, with Chamberly, or white Wine Vineger warmed, take then of Salt one handfull, of white Wine Vineger one pottle, of Allum diſſolved in the Vineger,

one

one ounce, of Verde-greaſe and greene Copperas, both made into fine powder, of each one pound, melt all theſe upon the fire, and every day waſh the ſores, and places ſwelled therewith warme, twice a day, morning and evening. This I never did experience, but it was commended unto me by a worthy Knight, who averred unto me, that he had cured therewith very many *horſes*, of the *Farcin*. Hee alſo ſaide that hee hath cured ſome with this receipt following, *viz.*

Take Tarre, Tallow, and Horſe-dunge of each ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate all theſe upon the fire, and annoynt him therwith hot. Another.

Take Hempeſeed one pound, and bruiſe it well, then take Rue, and ſalt, of each one handfull, of the leaves of Mallowes two handfuls, boyle all theſe in faire water two quarts, unto a moyety, then ſtraine it, and give it your *horſe* bloud warme, give him of this two mornings, but not two mornings together, but let him ſtay one morning betwixt, then take a good quantity of Chamberly and Hem-lock ſo much as will ſuffice, and boyle them well, and waſh the ſores till they be quite whole, and dryed up. ✠. This is a very good receipt. Another.

Take the hearb with the root called *Digitalis*, in Engliſh *ſope-glove*, alias *Fox glove*, a good quantity, binde it up into a fine linnen ragge, and if the *Farcin* be in the forepart, of the *horſe*, hang it upon the *maine*, but if in the hinder part, then hang it upon the *taile*, and this will cure him. This I never did experience; But now I will give you for a cloſe the beſt and moſt certaine cure for this diſeaſe, that I ever yet knew: and with which I have perfected more rare cures of this nature, then of all the reſidue before inculcated. And thus it is. Another.

Take of Rue, the leaves and tender tops only, without any the leaſt ſtalkes, a good handfull, firſt chop them ſmall, and then ſtampe them in a Morter to a very oyntment, when they are ſo well pownded, put thereunto of the pureſt white tryed Hogs-greaſe one ſpoonfull, and ſo worke them together to a perfit ſalve, or unguent, that done, ſtop into eyther *Eare* this whole quantity by equall portions, and put a little wooll upon the Medicine, to cauſe it to keep in the better, and ſo ſtitch up his *Eares*, and let him remaine in the Stable ſo foure and twenty houres at the leaſt, and then unſtitch his *Eares*, and take forth the wool, and eyther put him forth to graſſe, or elſe if he be to be wrought, work him, for the more his labour is, and the more ſpare his diet is, the ſooner he is cured. ✠. This I commend to you for the beſt and moſt certaine cure, that I could ever meete with, for with this receipt only I aſſure you on my credit, I have cured more then 100. *horſes*, many of which were by other *Ferriers*, holden for incurable, & ſentenced to be food for *Hounds*. The *French* do alſo call the diſeaſe, *Mal de ver*.

§. 2.

§. 2. *F.*

Hippoph. *I Have heard of another kinde of* Farcin, *called the water-*Farcin?

Wet Farcin.

Hippof. Truely Sir, in answere to this, I by observation of this disease do find, that there is but onely one kind, albeit I will not deny, but that some one may be more malignant then another, according to the constitution of the *Horse*, who is visited therewith, by reason that *choler* may be in that *horse*, more predominant then in an other *horse*, of any of the other *humours*, for then it commeth forth more dry, but if the *horse* be naturally Rheumatick, then may it appeare more watry and moyst, and so of the residue, but still it is but one, and the same infirmity, for more sorts I could never find. But touching this watry *Farcin*, as you are pleased to terme the same, the *French* giveth this name, *viz. la Louppe*, which is in *English* the *Woulfe*, and they gave me the reason why they do so call it, to wit; because it festreth the flesh, eating and corroding therein inwardly, and it beginneth most commonly in the feet, rather then in any other member of the *horse*. And for this disease a famous *French Marshall* of *Paris* gave me this ensuing cure, but I never yet made tryall thereof, *viz.*

First wash the place, and shave away the hayre, and search the place well with your finger, and let forth the corruption, but be sure you search it to the very bottome.

Take then Horse-dung, or Goose-dung, Wine, Salt, and Vinegar of each so much as will suffice, and make thereof a salve, and so Playster-wise apply it to the forance, binding it on, and the third day open it, and dresse it up againe as before, and do this every third day till it bee whole, but bee sure you doe every time you dresse him, examine the very bottome. This he assured me to bee a very perfect Cure.

§. 3. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is that disease is called the* Flankes, *and how is it cured?*

Hippof. This is when a *horse* hath gotten a wrinch, crick, stroke or other grief in his *backe*, which is called of the *French Ferriers Flankes*, the cure is this.

Flankes.

First shave away the *hayre* from the place grieved, then lay on this charge.

Take Bol-Armonack, Cumfry, alias Consolida-Major, Galbanum, Sol-Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his owne blood, Burgundy Pitch, Mastick, Olibanum, of each like much, so much as will suffice, stampe and beat all these together, with Wheate meale, Vinegar, and the whites

whites of Egges ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo make it into a charge, and therewith charge the place grieved, then clap upon the top, all along the *Chine*, and *Backe* of the *Horſe*, a ſheeps-skin, comming hot from the ſheep, and change it every day, and at three or foure dayes end hee will bee well, but let the charge lye upon the place, untill ſuch time, as it doe fall away of it ſelfe, and keepe him warme.

§. 4. *F.*

Hippophyl. *How may a man in few dayes his* Horſe *to be fat, or at leaſt in good taking ſuppoſing him to be ſound?*

Fat horſe.

Hippoſ. Sir over much riding and exerciſe, will bring the fatteſt *Horſe* that ever trode upon the Earth, to become poore, bare, and leane, and ſo will too early, and too late ayerings, bad dyet, evill keeping, lingring after *Mares*, and ſpending upon them, lingring after graſſe, and the like: But if your *horſe* be poore, bare, leane, and feeble, ſo that his *ſtomack* be good to meate, I will give you a Receit, which (if you doe duly obſerve my rules, juſtly as I ſhall deliver them) you ſhall get him up into *fleſh* in twelve or foureteene dayes.

Bran prepared.

Firſt therefore take *bloud* from him, if you do find it groſſe, or Flegmatick, for otherwiſe he cannot poſſibly mend, then inſteade of Oates in the morning, you ſhall give him Wheate branne, prepared after this manner. Set over the fire a cleane Kettle, and fill it almoſt full with faire water, and ſo ſoone as it boyleth put in your Wheate branne, and ſo let it boyle a quarter of an houre at the leaſt, then take it off, and let it ſtand to coole, and about foure or five in the morning, give him of this branne ſo hot as he can eate it, then for his drinke give him of the ſame water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be kept covered and littered warme: but if it bee Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, but temperate, and at night give him with his Oates alſo the quantity of what you may convey into an Egge-ſhell of this powder following, with which you muſt continue him the ſpace of eight dayes, or according as you ſhall ſee cauſe. You muſt underſtand that this branne thus prepared, is the only thing which dryeth up his naughty, groſſe, and corrupt *humours*, and doth the better prepare the body to aſſume luſt, courage, ſtrength, and *fleſh*, together with the helpe of the powder, which is this.

Fat a leane horſe.

Take of Commin, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linſeed, of each two ounce, Quick-Brimſtone ſix ounce, make all theſe into powder, of this powder give him every night, the quantity of an Egg-ſhell full, with his Oates, as I have before preſcribed, but he muſt firſt be watred, with white water, which ſo ſoone as hee hath drunke, let his whole *body* be rubbed, then cloathed, & littered.

which being done, then give him a ſmall ſheafe of wheat ſtraw, ſweet, good, and well threſhed into his Racke, and let him eate thereof by the ſpace of an houre, which done, give him Oates mixed with his powder, which when he hath eaten, give him Hay at your pleaſure, remembring to keep him warm, but ſo as with moderation; and let him be alſo well rubbed, eſpecially againſt the *hayre*, and by this doing in ſhort time you ſhall perceive him to mend exceedingly, but you muſt put alſo into his Oates together with its former powder, of Nettle-ſeed two handfuls every time, for that is the thing which principally will cauſe him to battle: It will alſo greatly availe to his amendment, if he be ayered every morning and evening an houre after, ſunne riſing, and an houre before ſunne ſet, if the weather be warme, and the ſunne doe ſhine. ✠ And this I doe aſſure you is the moſt exquiſite courſe can be taken, whereby to ſet up a leane *Horſe*, and to make a poor *Horſe* fat in little time, and with ſmall charge.

§. 5. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat helpe have you for the falling of the* Fundament?

Hippoſ. This malady commeth to a *Horſe* ſometimes by cold, ſometimes through weakeneſſe and meere poverty, and ſometimes by meanes of a laxativeneſſe and fluxe of *bloud*, when ſtraining to expell, the *Horſe* is not able, and by that meanes the *fundament* commeth out, the cure is,

Falling of the fundament.

Take white-Salt made into very fine powder, ſtrew a little upon the gut, then take a piece of Lard, and firſt having boyled Mallow-leaves till they be ſoft, take of theſe leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when it is ſufficiently beaten, make it up like to a *ſuppoſitory*, and apply it to the place every day once, till it be whole. ✠ This I have often tryed,

§. 6. *F.*

Hippoph. *I Should be very glad to know what you can ſay of* Feavers?

Hippoſ. Sir, as touching *feavers* in *Horſes*, I ſay that they be as ſubject to them, as *man* is, as alſo that theſe feavers are of ſeverall natures, which cannot be denied, which may moſt eaſily be diſtinguiſhed and knowne, if you pleaſe diligently to obſerve. A feaver commeth many times, either by intemperate riding or travell, or elſe through bad and unwholeſome dyet: and all *feavers* for the moſt part have their ſourſe from theſe effects, if you adde thereunto evill ayre.

§. 7. *F.*

Hippoph. VV*Hy* Hippoſerus, *how doe you define a* Feaver?

Hippoſ. I define it thus. A *Feaver* is an unnaturall and intemperate heat which beginneth at the *heart*, dilateth it ſelf through all the arteries and veynes of the whole *body* of the *Horſe*, hindring all his naturall motions: howſoever ſome *Ferriers* are pleaſed to make of them more ſorts, then I will queſtion their *phyſicall* and learned diſtinctions, for I could never conclude them but in a few, as *quotidian*, *tertian*, *quartan*, and *peſtilent*, and yet all theſe be of one nature, albeit ſome more malignant then others be, onely a *Hectique feaver* is of a different nature from the former, and ſo alſo a *peſtilent feaver* may be. Now as touching *feavers* which come in the Spring, Summer, Autumne, or Winter, I cannot ſee why they ſhould be *feavers* different in nature from theſe other, for there are not any of theſe, but may come to a *Horſe* in any of theſe ſeaſons.

Feaver defined.

§ 8. *F.*

Hippoph. F*Rom whence doe Feavers proceed then?*

Hippoſ. Firſt Sir you muſt underſtand that *Feavers* are of two ſorts, that is to ſay, Ordinary and Accidentall, the *ordinary feavers* are thoſe that come of ſurfets, over-riding, and labour, unwholeſome meat, as moyſt, raw, mouldy, and muſty bread, corne, provender and hay, of what nature, ſort, or condition ſoever; but your *feavers Accidentall* come of ſome terrible ſtroke or deep wound, bringing therewith inſufferable paine, dolour, and griefe to the poor beaſt; again, your *ordinary Feavers* come oft times by the extreame violent ſcorching of the Sunne, but moſt commonly in the *canicular dayes*, as when your *Horſe* is abroad at graſſe, where is either want of water, or having ſuch as is neither good or wholeſome, or elſe where is want of houſing, ſhelter to goe into, or ſhady trees to be under, and ſuch kinde of *Agues* doe prove for the moſt part either *Hectike*, or *Peſtilent feavers*, for by that meanes his *bloud* becommeth inflamed, whereby the *humour of choller* is predominate. Now Sir, if you be pleaſed to obſerve ſtrictly and carefully, you ſhall alſo finde that *feavers* doe come many times alſo from a quite contrary cauſe; as from cold taken upon hard riding, or great labour, and by having at ſuch times cold water given him to drink, or by waſhing, or walking having ſweat much, or by being out too late in the gripſe or ſhutting in of the evening, or upon day breaking, eſpecially neere or among fenny, mooriſh, or mariſh grounds, by reaſon that naughty vapours do ariſe from ſuch kinde of places: *Feavers* alſo do accrew to *Horſes* when upon hard riding, and great toyle, you give your *Horſe* cold water drawn out of a Well, which being much colder

then either River, or Pond water, doth more chill the *Horſe* inwardly, whereby he is much more diſtempered, cauſing him to quake, and to ſhake exceedingly after his drinke, which occaſioneth crudities, and an evill habit in the *ſtomacke*, which doth beget and ingender an *ague* or *feaver*, wherefore after ſweating and great labour, I doe adviſe you that whatſoever is given him, be firſt ſet over the fire to take away the chilneſſe, whereby your *Horſe* may take the leſſe damage, for that *feavers* taken of this nature, doe commonly prove *peſtilent feavers*, whoſe nature is to infect all his fellowes which are in the ſame ſtable or roome with him, if he be not either ſpeedily removed from his conſorts, or elſe ſuddenly cured; and the reaſon hereof is moſt evident, for that when as a *Horſe* hath been al the whole day travelled (eſpecially in the winter) and brought into the ſtable all hot and ſweating, when in ſhort time after his *bloud* and *pores* begin to be ſetled, and to return to his heart again, and to his intrals, then if you give him cold water, you may inſtantly perceive him to fall into a formall quivering and ſhaking for a time, which being once paſſed over, you ſhall ſee him moſt palpably aſſume a moſt extreame and violent burning, and peradventure after fals into a moſt deſperate ſweating, whereby is moſt eaſie to be found in him a generall diſtemperature throughout his whole *body*, together with a formall and dangerous *feaver*, wherefore if the *Ferrier* be not the more expert, it may ſtick cloſer unto him, and remain longer by him then a buſhell of Oats will do. But a *feaver* which doth proceed either from the corruption of the *bloud*, or from the contagion of the *ayre*, (according as I have before intimated) that I ſay is moſt frequent, albeit not ſo well known to all *Ferriers*, and I am able to affirme thus much of theſe kinde of *feavers* out of mine own long experience, that they are of that extreame violence, and ſo malignant, and their poyſon of that infinite force, as that if through their own violence, they be not able of themſelves to bring the creature viſited therewith to his end, yet will theſe convert their malice into other mortall maladies and diſeaſes, which will in time prove as noxious, to wit, into the Yellowes, Stavers, Glanders, Dropſie, Conſumption, Farcin, &c. unto which a *peſtilent feaver* is evermore the precurſor: inſomuch as if the Ferrier be not very skilfull and cautelous in obſerving and knowing the true *ſymptomes* of theſe kinde of diſeaſes, he may eaſily inſtead of labouring to effect a Cure, through his miſpriſion, miſcarry therein.

§. 9. F.

Hippoph. VV *Hat be the true* ſymptomes *or ſignes whereby to know a Feaver?*

Hippoſ. If you doe obſerve him well, you ſhall perceive him ſo ſoon as he beginneth to be *feaveriſh*, and when the fit firſt commeth upon him to hang or hold down his *head*, and if at firſt comming, it beginneth with a cold fit, then will he quake and tremble, and when his cold fit is over, then will he glow and burn throughout his whole *body*, his *breath* will be very hot, and he will fetch his *winde* thicke, and his *noſtrils* will be very open, and his *flankes* will beat thick, he will forſake his meat, and reele oft times as he goeth, his *eyes* will be ſwelled, they will water and be matterative, he will fall away and conſume in his *fleſh*, his *ſtones* will hang low, he will deſire and offer oft to lye down, and yet being laid he will riſe ſuddenly againe, he will have great deſire to drinke, neither will he drink much, and yet you would thinke that all the water in the Thames would not be ſufficient to quench his thirſt, for he will covet evermore to keep his mouth in the water, albeit he will drinke very little, and his ſleepe will goe from him. And theſe are the beſt, moſt certaine, and apparant *ſymptomes* that I doe know of a *Feaver*. *Feaver how to know.*

§ 10. F.

Hippoph. VV *Hat are the beſt cures for theſe ordinary Feavers?*

Hippoſ. If the *feaver* be *quotidian* and daily, then Take the yolkes of three new laid egges, and beat them well with ſeven ſpoonfuls of the beſt Aqua vitæ, and put unto it of ordinary Treacle, a ſpoonfull, and ſo making it bloud warme over a few hot embers, give it him, and then take his backe and ride him, untill hee doe begin to ſweat, and then bring him into the ſtable, and cloath, wiſpe, and litter him warme, ſo as he may ſweat an houre in the ſtable, but then coole him by degrees, and let him faſt three houres after, but let him *bloud* before you drench him, in the *necke* and *mouth*, and give him white water or Maſhes. This drinke would be given him one houre before the fit commeth. ✠ This is very good. *Feaver Ordinary.*

Another:

Take white Wine one pinte, of Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each one dram in fine powder, and adde thereto of life honey one ſpoonfull, let all theſe be made warme upon the fire, and ſo give him bloud warme: then take his back, and ride him into a good ſweat, and ſet him up, cloath him, litter him, and ſtop well his *body*, *head*, and *breaſt*, and let him ſweat ſo two houres, then by degrees coole him, and when he is cold, let him be well rubbed and cloathed up againe warm,

warme, but not to ſweate any more, and let him ſtand upon the *Trench* three houres after his ſweating, then unbit him, and waſh his *tongue* and *mouth*, with Alume, Vineger, Sage, and water boyled together, that done give him a little Wheate ſtraw to eate, and an houre after a gallon of ſweet, dry, and cleane Oats, well dreſſed and ſifted, but lay not all at once before him, but three or foure handfuls at a time continuing thus to feed him, till hee hath eaten up his whole gallon, and at night, give him a ſweet Maſh. And the next morning let him *bleed* at the *neck* & *mouth*, the quantity of a quart or leſſe if the *bloud* bee good, but if you doe find the *bloud* to be blacke, thick, hot, inflamed, yellowiſh, frothy, or otherwiſe evill coloured, take then from him two quarts, after keepe him warme, and let him purge, and for foure or five dayes after, give him eyther warme maſhes, or white water. ✠. This I have alſo knowne to bee very good: Another.

Firſt let him *Bloud* in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, then.

Take Germander, Sallet-oyle, and life-Honey of each foure ounces, of Gumme, Draganet, dry red-Roſes of each one ounce, put theſe pounded and chopped very ſmall into good Ale a quart, and warme it, and ſo give it him, then ride him till he ſweate, and order him as in the former cure. Of this I did never make tryall. Another.

Take of the tops of Time one handfull, boyle theſe in a quart of Beere, untill the Time do begin to waxe tender, and ſoft, then ſtrain it, and put to it, of browne Sugar-Candy, in powder two penny-worth, Anniſeeds in fine powder one penny-worth, and two penny-worth of ordinary Triacle, when all theſe are well diſſolved over the fire, give it your *horſe* bloud warme, but you muſt remember, that you doe let him *bloud*, before you doe give him this drinke, in the *Neck* and *Mouth*. ✠. This I have often tryed and found it right good. Another.

Take of ſtrong Ale one quart, and of Wormewood halfe a handfull, long-Pepper, Graynes, and the powder of dryed Rue of each one ounce, London Triacle two ounces, boyle them to a third part, then take it off, and ſtrayne it, that done, put into it of browne-ſugar-Candy in powder halfe an ounce, and ſo give it him bloud warme. ✠. This at twice giving will certainely cure his *Feaver*. Another.

Take Stone-Crop, of the iuice thereof foure Spoonefull, put this iuice into ſtrong-Ale one quart, and ſo give it your *horſe*, then let him be walked, (if the winde be not too cold and ſharpe) an houre, then ſet him up and cover him ſo as he may ſweate an houre, then coole him by degrees, and let him drinke no cold water by any meanes, & let his provender bee good, old, dry, and well ſifted Oates, but againſt the fit commeth (whether the *Feaver* be *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan*) let him be kept faſting, for the longer hee is faſting, and more

more empty upon his ſick dayes, the ſooner will his Feaver leave him. ✠. This is a well approved receipt, and let this ſuffice for ordinary *Feavers*, provided that when his fits be gone from him, and that he appeareth more lightſome, and well, it will be very good and wholeſome for him if you cauſe him to bee had abroad, and walked warme covered, and ſo ayred in due time, in the warme Sun, and that will greatly comfort him, and revive his *ſpirits*.

§. 11. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat ſay you now to the* Feaver Hectique?

Hippoſ. I ſay Sir, it is a moſt dangerous and mortall *Feaver*, and ſo malignant, as that if a skilfull *Ferrier* bee not with him in time, it is certaine death, and firſt it beginneth with a Conſumption in the *fleſh*; it proceedeth of a hot *humour* ingendred firſt in the *ſtomacke*, which too much *Phyſicke* hath occaſioned, and by taking away of too much *bloud* from him, in his youth without neceſſity, wherefore it is a thing moſt perillous to take *bloud* from young *horſes* upon very ſlight cauſe, & not to be over ready with *Phyſick*, but only in caſe of great neceſſity. The ſignes to know this *Feaver* from any other, are to looke into his *mouth*, and to draw forth his *tongue*, and you ſhall finde both his *mouth* and *tongue* raw, and mervailous hot, and having little appetite to meate, his *fleſh* will conſume, and waſte, and ſeene looſe, if you ſtrike him with your hand upon the *buttocks*, the *fleſh* thereof will quiver and quake, and he will be continually ſubject to quaking and ſhaking all his whole *body* over: beſides he will be very much inclined to ſweate as hee ſtandeth in the ſtable. The cure is. Firſt to make this lotion for his *mouth*.

Feaver Hectique.

Take of running water or Well water two quarts, and put thereto of Sage, of Yarrow, of Ribwort, of Plantane, of Bramble-leaves, and of Hony-ſuckle-leaves of each one handfull, with common Hony one ſpoonefull, boyle all theſe to the conſumption of one moyety, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a wal-nut of Alume, and two ſpoonefull, of Vineger, when that is diſſolved take it off, and drayne the water from the hearbs, or elſe ſlightly ſtrayn it, which water you ſhall keepe for your uſe, and when you would waſh his *mouth* therewith, faſten to a ſtick a ragge, and ſo waſh his *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day, and this will make his *mouth* well againe; or elſe if you do waſh his *mouth* with the ſurrop of Mulberries, it is very wholeſome and good. ✠. After give him this drinke.

Take of Aloes, one ounce powdred, of Garlick halfe an ounce, Anniſeeeds, and Licoris of each halfe an ounce, make firſt your Aloes, Anniſeeds, and Licoris into fine powder, and after bruiſe your Garlick a little, putting thereto, of brown Sugar-Candy three ounce, in powder, and adde thereto of white Wine one pint, warme this, and

and ſo give it your *horſe*, then let him bee ridden a little, and ſo ſet him up warme, and let him bee ſet upon the *Trench* three houres before, and three houres after, and then eyther give him ſweete Hay, or greene Corne, or the leaves of Sallowes, and towards night give him a ſweete Maſh, and give him this drinke every other day, for three mornings, continuing him with Maſhes or white water, and let his Oates bee very well ſifted, and in ſhort time, he will doe well agayne. ✠. With this receipt I have cured ſundry *horſes*, but then forget not to waſh his *mouth* dayly with the aforeſaid lotion. But if in all theſe ſeverall *Feavers*, you do find him eyther to be coſtiue, or very hot in his *body*, then you may do well to adminiſter that *Clyſter* preſcribed you, *in lib. 2. chap. 6. §. 2. Clyſter 2. letter C.*

§. 12. *F.*

Hippoph. WHat ſay you now to a Feaver Peſtilent?

Feaver Peſtilent.

Hippoſ. It is a diſeaſe moſt contagious, for it is ſo malignant as that it will infect ſo many *horſes* as be in the ſtable wher he ſtandeth, and it proceedeth from one of theſe two cauſes, *viz.* eyther from an infectious ayre, or from the corruption of the *bloud*, inflamed by meanes of intemperate riding, and exerciſe. The ſignes are theſe, the *horſe* will hang downe his *head* in the Manger, as if hee ſlept, his *eyes* will water very much, and Inflamations will ariſe at the roots of the *Eares*, as if he had the Vives.

The beſt cure I ever knew was this, with which I have cured many *Horſes* viſited with a *Peſtilent Feaver*, firſt let him *bleed* well in the *Neck veine*, reſerving the *bloud* in a cleane baſin, which when it is cold will be very bad, and ill coloured, then waſh his *mouth* with the lotion, ſpecified in the precedent §. ſecondly apply to the *Temples* this Playſter.

Take of Camamile, of Goates-milke, of the Iuyce of Sage, of Sallet-oyle, of white Wine-vineger of each foure ſpoonfull, of red-roſe-leaves dryed one handfull, which muſt be eyther of a red-roſe cake, or otherwiſe red-roſe leaves dryed, beat them all in a Morter, till they become of one *body*, and ſo thick, as that you may ſpread it playſter-wiſe, upon a linnen cloath, then ſtrew upon the Plaiſter two or three Nut-megges made into fine powder, then make it good and hot, putting the backſide of the Plaiſter, into a Pewter diſh, over a chaffing diſh and coales, and ſo adminiſter it warme to the *Horſe*, and for his drinke, let it bee ſuch water wherein have bin boyled violet leaves, Mallowes, and Sorrell, but if the fit doe hold him violently, then.

Take of London Triacle three ounces, and diſſolve it in Muskadine one pint, and ſqueeze into it the iuyce of two or three good *Lemons*, and ſo adminiſter it with a horne: and this will preſently put the fit from him, for the preſent. The nature of this *Feaver* is ſomalig-

ſignant, and ſo contagiouſly hot, as that it will furre the *mouth* exceedingly, and cauſe ulcers and ſores to breed in the *mouth* and *throat*: wherefore you ſhall doe the more carefully, if every day you doe look into his *mouth*, and if you can perceive it to be furred, and clammy, then faile you not to waſh his mouth and tongue, either with the ſyrope of Mulberries, or the lotion water taught you in the precedent Section: and if through his too great heat, you doe finde your *horſes body* to be coſtive, then ſhall you adminiſter this *Cliſter*.

Take of new milke, and of ſallet oyle, of each halfe a pinte, and of the decoction of Mallowes, and of Violets, of each one pinte, adding thereto of Sene, one ounce, and of Century halfe an ounce, adminiſter this *cliſter* bloud warme, and by thus ordering your *Horſe*, you will infallibly cure him of his *feaver peſtilent*; for I my ſelfe have cured many, and I never failed in any one. ✠ Provided you do give him during the time of his *phyſicke*, continually morning and evening, either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, and be alſo dieted and ordered as is fitting for a *Horſe* that is in *phyſicke*.

§. 13. *F.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat diſeaſe is that which of ſome is called the* Flying-Worme?

Hippoſ. This malady is the ſame which the *French Mariſhals* doe call *ver-volant*, which we in *England* doe call a *Tetter* or *Ring worm*, and by reaſon it runneth up and down the *body* upon the *skinne*, it is called by the name of the *Flying-worme*. It commeth by a heat in the *bloud*, whereby is ingendred a billious, ſharp, or hot humour which breedeth to a *Tetter* or *Ring-worme*, but moſt commonly it ſeazeth the *rumpe* of the *horſe*, running down all along the *joynts*, till it get into the *tayle*, where I have known it to remain ſo long, untill ſuch time as it came to be a *Canker*: but yet ſometimes again, it will ſeaze ſome *fleſhy* part of the *body* of a *horſe*, and ſo torment him through its continuall itching, as that the *horſe* will (with frequent rubbing himſelfe againſt poſts, pales, trees, and walles, &c. as alſo with his teeth (if he can come to the place) bring away the *hayre*, yea the skin and fleſh alſo. And this diſeaſe many ignorant *Ferries* have taken to be nought elſe but the louſe of a Hog, which to kill or deſtroy, they onely apply a little ſope. But I have often known it to prove another thing, *viz.* a formall *Ring-worme* or *Tetter*: it is eaſily known by the falling away of the *hayre*, by reaſon of the *horſes* continuall ſcrubbing when it is in the *fleſhy* part, but if it get into the *joynt*, betwixt the top of the *rump* and the *tayle*, then you ſhall know it by a kinde of ſcab, which you may with your finger feele, and if you ſcrape or pick it away, then will iſſue forth by little and little, a kinde of thin water, which being let long to run, will in time runne down into his *tayle* from *joynt* to *joynt*, and there become a *Canker* as I ſaid before;

Ver volant.

wherefore to prevent this inconvenience, if the *Tetter* be in the *joynt*, then

Flying worme or Tetter.

Take of Precipitat two drams, and put it into a ſmall viall glaſſe, with faire water, much more then will cover the powder, keeping it cloſe ſtopped, and with this water waſh the place every day once, and it will infallibly cure it. And alwayes ſo ſoone as you have dreſſed the ſorance with this water, and ſtopped it up again cloſe, then ſhake it together, and ſo let it remaine untill its next dreſſing, which ought to be twice a day. But if the *Tetter* or *Ring-worm* be in any *fleſhy* part, it is killed by bathing the ſorance with the juyce of Sothern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each like much, ſtamped together, and ſtrained, and ſo let the place be waſhed and bathed therewith every day once or twice, till it be whole. ✠ I have thus cured many *Tetters*.

§ 14. *F.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat is good to keep a* Horſe *that he be not tormented with* Flyes?

Hippoſ. Theſe *Flyes* are a vermine which are more bold then welcome to a *Horſe*, for what by their buzzing, their biting, and ſtinging, they do infinitely annoy and afflict the poore *beaſt*, cauſing him many times to falter in his travell, and loſe his pace, and moſt commonly through his nodding and other evill poſtures and geſtures, provoked by theſe *flyes*, they cauſe him ſo to fret, as to looſe his rain and comely carriage of hi *body*, whereby he hath bin much undervalued; beſides in his travell theſe Flyes doe ſo cauſe him to fret and fume, that he both overtoyleth himſelfe in his way, cauſing him to ſweat ſo much, as that he loſing his mettle, hath many times thereby inflamed his *blood*, and brought upon himſelf ſickneſſe, together with a diſtemperature throughout his whole *body*. So likewiſe being at graſſe, at what time the *flye* is too buſie, they do provoke him to run, and to ſcope about, by which meanes he being many times very full, it cauſeth crudities and raw digeſtions to ariſe in his *ſtomacke*, which breedeth ſurfets, or other maladies, wherefore for prevention thereof,

Take the leaves of Gourdes, Pumpions, or wilde, or garden Cowcumbers, ſtamp them, and ſtrain them, and with the juyce thereof waſh your *horſe* all over, and the *flyes* will not come nigh him. ✠ Of this I have made often tryall. Another:

Take an Apple of Colliquintida, and ſlice or ſhred it into ſmall pieces, and boyle it in Oyle de Bay, and ſo annoynt your *horſe* therwith, and the *flyes* will not approach him. ✠ This is alſo good. Another:

Take Mallowes, ſtamp and ſtrain them, and with the juyce thereof waſh your *horſe*, and it will keep away the *flyes*. ✠ This is an approved

proved good thing alſo. Another:

Take Verdegreece made into very fine powder, and boyle it in Vineger, and waſh him therewith, being carefull that none get into his *eyes* or *eares*. + This is the beſt and will laſt longeſt.

§ 15. *F.*

Hippoph. *What is good to mollifie the* Foot *of a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. If your *horſe* hath bin foundred, and that after being cured, his *ſoles* and *hoofes* doe waxe dry and hard, they be either ſhrunk or in perill of ſhrinking, then firſt take off his *ſhoes*, and let him be pared ſomewhat cloſe, but not too neere, which done, with Bee-waxe molten annoynt the *ſoles* with the ſaid molten waxe, with a Gooſe-feather, and ſo ſet on his ſhooes againe, then three daies after

Feet to mollifie.

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe and Tarre, of each four ounces, of fat Pitch, and of Turpentine, of each two ounces, melt and mixe all theſe together, and firſt ſtop his *feet* therewith, and after annoynt the *coffin* of the *hoofes* good and thicke with the ſame receit. And this is the beſt mollifier can be had in a cure of this nature. + I have often uſed it.

§ 16. *F.*

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for the* Figge *in the* foot *of a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is ſo called by reaſon of that naughty *fleſh* which groweth upon the *fruſh* or *heele*, which is in likeneſſe and ſhape of a *figge*, from whence this malady and ſorance taketh its denomination, and the *French* alſo give it the very ſame Epitheton, *viz. la Figne*, which ſignifieth a *figge*. It commeth by means of ſome hurt which the *Horſe* hath formerly received in his *foot* (which was not well healed) by ſome nail, ſtub, thorn, bone, or ſtone, & oft times by ſome over-reach, upon the *heele* or *fruſh*. It is apparant to the *eye*, and therefore needs no other remonſtrance. The cure is,

Figge in the foot.

Cut away the *hoofe* ſo as there may be a convenient ſpace betwixt the *ſole* and the *hoofe*, to the end the *figge* may the more eaſily be cured, then put to the ſorance a piece of ſpunge which you muſt binde cloſe upon the *figge*, which will eate it off to the very root, then heale up the ſore with the green oyntmet taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. § 4. *G.* + This I have found good. Another.

Cut away the *figge* cloſe, either with your inciſion knife, or elſe burne it off with a hot iron (which is the better way) and ſo lay unto it for two dayes after tryed Hogs greaſe to take away the fire.

Take then the tops of the moſt angry yong nettles you can finde, pound them very ſmall, and ſo lay them upon a linnen cloth, juſt the bigneſſe of the *figge*, then take the powder of Verdegreece, and ſtrew

it upon the chopped nettles, (which muſt be done before you lay it to the ſorance) and ſo binde it upon the ſorance, renewing it every day once till the *hooſe* have covered the ſore. ✠ This I doe know to be a moſt certain cure, for it never did faile me.

§ 17. *F.*

Hippoph. *BVt now what ſay you to a* Fiſtula? *how doe you cure that?*

Hippoſ. A Fiſtula is a hollow *ulcer* which maketh its way crooked, proceeding oft times from naughty and malignant *humours*, ſometimes it is ingendred from ſome wound which hath not bin well healed; ſometimes it commeth by meanes of a ſtripe, which having been ſo ſtrongly laid on, that it hath bruiſed the *fleſh* to the *bone*, whereby it hath puttified inwardly, and either brake forth of it ſelfe, or was opened by the *Ferrier*, and thus it commeth to be a *Fiſtula:* ſometimes it commeth by a wrench or pinch, with a *Collar* in drawing, or by being wrung by the tree of a bad ſaddle; and ſometimes it ingendreth of its own accord by the meanes of peccant and bilious *humours*, which hath long lyen lurking in the *body* of the *Horſe*. The ſignes how to know it are ſo manifeſt, as that it needeth not an *Ecce*. The way how to cure it, is to ſearch to the bottome either with a probe of lead, or elſe with ſome other thing which will bend and yeeld which way ſoever the concavity of the ſorance leadeth it: and when you have found the bottome thereof, let it be opened downwards, if it may poſſibly be done, to the end the corruption may the better iſſue from the place, then taint it for two or three dayes with tryed Hogs-greaſe, thereby to cauſe the hole to be the wider, and then inject this water following:

Fiſtula. Take of *Sublimate*, and of *Precipitat*, of each ſo much as will lye upon a three pence, of Alume, and of white Coperas, of each three ounces, burn all theſe in an earthen pot, but firſt rub the bottom with a little oyle, that it may not burn there; this done, burne them all together, then take of faire cleare water, two quarts, boyle this water firſt by it ſelfe, and ſcum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire, and put in as much of this powder as will lye upon a ſhilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you be deſirous to make this water of more ſtrength and efficacy, take then faire water, and Coltrough or Smiths water, of each like much, and of white Wine Vineger a third part, and with the aſhes of Aſhen wood, make lye of them, with the water and Vineger, and ſo make your water with this powder and lye, and the former ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this water with a Syringe into the ſorance, and in ſhort time it will both kill the *fiſtula*, and heale it up. ✠ This is a moſt approved and infallible cure. Another:

Take of the beſt honey one pinte, of Verdigreece one ounce, make it into fine powder, and ſo boyle them together upon a ſoft fire three quarters

quarters of an houre, that done, ſtrain it into a gally pot, and ſo keep it for your uſe. + This is a moſt pretious unguent wherewith to taint a *fiſtula* or *poll evill*, for it goeth down to the bottome, it eateth away all dead and evill fleſh, whereby to cauſe that the carnifying fleſh may heale the better. + This I have often tryed. I have alſo another Ægiptiacum, which I make thus.

Take honey one pinte, white Wine Vineger, halfe a pinte, Allum three ounces, and Verdigreece finely powdered, one ounce and a halfe; boyle all theſe together, till it be thicke: this is a good Ægyptiacum. But if you deſire to make it yet ſtronger, then put to theſe ingredients of Mercury ſublimate in fine powder one ounce, and of Arſnick three ſcruples powdred alſo, and ſo boyle them with the former ingredients. This laſt will kill any *fiſtula* or old ulcer whatſoever being dreſſed therewith: but the other which is made onely of Vineger, Allum, and Verdigreece, may be applyed to a *fiſtula* in the mouth without prejudice to the Horſe. + Of both theſe I have made often tryall.

§. 18. *F.*

Hippoph. *HAve you not ſome good water beſide, wherewith to waſh a Fiſtula or old ſore?*

Hippoſ. I can give you a moſt excellent water which is this:

Fiſtula water.

Take white Wine Vineger four pints, of Camphire and of Mercury-Precipitate, of each halfe an ounce, greene Treacle three ounces, red Sage, Yarrow, and Rib wort, of each one handfull, of Honey, and of Hogs-greaſe, of each halfe a pound, boyle all theſe together untill the one halfe be conſumed, and then ſtrain it, and ſo waſh and cleanſe the wound with the liquor. + This is ſpeciall good. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take of Coltrough water, four quarts, firſt boyle it by it ſelfe a good while, and ſcumme it ſo long as any ſcumme doth ariſe, then ſtraine it through a fine cloth into a cleane pot, and throw away the grounds, which will be black and naught, then waſh the Poſtnet cleane wherein it was boyled, and put in your water againe. Then take of white Coperas, of Allum and of Verdegreece, of each one pound, beat them all into fine powder, and put them into the water, and boyle them all together, and when it is boyled as much as will ſuffice, which will ſoon be done, let it ſtand to ſettle a while, then poure the cleare into a glaſſe, being firſt cold enough, and ſo keep it for your uſe. But the powder which remaineth in the bottome, you may dry and keep in a boxe by it ſelfe, for it will heale, and dry up any ſore or *ulcer*. This water being injected with a ſyringe of wood or pewter, will cure any *fiſtula* whatſoever, if it may come to the bottome thereof. + Of this water I have had great experience. But you muſt underſtand that theſe ſeverall waters will onely kill the can-

cankerous humour of the *fiſtula*, and therefore after the malice thereof is quelled, you muſt heale up the ſorance with the green oyntment preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. § 4. *G.* or elſe with ſome carnifying ſalve or unguent. Another:

Search the depth thereof with your Probe, as before is taught, you, but be certaine you finde the bottome, then if the bottome be where you may boldly make inciſion, do it, and that ſo wide, as that you may thruſt in your finger, to feele whether any *bone* or *griſtle* be periſhed, or whether there be any ſpungy, looſe, dead, or proud *fleſh* therein, which muſt firſt be gotten forth either by inciſion, or by corroſive; then take of common honey foure ounces, and of Verdigreece one ounce, made into fine powder, boyle theſe together, keeping it alwaies boyling, and ſtirring it, till it look red, then with a taint of Hurds, taint it to the bottome, and make it ſo faſt that it get not forth, and renew the taint every day once, till it have done mattering, making the taint every day ſhorter then other, and ſprinckle upon it a little ſlaked Lime. But if you cannot come to taint it to the bottome of the *fiſtula*, then take ſtrong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allum, white Mercury, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyle them together, and inject it to the very bottome of the *fiſtula*, and it will kill it.

✠ But if the *fiſtula* be in the *head*, then

Take the juyce of Houſeleeke, and dip a locke of blacke Wooll into it, and put the ſame into his *eares*, and ſo ſtitch them up, renewing it every day till it be whole. This cure hath been highly recommended unto me, but I never had opportunity to make proofe thereof. Another:

Take Roman Vitreall, Roch-Allum, and Roſe-water, of each two ounces, boyle all theſe on a quicke fire, till they come to be as hard as a ſtone, then beat it to fine powder, and when you dreſſe the ſore, make a taint, which being dipped in unguentum Ægyptiacum, rowle then in this powder, and ſo convey the end of your taint down to the very bottome of the *fiſtula*. This is the beſt way alſo to cure a *poll-evill*, and this powder being laid upon an old ſore, will both heale and dry it up. + This I onely made twice proofe of, the firſt time to a *fiſtula*, and the ſecond time to a *poll-evill*, both which cures I perfected. But now you would gladly know how to ripen and breake a *fiſtula*, wherefore

Take Brooke-lime, Mallowes, Aſſmart, of each, like much, boyle them in old Chamberlye, till the hearbs be very ſoft, and apply theſe hearbs to the ſwelling, neither doe you renew it in two or three dayes, and then it will both ripen and breake any impoſtume. + This I have often uſed, and found very good. And let this ſuffice for this malady.

§. 19. F.

Hippoph. Now let us come to the Feete, *how doe you cure the* Fetlock *being hurt?*

Hippoſ. If this ſorance commeth by any wound, by the biting of a Dogge, or by being caſt in a Halter, then the beſt way to cure the ſame, is.

Fetlock hurt.

Take unſlaked lime, and the yelke of an Egge of each like much, beat them together to a ſalve, or unguent, then mixe therewith the juyce of one head of Garlick, and a little ſoot, and with this annoint the ſore till it be almoſt whole, then to *skinne* the ſame,

Take Sallet oyle, and oyle of Roſes of each one ounce, of Turpentine three ounces, and of new waxe one ounce, melt them altogether, and adde to it a fourth part of the powder Verdegreaſe, and herewith annoynting the ſore, in few dayes it will heale it, and *skin* it up very ſoundly. ✠. This is a very well approved Receipt. But if your *horſe* have gotten a ſore foot by meanes of any cannell-nayle, or bruiſe, by treading upon a ſtone, which after rankleth inwardly, or by other accident; then firſt rayſe the *skinne* with your Cornet, and lay upon ſorance, Wheate-flower and Bores-greaſe well incorporate together, and dreſſe him therewith twice a day, for two daies together, and at the ſecond dayes end,

Froathy or weeping hoofe.

Take the powder of Quick-lime, Sope, and Tallow, and mixe them well together, & for three dayes or more, apply it to the place, dreſſing it alſo twice a day, then waſh the wound with hot Vineger, and put upon it Caprinell, till it be whole. This I never tryed. But if the *hoofe* doe weepe, or froath by ſending forth thinne, watry, or froathy ſtuffe, then open the toppe thereof with your Cornet, ſo as the wound may become hollow round about the extreamities thereof ſo farre forth as that you may come to the *Maſter Veine* to breake it in ſunder, which done, let it bleed at pleaſure, what it will, and when the *Veine* hath ſtanched, fill up the wound with Salt finely powdred, then take Hurds, and ſteepe them in Vineger, and ſo ſtop the wound therewith, and bind thereto a cloath to keepe the ſame from falling away, and it will cure it. ✠. But if the *ſole* be *hoofe*, and in danger to fall away, draw it round twixt the *ſole* and the *hoofe* with your drawing Iron, and ſo take out the *ſole* quite, and then ſuffer his *foot* to *bleed* well, then apply to it this Plaiſter.

Take the whites of Egges, and beate them a little, and ſo laying them upon Hurds, apply it to the foot, and bind it on that it fall not off, and let it remaine on ſo by the ſpace of two dayes, which ended open it, and waſh the foote with ſtrong Vineger warmed, and then fill the *ſole* with the powder of Salt and Tartar mixed together, and ſo bind it up with Hurds, ſteeped in ſtrong Vineger, and thus dreſſe it till it be whole. Theſe two Receipts were taught me by a famous

Ferrier

Ferrier of *Paris* in *France*, but I never had occasion to make use of it, howbeit I esteeme them to be very good. But if your *horse* be foundred in the *feet*, and that he hath not bin foundred above foure daies, then with this ensuing Receipt you may easily set him upright, and make him sound againe in foure dayes more. The Cure is this.

Foundring in the feet.

First, let him *blond* in the *Neck*, *Breast*, and *Spurre veines*, and take from him of *blond* two quarts, which you must receive in a Basin, or other cleane vessell, with which make this Charge as followeth.

Take the *blond*, and put into it eight new laid Egges shels and all, beat them well with the *blond*, put to it of Bole-armonacke in fine powder halfe a pound, strong white Wine-Vineger one pinte, Sanguis Draconis three ounces, in fine powder, make this up with Wheate meale good and thicke so much as will suffice, with this, charge his *Back*, *Reines*, *Breast*, *Thighes*, *Fetlockes*, and *Soles*, & spread two cloathes Plaister-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the *Coffin* of his *Hoofes*, and bind the *fore-legges* above the *knees* good and streight, with broad Filletting, or Listes, then Ride him two houres upon a hard way, which if it bee paved or pitched is the better, his *feete* having beene pared reasonable neere before hand, and when you doe bring him into the *stable*, let his *feet* be stopped with this Charge.

Take Rie, or Wheate-branne, Oxe or Cow-dunge, Sheepes-suet, Turpentine (which must be put in last) let your Sheepes-Suet, be of the fat of the loyne of Mutton, and minced very small, melt and heat all these upon the fire, and mixe them very well in the heating, and then put in your branne to make it into a stiffe paste, all which being through hot, then last of all put in your Turpentine, and so incorporate all very well together, with this stop your *horse*, who being thus three or foure dayes charged, and stopped, ridden and kept warme, and not suffered to drinke cold water, but eyther Mashes, or white water, he will be found in foure or six dayes ✣. This is a most excellent Receipt, for with it I have recovered many *foundred horses*. If it be a dry *Foundring*, especially with too long standing in the Stable, then first pare him somewhat neere, and let him *bleed* well in the *Toe-veines*, then.

Take Egges and rost them blew hard, raked up in the hot embers, and together with the powder of Comin, stop his *feete* therewith so hot as they may be taken out of the embers, and put ouer the *sole* a peece of leather, with splents close, to keepe the Egs that they come not forth.

Take then a great Onion, pill and stampe it, and let it infuse or steepe foure and twenty houres together before, in the strongest white Wine-Vineger, you can get, so much as will suffice, so that it may bee in a readinesse, against you have stopped your *horse*, which

must

must be given him to drinke with a horne fasting, and after let him bee warme covered, littered, let him stand upon the Trench three houres, and after that you may give him meate, and white water. ✠. This is a most approved good cure. If your *horse* have beene long *foundred*, as a month or better, to make a perfect cure, and to set him up sound againe, it is needfull the *soles* of his *feet* be taken out, by which meanes new and better will come in their roome, wherefore when you do intend to take them off, have in a readinesse these things, *viz.*

Foundred thing.

Take the tender tops of Isope three handfuls, pound them to mash in a Morter, wherewith to stanch his bleeding, then have also further in a readinesse this receipt.

Take Snayles in the shels and breake the shels, so much as will suffice, and take forth the Snayles, and reserve them, then take Bay-salt one handfull, and of the tendrest tops of the angriest red-nettles you can find, two or three good handfull, beat them with your snailes and salt in a Morter to a very salve, then take out the *sole*, then presently stanch the bleeding with your Isope, and so soone as the *foote* leaveth *bleeding*, apply to the *foote* your other Medicine, of Snayles, Salt and Nettles, and so bind up the foot with cloathes; and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres, then open it, and heale up the sorance with your greene oyntment taught you in *lib* 2. *chap.* 16. §. 4. and within two dayes you shall see a new sole comming, ✠. This is right good.

But if hee bee *foundred* both in *feete* and *body* at once, and the same time, as falleth out oftimes, through indiscreete and immoderate Riding, by a most violent heat giuen him, whereby the *bloud* is become inflamed, and his grease molten, then first rake him, and give him the *Clister* prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 11. §. 8. *C. Clister* 8. and the next day let him *bloud* in the *neck veine* to a good quantity, reserving the *bloud*, and keeping it from clotting, by continuall stirring, till it be cold; reserve I say of this *bloud* halfe a pint, by it selfe, to put into his drinke, and the residue keepe wherewith to make a charge; Now for his drinke let it be thus made.

Foundred in the feet and body.

Take of good Sack one pint, of the *bloud* you saved for his drinke halfe a pint, of London Triacle, and of Diapente, of each one spoonfull, and of mans-ordure warme as it commeth frō him, the quantity of a wall-nut, brew and mixe all these well together, and give it him to drinke bloud warme. This drinke thus given, Charge him with this Charge.

Take the residue of the *bloud* you kept, and put unto it twelve new-laid Egges with their shels, and beat them together, then put thereunto of Bole-armoniack in powder foure ounces, Vineger halfe a pint, Sanguis Draconis in powder three ounces, and with Wheate meale, thicken it to a convenient Charge. Charge his *Backe*, *Breast*, *Loynes*, *Legges*, and *Feete* herewith, both above and be-

neath the *knees*, laying it on against the *hayre*. This done, then

Take unslaked-lime, & Orpiment, of each like much, q.s. & dissolve them in running water, and let it stand two good houres, and after it is thus prepared, take as much Matrosetum as will bring it to a thicke substance, which being made good and hot, annoynt the *coffins* of his *hoofes* therewith, especially about the cronets, and stop also the *soles* of his feet with the same medicine, and if you let him *blond* in the *toe-veynes* well, it will be the better, and he will be the sooner, better, and sounder cured. ✠ This way I have cured two *Horses foundred* in the *body* and *feet*, never having applyed it but unto those two onely. But if your *horse* be *hoofe-bound*, then

Hoofe bounden.

Take Turpentine and sheeps-suet, of each halfe a pound, Waxe a little, as much as will suffice, Sallet-oyle halfe a pinte, boyle all these together, but put in your Turpentine last, and as these boyle, keepe them with continuall stirring, and herewith annoynt his *hoofes* once a day well, or once in two dayes, and he will doe well. ✠ But if it be but an ordinary heat in the *feet* newly taken, then

Take Wheate bran and Hogs grease, and make them to a Poultesse, and apply it as well to the *coffins*, as the *soles*, and he will be well again. These two latter receits a worthy Knight taught me, but as yet I never made use, but of the former, which I have found to be very good.

§. 20. *F.*

Hippoph *But yet* Hippocrus, *you have not shewed me how this malady commeth.*

Hippoc. That was but forgotten Sir, I will now therefore doe it. A *foundring* in the *feet* commeth evermore after great and over-violent labour, whereby the whole *body* is become distempered, the peccant and malignant *humours* stirred, the *blond* inflamed, and the *grease* molten, which falling down into his *feet*, there setleth, and in short time after, to wit, in 24 houres, the poor creature is hardly able to stand, or if he do, it is after a very feeble manner, holding his four *feet* together, so as you may easily with your hand throw him to the ground, besides he will stand trembling, quaking, and shaking, as if he had a *shaking ague*, nor would he stand at all, unlesse he be enforced, for the *soles* and *coffins* of his *feet* will be so sore, his *joynts* and *sinewes* so stiffe and benummed, that he cannot stand but with very much anguish and paine: wherefore if he may have his minde, he would alwayes be lying, and his whole *body* will be distempered, and so much abound with heat, as rather to desire cold water, rather then meat, which if it be given him, then will he quake and quiver anew, and be in such pangs for the time, as that you would thinke he would assuredly dye. This disease commeth also to a *Horse* by being watered when he is very fat, and ridden till he do sweat, causing him

to

to take ſudden cold therewith: alſo after a great heat taken, to be ſet up without exerciſe upon the cold Planks, without litter, or to be waſhed, or walked after great labour, the *Horſe* being very hot and ketty, (for this infirmity falleth moſt commonly upon fat *Horſes*, but very ſeldome upon leane) alſo to water your *Horſe* in ſhallow places, or waters where the water aſcends not higher then his *paſternes*, by which meanes through the ſudden coldneſſe of the water at his *feet*, cauſeth the *molten greaſe* deſcending unto the *feet*, to cake and congeale, which is the prime ground of this malady. And this not onely my ſelfe, but all the moſt perite *Ferriers* doe with an unanimous aſſent acknowledge. And therefore I doe admoniſh you and every man, who is the *Horſes* friend,

First, to be very carefull not to exerciſe his *Horſe* too ſoon after his taking up from graſſe. 1

Secondly, whilſt he is very fat; that he doe not over-travaile, over-labour, or over-toyle him. 2

Thirdly, that having travelled hard, and to prevent his *foundring*, let him be more gently ridden an houre before he commeth to his lodging, to the end he may be ehoole, and the more free from danger. 3

Fourthly, if one houre before you get to your lodging, you ride him into ſome River, or other watring place up to the *belly*, (but not deeper) then water him by degrees, ſtill betwixt every draught, ſtirring and removing him a little, it would not be amiſſe; but then ſo ſoon as you be come forth of the water, it were very good you did continue him in the ſame pace, going neither faſter or ſlower, (like as I have before inculcated) it will be the better alſo, and your *Horſe* out of danger of *foundring*. 4

Fifthly, forbeare evermore (eſpecially if your *Horſe* be heated) to water him in any ſhallow place. 5

Sixthly, beſides his being warme ſet up with litter enough, let him have ſtore of rubbing, as well of his *legges* as *body*, for it is a moſt wholeſome thing, it diſſolveth molten greaſe very much, and it doth diſſipate and ſend away bad *humours*. 6

Laſtly, picking and ſtopping of his *feet* in time of journeying, and after is very good and profitable. And thus have I ſhewed by what meanes this malady commeth to the *Horſe*, howſoever many other wayes there are, which I have touched, by reaſon they are ſo vulgarly known to every man, and therefore your ſelfe cannot be ignorant of them. 7

§. 21. F.

Hippoph. *How doe you helpe the* foundring *in the* body?

Hippoſ. This commeth oft times by eating too much Provender whilſt the *Horſe* is yet very hot, ſuddenly given him after great labour, whereby his meate not being well digeſted, (from whence) doth occaſion crudities, raw digeſtion, and the evill habit in and about the *ſtomacke*, whereby many ill *humours* are ingendred, which will ſoon be diffuſed throughout the whole *body*, by which meanes the very vigor and ſtrength of the *Horſe* becommeth to be much decayed, and in a manner quite loſt, enfeebling every joynt and member in ſuch wiſe, as to loſe almoſt the uſe of going, and being once layd not able to riſe again without helpe: nor can he either dung or ſtale, but with mickle paine; *foundring* in the *body* commeth alſo ſometimes, when by travelling and the *horſe* very hot, you ſuffer him then to drink his fill of cold water, and after doe not give him exerciſe enough, which might warm the ſame in his *belly*, wherfore it is moſt certain that the *greaſe* being *molten*, and the *bloud* inflamed, the *humours* being ſtirred and diſſolved, will preſently reſort to its center, which if they once ſettle in the *body*, it muſt be in and about the *heart*, if not, they then muſt down lower; to wit, either to the *legges* or *feet*, and there reſiding, ingender theſe and ſuch like maladies, whereof we have entreated, wherefore by eating and drinking out of its due ſeaſon, begetteth an evill habit of the *ſtomacke*, ſo as if often times preſent cure be not had, the *Horſe* becommeth deſperate ſicke, which ſickneſſe will mathematically uſher in his death. Now the ſignes whereby to know when a *Horſe* is foundred in his *body*, be theſe, the *hayre* will ſtare, and he will be very chill, he will ſhiver and ſhake after cold water, and whilſt he is in drinking, the water ſome of it will iſſue out of his *noſe*, and after two or three dayes, his *legs* will ſwell, eſpecially his *hinder legges*, and after a while they will begin to pill, he will begin to have a dry cough at firſt, but after it will be more moyſt, and then his *eyes* will water, and his *noſe* runne with white *flegmaticke ſtuffe*, and he will forſake his meat, and his *head* will ſo much paine him, as that he will not be able to hold it out of the manger, and ſeeme as if he were alwayes ſleeping, &c.

§. 22. F.

Hippoph. *From whence proceedeth this word* foundring?

Hippoſ. From the *French* word *Fundu*, which is *melting*, which word we many times uſe in our *language*, and therefore when through extream toyl and labour of riding or other exerciſe, the greaſe is diſſolved, and fals to running, we ſay then that the *horſes*

ſes greaſe is moken, and that he is *foundred*, for whereas the *French* calleth *foundring in the body*, *Morfundu*, it is none other thing with us, then plaine foundring, or a ſurfet given in the *body* of a *Horſe*. As for the Cure, the beſt way is and moſt agreeable to Art to purge him, but not in that violent manner, as we uſe in caſe of other diſeaſes, but firſt to rake him, then to adminiſter to him this *Cliſter*.

Take of Mallowes three handfuls, and boyle them in faire water two quarts, to one quart, then ſtraine it, and put to it of freſh or ſweet butter, ſixe ounces, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and ſo adminiſter it to him *Cliſter-wiſe* bloud warm, that done, walk him up and down in the warm ſunne, or in ſome warm houſe, untill he doe begin to empty himſelfe, then keep him faſting three or four hours, keeping him warm, and to a *ſtomacke* for three or foure dayes, but let him have but that one *Cliſter* onely, and let all his Hay be ſprinckled with water, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, which when he hath drunk, give him the Malt or Bran to eate, and let his Provender be very little for fourteen dayes after, eſpecially if his diſeaſe came through glut of Provender: Nevertheleſſe the day after his *Cliſter*, give him this *cordiall drinke*.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Sugar two ounces, of life honey foure ounces, of Cinamon halfe an ounce, Licoris and Anniſeeds, of each one ſpoonfull; all theſe made into fine powder, put them into the Muskadine, and warme them on the fire till they be diſſolved, and then give it him bloud warme, then walke him in the Sunne, or warm houſe an houre, then ſet him upon the *trench* warm cloathed and litter'd, and ſo let him ſtand three houres faſting, unleſſe ſometimes you put a little Armen into his mouth, then give him Hay ſprinckled with water, and after an houre a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and then a few Oates well ſifted and dufted, and this by a little at once, remembring to take *bloud* from the *necke veyne*, the ſame morning you give him this drinke, and that a little before he taketh it, and pricke him alſo in the *mouth*, and the next day after this drink, perfume his *head* with Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincenſe, and ſo order him according as you in your diſcretion ſhall think to be moſt meet, onely remember to ayre him every day abroad, if there be no winde, (for winde is hurtfull to him) and thus doing you may recover him, and make him a ſound *Horſe* againe. ✠ This is ſingular good. Another:

Firſt give him this *Cliſter*, take the flowers of Melelote, Anniſeeds and Licoris, Linſeeds, Silleris-Montani, of each halfe an ounce, Polipodium of the Oake, two ounces and a halfe, Agnus-Caſtus one handfull, the herb Mercury, Mallowes, Pellitory of the Well, Branca-urſina, of each three handfuls, make a decoction of all theſe, letting it boyle to a quart, then put to it of red waxe one ounce and a halfe, of Caſſia newly drawn, three ounces, of Diafennicon, two ounces of Benedicta, one ounce of oyle of nuts, as much as will ſuffice,

fice, and of all theſe make your *Cliſter* according to *Art*, which you ſhall give to your *horſe* ſo ſoon as you doe ſuppoſe or ſuſpect him to droope, and after this *Cliſter* hath done working, give him the drink preſcribed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. § 10. F.* which is very proper and good, provided that you doe adminiſter it ſo ſoon as you doe perceive your *horſe* to be *foundred* in the *body*, and withall adding to the drinke the juyce of three great Onions, well beaten and ſtrained into the white Wine, and that he be dreſſed, ayered, ridden, and ordered as is fitting and uſuall for *horſes* in *phyſicke*. ✠ Of this I have made tryall, and doe finde it to be good. Another:

Take a head of Garlicke, of Pepper, of Ginger, and of Graines, of each two penny worth, make all theſe into fine powder, and put them into ſtrong Ale one quart, and ſo give it him to drink bloud-warm: give him this drink two or three mornings, and order him as is before preſcribed. And when you doe finde that he hath gotten ſtrength, let him *bloud* in the *necke* and *ſpurre-veynes*. ✠ This is very good. All cordiall drinkes are good for this infirmity.

§. 23. F.

Hippoph. *What is your beſt cure for a* falſe Quarter?

Falſe quarter.

Hippoſ. A falſe Quarter is a very evill ſorance, it is a rift, cracke, or chinke, which is moſt commonly upon the inſide of the hoofe, yet ſometimes (though rarely) it happeneth upon the out ſide, it is occaſioned ſometimes by evill ſhooing, by evill paring, and ſometimes by gravelling, or a prick with a *nayle* or *ſtub*: nevertheleſſe which way ſoever it commeth, it will cauſe the *Horſe* to halt, and watriſh bloud will many times iſſue out of the *rift* or *chinke*; the ſignes are needleſſe to recite, they be ſo manifeſt: the onely way to cure this malady and ſorance is, firſt to take off the *ſhooe*, and to cut away ſo much of the *ſhooe* on that ſide where the griefe is, as that the *ſhooe* being immediately ſet on again, the *chinke* may be wholy uncovered, then open the *chink* to the quick with your drawing yron, and then fill up the *rift* with a rowle of hurds dipped in this unguent.

Take Turpentine, Waxe, and Sheepes-ſuet, of each like much, melt them together, and your rowle of hurds being dipped therein, ſtop the rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole, and thus the *rift* or *chinke* being with this oyntment cloſed in the top, draw the place betwixt the *hoofe* and the *hayre* with a hot yron overthwart that place, which will cauſe the *hoofe* to grow, and ſhoot all vvhole dovvnvvards, and vvhen your *Horſe* goeth upright and ſound again, let him not be ridden vvith any other *ſhooe* untill the *hoofe* be throughout hardened, neither let him be ridden upon any hard ground, till his *hoofe* is become very ſound and perfect. ✠ Another.

For

For a falſe Quarter, and to cauſe the hoofe to grow:

Firſt prepare a flat piece of wood, making it an inch broad at the leaſt, and ſo ſlender, as that it will bend like to a hoop, which muſt be alſo ſo long, as that it may come well nigh twice about the cronet of the *hoofe*: then when you are to bring it about the *hoofe*, have in a readineſſe a piece of filliting, which muſt be long enough, which you muſt cut into two pieces, then having brought the hoope about the cronet, with one piece of the filliting, binde faſt the top of the *hoope*, which faſtning muſt be behinde againſt the *heele*, and bound very ſtraight and hard, and then the filliting ſo bound, muſt be twiſted three or foure times, and ſo brought about upon the hoope, and the ends made faſt before upon the hoop: then take the other piece of filliting, and ſew it upon the top of the firſt filliting, which you bound about the hoofe, and then let it be ſewed as well upon the one ſide of the hoofe as the other, ſo faſt ſewed on, as that it cannot get off. Now you muſt underſtand that before you doe binde the foot of the *Horſe* with the wooden hoop, and filliting, you muſt prepare the ſorance of the ſaid falſe quarter, by drawing the place with your drawing yron, ſo cloſe & neer, till you come almoſt to the very quick, and then will iſſue out a kinde of ſweaty or deawy moyſture, which you ſhall perceive, then is it time to binde on the hoop and filliting, according as I have before preſcribed you: but yet before you doe any thing at all unto the foot, or falſe quarter, have your ſalve in a readineſſe which is to be applyed unto the chinkes of the falſe quarter, *viz.*

Take of the roots of Lingua-Bovis, green, and newly gathered, of the roots of Conſolida-Major, and the root of Mallowes, all newly gathered, of each halfe a pound, theſe muſt be waſhed and ſcraped very cleane, and cut into ſmall pieces; let theſe roots be boyled in Aligant two quarts, untill the Wine be boyled quite away, and that the roots become very ſoft, then pound them very well, and ſtraine them through a fine ſearſer, and that it may ſtraine the better, reſerve a little of the Wine as it boyleth, wherewith to moyſten it in the ſtrayning.

Take then of Venice Turpentine, of new Waxe, and of Burgundy Pitch, of each halfe a pound, of blacke Pitch foure ounces, of the oldeſt oyle Olive one quart, put theſe things with the former ingredients into a cleane kettle or Poſnet, but yet after this manner, *viz.*

Firſt the roots, then all the other things by themſelves, the one after the other, the Turpentine onely excepted, which muſt be put in when all the other ingredients be molten, you muſt let all theſe boyle, untill all the Wine be conſumed, and the ingredients be very well incorporate, and then put in the Turpentine, and then when it hath boyled one waume or two, take it from the fire, & keep it with continuall ſtirring, till it be cold, and ſo keep it in ſome cleane veſſell for your uſe; you muſt alſo adde unto theſe things (which I had almoſt

moſt forgotten) of Frankincenſe foure ounces, made into fine powder.

This ſalve is to ſoften and mollifie the *hoofe* whereby to make it to grow; having thus prepared your ſalve, before you bind the *hoofe*, with the hoope, and Filleting as before is ſhewed, annoynt and rub very well, where the hoope and filletting is to bee placed, with the ſalve, & then bind on the hoope with the ſaid filletting, that don take hurds & rowle it up into a rowle, the full length of the chinke of the quarter, & having firſt annoynted the hurds very wel with the ſalve, lay it upon the chinke of the falſe quarter, and ſo bind the *hoofe* up with the two long peeces of the aforeſaid Filletting, which were ſewed unto the other peece of the Filletting, which bound and made faſt the hoope: and let him not be dreſſed but once every three daies, untying all, aſwell the hoope as filletting; Continue him to this kind of dreſſing, fiveteene or twenty dayes, or otherwiſe according as your diſcretion ſhall thinke to be requiſite.

Now when you ſhall find that the ſalve hath brought up the *hoofe*, and that now you know not how to harden it, and make it ſolide and ſound, to make an able cure thereof, apply this enſuing ſalve.

Take of the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vineger one quart, Diers-gals, of greene-Coperas both bruiſed, of each foure ounce, boyle theſe in the Vineger to the conſumption of a moyity, then ſtraine it, and put unto it of old Sallet-oyle one pinte, and ſo boyle it againe, untill the Vineger be all conſumed, which you ſhall know by ſtirring it with a little ſtick, and drawing the ſticke forth let it drop into the fire, and if that which droppeth from the ſtick into the fire, do not crackle, thē let it boyle yet longer, for then it is not enough, but when it is ſufficiently boyled, by dropping in a little of the medicine, it will burne without crackling, then take lyturgy of Gold, and lyturgy of Silver, of each halfe a pound, make them into very fine powder and ſearſe them. Take then the Skillet from the fire, and let the medicine ſtand till it be almoſt cold, then mixe well the lyturgys and put them in, for if they ſhould bee put in whileſt the liquour is hot, they would fly forth of the Skillet againe: then ſet the Skillet upon the coales againe, and ſo let it boyle upon a gentle fire, otherwiſe you ſhall not now bee able to keepe in the medicine, and ſo boyle it up, keeping it continually ſtirring untill it become to be of a deepe or darke gray, and do cleave unto the thing with which it is ſtirred, and that it doth rope like unto glew, then adde unto it of new Bee-waxe three ounces, which muſt bee firſt molten by it ſelfe, and then put alſo into the medicine of ſoote made into very fine powder, and which is made of wood, and alſo of white leade in powder, of each three ounces, theſe I ſay being made into very fine powder, muſt bee put into the medicine, after it is taken from the fire, and by continuall ſtirring made halfe cold, and ſo ſet upon the fire againe, and kept by continuall ſtirring untill it bee throughly incorporate, and thus it is

made;

made; and when it doth begin to be ſo cold, as that it may be handled, then make it up into Rowles, and ſo keepe it for your uſe. And when you are to uſe the ſalve, take away the hoope Fillitting and all, and all annoynt the hoofe with the ſalve, and ſo bind upon the hoofe a linnen cloath to cauſe that the medicine may remayne on, and let him bee annoynted therewith, every day once till the hoofe bee ſo hard as that he may be able to travell. ✠. This receipt I do hold to be the moſt ſoveraigne of any that ever was yet knowne, which was taught me by a *French* man, who was ſo carefull to give me ample inſtructions therein, as that he bound on the hoop and Fillittings (which are the moſt difficult parts of the Cure) in my preſence, for he was very deſirous to have me fully inſtructed therein.

§ 24. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat diſeaſe is that which is called the* Flankes?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe called the *Flankes* is different from the former, neyther have we no proper name for it, unleſſe wee will name the ſame the *Pluriſie*, for the Epithete wee have from the *French*, who ſtile the ſame *Mal de Flankes*, it is when your *horſe* is troubled with over much abundance of *bloud*, whereby he eyther ingendreth a Mainge, or elſe falleth dangerouſly ſick thereby, who by reaſon he hath beene oft-times let *bloud* before, his *body* now will looke for it, whereof he miſſing, falleth eyther into very dangerous, or no leſſe loathſome Malaaies, the cure is.

Flankes or maldeflanks

First take *bloud* from both ſides the *Neck*, and three dayes after in both the ſpurre veynes, in the *Mouth*, and in the *Temple-veines*; then give him a drinke of Diapente and ſweete Sack, and he will do well. ✠. This is very good.

§. 25. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat good Charge have you wherewith to ſtop the* Feet?

Hippoſ. I think I have ſufficiently ſhewed you already, notwithſtanding for the reſidue, I do remit you to its proper place, when and where I will give you ſtore of good Receipts, and therfore I leave it for the preſent.

§ 26. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to ſtay a* Flux.

Hippoſ. This commeth of cold taken, ſometimes by reaſon nature is offended with ſome cholerick humour proceeding from the *Liver* or *Gall*, into the *Guts*: it commeth eftſoones, when a *horſe* drinketh too much, preſently after the eating a great

quantity of Provender, for by that meanes the water comming to the Provender, causeth the Provender to swell, whereby crudities are bred in the stomack, and so conveyed down into the *Guts*, which occasioneth his *Flux*, also it commeth by travelling too soone after provender, it not being well digested before: and it will come also to a *Horse* by drinking cold water when he is very hot, and after (the water not being presently warmed in his belly) is the cause of a Lax or *Flux*. It will also come by eating of a Feather, Hen-dung, Spider, some venemous worme, or other troublesome creature; and therefore my counsell is, not to stop a *Flux* too hastily, unlesse you do finde that your *horse* do purge too too violently, and then be you well assured, that nature is not a little offended, for it will bring him in short time to great weaknesse, and debility of *body*, give him therefore first the Clyster *Laxative*, which you have taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 6. §. 8. *Clyster* 21. *letter C.* and that will carry away from him all that may any way offend him, and a day after give him this drink.

Flux.

Beane flower, and Bole-Armoniack powdred of each three ounces, mix them with red Wine or Tinte one quart, give it him bloud warme, and after keep him warme in the stable, and let him have Hay and Oates, by a little at a time, and that often, and eyther sweete Mashes or white water, ✠. This is very good. Another.

Take of red Wine one quart, and Bay-salt one handfull, and brew them well together, and with a horne give it him, and this will stay his scowring, ✠. This is also an approved Cure. Another.

Take of wood Ashes finely searsed, and of Bole-Armoniack made into very fine powder, of each like much, put them into the water that he is to drinke, and let him drinke thereof, morning and evening, and this will stay his *Flux*, ✠. But if it be a violent scowring, proceeding from the eating of a Feather, or some other naughty thing, so as this will not stay it, then

Take the entrals of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizard, and mixe with them of Spike-nard one ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his scowring, yea if it be a bloudy *Flux*. ✠. This is speciall good.

§ 27. *F.*

Hippoph. WHat good *Receipt have you to Mundifie, cleanse, and heale foule and old Sores?*

Hippos. I had thought Sir, you would not have fallen upon this till it had come to its proper place, when and where we should have the particular matters of Sores by themselves, together with their cures: but sithence you are pleased to touch them in this place, I will

give

give you one Receit which cannot eaſily be paralleld.

Take of green Coperas, and of Salt Peter, of each halfe a pound, bay Salt, and Salt-Gemma, of each three ounces Arſnick one ounce, put all theſe finely powdred into a ſtillitory glaſſe, the pot or bottome thereof well nealed, and put alſo thereunto of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vineger one pinte, ſet the pot on the fire, and put on the head, cloſing it with Cute of Hermes, and being thus placed in the furnace, make under it a ſtrong fire, by the ſpace of five or ſixe hours, and with your Receptory take the firſt water that commeth, for that is the very ſtrongeſt and beſt, and after an houre the fire will be out of the water, then ſtop up the glaſſe very cloſe, and ſo keep the water for your uſe. The next water is alſo good, but not ſo ſtrong as the firſt, but reſerve it alſo by it ſelfe, as you do the firſt. And when you are to waſh any ſores therewith, be very carefull that you lay none of this water upon either ſinewes or veynes, for that it will burn them in ſunder, but where Vlcers and fouler old ſores be in the fleſhy parts, this water will work wonders if wounds be waſhed with it, and you carefull in the application thereof. ✠ Of this I have had great experience. Another I have taught me by an expert Mariſhall of *France*, but by reaſon of the extreame violence thereof I never durſt uſe it, which is called the ſpirit of Tinne, which will alſo mundifie all ſorts of old ſores, and the French Mariſhals do uſe it much. And this is the Receit, *viz.*

Foule an old ſore to m[illegible].

Take Mercury one ounce, and put into an old cleane pewter pottinger, and fill up the pottinger with Plantane water, and with your finger ſtirre the Mercury about the pottinger till it be quite diſſolved, and then the water will become white, then let it ſtand an hour in the pottinger, then poure forth the water into a cleane glaſſe viall, and then you ſhall ſee in the bottome of your pottenger, the Tinne runne liquid like unto Quick-ſilver, or like as if it were melted, for that is your ſpirit of Tinne, and thus is it made.

Spirit of Tinne.

§ 28. F.

Hippoph. WHat is to be adminiſtred to a Horſe that forſaketh his meate?

Hippoſ. There be many cauſes that may make a Horſe to forſake his meate, and yet not be ſicke at all, and ſo alſo by occaſion of ſickneſſe that either comming upon him, or elſe which hath already ſeized him. And firſt a Horſe may forſake his meate, and forbeare to eate for ſome time, no whit ſicke, as when he ſhall eyther linger after Mares, or after graſſe being weary of dry meate: againe, he may forbeare his meate, and yet not be ſicke by meanes of ſome accident or inconvenience bred in him, or befalne unto him, as by having the Lampes, Barbs, Giggs, Bliſters, bloudy-rifts, tongue hurt, paine in the teeth, or ſome ſuch like infirmity in or about his mouth, theſe may

may be cauſes that may induce him to forbeare to eate, and yet the creature not ſicke, but otherwiſe healthy and hungry, and faine would feed, but eyther cannot or dare not. Alſo a Horſe may forſake his meate, being through the inconſiderateneſſe of his keeper cloyed, whereby he doth loath his meat, ſometimes through over-ayerings morning and evening, ſometimes againe by ſuffering him to eate being very hot after great ſweating, upon immoderate riding and toyle, or after water or waſhing being alſo very hot. Theſe and many more may be the cauſes why a Horſe may forſake his meat, and yet not be ſicke. And he may alſo forſake his meat by reaſon of ſickneſſe enſuing, as upon Colds, Rhumes, and Catarres newly taken, and beginning to be felt upon him: ſo alſo he may forſake his meat, by reaſon of ſickneſſe which hath already ſeized him, as in caſes of Glanders, Feavers, Morfounding, Conſumption, Dropſie, and the like, whereby it is made moſt apparant that he feedeth not becauſe he is already ſicke. As touching the firſt poynt, if you doe perceive him to forſake his meate, and that you cannot eaſily finde the reaſon thereof, then the firſt thing you doe, ſearch his mouth, lips, and tongue, and if you finde any thing there amiſſe, let it be preſently amended, but if you cannot finde any thing there amiſſe, then examine his keeper, and if you may perceive that it came through his default or negligence, either by the cloying him with Provender, or otherwiſe according as I have heretofore touched, then give him a few branches of Savin, and let him be ayered abroad, keeping him upon the Trench faſting to procure him a ſtomack, and then feed him by degrees, and that by a little at once, ſo he will fall to his meat againe with good appetite, feed heartily, and doe well againe. ✠ But if you doe finde that his forſaking of meat commeth by meanes of any ſickneſſe which hath already ſeized him, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Forſaking meat.

Take of white Wine one quart, Polipodium of Oake, a red Colewort-leafe, Hore-hound, Mints, ſhe-Holly, Iuniper-berries, Ginger, Parſley-ſeeds, Fennell-ſeeds, of each three ounces, beate into fine powder what is to be powdred, and chop and ſtamp the hearbs ſmall, and ſo put all into the Wine, and boyle them a pretty while, then ſtrain it, and give it your *horſe* bloud warme, then leap his back, and trot him ſoftly upon faire ground an houre, but not to ſweat by any means, then ſo ſoon as he commeth into the ſtable, cloath, and litter him warm, and waſh his mouth with water and ſalt, and ſet him upon the Trench, and put over his noſtrils a fine linnen ragge ſteeped in ſowre leven, infuſed firſt in the beſt and ſtrongeſt white Wine Vineger, and the juyce of Sorrell, and let him ſtand ſo three houres at the leaſt, then unbit him, and bring him meat, but by little at once, for feare of cloying his weake ſtomacke, neither let him have any Maſhes, or cold water, but white water onely, untill ſuch time as he hath found his ſtomack againe. ✠ This I have often made tryall of,

of, and have found it to be right good. Another:

Take Rue and Pepper, of each like much, ſtamp them together to a thick ſalve, then take a good lump thereof, and put it up a good way into his mouth, and let him champ and chew it a good while, and ſo ſoon as you doe ſuffer him to open his mouth, he will put it out, and fall to feeding heartily. ✠ This is not inferiour to the former. Another:

Take the leaves of Briony, and give him them to eate, and it will bring him to a good ſtomack ſuddenly. This was taught me by a very good Ferrier, who avowed it to me to be ſpeciall good, but I never made triall thereof.

§29. F.

Hippoph. *How doe you cure a running Fruſh?*

Hippoſ. This is a naughty ſorance, which I have heard rurall Smiths to call the Frog, by reaſon that it breedeth in that ſpungy part of the heele, which they call the Frog. This ſorance comes ſometimes when the Smith inconſiderately as he pareth that part, doth goe to the quicke, whereby it bleedeth, which after becommeth ſore, and commeth to the running Fruſh, for that the *horſe* being travelled, whilſt it is raw, and ſo the gravell getting into it, doth cauſe the place to rankle and impoſtumate, and it will come in ſhort time to be a running ſore, which will ſo ſtinke, as not well to be endured: ſometimes again it commeth by reaſon of evill humours which do fall down into the legges, and makes its way out at the Fruſh, it being the ſofteſt and tendreſt part of all the foot. And ſomes times it commeth by a bruiſe which the *horſe* may eaſily take by treading upon ſome ſtone, which inwardly corrupting, putrifieth, and ſo is engendred a running Fruſh. The ſignes to know it is, the *horſe* will goe lame, either upon hard or durty wayes, whereby the gravell doth get in, and fret and paine him at the quick, and you ſhall perceive that when he reſteth, the Fruſh will weep, ſending forth watery ſtuffe from the Fruſh. The way to cure it is,

Fruſh running.

Take ſtale Chamberlye, and boyle it with a good quantity of Allum, and keep it in a glaſſe cloſe ſtopped by it ſelfe for your uſe. Then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the ſtrongeſt and keeneſt, dry them that they may be made into fine powder, then look what quantity of this powder you have, adde alſo unto it the like quantity of Pepper, made alſo into very fine powder, and mixe them very well together, and keep it either in ſome dry bladder, or boxe for your uſe alſo: and when you have occaſion to uſe this water, and powder for this ſorance, firſt take off the ſhooe, and open the Fruſh, ſo that you may come unto the very bottome, then waſh the ſorance very cleane and well with this water made warme, then put on the ſhooe again, but firſt let it be hollowed, that it hurt not the Fruſh, and let

let the heeles of the ſhooe be wide enough, then the ſorance being thus cleane waſhed and purged from all gravell and mattrative ſtuffe, and the ſhooe ſet on as aforeſaid, fill the wound full with this powder, and ſtop it with Hurds, and ſplent it that the Hurds may keep in the powder, and that nothing get to the ſore, and thus waſh and renew the powder to the place grieved every day once, and in a weeke or little more it will be perfectly ſound and whole againe, provided you ſuffer not any dung to come to the griefe, and that he tread not in any wet during the time of the Cure, neither ſhould he goe forth of the Stable. ✠ And thus have I cured many *horſes* of this malady. Another,

Take of Soot and bay-Salt, of each one handfull, and pound them very well together, (having opened and waſhed the ſorance as before is ſhewed) and put unto your Soot and Salt, the whites of three new laid Egges, and ſo temper and beat all well together, till you bring it to one entire body, then dip ſome hurds therein, and ſo ſtop not onely the place it ſelfe, being opened and made raw, but all the ſole beſides, and ſo ſtop up the Fruſh, ſplenting it in ſuch ſort, whereby the medicine may be kept in, and thus let him be dreſſed once a day, and ordered as before is premoniſhed, and he ſoone will be whole and ſound. ✠ This I have often proved, and cured many ſorances of this nature.

§. 30. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is beſt to cure a Fret?*

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe you call the *Fret*, is onely gripings and pain in the belly, which commeth of ſundry cauſes. The French doe call it *Tranchaiſons*, which doe ſignifie gripings, it is the plaine Collicke, cauſed of winde, ſometimes of bilious and ſharp humours, which deſcending from the ſtomacke, goe down into the guts, and there torment him, and ſometimes it commeth by reaſon of Wormes, Bots, or Truncheons, which doe engender in the ſtomacke or guts of the *Horſe*, which do feed and gnaw upon the paunch and guts, putting him to mickle pain and perplexity. The ſignes are, he will forſake his meat, lye down oft, and tumble, and when he ſtandeth, he will eft ſoones ſtrike at his belly with his hinder legs, he will alſo ſtampe with his fore-feet, and turn his head towards his belly, and looke upon it, and he will many times ſweat at the flankes, and ſeldome any where elſe, and if the malady be of winde, then ſhall you perceive his belly to ſwell, eſpecially towards the flanks: the cure is,

Fret. Take of good Ale two quarts, of Fenugrick foure ounces, of Bayberries ſeven ounces, of long Pepper foure ounces, of Ginger one ounce,

one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfuls, Sage and Nettles, of each one handfull, beat to powder the Spices, and chop the hearbs small, and boyle them in the Ale till one moyity be consumed, then strayne it, and to give it him blood warme, and then cover and litter him warme, and let him stand upon the Trench sixe houres after. But yet so soone as he hath his drinke, rope up all his legges to the body, not suffering him to lye down, and cover him so as that he may sweat for one houre onely, and then coole him by degrees, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes or white water, and he being thus ordered two or three dayes he will be well. ✠ This I have often used. Another:

Take the entrals of a great Chicken, casting away the gizzard, rowle them up in bay-Salt and the powder of Brimstone, and so give it him down his throat, then presently let him be gently ridden, or walked, till he doth dung, and at night give him a Mash, or white water, and he is cured. This is also very good. But if you have cause to suspect that he hath the Bots, then rake him, and in his raking search for Bots, which if you doe finde any sticking upon the great gut, pluck them all (or so many as you can finde) away, whereby you may be confident that the Bots is cause of his griefe, wherefore apply such remedies and medicines which I have formerly prescribed you for Bots, Truncheons, and Wormes, in *lib.* 2 *cap.* 5. § 15. where you shall finde such receits as will cure him. ✝ But if you doe perceive this griefe of his commeth of winde, then make use of such receits which you shall finde by me before inculcated for the Collicke, *in lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. § 11. *lit.* C. where be very good remedies for this Malady.

Chap. 10.

§. 1. G.

Hippophylus.

What is beſt to be done to cure a galled backe?

Hippoſ. There be ſo many wayes which doth occaſion it, as that it would be an endleſſe labour to deliver every particular thereof. But becauſe you doe motion the *galled backe* onely, I will firſt ſpeake ſomething thereof. A *galled backe* commeth commonly either with the Saddle, the Pannell, Pack-Saddle or Male-pillion, which through evill ſtopping, or defect of ſtopping, may very eaſily gall the *Horſe*, ſo alſo may the fault be in the tree, which may be ſo badly made, ſo as that let the Saddler be never ſo ſufficient, skiltull, or carefull, yet ſhall it both gall and hurt him; ſo alſo may the tree of the Saddle be either broken or crackt, if it at any time happen, be you then confident, that it can never be ſo amended or repaired, but that doe what you can it ſhall hurt the back of the *Horſe*, and theſe be the moſt frequent and ordinary wayes, whereby to gall the back of your *horſe*, howbeit I paſſe over Male-pillions, Cloake-bags, Port-mantues, Truſſes, and the like. The ſignes to know a galled back are eaſie, for either the backe will be apparantly ſwelled, or the hayre fretted off, the skinne either broken or raw, or the backe either inflamed or impoſtumated, every of which is eaſily to be determined by the eye, or if his *backe* be wrung with the Saddle, and yet not come to be viſible to the eye, yet may you come to the knowledge therof, if taking off the Saddle, ſtroking your hand all along the back, you ſhall perceive him either to ſhake his head, or to winch with his tayle, to rouze, or ſhake, to ſtamp or ſtrike with his feet, to offer to bite, or the like, whereby you may come to know it, and very eaſily to finde out the place grieved. Now if the back be ſwelled, and before it be impoſtumated, ſo ſoon as you ſhall take off the Saddle, and finde the ſame, clap upon the ſwelling a little of his wet litter, and ſo ſet on the Saddle againe, and let him remain with his Saddle on all night, and in the morning the ſwelling will be abated, and the place it ſelfe become whole and ſound again. Now if the hayre be but galled off, ſo that it doth not impoſtumate, annoynt the place but with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and in twice dreſſing the place will be whole; but if the *backe* be ſo *galled*, as that it is become raw, then the cure is thus, *viz.*

Take

Take three parts of sheepes-dunge newly made, and one part of Rie, or Wheate flower, and dry the flower, and then mixe it well with the sheepes-dung, kneading it as into paste, and making it into the fashion of a Cake, and after bake it a little, and apply the powder thereof warme unto the place, ✠. This will heale him very well. But I may very well spare the labour, in reciting any more receipts for this matter, considering, I have sufficiently already handled them in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 5. §. 1. *letter*, B. *Galled back.*

§. 2. G.

Hippoph. WHat say you to a Galde *that commeth by the Shackell?*

Hippos. This kind of *Gallings* being so frequent, as to be knowne to every one both in the manner how it commeth, and in the signes how to know them, needeth not much discussion, nevertheless I will give you an experiment or two of mine owne, and so leave it to its more proper place.

Take new milke three quarts, Plantane one handfull, boyle these together till one part of the milke be consumed, then take of Allum six ounces, and of white sugar-Candy one ounce, beat them both to fine powder, and so put it to the milke, and adde also unto it of white Wine-Vineger six spoonfuls, then boyle it a little till there do come upon the top a tough curd, then strayne it, and keep the whay, casting away the curd, and with this whay first made warme bathe, and wash the sore, the hayre being first clipped close away, and having thus washed the sorance, and wiped it dry then apply your greene oyntment mentioned in the fourth §. of this Chapter, but in case where the *Galde* is not yet broken, yet likely to breake, there you shall only apply the medicine taught you in *lib* 2. *chap.* 16. §. 10. *L.* for the *Poll-evill*, ✠. This whay is also good to cure the bloudy Rifts, Bladders, Canker in the mouth, Barbs, Pappes, and all Feavers, and Maladies in the *Mouth.* Another. *Galled with the Shackle.* *A whay.*

Take life-hony seven spoonfuls, and Verde-grease halfe an ounce, and boyle them till the hony bee halfe consumed, and that it is become red, then put it into some cleane pot, and annoynt the sorance therewith, made warme, twice every day; and when you have thus annoynted it, cast upon the place Hurds cut very short to keep on the oyntment, and this will in short time heale it up very sound. ✠. This is most soveraign for any *shackle-galde*, which commeth eyther by *lock*, *cord*, or *shackle*, but if your *Horse* be desperately *galled* in any part of his *body*, as by the *girt* or otherwise, then.

Take of Verjuyce of the Crab two quarts, of greene Copperas, two penny-worth, and boyle them together to one pint and a halfe: and wash the sorance therewith very well, and after fill up the hole (if any be) with the powder of red-leade, and so let it remaine three

dayes untoucht, then wash it as before, and fill it with your red ointment againe, and thus in two or three times dressing, it will heale up, bee the *galling* never so dangerous, ✠. This have I often used.

§. 3. *G.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat is best to bee done to a Horse that is* Gravelled?

Hippof. This malady commeth when a *horse* in his travell hath gotten *gravell* betwixt the *sole* and the *hoofe* which setleth at the quicke, and there fretteth and festreth, you shall soone know it by his halting, and complayning upon the same foot, which so soone as you do perceive, take up the *foote* and you shall feele it warmer in that place, then in any other part of the *foote*, and if you make tryall with your Pinsors, you shall perceive him to shrinke, and to yeeld when you nip him against that place: Take off the shooe and with your drawing iron draw the place, till you come unto the quick, picke forth all the *gravell*, and crush forth the matter and bloud cleane, then wash the sore cleane with your Copperas water, taught you in the next ensuing *Paragraph*, then poure upon the sore sheeps-Tallow, and Baysalt molten together, of each so much as will suffice, and let it bee poured into the wound scalding hot, then stop up the hole with hurds, and set on the shooe againe, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole, but till he be through well do not travell him, neyther let his *foote* come into any wet ✠. This is a certaine cure. Another.

Gravelling.

Search and draw the place as before, and get forth all the *gravell*, then stop the place with Hogs-grease, and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound scalding hot, and stop it up with hurds, and tack on the shooe, and keepe his *foote* from wet, and hee will soone bee whole; This is also very good. Another.

Be you certaine that you have gotten forth all the *gravell* and corruption, then.

Take Virgin-waxe one ounce, Rosin, and Deeres-suet, of each two ounces, Bores-grease halfe an ounce, and of Sea-greene, *alias* House-leeke, one head; incorporate all these together in a Morter, then melt them over a very gentle fire, and so apply it hot to the sorance, and stop it up with hurds and tack on the shooe, and in few dressings it will cure it, ✠. This is a speciall good cure.

§. 4. *G.*

§ 4. G.

Hippoph. *How doe you make your greene oyntment, you doe so much commend?*

Hippos. Sir, this Vnguent which I doe so much commend unto you, is the most rare, and soveraigne thing that I ever yet saw, or knew, for the cure of any sores, whether old or greene, *Vlcers*, *Fistulas*, *Poll evills*, or what else, for where this oyntment commeth, no proud or dead *flesh* will grow, no *flies* will adventure neere the place where this oyntment is laid, and for a *Horse* or *Mare-Filly* that is cut, gelt, or spla, annoynt but the place, and they will neyther swell or fester, whereby the creature is the further of from danger, for this Vnguent doth not only heale soundly and well, but speedily also; provided you lay nothing upon the wound or sorance, where the oyntment is administred, as neyther hurds, lint, plaisters, or the like, unlesse you may have occasion to Taint a wound which is extraordinary deepe, neither that for any long time, or too often, and besides the seldomer the wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two daies, it will heale the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardnesse of healing. And together with this Vnguent, you may do well to wash the sorance, with the water I call the Copperas water, which by reason it is alwaies first to be used, I will set it downe first, and the Greene-oyntment shall assume the second place.

Copperas water.

Take faire water two quarts, and put it into a cleane Postnet, and put thereto of greene Copperas halfe a pound, and of salt one handfull, and of ordinary Honey one spoonefull, and a branch or two of Rosemary, boyle all these till one halfe of the water bee consumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Doves egge of Alume, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold put the water into a glasse, and stop it up close, and keepe it for your use; and when you are to dresse any sore, first wash it cleane with this water, and if the wound be deepe, iniect it with a seringe. ✠. This water of it selfe will cure any reasonable sore, or wound (but the greene oyntment being applyed after it is washed) will heale any old *Vlcer*, or *Fistula* whatsoever, if they come to the bottome of them, and for greene wounds, they have not their fellow; the *Greene-oyntment* is thus made.

Greene-oyntment.

Take a cleane Skillet or Postnet, and first put into it of Rosin the quantity of a wall-nut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of wax, and when that is also molten, put to them of tryed-Hogs-grease halfe a pound, and so soone as that is molten, put into the rest of common *English* Hony one spoonfull, when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, and so soone as it is dissolved, take it from the fire, and put into the Skillet of Verdegrease made into very fine powder one ounce,

and so stirre it well al together, but be carefull it runne not over, for that the Verde-grease will cause it to arise, then set it againe upon the fire, till it do beginne a little to simper, then take it off, for if you suffer it to boyle it will turne red, and lose its vertue of healing, and become a Corasive, then straine it through a cloth into some earthen Pot, or Pipken, and keepe it for your use, laying something upon the mouth of the vessell, that dust get not into it, and if it be not strained, then the grounds in the bottome will corasive a sore, and not heale it. ✠. This is the most soveraigne Oyntment that I could ever know, for with it I have done so many great cures, as have made me admired by *Ferriers* themselves, who have courted mee not a little for this Receipt, yea they have profered mee ten pounds to teach it them; This cleanseth a wound, bee it never so foule, or infected with dead, proud, spungy or naughty *flesh*, it carnifieth, and healeth abundantly, and with all, so soundly, and firmely, as that it doth never more breake forth, it draweth forth thornes, splinters, nayles, and all such things in the *flesh*, and in a word it cureth al sorts of sores and wounds.

§ 5. C.

Hippoph. WHat is good to bee administred to a Horse whose grease is molten?

Hippos. As touching this infirmity I have sufficiently shewed you before how it commeth, the signes how to know it, and how to cure the same, and therefore I may now forbeare to spend any more time in the declaration thereof, only I will give you one singular Receipt more, and this it is.

Grease molten.

First, take *bloud* from the *neck-veine*, to a reasonable good proportion, to the end all his inflamed *bloud* may be let forth, then give him to eate eyther branne prepared as you are shewed in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 9. §. 4. *F.* or dry branne whether he will eate best, but if he will eate neyther, and that he doth empty himselfe over much, then give him the Clyster Restringent prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 6. §. 8. *Clyster* 3. *letter C.* or else if you please, you may give him the 8. *Clyster* in the same §. eyther of these two so often as neede shall require you may give. And if his appetite be not good, give him Arman prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 2. §. 2. *letter A.* and two dayes after let him *bloud* in both the *Flank-veines*, and if you cannot easily finde them, then in the *spurre-veines*, and the next day after that give him to drinke, two quarts of water warmed, and put into it of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, for this will very much refresh his *body*, and then the next day give him this drinke.

Take of Tisan three pints, of lose Sugar finely powdred three ounces, of Cordiall powder one ounce, of life honey foure ounces, give him this to drink bloud warme. In maladies of this nature you

must

must forbeare to administer such drugs as be hot, for by such meanes more *horses* dye then doe recover and live: for such kinde of drinks as this is being wholly cordiall, are best for this infirmity. + This cure I doe assure you I have often administred, and have done very much good, and made may great and desperate cures therewith.

§. 6. G.

Hippoph. VVEll now let us come to the Glanders.

Hippos. With all my heart Sir. As touching this disease which we doe call the *Glanders*, it is of all others the worst, noysome, and most infectious, insomuch as that *horse* that hath it, if he be not removed and separated from his fellowes, will infect so many as shall be with him in the same Stable and roome. To finde out the depth, root, and true nature of this disease, I have greatly laboured, as also how to cure the same. I have also had much conference with many the most famous and exquisite *Marishals* and *Ferriers* abroad, and I have seen very much of their practise therein, so also have I had very serious discourses with a number of our best Ferriers and Smiths at home, but I finde not one in twenty can speake truely to any purpose of the nature of this disease, and therefore I do not wonder that they cannot cure a disease whereof they are so much to seek. Nevertheless what I do understand of this disease, I will ingenuously deliver unto you. The *Glanders* is an infirmity which proceedeth first of cold taken, which being neglected, will in time come to be the *Glanders*; you shall first perceive it by the inflamed kernels and knots which may be felt under the *chaule* of the *horse*, and as they doe grow in bigneſſe, so do the *Glanders* grow and increase within the body of the *Horse*, which first beginning with a thin Rhume, ascendeth up to the head, and settleth neer to the brain, and so venteth it selfe at the nose, which yet may be easily cured, as I have before inculcated, where I entreated of Colds, afterwards it growes thicker, and then it is worse to cure, but yet faisable enough, in longer time it commeth yet to a thicker substance, and its colour is yellowish, much like unto Butter, and then it is more hard to cure, but yet curable, albeit that now it is come to be a perfect *Glanders*: but when it commeth to be of a viscous, and of a tough and slimy substance, and of a green colour, and to stink terribly, and that it hath now runne some moneths, or peradventure halfe a yeer or better, as also having some small specks of a reddish colour in it, then is not every Ferriers work or Art to cure the same, for in a case of this nature, the ablest Ferrier may receive the foyle, and the *Horse* dye under his hands and cure, as I have often by experience been an eye witnesse, albeit there hath been no defect in the Ferrier, either in Art, industry, care or diligence. I doe therefore averre that I would not have any man (be he never so expert an Artist) to promise to him selfe

ſelfe the cure of every *Horſe* he ſhall take in hand, by the reaſon that the *Glanders* it ſelfe is the thing he muſt cure, but in taking upon him to cure that malady, he muſt before he can have perfected his cure, cure him alſo of many other diſeaſes, which the *Glanders* will bring along with it, as (*v. g.*) the conſumption of the fleſh and lungs, griefes and aches in the head and braine, inflamations under the *chaule*, diſeaſes in the liver, purſiveneſſe, hide-bound, dropſie, ſwelled legges, and many other infirmities too prolixe to repeat, all which (I ſay) are inherent to the *Glanders*, and its origine that it is of cold paſt all peradventure, howſoever it ſometimes commeth of Surfets, ſometimes of Morfounding, ſometimes by infection, all which (the laſt only excepted) taketh its firſt ſource from cold, and when it runneth (as before I ſaid) greeniſh with reddiſh ſpecks, accompanied alſo with an offenſive or ſtinking breath, then are his lungs ulcerated, by meanes whereof the cure is the more deſperate and difficile. I do therefore adviſe all Ferriers my brethren, who ſhall at any time take upon them this cure, that they doe firſt prepare the body of the *Horſe* with ſuch preparatives and Phyſicke, as are meet to expell his peccant humours, which muſt be alſo very carefully adminiſtred, yea and that according to the ſtrength and ability of the *Horſe*: for the *Horſe* cannot chooſe but be feeble and weake, having of a long time before viſited with a ſickneſſe of this nature, yea peradventure a whole yeere or two before together, during which time he hath continually waſted and languiſhed, wherefore he cannot be ſtrong, but a very weake *Horſe*, and therefore his phyſicke muſt be very gentle, yet ſuch alſo which may have operation whereby to work, otherwiſe phyſicke is but caſt away. The ſignes how to know this diſeaſe need no further deſcription, and therefore I will proceed to the cure, for the which I will deliver you many receits, ſome whereof I have well experienced, to which I will give my particular marke, like as I have formerly done. And I do the rather inſert the more receits, becauſe (as I have before remembred) that receit which will not cure one, will cure another.

Glanders. The firſt therefore that is to be done in this caſe, is, to prepare his body by giving him for four or five dayes together, in ſtead of his Oates and Provender, wheat Bran prepared, like as I have before ſhewed you in the caſes of ſick *Horſes*, eſpecially in *lib. 2. cap. 9. § 4. F.* to qualifie and dry up his moyſt and bad humours abounding in him, then let him bloud in the neck, and the next day rake him, and give him this Cliſter. Make a decoction of Mallowes one pinte and a halfe, and put unto it of freſh Butter, foure ounces, and of Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and adminiſter it bloud warme, and then with a ſtrappe of leather tye it to his tayle, and then faſten the other end of the ſaid ſtrap to his Surſingle, ſo ſtraight, that his tayle muſt be cloſe to his tuell, that he cannot purge till it be looſened, then mount his back, and let him be gently ridden, ſometimes a foot pace, and ſometimes

times an easie trot for halfe an hour, then set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, during which time he will purge kindely, then give him white water and Hay, and at night a few Oats, for he must be kept to a spare dyet. The next day annoynt two long Goose-feathers with the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, being first well wrought together, till it be brought to the colour of gold, put them into either nostrill, and fasten them to his headstall, as is before taught you, and so ride him an houre or two, for this will purge his head, and cause him to send forth mattrative stuffe which abideth in his head and lungs, then bring him in and take them forth, and an houre after give him Hay and white water, and Bran prepared, which also he should have given him before his riding abroad. The next day give him his Clister againe, and so let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before. The next day give him his Goose feathers again, annoynted as before, and ordered in the like manner as you did before, and all this is, but to prepare him for his after drinke, but remember to keep him alwaies warme, and let him bee evermore fasting and empty, when he is to have any kind of Physicke administred unto him, and let him be ayered morning and evening, if the sunne shine, or that it be otherwise warm and calm weather. And having thus begun with him, three dayes after give him this drink.

Take of Aqua vitæ halfe a pinte, and of white wine one pinte, Aristolochia-Rotunda, Agarick, Gentian, Bay-berries, Myrrha, Ivory, Aloes, of each three drams, make all these into fine powder each one by it selfe, then mixe them very well, and put them into a clean Posnet with the Wine and Aqua vitæ, and so warm it upon the fire, then being well brewed, give it him bloud warm. This drink must be given thrice, to wit, every third day, and he made to fast three houres after, and after ordered as is accustomed with *horses* in Physicke, during which time, and some time after, let him drink no cold water, but most commonly white water, which once or twice in a week may be changed into a sweet Mash, and let him eate the Bran and Malt, and dyet and feed him so, as that he may be kept to a stomack, but be carefull you neither cloy, nor pine him. Instead of the Oats which you should give him, let them sometimes be changed into bread if he will eat it: and sometimes you may give him in stead of Oats, some Wheat either in the eares, which is best, or else Wheat threshed and cleared ready for the Mill. ✠ Truely with this cure as I have set it you down, I have recovered many *horses*. But you must understand that this malady as it hath runne along upon the *horse*, before it come to that height, as to be so rank a *Glanders*, to be termed the mourning of the *chine*, so will it aske a long time to cure, and therfore you must not think that it can be cured with this one only courle of Physick, but you must let him rest a few dayes, whereby he may the better gather strength, and then to him again and again, but take

no

no more bloud from him, and as you doe perceive him to gather flesh, and get strength, so let his exercise be increased, but withall, so as not to over-labour him, or to cause him to sweat violently, nor yet straine his winde too much. Another:

If you do finde that together with his *Glanders*, he hath the Strangles, that is that he be oppressed with inflamations under the *chaule*, clip away the hayre from about the place, and clap a piece of sheeps skin newly killed, over all the place, which must be daily renewed, and you must keep warme, not only that place, but his Poll also, then;

Take Basilicon, old Bores grease and Dialthea, of each four ounces, and of oyle de Bay one ounce, beat all these very well together, then annoynt the place enflamed, once every day at the least, and then put to the sheeps skin, and so keep it on till it be ripe enough, then open it, and put into the orifice a taint of Basilicon for three or four dayes, then heale up the wound with taints of Ægyptiacum, prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 4. § 4. *lit. A.* and during the time of his cure, give him Wheat Bran, as well dry as prepared, and for his drink, let it be white water, unlesse sometimes a Mash; keep him warm, and after five or sixe dayes, ride him abroad with the Goose feather in his nose, annoynted as is before advised you, and if he do runne at nose very much, then take a stick, and wrap a fine linnen rag about it, and annoynt it very well with black sope, and put it into his nostrils a good way, but not so as to cause him to bleed, and doe this three or four times a day: or else

Take the seed of Pordo accenta, and bruise it, made up in sweet Butter, so much of the seed as you may take up betwixt your thumb and two fingers at a time. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take the oyntment of the oyle de Bay, and unguentum Agrippa, of each like much, rub the inflamation places every night with this unguent well mixed, then apply unto the place a piece of a sheeps skin with the wooll on: but this medicine is much better in Winter then in Summer, by reason that this unguent of it selfe is very hot, wherefore in the Summer season, in stead of such hot unguents, take two ounces of those that be cooler, with three roots of white Lillies rosted or boyled, or Rie-leaven sixe ounces, of old Hogs-grease as much as will suffice, and of the tender tops of Isope halfe an ounce, mixe all these together, and make thereof an unguent, with which rub and annoynt the place well, and after apply it to the place plaister wise, this done, cover the place with a piece of sheeps skin the wooll being on, and continue to do this till it be ripe and ready to be opened, blow also into his nose of Euforbium, and black Elebore pulverized, of each like much, to the bignesse of a hasle nut of either, then put into each nostrill a long Goose feather, first dipped in oyle de Bay, which powder and oyle will cause him to cast forth much of his *Glanders*, and of his bad humours which do feed them. ✠

This

This medicine if it be rightly applyed, will cure him. Another:

If your *horſe* together with his *Glanders* be troubled with inflamed kernels under his chaule, then give him this drink.

Take of Elecampane dryed, Anniſeeds, Fennell ſeeds, Commen, Pepper, Grains, Licoris, of each three drams, all pulverized, and adde thereto two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed, boyle all theſe in ſtrong Ale two quarts, to a moyety, then ſtrain it and ſet it over the fire again, and put unto this liquor the quantity of a Tennis ball of tryed Hogs greaſe, and let it remain no longer over the fire, but untill the Hogs greaſe be molten, and ſo adminiſter it bloud warm with a horn, this done, leap his back, and trot him gently a mile upon faire ground, and ſo home again, then ſet him up warm clothed and littered, cauſing him to ſweat in his clothes two hours, then by little and little, ſlake his clothes, cooling him by degrees, till you have brought him to his former coolneſſe, and as he doth begin to leave off ſweating, let him be well rubbed till he be dry, then two hours after this, give him a ſweet Maſh, and uſe this drink and ſweating ſundry times, every ſecond day for a week. The next week

Take Wheat meale, Hore-hound, Anniſeeds and Licoris made into very fine powder, of each as much as will ſuffice, make a paſte thereof with ordinary Honey and Sallet oyle, of each as much as will ſuffice, then every morning make three Pils the bigneſſe of a great Wal-nut a piece, and give them to the *horſe* three mornings together, keep him all this time warm, and let his drink be white water, and his manger meat be either Wheat Bran prepared, or dryed Bran, but if he have kernels under his chaule, then either ripen them, as you were taught before, or elſe burn them with the flame of a Candle, and open the *skin* with an inciſion knife, and then put into the orifice the root of a red Dock, giving it a ſlit or two, and it will draw his cold quite away from under his *chaule*. But firſt you muſt underſtand that the drink laſt before mentioned, ought to be applyed before you apply any other medicines, and my counſell is withall that you doe purge him before you give him this drink, or any other medicines, for purging doth the better prepare the body of the *horſe*, whereby to cauſe his phyſicke of what nature ſoever to work more kindly. ✠ This receit I have often tryed, and I have perfected very great cures therewith. Another very ſoveraign after your *horſe* hath taken the drink next above preſcribed.

Take Gumma-Guiacum, Amber, Corall, of each halfe an ounce, make all theſe into very fine powder, and infuſe it into red Wine one quart, with a good quantity of Cinamon and Arkanet powdred, and give it to your *horſe* two mornings together bloud warm, and ſo order him as is uſuall with other drinks. ✠ This is alſo very good. Another:

Firſt give him this drink following, but firſt purge him two dayes before: take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came

Hides, one pint, of Sallet-oyle foure ſpoonefuls, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruiſed, Feather-few, and Selandine, of each one handfull choped very ſmall, Anniſeeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely puluerized of each one ſpoonefull, boyle all theſe a little and ſo give it your *Horſe* bloud-warme twice a weeke faſting, and he being thus foure times drenched, will bee perfectly cured. This I never tryed, but I have bin aſſured by able *Ferriers* that it will cure the Glaunders be it never ſo old. Another.

Take ſtrong Ale one quart, Tarre a quarter of a pint, two heads of garlick, pilled, & bruiſed, and give it your *Horſe* faſting, warme once in foure dayes, till he be throughly cured. This I never tryed. Another.

Take of the neweſt and ſtrongeſt *Tanners* Owes one pint, Venice Turpentine waſhed one ounce, Bayberries in fine powder one ſpoonfull, Saffaron powdred one penny-worth, *Ariſtolochia rotunda* one ounce, *Guiacum* two ounces, both in fine powder, incorporate all theſe upon the fire, till the Turpentine be diſſolved, then give it your *Horſe* bloud warm two mornings in a weeke, reſting three dayes ſtill betwixt till he be cured, which will be in foure or five times giving. Another.

Make Pills of Venice-Turpentine with paſte of Barley flower, and give them to your *Horſe*, and they will Cure him. Another.

Take Baked Barley flower two parts, the duſt of Oaken-barke, and Bay-berries in five powder of each one part, make a paſte thereof with new *Tanners* Owes, and ſo make them into Pills, with the powder of Cinamon three parts, and Saffaron one penny-worth, and ſo give them to your *Horſe*. Another for the *Glaunders* and Conſumption of the *Lungs*, which muſt bee given after you have made tryal of the drink before preſcribed, which beginneth thus (take Elecampane, Anniſeedes, Fennel-ſeedes &c. and finding that your *Horſe* is not therewith cured, give him theſe Pills following.

Take Barly-flower baked in an Oven, Cumfrey rootes, Burſa-Paſtoris, Bramble-leaves, or the red and unripe Berries growing upon Brambles, which we do commonly call Black-berries, theſe unripe berries are much better then the Bramble-leaves, of each one handfull, of Alkenet one dram, boyle all but the Barley flower in *Tanners* Owes newly made, ſo much as will ſuffice, and when it is throughly boyled, ſtraine the liquor from the other ſimples, reſerving only the liquor, and ſo make a paſte thereof with your Barley-flower, adding thereto of the duſt of Oaken barke one handfull or two, then make this paſte up into Pills the bignes of a good wall-nut, give him foure of theſe at a time, rowled up in the powder of Cinamon two parts, and one part in the powder of Saffaron, and uſe this till he be well, not adminiſtring theſe Pills every day, but every two

or

or three daies, till you do find him well. ✠. This I doe recommend unto you for a ſpeciall good receipt, for that herewith I have affected many great cures in this kind, but then withall let his drinke be white water, and ſometimes a ſweete Maſh, as in all other cures for this infirmity, and withall put into his white water Bramble-leaves, and knot-graſſe bruiſed, and be you very carefull that he take no cold, but be kept warme during his cure, and ayre him morning and evening in the warme Sunne, if there be no wind, and every time you leade him forth to bee ayred, at his going forth or the Stable ſpirt into his Noſtrils the iuyce of wild Dayſie roots, mingled with the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vineger, which will purge his head exceedingly, and cauſe the *Glanders* to runne forth abundantly. Another being an excellent Pill for the *Glanders*, which I have often uſed, and that to great good purpoſe.

Take Venice-Turpentine waſhed halfe a dram, incorporate it with the powder of Brimſtone, Alkenet, & Oake-barke duſt, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, to make up into Pills, give him every morning two of theſe Pills, faſting as bigge as a good wall-nut every one, till he be well. ✠. Another which is a very good drinke, wherewith to diſſolve the *Glanders* and cold, after other drinkes have rotted and ripned them.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Figges cut and ſliced ſmall, a quarter of a pound, life hony one ſpoonefull, Saffaron puluerized one penny-worth, Ginger and Alecampane of each one dramme, in powder, Pepper in fine powder ſo much as will ly upon a ſixpence, freſh or ſweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, boyle all theſe together a pretty while, then ſtrain it, and bloud warme adminiſter it, only adding to the drinke the yolkes of two new-layed Egges well beaten into the ſaid drinke, and after walke or ride him moderately a little ſpace, and then ſet him up warme, and order him as in other Phyſicall drinkes. ✠. This I have often tryed, and do approve it for ſpeciall good: for this openeth the pipes, cauſing him to void much filth, and it begetteth a good ſtomack to meate. Another moſt excellent.

Firſt before you do adminiſter any drinkes or medicines, give him this purge.

Take of the beſt and ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vineger one pint, and put it into a pot, and put to it two new-laid Egges, and ſo let them ſteep in the ſaid Vineger four & twenty houres at leaſt, and then give them to the *Horſe* foure mornings together, and ſo ſoone as hee hath taken them let him bee ridden a while gently, and then ſet up warm, and ſet upon the Trench till one or two of the clocke, then give him white water, and ſometimes a ſweete Maſh, and let his Provender be moiſtned with Ale or Beere, and his Hay ſprinkled with water, and this will cauſe him to purge and ſcowre from him much Flegme and filth: three or foure daies after you have purged him thus, give him

the drinke prescribed you before which beginneth thus, *viz.* (take of *Tanners* Owes new made wherein never came Hides, one pint, of Sallet oyle foure spoonefuls, two heads of Garlick, &c.) which being administred as is in the said cure prescribed, and hee ordered as is convenient for *Horses* in Physick will assuredly cure him. This I never made use of, but it was recommended unto me for a speciall good one. Another.

Give him the last mentioned purge of Egges steeped in Vineger, & keep him to it foure or five mornings together, then for foure daies together after, give him a new-laid-Egge, shell and all, with as much powder of Brimstone as will lie upon a shilling, then for sixe mornings after, give him every morning a Pill of washed Venice-Turpentine, made up with the powder of the roote of Alkenet, and let every of these Pills bee of the bignesse of a good wall-nut, let him take this Medicine evermore in the morning fasting, and fast after it till noone, and after order him as in other Physicall drinkes: and withall you must know that untill such time as he be perfectly cured he must not be put to any hard labour eyther by riding or otherwise, for that will rend a new, and breake open againe, the *Vlcer* being newly healed, which as yet be but greene and tender ✠. And this is a very good receipt. Another for a *Glanders* or any cold newly taken.

Take the long Mosse growing upon the lymbes of old Timber-oakes, but not that which groweth upon the maine Body or Trunke of the Tree, gather thereof a good quantity, dry it and make it into powder, and give it your *Horse* foure mornings together, in cleare new *Tanners* Owes, one pint, mixing with the saide Owes and powder, old red-Wine one pint, let this drink be given him with a horne bloud-warme, and for foure daies after cover and litter him warme, and set him upon the Trench, and let him there remaine fasting during those foure houres, and for the time he taketh this drinke, let his Manger meate bee dry hard bread, well baked, and his Racke meate old dry Hay, but no Oates, and mixe with his bread some of this dryed powder, being the Mosse of the Oake, together with Feather-few, water-Germander, and Cordium, all dryed and made into powder, and let his drinke be fresh *Tanners* Owes, wherein came never Leather or Hides, and give it him with a horne, if otherwise he shall refuse to take it, but howsoever let him not drinke or take it but bloud warme only. This was taught me by a worthy Knight, who affirmed that he hath often used the same, and that hee hath done very great cures therewith, but I having many other approved Recipts, did never make tryall thereof, nevertheless it seemeth probably good. Another which I have often used.

Take sixe heads of Garlick, pill the cloves, and stampe them well, then put unto it of life-hony sixe spoonefull, and of Wheate meale, so much as will suffice, to make it into a paste, making thereof Pills every

every one of the bigneſſe of a good Wall-nut, and ſo give him of theſe Pils three or four at a time, and after them three new laid Egs, and after them caſt into his mouth of Bay Salt one handfull, this muſt be given faſting and before drink at ſixe or ſeven a clock in the morning, then let him be ridden untill he do begin to ſweat, then bring him into the Stable and clothe him warm, and litter him, and ſo let him ſweat an houre, then coole him by degrees, and after he hath faſted ſixe hours, give him meat, but no drink untill ſixe a clock in the evening, which let eyther be a ſweet Maſh or white water, and if need ſo require, let him have theſe Pils three mornings, reſting every one day betwixt, and thus ordering him, he will be perfectly cured. ✠ This I have often proved, and have cured many *horſes* of colds and *Glanders*. Another very good.

Take of Bay berries one ounce, of Licoris two drams, of brown Sugar-candy, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each a pennyworth, of Garlick a halfe penny worth, let all theſe be beaten and mixed, then take of Chamberlye that is four dayes old, one quart, and boyle it by it ſelfe to a pinte, and put to it of ſweet Butter a halfe penny worth, and with it the reſidue of the ingredients, and ſo give it him bloud warm, &c. ✠ Another moſt ſoveraign receit for the *Glanders*, and whereof I have had very great experience.

Firſt cleere his head by pricking him in the mouth, and rub the place with ſalt whereby to cauſe it to bleed the more, then take two long feathers of a Gooſe wing, well annoynted with oyle de Bay, thruſt it up and down his noſtrils, which will open and purge his head, alſo perfume his head with the ſtalks of Garlick broken into ſmall pieces, with a Tunnell, or with a thick cloth caſt over his head, the better to receive the ſmoake into his noſtrils, and do this morning and evening, keeping him to a ſpare dyet and moderate exerciſe, whereby the better to cleanſe his head and ſtomack, and to empty him, by which meanes the brain will be the better quieted. To perfume him alſo with Frankincenſe, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much well mixed together, is very ſoveraign; but two or three dayes after, let him bloud in the neck, after this let him be walked abroad, or gently ridden, (if the horſe be of ſufficient ſtrength) to get him breath, then adminiſter unto him this drink.

Take of Muskadine one pinte, of London Treacle an ounce and a halfe, ſweet Butter three ounces, give him this bloud warm, take then tryed Hogs greaſe, and rub and chafe him under the *chaule* very well therewith, and leave him annoynted thick therewith, then make him this Poulteſſe.

Take of Mallowes two handfuls, of Worm-wood, Smalage and Rue, all ſmall ſhred and ſtamped, of each one handfull, of Wheat Bran, and of tryed Hogs greaſe, of each one quart; boyle all theſe together, continually ſtirring them untill the Hogs greaſe be almoſt conſumed, and binde it under his *chaule* ſo hot as he can well ſuffer the

the ſame, and keep his head (eſpecially his poll) very warm, leaving onely ayre for his mouth and noſe, and light for his eyes. Then perfume him with Frankincenſe, and keep him warm in the Stable, and ſo let him reſt with this Poulteſſe four and twenty hours. The next morning give him early of the beſt new Ale, one quart, with Anniſeeds and Licoris, made together into very fine powder, one ſpoonfull, and a good piece of ſweet Butter, give him this with a horn bloud warm, then put into either noſtrill a long Gooſe feather well dipped in oyle de Bay and freſh Butter well mixed together, then remove the Poulteſſe, and if you doe finde that the kernels and inflamations too ripe, open them, and let forth the matter, and taint the orifice with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, then warm ſome of the Poulteſſe you left, but not ſo hot as before, and lay it to the place, and let it ſo remaine untill the next day, his head being ſtill kept warm, let his manger meat be old cleane Oats, well ſifted and moyſtened in new Ale and Muskadine, if he will eat them ſo, if not, then Ale alone, and let his Rack meat be Wheat Straw well threſhed, and let his drink be white water for ten dayes after, and then let him not have afterward any cold water, but with exerciſe, and let him ſometimes in ſtead of white water, a ſweet Maſh, keeping him to a ſpare dyet, and let him be every day ayered, either by riding or walking, if he be able to be brought out of the Stable, but then evermore keep him warm after it, and let him either by exerciſe in moderate riding, or in his cloaths in the Stable, ſweat a little every day once, and after let him be rubbed dry, neither let him ſweat in his cloaths. Put alſo into his provender the roots of Elecampane, white Lillies, and Polipodium of the Oake newly gathered, made cleane and chopped very ſmall, to the quantity of two ſpoonfuls, every time, and give him no Provender but when he is very hungry, and faile not to continue this courſe of phyſick and dyet by the ſpace of ten or twelve dayes together, and when theſe dayes be ended, give him this purging drink.

Glanders a purging drink.

Take of white wine one quart, or where Wine may not eaſily be acquired, then the like quantity of good new Ale, Aloes an ounce and a halfe, made into fine powder, of Agarick halfe an ounce, the powder of Elecampane two ſpoonfuls, of life honey three ſpoonfuls, brew all theſe well together, and give it him bloud warm, and keep him warm, ſixe dayes after let him bloud in the necke, and if the bloud be good, then take not above a quart at moſt from him, but if it be naught, take then a pottle from him, after this, order him both in feeding and exerciſe very moderately, and by this meanes you ſhall recover him, and bring him to his priſtine health again. ✠

Another receit for the *Glanders*, very pretious, which I have often tryed.

Take life honey as much as will ſuffice, and mingle it with his Oates, rubbing the Oates and honey together betwixt your hands,

ſo

ſo as the honey may be very well mixed with the Oates, let him eate his Oats thus mingled with the honey untill ſuch time as he be perfectly cured, which will be when you ſhall perceive him wholly to have left running at the noſe. ✠ I had this cure from one of the ableſt Ferriers I ever knew in *England*, and I have cured many *horſes* therewith. Another:

Take of Sallet oyle, and white Wine Vineger, of each three ſpoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into one of his noſtrils three mornings together, and ſo likewiſe convey into his other noſtrill, the like quantity of oyle and Vineger three mornings together, remembring that evermore when you doe adminiſter this medicine, you do preſently put up into the ſame noſtrill a long Gooſe feather dipped firſt in oyle de Bay, ſtirring the feather up and down in his noſtrill, which will cauſe him to ſneeze and ſnuffe forth the viſcous corruption which remaineth in his head. Keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water. ✠ Of this I have oft times made tryall, and it is ſpeciall good, as well for *Glanders*, as for any cold, if the *horſe* runne at the noſe. Another right good.

Take of Diapente and clarified honey, of each one ounce, and with good Sack one pint, give it him bloud warm, being firſt well brewed together, drench him herewith eight mornings together, and ſo ſoon as you have given him this drink, inject into his noſtrils this receit following.

Take the powder of Ariſtolochia-rotunda, as much as will ſuffice, and mixe with it White or Claret Wine in ſuch a proportion as may make it liquid, and inject or ſquirt it into his noſe. ✠ Or elſe

Take the juyce of Selendine mingled with faire water, and inject that into his noſe. ✠ Or elſe

Take Roch-Allum and Salt diſſolved in white Wine, and inject that up into his noſe. ✠ Either of all theſe are very good to cauſe him to caſt ſuch naughty corruption forth of his noſe and head, that doth much oppreſſe him, which lotions are to be adminiſtred evermore after the aforeſaid drink. ✠ Another alſo very good drink.

Take Tanners Owes new made, and new milk, of each one pint, Sallet oyle halfe a pint, one head of Garlick pilled and bruiſed, a little Turmerick in fine powder, boyle all theſe together, as much as will ſuffice, then take it off and put in your Sallet oyle, and ſo give it him bloud warm; give him this drink three times in fifteen dayes, that is to ſay, once every five dayes, and every time you do adminiſter it unto him, convey halfe a horn full into each noſtrill, and let him ſtand upon the Trench 3. hours after warm clothed and littered, and then give him a ſweet Maſh, and ſuch meat as is dry, ſweet, and wholeſome, but during the time of his cure, let his drink be white water. ✠ This is very good. Another very good.

Take of faire water two quarts, of Comin made into fine powder and

and fearſed two ounces, and of the inward rinde of Elder ſix handfuls, boyle this to a moyety, then take it off, and when it is halfe cold, ſtraine it and put into the liquor, halfe a pint of Sallet-oyle, and give him thereof at his mouth three hornefuls, and at eyther noſthrill halfe a hornefull, then leape his backe, and ride him moderately till he be warme, ſo ſet him up warme cloathed and littered, and three or foure houres after give him a warme Maſhe, but let him eate ſome Hay firſt. ✠. This I can averre to be very good, both for *Glanders* and *cold*. Another.

Take Oyle-de-Bay, and ſweet Butter, of each halfe a pound, Roſemary ſhred very well and ſmall halfe a handfull, Garlick one pound, beate the Garlicke unpilled in a ſtone Morter, with a woodden Peſtell very well, then put to it your Oyle, Butter, and Roſe-mary, and ſo make it into one body, then with Wheate-flower ſo much as will ſuffice, make it up into pils, and give him three or foure of theſe, every day for ten daies together, and order him *ut ſupra*. Of this I did never make tryall, but it was recommended unto me for a ſpeciall good Receipt. Another.

Take Cloves, long-Pepper, Browne-Sugar-Candy, and London Treacle, of each two ounces, beat the Sugar-Candy and ſpices to very fine powder, and put to them your Treacle, and after adde to theſe Ingredients, of good Sacke or Muskadine one pint, and firſt warme it upon the fire, and when it is almoſt cold enough to bee given him, put to it of Sallet-oyle three penny-worth, and ſo bloud-warme give it him, and in the giving convey into eyther Noſthrill halfe a hornefull of this drinke, and then order him *ut ſupra*. Another.

Take of new-milke one quart, warme from the Cowe, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed, boyle theſe together, keeping them with continuall ſtirring, then take it off, and let it coole, and a little before it be cold enough to give him, put to it of life-hony two ſpoonfuls, and of Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, give it him bloud-warme, reſerving for eyther Noſthrill, halfe a hornefull, then order him *ut ſupra*. Theſe latter cures I never made tryall off, but I think them to be very good. Another.

Take Iſope, ſweet Margerome, Lavander-Cotton, the roots and crops of Elecampane, of each one handfull, chop and ſhred all theſe together very ſmall, and boyle them in good Ale or Beere, ſo much as will ſuffice, then ſtraine it, and when the liquor is almoſt cold, breake into it two new-laid Egges, and ſtirre all well together, and ſo give it him bloud-warme, give him this drinke three times, that is every third day. This hath beene recommended unto me for a very good Receipt, whereby to cure not onely the *Glanders*, but the mourning of the *Chine*, but I never made uſe thereof.

But now ſithence I am come almoſt to the end of my Receipts for this Infirmity, I will give you two Receipts, the one for the *Glanders*,

ders, the other for the mourning of the *chine*, which are Master *Markhams*, which hee ſtileth thus. Two moſt certaine and newly found out Medicines, which will without faile cure any *Glanders*, though our *Ferriers* hold it impoſſible. The cure. If your *Horſe* his cold be come to the worſt *Glanders*, which is a continuall running at the *noſe*, and hath ſo runne by the ſpace of divers moneths, ſo that the *Ferriers* can do no good, then ſhall you take better then two handfuls of the white cankerous Moſſe which groweth upon an old Oaken pale, and boyle it in Milke two quarts, till one part bee almoſt conſumed, then ſtraine it and ſqueeze the moſſe well, which done give it your *Horſe* luke-warme to drink. Then take two Geeſe-Feathers, and take ſweet Butter, as a bigge Wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimſtone, finely beaten and ſearſed, worke them together with your knife or ſplatter, till the Butter be brought to a high gold colour, then take two cleane feathers the longeſt in all the Gooſe-wing, and firſt at the quilles ends with a needle faſten two long threds, then with your ſalve annoynt the feathers all over, which done in the dry powder of Brimſtone, rowle them over and over, then putting the feathers ends formoſt, open the *Horſe* Noſthrils, and thruſt them up into his head, then take the threds which are at the quils ends, and faſten them on the top of the *Horſes* head, which done ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayring him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after hee hath ſtood tyed up a pretty ſeaſon, unty the threds and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up, till you have next occaſion to uſe them, and keep his *body* warme. This diſeaſe you muſt underſtand, commeth not ſuddainely, but growes out of long proceſſe of time; ſo likewiſe the cure muſt not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leaſure: therefore you muſt continue your Medicine, as your leaſure will ſerve, eyther every day, or at the leaſt thrice a weeke, if it bee for foure or five moneths together, and bee ſure it will in the end yeeld your deſire.

Now the ſecond and well aſſured, and certaine Medicine is to take Elecampane-roots, and boyle them in milke till they bee ſoft, that you may bring them to pap, then with a horne give them to the *horſe*, together with the milke luke-warme, being no more then will make the rootes liquid, then having annointed your Gooſe-feathers put them into his Noſthrils, and ride him forth as before is ſhewed. The other receipt for the mourning of the *Chine*, he intituleth thus.

A moſt rare and approved Medicine, to cure any high running *Glanders*, called the mourning of the *Chine*, held of all men incurable. This diſeaſe to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or *Ferrier* in this Kingdome can tell how to cure: for it comes not to the extreamity, till the *Horſe* hath runne at the *Noſe*, a yeare or more, and have at the roots of his *tongue* a hard lung gathered, which will not be diſſolved. Now for mine owne part it is well known, that I have

cured many with this Medicine only.

Perfume. Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tuſſilaginis*, beaten into fine powder, of each foure drammes, then beating them with fine Turpentine bring them into a paſte, then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them. This done lay about two or three of them on a Chafing-diſh of coles, and cover them with a Funnell, ſo that the ſmoake may come out onely at the end thereof, and ſo without any loſſe aſcend up into the *Horſes* head through his noſtrils, then ride the *Horſe* till he begin to ſweate; this doe once every morning, before water till the running be ſtopped, which will be in very ſhort ſpace, conſidering the greatneſſe of this diſeaſe.

Theſe be Maſter *Markhams* two great cures, which by reaſon hee hath ſo great Eecomions of their vertues, and alſo what great cures he hath wrought and perfected with them, I thinke it not amiſſe to inſert them in this place. Thus I have delivered unto you a great number of Receipts for this one diſeaſe, many of which I have tried, and have found them very good, ſome I could never have meanes or occaſion to prove, and therefore I muſt expect prompt opportunities, in the interim I do remit them to my brethren to practiſe. But I will now conclude this Chapter, with one only Receipt more, which I do eſteeme my Maſter-peece for this Malady, having had much experience thereof, nor did it ever faile mee upon often tryall made. This cure is called, The black drinke for the *Glanders*. The Cure. Firſt prepare his *body* with braune prepared, and after with a Clyſter, and your Gooſe-feathers, as before hath bin taught you. This done,

The black drinke for the glanders Take new made Chamberly, and of the beſt and ſtrongeſt white-Wine-Vineger, of each halfe a pint, then take of Muſtardſeede, two or three ſpoonfuls, and make Muſtard thereof with Vineger, and let it be very well ground, that done, put your Vineger and Chamberly to the Muſtard, and ſo ſtirre them well together. Then take of Tarre and bay Salt, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate them well together, and convey ſo much thereof, as three Egges-ſhels will hold, the meate firſt taken forth, and having firſt prepared theſe things, let the *Horſe* be taken forth of the ſtable (being kept that night to a very ſpare dyet) and ride him firſt till he begin to ſweate, then give him the three Egges-ſhels filled with the ſaid Tarre and Salt, and ſo ſoone as hee hath taken that, give him with a horne the fore-named drinke made of Chamberly, Vineger, and Muſtard, all at the mouth, excepting only two ſmall or halfe hornefuls, which let be conveyed into his Noſthrils, which ſo ſoone as he hath taken, let him bee ridden againe, ſo much as before you did, then bring him into the Stable, cloath him up warme and litter him well, and ſo let him ſtand upon the Trench untill three or foure of the clocke, then unbit him and give him a warme Maſh, and order him in all things as is uſuall for *Horſes* in Phyſick. Give him this Medicine or drinke every

very other or third day, three or foure times, and it is an infallible cure. ✠. This cure I gat from a Noble Knight, who had done many great Cures therewith, who was very precise in teaching it, and since I came to know thereof, I have perfected many great Cures therwith, upon *horses* far spent with the *Glanders*, insomuch as if it be rightly and carefully administred, it will cure the rankest *Glanders* that is. And with this Cure I conclude this Chapter.

Chap. 11.

§. 1. *H.*

Hippophylus.

Well Hipposerus, *sithence we have finished this Chapter, let us goe to the next; and tell me, what meanes have you to helpe the falling away of the* hayre *from the* Mayne *and* Tayle *of a* Horse?

Hippos. Sir, this disease commeth sometimes by a heat which the *horse* hath taken, which hath engendred a dry *Mainge* in the *mayne* and *tayle*, which is the occasion of the shedding of the *hayre* from those parts, and sometimes it commeth by a surfet, causing evill *humours* to resort to those parts, which is the cause of the falling away of the *hayre* & I have also known a *Horse* to shed the *hayre*, both of *mayne* and *tayle* after hee hath beene violently and dangerously visited with the *Stavers*: The signes are evident. And the Cure is.

Hayre from the Mayne and Tayle falling away

First take *bloud* from the *necke veine* if it be onely in the *mayne*, but if in both *mayne* and *tayle*, and then after you have opened the *necke veyne*, and taken from thence a reasonable quantity of *bloud*, then slit the *skin* of the inward part of the *taile*, next to the *tuell* from the buttocks to the fourth *joynt*, and there with your Cornet you shall finde a hard griskle which the *French Marishals* do call *Barivole*, raise it up with your Cornet and take it forth: that done, fill up the clift with salt finely beaten, and then with a hot iron steep it in Buck-lye; burn the tayle in sundry places, and then annoynt the places so burned with Hogs grease, till it be whole. ✠ This cure I gat in *France* among the *Marishals* there, whom I saw cure sundry *Horses* of this malady, and I my selfe have cured four or five after the same method. If it be both in the *mayne* & *tayl*, and that you be feareful to experiment this cure by reason you never saw the manner of it, then

ſearch both *mayne* and *tayle* well with your finger as aforeſaid, and annoynt the places with this unguent. Take Quick-ſilver, and tryed Hogs greaſe (the Quick-ſilver being firſt mortified with faſting ſpittle) incorporate them very well together till the Hogs greaſe be of a perfect Aſh-colour, and annoynt the ſorance therewith every day once, holding a hot bar of iron neer, to cauſe the oyntment to ſinke in, and in three or four dayes thus dreſſing him, he will be well, + This is a very good receit, and I have often uſed it.

§ 2. *H.*

Hayre to grow.

Hippoph. *BVt then what is good to cauſe the* hayre *to grow againe?*
Hipoſp. Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the bloud of a Hog, the Allum being firſt made into fine powder: boyle all theſe together, and rub and annoynt the places therewith every day, and it will cauſe the *hayre* to come again apace. + This is ſpeciall good.

Hippoph. *What is good for the* Head-ach?

Hippoſ. Firſt let him *bloud* in the *mouth*, and rub it with Salt to cauſe it to bleed the more, then take two long feathers of a Gooſe wing well annoynted in oyle de Bay, thruſt them up and down his *noſtrils*, whereby to open and purge his *head*, and then perfume his *head* with the ſtalks of Garlick broken into ſmall pieces, as is before ſhewed, keeping him to a ſpare dyet, and moderate exerciſe, the better to cleanſe his *head* and *ſtomack*, and to empty himſelfe, by meanes whereof the *head* and *braine* will be the better quieted. It were very good alſo to perfume him with Frankincenſe, Storax, and Benjamin, groſly beaten and well mixed, of each like much as will ſuffice, but two or three dayes after, let him *bloud*, and give him white water for eight dayes after, during which time, you may do well to give him ſometimes a ſweet Maſh. + This is very good.

Head-ach.

§ 3. *H.*

Heeles ſcabbed.

Hippoph. *VVHat is good to helpe the* heels *that be* ſcabbed?
Hippoſ. You ſhall many times have ſmall dry Scabs upon your *Horſe heeles*, which will not be greatly noxious to him, & therupon the beſt cure for his Keeper daily to annoynt them throughly with the oyntment made of Elbow greaſe. But if there be any running *humour* iſſuing from the *heeles* of the *Horſe*, then let him ſtand every day morning and evening up to the *belly* in water, till the ſcabs do dontract, then make a convenient *Cautherize* neer to the *joynts* as well croſſe as thwart wiſe, then heale it up as you uſe to do kibed *heeles*. + This is very good.

§ 4. *H.*

§ 4. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is good for* heels *that be* kibed?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe the *French* do call *Iavarrs*, which is a kinde of Scratches, and the cure is to *Cautherize* the middle of the ſwelling along, both long and croſſe-wiſe; that done, take Oxe dung reeking hot, mixe it upon the fire with Sallet oyle, and apply it to the ſorance, once and no more, then do afterwards as is preſcribed you in a cure for a Splent, in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 18. § 17. *S.* This I never tryed. *Heeles kibed.*

§. 5. *H.*

Hippoph. *What cure have you for* heels *that are troubled with the* Mellet?

Hippoſ. This ſorance we call the *mellet*, is a dry ſcab that groweth upon the *heele*, ſometimes on the one, and ſometimes on the other heele; ſometimes it commeth of *corrupt bloud*, ſometimes of a blow given by the *toe* with the *hinder foot*, for the *mellet* growes commonly upon the *heele* of the *fore-foot)* and ſometimes for want of good rubbing and dreſſing after travell; it will alſo have a dry chop without any moyſture at all. The ſignes to know it, is eaſie, to wit, it will ſoon be felt with your hand. To cure it I have before ſhewed you in § *precedenti*. But yet I will give you one receit more for the ſame cure, whereof I have made often tryall, and it is very good. *Heele Mellet.*

Take of ordinary Honey halfe a pinte, black Sope a quarter of a pound, mixe theſe together, and put thereto four or five ſpoonfuls of Vineger, and as much Allum finely beaten as a Hens egge unburned, and of Rye-flowre two ſpoonfuls, mixe and incorporate all theſe well together, and having firſt clipped or ſhaven away the *hayre*, apply this medicine plaiſter-wiſe to the ſorance, juſt ſo farre as the ſorance goeth, and let it ſo remain five dayes, and then take it away, and waſh all the legge, foot, and ſorance with powdred beefe broth, & after rope up his *legs* with thumbands of ſoft Hay wet, and he wil be ſound. But then you muſt underſtand, that when at any time you do dreſſe the ſorance, you do not faile to take off the dry ſcab, or whatever cruſty thing ſhall be upon or about the place, and by waſhing and cleanſing the ſore that you do make it marvellous clean.

+ This is a very good receit.

§ 6. *H.*

§. 6. *H*,

Hippoph. VV *Hat is good to helpe a Horſe that is* Hide-bound?

Hippoſ. This malady is when the *skin* of the *horſe* doth cleave to the *fleſh*, as you cannot with your hand pull up the *skin* from the *ribs*; ſometimes it commeth through extreame poverty and maceration; and ſometimes through the indiſcretion of the Groome for want of good tending; ſometimes of a ſurfet taken by over-riding, and violent heats given him, and then waſhed, or negligently ſuffered to ſtand long in the cold, or in the raine; and ſometimes again it commeth of corrupt *cholericke bloud* ſiccicating the *fleſh*, which wanting its naturall courſe, cauſeth the *skin* to ſhrink and cling together, and to cleave to the *bones* and *fleſh*; it alſo maketh him ſick, and to have a gaunt *belly* ſhrunk up to his *flankes*, and his *hayre* will ſtare, and his *legges* will ſwell: and by theſe ſignes you may know the diſeaſe it is ſo conſpicuous. It cauſeth alſo ſiccity and aridity in the *liver* and *lungs*, cauſing great torment throughout all the whole *body*, and his *dung* will be very hard and dry, and of a naughty ſavour, for his body will be very coſtive, and if he have not help in reaſonable time, if death it ſelfe enſue not, yet will at the laſt other deſperate maladies attach him, whereof the leaſt will be the *mainge*, which will not eaſily or ſuddenly be cured. The cure is to let him *bloud* either on both *ſides* the *necke*, or on both the *ſpur veines*, then cloth and litter him warm, and do no more unto him that day, more then to give him good meat and white water, for cold water he muſt not drink till he be throughly well againe. The next day give him this drink.

Hide-bound.

Take of white wine one pinte, of Sallet oyle one pound, of Venice Turpentine one ounce, of Methridate, of loafe Sugar, and of Caſſia prepared, of each two ounces, of the milk of ſweet Almonds halfe a pinte, and of Verjuyce of the Crab one penny worth, mixe all theſe well together, and warming it upon the fire, give it to the ſick *horſe*, let him have this drink ſixe or ſeven mornings together, alwayes having a ſpeciall care to the ſtrength of the *Horſe*, as well in this, as in all other your cures. ✦ This is a cure I have uſed very often, and haue found it to be ſpeciall good. Another ſingular good receit. Firſt, annoynt his body all over with *Acopum* and *Sacke* warmed together, or elſe with this *Bath*.

Take faire water, Mallowes, Smalage, Roſemary, and Bay leaves; boyle all theſe in the water till they ſhall become ſoft, and ſo *bath* his whole *body* therewith warm, and when you have dryed him again, annoint him with this unguent.

Take of Hogs greaſe tryed one pound, Camomile, Mallowes Grunſell, Smallage, of each one handfull, chop the hearbs very ſmall, and boyle them with the Hogs greaſe a good while with a ſoft fire.

fire, then ſtrain it and wring forth the oyle that commeth of the hearbs, and with this Vnguent annoynt his *body* all over, for it will both ſupple and looſen his *skin*: the next day give him this drink.

Take of Muskadine and of ſtrong Ale, of each one pinte, Granſell, Rue, Smalage, Roſemary, and Betony, of each like much: all together amounting to a handfull. Then take Gum-Dragamant one ounce, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed: let all theſe boyle in the Muskadine and Ale, to the conſummation of one pint, then put to it of ſweet Butter, a penny worth, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and ſtraine it very hard, and ſo give it him bloud warm. Let this drink be divided into three parts, whereof give him one part the firſt morning, the other ſecond parts, the ſecond and third mornings following, for you muſt underſtand that when I ſaid that this drink muſt be boyled to the conſummation of one pinte; my meaning is, that it muſt boyle till one part be conſumed, and not otherwiſe; and in the interim you muſt keep your *Horſe* very warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and four dayes after he hath been thrice thus drenched, give him this other drink. Take Anniſeeds, Licoris, Fennel-ſeeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dryed, Fenugrick, Turmerick, of each like much, all made into very fine powder, and ſearſed; let two ſpoonfuls of this powder (being well mixed) be infuſed in good Ale one quart, with Sallet oyle two ſpoonfuls, give him this drink four mornings together, wherein you are to obſerve that the firſt time you are to adminiſter this drink to your *horſe*, you are to put into the Ale two ſpoonfuls of this powder, and the other three mornings, but one ſpoonfull: keep him warme, and order him as is behoovefull for a ſicke *Horſe* that is in *phyſicke*, and he is certainely cured. ✠ This is a ſpeciall good Receit.

Another.

Let him *bloud* in both the *flanke veines*, then take of good white Wine one quart, and put thereto of Sallet oyle, three ounces, of Comin one dram, Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, make all theſe into very fine powder, and ſearſe them, and give it him bloud warm, then ſet him up, and let him be throughly rubbed againſt the *hayre*, and along the *back* and *ribs*, and nape of the necke, halfe an houre together, then cover all his *backe* with a *Sacke* made throughly well ſoaked in a tub of water, and when it hath drained a while, lay it upon him, and upon that, two houſing clothes at the leaſt, and gird them cloſe unto him well wipſed, which will bring him into a ſweat, which truely will be the prime cauſe whereby to reſtore him to his priſtine ſanity, but let him not ſweat above one houre at moſt, and coole him by degrees, taking away the Sack firſt, and keep him to ſweet Maſhes or white water during the time of his *phyſicke*, and longer; let him be thus drenched, ſweated, and ordered, ſeven dayes together, and give him inſtead of his Oates, Barly boyled, and dry Beanes bruiſed in a *Mill*, and good old ſweet

Hay,

Hay, well ſhaken and duſted, and ſometimes green Mault from off the *floore*; and after eight dayes let him *bloud* in both the *breſt veines*, but take not above a pinte of *bloud* from him in all, and that day you *bloudy* him, give him of good Sacke one pinte, and put to it of Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, warm this upon the fire, and brew them well together, and ſo adminiſter it bloud warm, then leap his *backe*, and ride him till he ſweat, then ſet him up warm clothed and littered, and at *night* give him a ſweet Maſh, putting into it the powder of Brimſtone two ſpoonfuls, and he will be well again. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take Hogs greaſe two drams, and of the juyce of Dragon-wort one ounce, of Incenſe halfe a dram, of Sirrop of Roſes three ounces, diſſolve all theſe in Tiſon one pinte and a halfe, ſet it upon the fire till all be diſſolved, and ſo give it him bloud warme, and exerciſe him moderately upon it till he do begin to ſweat, then ſet him up warme, and let him faſt three houres after, and this will ſcowre from him all his infection, looſen his skin, and procure a good appetite to meat, provided you take *bloud* from him the day before, and (if as well in this receit as in all the former) you doe give your *Horſe* a *ſuppoſitory* the day before you drench him, you will much better and ſooner perfect your *cure*, eſpecially if you finde him *coſtive*, otherwiſe a gentle *Cliſter* will not be amiſſe. ✠ This is a well approved cure, and I have often uſed it.

§ 7. H.

Hippoph. *How doe you cure a* Horſe *that is* Hip-ſhot?

Hippoſ. Sir, this commeth ſundry wayes, that is to ſay, either by a ſtroke with another *Horſe*, or by a wrench, by which meanes the *bone* may be ſlipped out, and then it muſt be put in again, or by a ſtraine, which may cauſe him to halt, or by meanes of ſome thorne which he may get by leaping or running among buſhes, which muſt firſt be gotten out, otherwiſe the place will feſter, and he goe lame. The cure is, firſt let him *bloud* in the *thigh veine*, on that ſide whereon the griefe is, then charge him with the *charge* we call a *honey-charge*, preſcribed you in the next §. and ſo put upon the other *foot* a *Pattent-ſhooe*, and let him not lye down in ten dayes (if that the *bone* have been out) after bathe the place well with that *bath* which is already taught you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 5. *lit. B.* and the receit beginneth thus, (take Smalage, Oxe-eye, and Sheeps ſuet, &c.) and put into the *Bath* ſome of the ſaid *honey charge*, and if this doe not cure him (as it is moſt probible it will) then apply to the place this *Ceroene* (as the *French* doe terme it) which is a Searcloth very hot, and this *Ceroene* is thus made.

Take of blacke Pitch halfe a pound, of Maſticke two ounces, of Galbanum four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each halfe

halfe a pound: melt theſe in a pot together, and when it is halfe cold, charge the place up to the *hanch*, and ſo overthwart the *reynes* of the *backe*, and if he be not cured at the end of eight or tenne dayes more with this *Cereene*, or *Searcloth*, then take it off and apply to the place grieved this unguent.

Take of oyle de Bay, Althea, tryed Hogs greaſe, of each halfe a pound, incorporate all theſe together to an unguent, and therewith annoint, rub, and chafe the place grieved; and he ſhall doe well. ✠ This is a very good receit, and I have made great uſe thereof.

§. 8. *H.*

Hippoph. *HOw doe you make this* Honey-Charge Hippoſerus? *Hippoſ.* I will ſhew you Sir, Take of Wheat meale two pound, and put a little Wine to it, as much as will ſuffice, put it into a kettle, as if you were to make a Poulteſſe, & when it is wel mixed adde to it of Bolearmoniack in fine powder, halfe a pound, of common Engliſh Honey, one pound, then ſet it upon the fire, and boyle it, keeping it continually ſtirring, and put to it in the boyling, of blacke Pitch, halfe a pound, ſtill ſtirring it till it be boyled, ſo much as will ſuffice, & when it is almoſt enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, of oyle de Bay, Comin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay berries, Fenugrick, and of Linſeed-meale, of each two drams, boyle all theſe together againe, ſtill ſtirring them till they be well incorporate, and herewith charge the grieved *members* of the *horſe*. ✠ This is the very beſt charge that I doe know for ordinary griefes of this nature; but if you be to apply this to many *horſes*, then muſt you double your ingredients according to the number of your *horſes*. This *charge* is ſingular good for any ſlip or wrench in the ſholder, hip, or other member, for all ſorts of ſcratches, and for ſtifneſſe of *ſinewes*, or for *ſinewes* hurt or any way offended, as alſo for a *hip-ſhot* or *diſlocation*, or for a *horſe* that is over-wearied with travell, as alſo to draw away all bad *humours* to aſſwage ſwellings and tumours, and it will ſerve in the place of a *white plaiſter*. And this I have often tryed. *Honey-charge.*

§ 9. *H.*

Hippoph. *WEll now let us come to treat of the* hoofe; *what have you good to mollifie, the* hoofe, *and to cauſe it to grow?*

Hippoſ. I gave you a very good receit in *lib. 2. cap. 6. § 3. lit. C.* but now I will give you more which ſhall be very good. Take of Elder leaves, and of Wal-wort, of each like much; ſtampe and ſtraine them till you have gotten of the juyce one quart, or better, then take of Mutton or Deers ſuet clarified, three pound, Turpentine, Honey, *Hoofe to grow.*

and Sallet oyle, of each one pound: boyle theſe till all the juyce be conſumed into the other ingredients; then when it is cold, reſerve it, and when you have occaſion to uſe it, annoynt the *hoofe* therewith. ✠ This is very pretious. Another as good to cauſe the *hoofe* to grow. You muſt obſerve this rule, *viz.* you muſt at what time you would have him *ſhod*, cauſe his *hoofe* to be pared well and even, and to open the *heeles* and *frush* well, and ſo let him be *ſhod* up; which muſt be done when the *Moone* is three dayes in the increaſe after the *change*, by which meanes the *hoofe* will grow more in eight daies then (if he had been pared and ſhod in any other time of the *Moone*) in fifteen dayes, both faſter and better, then to ſupple the *hoofe*, and to cauſe it to grow the more, Take Goats greaſe, Turpentine, Sallet oyle, and new waxe, of each two ounces, melt them together, then whilſt they be hot, adde to it of ordinary Honey three ounces, of Sanguis-Draconis one dram, in fine powder: incorporate all theſe together, and bring them to an unguent, with which annoynt and rubbe the *hoofes* of the *horſe* daily, which may well be done by uſing to each the quantity of a haſle nut of this oyntment, which will cauſe the *hoofe* to grow more in fifteen dayes, then without it in three moneths, and if you adde to the former ingredients, of the juyce of the hearb called *Hepatica*, fixe ounces, and of the root called *Hoſmanderigalis* two ounces, it will be much better. For if you doe finde that the aforeſaid Unguent doe not make the *hoofe* to come away to your minde, then will this addition aſſuredly doe it. ✠ This is a very good receit. Another:

Take Salet oyle foure ounces, new Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Goats greaſe three ounces, melt all theſe together, and being all molten, take it from the fire, and put into it of Horſe-greaſe, Agrippa, and of Morciaton, of each one ounce, beat and incorporate all theſe together with the other ingredients, till it be through cold; with this oyntment, rub and annoynt the *coffins* of the *hoofes* eſpecially about the *cronet* at the *hayre*, every day once, and it will grow very much. ✠ This is ſingular good. Another very good.

Take of Hogges-greaſe three pound, of patch or peece-greaſe two pound, Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, and of Sallet-oyle one pound, melt, and mixe all theſe together, bringing it to an Oyntment, and herewith rub and annoynt the *Coffins* of the *Horſe*, eſpecially about the *Cronets*, neere to the hayre. ✠. But if your *Horſe* be prickt in ſhooing, or otherwiſe accidently hurt in or about the *Sole*, draw forth the *Nayle* firſt, or whatſoever was cauſe of his harme, then take a few of the longeſt hayres from his *Tayle*, and wrap them about the point of the ſaid *Nayle*, and caſt the ſaid *Nayle* (thus wrapped up in the *Hayre*) into the fire, and he will goe ſound, and upright againe: provided you doe not ſuffer any other *Nayle* to be driven in the place of the former. ✠. This many have ſuppoſed to be a *Charme*, but I for my part do not thinke it to be any ſuch matter,

matter, I have often uſed the ſame, and have ever more found it to make a perfect Cure.

Now as touching hurts and bruiſes in the *feete*, moſt certaine is it that a *Horſe* will many times have a *ſore foote*, which will runne with water and matter about the *Frush* and *Heele*, which many will ignorantly imagin to be a diſeaſe in the *Foote*, not knowing how it might come, when as it is nought elſe but a very bruiſe, gotten by treading upon a ſtone or ſtub, and I have cured many *Horſes* in this wiſe, *viz.* Take a wild or garden Colewort, and beat it with old Bores-greaſe to an Vuguent, and apply it unto the Sorance, then leape his *back*, and and ride him an eaſie Trot upon ſwarde-ground, to the end the Medicine may the better enter into the *ſore*, and thus dreſſing him once a day he will ſoone bee well. ✠. This is very good. But if your *Horſe* have a weeping *Hoofe*, or ſmall Cliftes, which diſeaſe the *French* do cal *la Corne que Eſcume*, the *Coffin* which frotheth or wheeſeth; Then the cure is; Firſt to open the place with your *Drawing-iron* or *Cornet*, I meane the outward part thereof only, till you come unto the *Maſter-Veine*, which you muſt breake with your *Cornet* and ſuffer it to bleed ſo long as it will, then fill up the wound with the powder of Salt, and hurds ſteeped in Vineger, and bind them ſo on that they fall not off, and thus by dreſſing it every day once, and in ſhort time it will be well. This cure I never tryed my ſelfe, but I have beene preſent ſundry times in *France*, where I have ſeene this cure fully perfected by *Mariſhalls* there. *Hoofe weeping.*

But if the *Hoofe* be *looſe*, then: take Bettony, Roſemary, Rue, red-Mints, Tanſie, Sotheron-wood, of each like much: bray all theſe hearbs with Tarre, ſo much as will ſuffice, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, ſo much as will ſuffice, and apply it to the *hoofe*, till you find that it be faſt againe. ✠. This alſo is very good. Another. Take Tarre, Brimſtone in fine powder, Wheate-branne, and the Vrine of a Man-child: boyle all theſe to a Pultis, and apply it hot to the *hoofe*, and this will faſten it. ✠. This is ſingular good. But if the Veine lie bare in the *ſole* of the *Foote* cauſing the *Horſe* to halt, then to make the *hoofe* to grow over it, whereby it becommeth ſound againe, make this Plaiſter, and apply it to the Sorance. *Hoofe looſe.*

Take Stone Pitch, and Roſin, of each two ounces, Brimſtone in fine powder one ounce; melt all theſe together till they be well incorporate, then when you take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine one ounce, and ſo ſtirre them all together, and as it cooleth, make it up into Rowles, and when you would uſe it, poure the ſame into the *orifice* by the helpe of a red hot iron, and ſo all about the Sorance, then clap Hurds upon it, and over that a peece of Leather, cut and ſhaped for the purpoſe, and ſo ſplent it to keepe it faſt on. Vſe thus to dreſſe him twice or thrice, and he will be cured. ✠. This is very good. But if the *foote* have taken any harme by an over reach, ſtub, prick, or gravell, then making the wound very cleane, and laying it bare. *Hoofe hurt.*

Take Sope, and Salt of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, make them to an Vnguent, then firſt waſh the Sore with Chamberly and Salt, or Beere and Salt, and dry it againe with a linnen ragge, then bind on the Medicine, and let it ſo remaine foure and twenty houres; and do thus if the wound be great three or foure daies together: then having with this Medicine exhauſted all the *Venome* (which it will ſoone do;) take of Traine-Oyle one ſpoonefull or two, and as much Ceruſe that is, white lead in fine powder, and ſo worke them to a thick ſalve; then apply that to the ſorance plaiſter-wiſe, till it be whole; which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up ſooner, or is more kindly, or Naturall for the breeding of a new *Hoofe* then this. Another moſt ſoveraigne for a *Hoofe-bound*.

Hoofe bound

First pluck off the Shooes, and ſhooe him up againe with *halfe Meone or lunet ſhooes*, then eaſe with your drawing Iron or Rape the quarters of the *Hoofes* on both ſides of the *Feete*, from the *Cronet*, downe to the end or bottome of the *hoofes*, ſo deep till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two Raſes it will be the better, and enlarge the *Hoofes* the more, that done, annoynt the *Hoofes* above next to the *Hayre*, about the *Cronet* with this oyntment.

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax, and of Sheepes or Deeres Suet, of each halfe a pound, of Tarre, and of Sallet-oyle, of each halfe a pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when it is almoſt ready to be taken off from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and ſo ſtirre it well together till it be cold. Let his *Hoofes* be annoynted herewith once a day till you doe perceive hee mendeth, and then let him be ridden upon ſoft, moyſt-ſwardy-ground, an houre or two every day once, for the ſpace of a *Month*, and if he do not go well at the *Months* end, (as I am confident he will) then take off the *lunet-ſhooes*, and pare his *Soles*, *Fruſhes*, and *Heeles*, ſo thin, till you may ſee a dew to come forth, & the *bloud* ready to ſtart, then tack on his whol *Shooes*, and *ſtoppe* all his *Feete* as well within as without, with this Charge.

Hoofe bound a Charge.

Take of Cow or Oxe-dung, and of Wheate-branne, of each, ſo much as will ſuffice, of tryed Hogges-greaſe, and of the kidney of a Loyne of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine, and Tarre, of each halfe a pound, melt all theſe together (the Turpentine excepted) which muſt be put in when it is almoſt ready to be taken from the fire, continually ſtirring it, to the end the ingredients may be the better mixed. Let this *Charge* be layed on good and hot, renewing it every day once by the ſpace of nine daies, to the end the *ſole* may ariſe: but if this will not do it, then take out the *ſoles* cleane, and after you have ſtanched the bleeding, with the tender tops of Iſope well ſtamped in a ſtone Morter, then apply the medicine of *Snayles*, Bay-Salt, and red Nettles ſhewed you in *lib. 2. chap. 9. §. 18. F.* renewing it once a day for three daies, and after you may heale up the *feet*, and

and bring a new and perfect *sole* with your greene Ointment so often recommended unto you, in many other of my *Cures*; and thus you shall rectifie the *hoofes*, and make him sound, but then hee must be shod with *lavels* againe, and turned forth to grasse. ✠. But if he hath stood in the Stable with little exercise, whereby he may bee in danger of a *dry foundring*.

Hoof brittle

Take of Turpentine, of Sheeps suet, and of Waxe, of each one pound, of Sallet-Oyle one pint, of Tarre halfe a pint; melt all these upon a soft fire, and stirre them in the melting untill they be all well incorporate, but put in your Turpentine last, which being well molten put it up in a cleane Vessell, and keepe it for your use, and herewith annoynt the *hoofes* of your *Horse* dayly, they having beene first washed very cleane, and wiped dry, and this will conserve his *hooves* supple and moyst, keepe them coole, and make them very tough and sound. ✠. This I have often used. But if the *hooves* be somewhat straight, and yet the *Horse* not *hoofe-bound*, then administer this Medicine to his *feete*.

Hoofe straight.

Take the fat of Bacon, the sward cut away halfe a pound, of white Sope three ounces, Balme one handfull, and five or sixe sprigges of the tender tops of Rue, chop, and stampe all these together very well in a Morter, and then fry them, and lay them to the *hooves* reasonable hot, and keepe him from comming in any wet till he be well, and being thus dressed every day once, his *hooves* will in short time bee sound, well, and easy to him againe. ✠. This Receipt is very good. But let us discourse of a *loose hoofe* yet a little more. Take of Tarre three spoonefuls, of Rosin three ounces, of Tansy, Rue, Mints, and Sotheren-wood of each one handfull, pound all these very well, adding to it of sweet Butter halfe a pound, of Virgin Waxe halfe an ounce, and so try them all together till it come to bee a thicke salve, and apply it Plaister-wise warme to the *hooves*, seven or eight daies together, and this will cure him, and fasten the *hooves* againe. ✠. This is very good. But if his *hoofe* be otherwise hurt, eyther by some other *Horse* treading upon his *Hoofe*, or by any other accident; then

Hoofe loose.

Hoofe troden upon or hurt.

Take an Egge, and Soot so much as will suffice, to be beaten with the said Egge till it be stiffe like a salve; then adde to it of Sallet-oyle and Harts-horne made into powder, of each two or three spoonfuls, boyle this to a thick salve, continually stirring it in the boyling, and apply it to the *hooves* Plaister-wise, dayly dressing them till they bee whole. This I never made tryall off, howbeit it was commended to me to be a speciall good Receipt. Another very good to make a brittle or pomized *hoofe* tough.

Hoofe brittle to make tough.

Take fresh Butter one pound, Wax and Turpentine of each halfe a pound, melt first the Waxe, then put to it your Butter, and when that is molten put in your Turpentine, and so stirring them well together, reserve it to your use, and when you do use it, apply it thus: Make

Make a Buskin of leather, ſo as it may be buckled or tyed above or upon the *paſterne joynt*, and then lay on ſo much of the medicine as will cover the *hoofe* all over very thicke, and then put on the Buskin and faſten it to his *legge* or *paſterne*, and let him ſtand ſo night and day till you have occaſion to ride or exereiſe him, dreſſing him thus once a day, and the longer you uſe this medicine, the better will be his *hoofe*. + I have often made tryall of this receit, and I have found it to be very good. But if your *horſe* hath his *hoofe* broken, and that you have a deſire it ſhould grow, then

Hoofe to grow.

Take Garlicke pilled ſeven ounces, Rue three handfuls, Allum powdred and ſearſed ſeven ounces, old Bores greaſe two pound, beat all theſe together with Aſſes dung one handfull, and then boyle it, and ſo reſerve it, and annoynt his *hoofes* therwith, and they will grow very faſt. + This is very good. If he be hurt by being caſt in his *halter*, then

Halter caſt.

Take of Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, melt them together in a pot: take then of Verdigrece and Hogs greaſe, of each one ounce, and incorporate them well together raw, *viz.* without boyling, the Verdigrece being firſt made into very fine powder, and put into another pot by it ſelfe: then when you have occaſion to uſe it whereby to dreſſe a ſore: take firſt of that you made of Turpentine and Waxe two parts, and then of that other which was not boyled made of Verdigrece and Hogs greaſe a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt the ſorance therewith; thus doting every day once or twice, it will be whole, remembring to clip away the *hayre* firſt from about the place. And this is a moſt excellent receit. ✠ I have often proved it.

§. 10. *H.*

Hippoph. *WHat may a man beſt apply to the* Hough *of a* Horſe *that is ſwelled, as if hee were in danger to breed a* Bloud *or* Bogg-Spaven?

Hippoſ. This commeth ſometimes to yong *horſes* when they be too hard ridden and journeyed in their youth, which is the cauſe they ſwell in that place, by reaſon the *bloud* falling downe there ſetleth, which if it be not ſpeedily removed, will aſſuredly beget a *wet Spaven*. The cure is, annoynt the place ſwolne foure or five dayes together with naturall Balſome, and after repreſſe the *humours* with this charge, having firſt given fire to the place lightly.

Hough ſwelled.

Take oyle of Roſes two ounces, Bolearmoniack in powder one ounce, Wheat flower halfe an ounce, and the white of an Egge, beat and incorporate all theſe together, and after you have ended to annoynt the place ſwelled with Balſome: charge every day for foure or five dayes after, the place herewith, and he will be well. + This is very good.

§ 11.

§. 11. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is good to dry up* humours?

Hippoſ. This kinde of drying up of *humours*, is but onely to reſtraine them for working too much upon wounds, whereby the better to cure them. The way therefore is this;

First bath the ſorance well with hot molten freſh Butter, and then ſtrew upon it the powder of Roſin for a day or two; then take of the thickeſt Creame, and of Soot, of each as much as will ſuffice, and worke them to a thick paſte, and ſo apply it to the ſorance plaiſterwiſe, and it will both dry up the *humour* which poſſeſſeth it, and heale up, and *skin* the ſore in a ſhort ſpace. † This I have often uſed, and it is right good. *Humours to dry up.*

§ 12. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is beſt to cure the hurt in the* Shoulder, *or other* member?

Hippoſ. There are many things good for a malady of this nature, and when I come to treat of Spraines, Sores, and Wounds, I ſhall deliver them unto you, and therefore I will now refer them to its proper place, onely I will give you one for the preſent.

Take oyle de Bay, Dialthea, freſh Butter, oyle of Turpentine, of each two ounces, boyle and mixe them well together, and when they be well incorporate, annoynt the place grieved therewith ſo hot as the *Horſe* can well ſuffer it without ſcalding, and let him be thus annoynted twice or thrice a day, and give the *Horſe* moderate exerciſe by walking him a foot pace gently up and down. And this is a certaine and an approved remedy. This I never tryed, but a great *Ferrier* who is cryed up for famous, taught it me, and wiſhed me to make uſe thereof. *Hurt ſhoulder.*

§ 13. *H.*

Hippoph. *What doe you hold good wherewith to cure old Hurts?*

Hippoſ. The onely beſt way to cure and dry up old hurts and ſores, is this; Take old ſhooes and burn them to coles, and then beat them to fine powder, then adde to it unſlaked Lime and ordinary Honey, as much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a ſtiffe paſte, which done, knead them all together unto a paſte, and ſo make it into a Cake, and then lay it upon a fire pan, and ſo let it be well baked; which done, make it into fine powder, and every day once, put of this powder into the wound, and it will heale it up, nothing ſooner. † This I have often uſed, and it is very good, and herewith we do conclude this Chapter. *Hurts old to cure.*

Chap.

Chap. XII.

§ 1. I.

Hippoph.

What is good to helpe any imperfection in the feet?

Hippoſ. First pare the *feet* very thin, open the *heeles* and make the *ſhooes* wide, large, and hollow: if the imperfection come by *foundring*, then

Imperfection in the feet.

Take a good quantity of Oxe or Cow dung, Tarre, and Hogs greaſe, of each halfe as much, and of Soot the like quantity, as of either Tarre or Hogs greaſe: boyle all theſe very well together, and herewith ſtop the *horſe feet* very hot, and continue thus to do daily, and it will not onely take away any anguiſh, but alſo ſtrengthen the *hoofes*, and make them ſo perfect as that they will be able to endure labour; but when you trauell your *horſe* (for exerciſe is very good for him) let him be ſtopped herewith hot; but if cold, adde then thereto the whites of Egges as much as will ſuffice, for that will coole his *feet* very well, and it will comfort the *Fruſh* very much, but if the *hoofe* be naturally brittle, and by foundring become dry and ſtreightned, then to enlarge the ſame, and to make it the more tough, and to grow the better alſo. Take of Hogs greaſe, Turpentine, and Maſticke, of each, like much, and halfe ſo much Lard as of either of them: melt all theſe but the Turpentine on the fire, and when it is well diſſolved, take it off, and then put in your Turpentine, ſtirring it well till it be throughly incorporate; then keep it in a ſtone pot by it ſelfe; and when it is through cold, be ſure to ſtop the pot very cloſe, and ſo reſerve it for your uſe. With this Salve annoynt the *coffines* (but eſpecially the *Cronets*) every day twice at the leaſt, and it will cauſe the *hoofe* to grow very much, and become tough and ſound. ✣ This I have often uſed, and it is very good.

§ 2. I.

Hippoph. What *is good to ripen an* Impoſtumation?

Hippoſ. To ripen any ſwelling which doth impoſtumate, you ſhall know by the heat, for if you lay you hand theron, it will be hot and burne; wherefore to prepare and make it ready to be opened;

Impoſtumation to ripen.

Take Mallow roots, and white Lilly roots, of each like much, bruiſe them, and put to them Hogs greaſe and Linſeed meale, of each

ſo

so much as will suffice, and boyle them till they be soft, and so plaister-wise apply it to the griefe. ✣

§ 3. I.

Hippoph. WHat is good for any inward sickneſſe in a Horſe?

Hippoſ. I have shewed you that sufficiently before in *lib. 2. cap. 3. § 6. A.* where I give you three excellent receits together; nevertheleſſe if you doe finde that your *horſe* doe not thrive, but droop and impaire, I will here give you one receit more which I doe know to be moſt ſingular, and will doe him much good, and whereof I have had very long and great good experience. First therfore if you do ſee cauſe, take *bloud* from him, but not otherwiſe, and if he be ſubject to coſtiveneſſe, then adminiſter unto him either a *Cliſter* or a *Suppoſitory*, and the day following give him this drinke.

Inward ſickneſſe.

Take Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Bay berries, Gentiam, Anniſeeds, Ginger, and of Triſora-Magna, of each one ounce: beat all the ſimples to very fine powder, and mixe them well together; then take of white Wine one quart, or of Sacke the like proportion, which is better, then put of this powder, and of your Triſora-Magna one ſpoonfull, into the Wine. Salet oyle halfe a pinte, and of Mithridate two drams, warm theſe upon the fire, and ſo adminiſter it bloud warme, and let him be exerciſed as well before as after his drinke, but not ſo farre as to ſweat by any meanes, neither let him drinke any cold water in foure or five dayes after, but either warm Maſhes, or elſe white water. ✣ This is moſt ſoveraigne for any inward ſickneſſe, droopings, forſaking of meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like.

§ 3. I.

Hippoph. YOu ſpeake here of adminiſtring a Suppoſitory, but what Suppoſitory were beſt to be given in a caſe of this nature?

Hippoſ. I will ſhew you Sir: if your *Horſe* be ſo ſicke whereby you feare to give him any ſtrong medicine, and that he be coſtive withall, then give him this *Suppoſitory* following.

Inward ſickneſſe a Suppoſitory.

Take of Honey ſixe ounces, of Sal-niter, one ounce and a halfe, of Wheat flower and of Anniſeeds in fine powder, of each, one ounce, boyle all theſe to a hard thickneſſe, and then make it into *Suppoſitories*; and firſt annoynt your hand with Sallet oyle or ſweet Butter, and the *Suppoſitory* alſo which he is to take, and ſo convey it into his *fundament* a pretty way, and after tye his *tayle* betwixt his *legges*, as I have elſewhere ſhewed you: or elſe hold it cloſe to his *body* with your *hand*, by the ſpace of a quarter of an houre at the leaſt, till it be throughly diſſolved, and this will cauſe him to purge kindly, and it will very much coole and looſen his *guts*: then you may be the more

bold to administer what Drinkes, Cordials, or other things which you may thinke most requisite for his recovery. ✣

§. 4. *I.*

Hippoph. VV *Hat is good to ripen inflamations, Pustils; and Kernels, which doe grow under the* chaule *of the* Horse?

Inflamations.

Hippoc. This commeth to a *horse* that hath either Cold or Glanders, which must be dissolved, otherwise the *Horse* can never be cured: wherefore take Wheat-Bran two handfuls, and so much Wine, Ale, or Beere, as one quart, with which to thicken it, put to it of Hogs grease halfe a pound, boyle these together till the liquor be quite consumed, and so apply it to the place so hot as the *horse* may well suffer it, renewing it every day once, till it do of it selfe breake, or be so soft to be opened, then let forth the corruption, and taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this Salve. Take of Turpentine and of Hogs grease of each like much, and of Rosin and Waxe a much greater quantity; melt all these together, and with the said taynt dipped in this medicine, put it into the wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole. ✣ This is an approved receit. But if it be an inflamation impostumating in any other part of the *body*, take then the grounds of a Beere-Barrell, foure quarts, of Smalage, Penny-royall, Winter-Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of the Missell-tow, of each two handfuls, chop all these very small, and put them to the said grounds, and put to it of Sheeps or Deere Suet tryed, one pound, and three or foure handfuls of Rye or Wheat Bran, so much indeed as will serve to boyle this to a *Poulteisse*, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, apply it to the place, and if the swelling be very much impostumated, it will breake it, or at the least so soften it, that it may be opened; if it be hard at what time you put your *Poulteisse* thereunto, it will send it backe again without more to doe. ✣ This I have very much experimented, and have found it to be right good. But if he be troubled with the *Strangles*, and that he is very much inflamed under the *chaule*, then cure them thus: take Basilicon, old Bores grease, and Dialthea, of each foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, one ounce, incorporate all these well together, and first clipping away the hayre from under the *chaule*, annoynt the swelling and inflamed place therewith very well; this done, binde upon it a piece of Sheeps skin, with the Wooll next to the inflamation, that the warmth thereof may the better helpe to ripen the *Pustils*, which being ripened, open them, and let forth the corruption, that done, taynt it first for three or foure dayes with Basilicon onely, but after heale up the sorance with your blacke Ægyptiacum, taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 4. § 4. *A.* and during the time of this cure, let him eate good sweet Hay, and Bran, in stead of Oates, and let his drinke be onely

only white Water. ✠. This is a most excellent Receipt.

§. 5. I.

Hippoph. VVHat is good for a Ioynt that hath in it any Ach, Numnesse, Weakenesse, or Swellings which commeth of a cold cause.

Hippos. This commeth sometimes of a Streyne and sometimes of a Cold, taken after a great and violent riding or labour. The signes are apparent, and the Cure is;

Take Acopum, and mixing it with sweete Sack, all to rub and chafe the *Ioynt* greived therewith. And if it come of cold, it will at foure or five times thus doing, cure it. ✠. This is singular good. Another. *Joint greeved.*

Take Aqua-vitæ, and warme it upon the fire, and therewith bathe and rub the greived *Member* therewith very well, and hold a hot bar of iron before it, to cause it to sinke in the better; take then a rag, and wet it in the same Aqua-vitæ, and lastly, take Pepper finely powdred and searced, and strew it good and thick upon the said wet rag, and so bind it to the place greived; take then a dry Rowler of linnen, and swathe the place therewith, and so let them remaine, and thus do every day once, and in short time it will recover him. ✠. Of this I have made often tryall.

§. 6. I.

Hippoph. VVHat is good to encrease the Hoofe of a Horse?

Hippos. I have given you sundry good Receipts before, but I will adde one more, which the most *Famous Marishall* of all *Paris* gave me, which he recommended unto me for *tres-bonne*, but I never had yet a good occasion to make tryall thereof. The receipt is this.

Take of the Oyle of Hempe-seed, of Waxe, of Venice Turpentine, Rosin, Pitch, Bay-seeds dryed and powdred of each halfe a pound, Roch Allume two ounces, mixe all these together, and let them boyl softly upon a gentle fire, then straine it through a hay re-cloath, and keepe it for your use. With this annoynt every day the *hoofes* of your *Horse*, and this will cause them to grow very much. This is probably a good Receipt. *Increase the Hoofe.*

Chap. 12.

§. 1. *L.*

Hippophylus.

How doe you cure the Lampas Hippoſerus?

Hippoſ. This is a Malady that every common Smith can eaſily cure, by putting into the *Mouth* of the *Horſe* a good big Bat of wood, where unto two long peeces of the *Head-ſtall* of an old bridle is nayled at either end, which will cauſe him to keepe open his *Mouth*, and then holding up his *Lip* with your left hand, burne away the ranke *fleſh*, with a hot Iron made of purpoſe, and after rubbing the place with Salt, and giving him Bran for Oats three or foure daies at the moſt, he will bee whole. ✠ This diſeaſe is a Swelling proceeding from rankneſſe of *blood*, which groweth in the *Mouth* adioyning to the *fore teeth*, which ſaid Swelling is an impediment to his feeding; it is apparant enough to be ſeene, and therefore needs no further remonſtrance. ✠ Nevertheleſſe I will ſhew you how the *Mariſhals* in *France* do uſe to cure the *Lampas*, from whom I had the Cure, and wherewith I my ſelfe have cured many *horſes*.

Lampas. Take a roſted Onion, and very hot put it upon a clout, or upon hulds, and with it rub the *Lampas* very hard, and do this two or three times a day till it be whole. ✠ But many times they burne away the *Lampas*, like as do our *Smithes* with an iron inſtrument, which they do call a *Biſtory*; which is the very ſame that our *Smithes* uſe here in *England*.

§. 2. *L.*

Hippophylus. *How do you ſtop a* Laxe *or* Looſeneſſe, *when it commeth to be violent?*

Hippoſ. Very eaſily Sir, but I had thought I had handled that point ſufficiently before, in *letter F.* where you made your demand touching the *Flux* in a *Horſe*, notwithſtanding I will give you other very good Receipts by me almoſt forgotten. To illuſtrate the manner of it's comming, and the ſignes how to know the ſame, I hold unfitting for this place, by reaſon I have ſufficiently already performed it. Take of Allome one penny-worth powdred, Bole-Armoniack poudred, one ounce, put theſe into Milke one quart, continually ſtirring it till the Milke doth become all of a Curd, give him this

Laxe to ſtop

with

with a horne, and it will ſtay his *Laxe* bee it never ſo violent. ✠. This I have uſed. Another.

Take Beane flower, and Bole-Armoniack in fine powder, of each foure ounces, put them into red Wine one quart, and give him this with a horne bloud warme. Let his drinke be white water, only inſteed of Wheate-bran, put in Bean-flower, and that for three or foure daies after; then let him *bloud* in the *Temple veines*, and give him warme Maſhs, made of ground Malt and Beane-flower, and having drunke up the Wort, let him eate up the reſidue, but if this doe not ſtay him within two daies, then put in each *Noſthrill*, Sallet-oyle, and that will do it. ✠. This is ſpeciall good.

§. 3. *L.*

Hippoph. VVHat meanes have you to raiſe a leane Horſe, *and to cauſe him in ſhort time to become very fat?*

Hippoſ. I have ſhewd you this before, but yet I will give you Reiept which you yet have not.

Take Elecampane dryed, Comin, Turmerick, Anniſeeds, of each two ounces, Gruntell halfe a handfull boyle all theſe very well with three heads of Garlick picked, a little bruiſed in ſtrong Ale foure quarts, then ſtraine it well, and give unto your *Horſe* of this drinke one quart, in a morning faſting bloud warme, and then ride him upon it till he do begin to be warme, but not to ſweate, and thus do for foure mornings together, and within ſome ſhort time after, turne him to graſſe if the time of the yeare be ſeaſonable, and he will feed wonderfully and fatten ſodainely: but if the time of the yeare doe not ſerve for graſſe, then ſhall you keep him in the Stable, and beſides his former drinke, you ſhall give him in his Oates, this powder, *viz.* Take the powder of Elecampane dry, and of Comin, both pulverized and ſearced of each like much: mix them wel together, and every time you give your *Horſe* this Provender, take of this powder half an ounce, and ſtrew it by little and little among his Provender for feare of offending him, till he hath eaten up all cleane, and doe thus but foureteene daies together, and you ſhall perceive your *Horſe* to thrive, mend, and proſper after a ſtrange manner: provided that you do give him ſeaſonable ayring, moderate exerciſe, and Maſhes or white water. ✠. This is marvelous good.

Leane, horſe to make fat.

§. 4. *L.*

Hippoph. VVHat is to bee done to a Horſe *whoſe Legges doe ſwell?*

Hippoſ. If this Swelling be only in his fore Legges and not behind, then it is a ſigne that this his Swelling came by over-violent labour, when the *Horſe* was very fat, (eſpecially inwardly) by reaſon that the

the greaſe that was molten fell downe into his *fore-Legges*, which if it had ſtaid in his *Body*, muſt of neceſſity have engendred either an *Anticor*, *Feaver*, or a *Surfet* to the great perill of his life; The ſignes are knowne by the ſwelling, and therefore to annoynt them with *Acopum* were very good. But the beſt cure is, firſt to take up the *thigh-veines*, then with your *Fleame* to prick the places moſt ſwelled, and hotteſt, in ſundry places, eſpecially be low, to the end that the corrupt *bloud* may iſſue forth; then

Legs ſwelled

Take of white Wine-lees one pint, of Comin bruiſed one ounce, boyle them together to a pultis with Wheate flower, three handfuls; then with a cloth apply it to the place good and warme, renewing it every day once, & if in two or three daies it doth draw it to a head (as it is very probable it will do) then lanch it and heale it up either with Shooe-makers waxe, laid on upon a Playſter of leather, or alſo with a ſalve made of the yolke of an Egge, Whete flower, and common honey well wrought together to a ſalve, which you muſt alſo apply Plaiſter-wiſe ✠. But if it do not come to a head, and yet the ſwelling continue; then

Take of Pitch, and of Virgin-wax, of each three ounces, Roſin half a pound, of the iuyce of Iſop, and of Galbanum, of each half an ounce and of Mirrah-ſecondary half a pound, of Bdellium- Arabicum, Populeon, and of the drops of Storax, of each halfe an ounce, and of Deeres-ſuet halfe a pound; boyle all theſe together in an earthen Pot, and when it is cold; take of Bitumen halfe a pound, Bole-Armoniack, and of Coſtus, of each one ounce and halfe: make all theſe into fine powder, and then incorporate them well with the other, and ſo boyle them all over againe very well; that done, poure this whole mixture or Medicine into cold water, and ſo make it up into rowles like a ſalve for Playſters: and when you are to uſe it, ſpread thereof upon Playſters of Leather, which muſt bee ſo large as to cover the *Legges* full ſo far as the ſwellings are, which (if any thing can do it) this will aſſwage the ſwelling, and give very much ſtrength and comfort the *Sinewes* and *Nerves*: neyther is this Playſter to be removed ſo long as it will remaine on. ✠. This I have applyed to many *Horſes* very much annoyed with *ſwolne-Legges*, and brought them to their former ſmallneſſe, when as *Ferriers* have ſpent much time upon the Cure, and given it over at laſt. But if the Swelling do fall into the *hinder-Legs*, or into all *foure-Legs* together (being but a bad Sorance) cauſing them to burne and ſwell exceedingly, and the *hayre* to ſtare, the cauſe whereof coming, (as I have before ſaid) from immoderate Riding, heat, and labour, whereby the greaſe melting falleth downe into the *Legges*, by reaſon the *Horſe* cannot voyd it in his Excrements, or elſe being over-hot, he is waſhed or negligently, ſet up without ſufficient ſtore of litter and rubbing, ſo as the taking cold, the *bloud* with the greaſe ſetleth in the *Legges*, and there congealeth, and ſo cauſeth them to ſwell. This ſorance alſo commeth by having his

his feet beaten (especially in the Summer) with being ridden and galloped upon hard ground, which first occasioneth wind-gals, and those also causeth the *legs* to swell, which truely is the worst kinde of swelling of all other, by reason that *lameneſſe* doth immediately follow it, unleſſe great Art and diligence be speedily applyed for prevention thereof. Wherefore the signes being so apparant, needs no remonstrance, and therefore I will passe on to the Cure, which is thus.

Legs swellea.

Take Populeum, Nervell, Hogs greaſe, of each one ounce, incorporate them very well together cold, and annoynt the sorance therwith morning and evening foure dayes together, and at foure dayes end, take of Claret Wine lees one quart, boyle it upon the fire with so much Bran as will bring it to a *Poulteſſe*, apply this to the place grieved plaister-wise with a cloth good and hot for foure or five daies more, renewing it every day once, and in short time he will be sound again. ✠ This is a most excellent receit which I have often experimented. Another. The swelling of the *legges* may be easily cured, if in the beginning, they be often times in the day laved and bathed in cold water, unleſſe the malady come of too great a surfet, wherefore if this of cold water will not doe it, then

Take of common honey one pound, Turpentine, common Gum, meale of Linseed, meale of Fenugrick, of each foure ounces, Bay berries made into very fine powder, and seraced, three ounces, mixe and boyle all theſe together well, and when you take it from the fire, put unto it of white Wine one pinte, and then boyle it over againe till it doe become thicke, spreade this upon a cloath reasonable hot, and wrap it about the members swelled, and doe not renew it above once in a weeke, and it will cure them. ✠ This is a certaine and most approved Cure. Another. If you take up the *veines*, and make them to *bleed* below and not above, and then rope up the *legges* with thumbands of soft Hay wet in cold water, and then cast more water upon them, in short time he will be sound and well againe. ✠ This is also very good.

§ 5. L.

Hippoph. WHat is good to cure the Leproſie?

Hippoſ. This is a moyst *mainge*, very infectious, which commeth by meanes of great surfets, taken by over-riding, which is very easie to be seen and known, and therefore needs no further description. The cure therefore is: first, let him *bleed* well in the *necke*, then scrape away the scurfe with an old Curry-combe, Oyster-shell, Hayre-cloth, or some such like thing, till the sorance doe looke raw, and that it be ready to *bleed*, then annoynt the raw places with this oyntment.

Leproſie or elephantick malady.

Take Arsnick, or Realgar, and tryed Hogs greaſe, (the Arsnick or

or Reſalgar being firſt beaten unto very fine powder) incorporate theſe well together to make them into a perfect oyntment; then tye up the *head* of your *Horſe* ſo high to the Rack, as that he may not be able to bite, rub, or lick himſelfe, and ſo annoynt the places therewith, and cauſe the oyntment to ſinke the better in by himſelfe, and ſo annoynt the places therewith, and cauſe the oyntment to ſinke the better in by holding a hot bar of iron neere to the place as you annoint him, and let him ſtand ſo tyed three houres, and then waſh away the Vnguent with the ſtrongeſt Chamber-lye you can get, and waſh him ſo throughly, that you may be aſſured you leave none of the oyntment upon the *Horſe*, and then untye him, and give him meat: and thus dreſſe him once every day till the ſores be quite dryed up. ✠ This is alſo good for Scratches, and Kibed-heeles.

§. 6. *L.*

Hippoph. *What is good to kill* Lice *in a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Lice commonly commeth to a *horſe* when he is very poore, eſpecially when he runneth abroad in the Winter time in ſome Wood, Coppice, or places where are many high trees, for that the dropping of the trees falling upon the *Horſe*, together with his poverty, doth cauſe them to engender, and albeit they may be at firſt but a few, yet will they in ſhort time multiply abundantly: ſometimes alſo a *Horſe* will catch them by ſtanding neer to another *horſe* that be *lowſie*, and ſo long as he be viſited with them, he can never proſper, but remaine very meager and leane. You may eaſily know when he is annoyed with this kinde of *vermine*, for that he will often ſcrub and rub himſelfe againſt Wals, Poſts, and Doores, with his *mouth* and *hinder feet*. The way to deſtroy them is,

Lice. Take Staves-Acre, and boyle it in running water, and waſh him all over with that water warme, and it will kill them. ✠ Another, Take Quick-ſilver two ounces, and firſt kill it with faſting Spittle, and when it is throughly mortified, take Hogs greaſe tryed, and ſo work them together till it become of an Aſh-colour, and annoynt him therewith, and it will in twice or thrice dreſſing, kill them all. ✠ Another:

Take Tobacco as much as will ſuffice, and ſhred it very ſmall, and put it into ſmall Beere, and put to it of Allum powdred, as much as will ſuffice, and when the Allum is diſſolved, waſh him therewith, and it will kill them. ✠ All theſe I have often tryed, and have found them to be very good.

§ 7. *L.*

§. 7. L.

Hippoph. *How doe you make your powder of* Lime and Honey, *with which you doe heale and dry up Sores?*

Hippof. Take of Engliſh Honey, and of quick-lime newly taken from the Kill, unſlaked, of each like much as will ſuffice, beat your Lime into fine powder, and with your Honey and your Lime knead it to a paſte, and when it is throughly wrought, make it into a thin Cake, then lay it upon a cleane fire-pan, and ſet it upon the fire, and ſo let it bake, and as it is baking, take the ſoles of two old ſhooes and caſt them into the fire, and let them burn untill they have done flaming, and that they do come to be fire coale; then take them forth, and when the Cake is baked ſufficiently and cold, beat the Cake together with the burnt ſhooes ſoles to very fine powder, and ſo keep this powder in a bladder or dry boxe for your uſe. ℞ This will heale and dry up any wound or old ſore, and I have often and long uſed this powder. *Lime and Honey.*

§ 8. L.

Hippoph. *What diſeaſe is that we call the* Low-worme?

Hippof. This is that diſeaſe which I cannot diſtinguiſh from Saint *Anthonies fire*, or the *Shingles*, for that it hath the ſelfe ſame *ſymptomes*, and this I have cured. This is a *Worme* that breedeth in the *back*, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*, and runneth along the *breaſt* to the *braine*, and when it commeth to touch the *pannicle* of the *braine*, it maketh the *Horſe* ſtarke mad. You ſhall firſt diſcover it by theſe ſignes, *viz.* preſently after a long and tedious journey, the *Horſe* will be ſick and forſake his meat, and ſtand out of length with his *feet*, bending down his *backe*, and he will often make offer to piſſe, but cannot, and if he doe, yet will it be but very little at a time, and that in the *ſheath*, and in time he will fall mad, gnaw the Wals, Rack-ſtaves, and Manger, and bite and ſtrike at every man that commeth within his reach or danger: and theſe be the moſt pregnant and apparant ſignes: and this diſeaſe doth deceive many a good *Ferrier*. For albeit that this infirmity may be many times among *horſes*, yet *Ferriers* being ignorant thereof by miſtaking it meerely for the *Staverſ*, and applying remedies onely for that cure, doe thereby loſe many a good *horſe* through their miſpriſion. But now to come unto the Cure it ſelfe, I will give you two receits; the former of which I learned of a *Farmer* in *Suffolke*, who was cryed up for a very expert man in this *faculty*, (as indeed he was) and hath perfected in my preſence many a great cure. Then thus,

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, ſixe heads of Garlicke cleane pilled, of Rue and Turmentile that beareth the yellow flower, *Loe-worme.*

of each one pound, ſtamp all theſe in a ſtone morter, and put to it ſo much white Wine, as that when it is ſtrained, there may be of the juyce and Wine two quarts, when you have of this liquor in a readineſſe, let your *horſe* bloud under the *tayle* a good quantity, then ſtanch him, and dividing this pottle of liquor into ſixe parts, give it him ſixe mornings together, that is to ſay, every morning one part or portion, till he hath taken it all, and by that time he will be perfectly cured. ✠

The ſecond receit was taught me in *France* by a famous *Mariſhall* of *Burbon*, who hath cured very many *horſes* of the ſelfe ſame malady, but in a quite contrary way. For whereas the firſt Cure was wrought by medicine, this ſecond is perfected by giving of fire. Take an iron with a Button at one end, and make it red hot, then burn him therwith upon the top of his *forehead*, and a little under his *foretop*, and another in the *fore-top*, and foure other in the *necke*, cleane through upon the *creſt*, whereof two of the holes muſt be upon the one ſide of the *creſt*, and two on the other ſide, and to take away and kill the fire, put into every hole Vnguentum Roſarum, and then let him *bloud* in the *necke veine*, and he is cured. ✠ This is alſo an approved Cure. The French do call this malady *ver coquin*, and the *Italians* doe name *Vermiforme*, but they both have but one manner of Cure for the ſame. This *Ver-coquin*, or *Low-worme* is a living *worme* which breedeth upon the *back bone* running along the *necke*, and ſo by degrees commeth to the *head* of the *horſe*, where with its hard *beake*, it firſt pierceth the *panicle*, and then worketh it ſelfe to the very *brain* of the *creature*, where it lyeth biting, gnawing, and feeding, cauſeth the *horſe* to become enraged, and to dye mad, if otherwiſe he be not cured in time, and therefore the *French Mariſhals* doe affirme, that the prime remedy wherewith to kill and deſtroy this *Worme*, is, by fire, and they hold that it cannot be deſtroyed any other way.

Of the Lungs.

Hippoph. WHat remedy haue you to helpe the diſeaſe of the Lungs?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe of the *Lungs* is a malady which is firſt engendred of cold taken, and let runne till the *horſe* be either frettized or putrified in the *lungs*, at what time they become inflamed, and to come at laſt to rottenneſſe and corruption: the means how to come to the knowledge of this infirmity is, that by carefull obſervance you may perceive his *flankes* to beat, and his *ribbes* to work, but moſt chiefly when he *cougheth*, and then the more ſlowly they doe beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the diſeaſe; he will alſo draw his breath at his *noſe* ſhort, and yet weakely, and he will grone often, and principally when he lyeth down and riſeth up, and when at any time he *cougheth*, he will ſeeme to chew ſome thing be-

betwixt his *teeth*, and from his *nose* will issue much corruption. The Cure is,

Take of *horse Lung-wort*, *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad hoary soft leaves which doe feele like velvet; shred it, stamp it and straine it, then take of Fenugricke a good spoonfull, and of Madder as much, make them into fine powder, and give this to your *horse* in Muskadine one pinte, or else in good Ale one quart, and administer this unto him every other day for twelve or fourteen dayes, and sprinckle his Hay with water, and let his Oates be washed in good Ale, and let his drink be white water, and sometimes sweet Mashes. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Lungs a disease.

Take a Snake, and cut off the *head* and *tayle*, and flea it, and after cut the same into pieces the length of your finger, and rost it as you would an Eele upon a Spit, but do not baste it with any thing, for it will baste it selfe, reserve carefully the oyle that drippeth from it, and herewith annoynt the *breast* and the *fore-short ribbes* of the *Horse* which be against the *Lungs*, but clip away the hayre first from about the place where you are to annoynt him, otherwise the hayre will take up much of the said Oyle; and thus doing often for some time you shall recover his *lungs* againe, and make him perfectly sound. This was taught me by a great *Marishall of Tours*, but I never could come to make tryall thereof.

Chap. XIII.

§ 1. M.

Hippoph.

NOw Hippoſerus *that we have ended this Chapter, let us proceed to another; and tell me what is good to cure a* Malander?

Hippoſ. This is a noyſome ſorance whichgroweth upon the inward part of the *fore-legs* in the bending of the *legge* over againſt the *knee*: it is a Scab hard and dry, which hath a chop or chink upon it, and it hath hard and ſtubborn ſtaring *hayres* growing in and about it, not much unlike to *Hogs briſtles*, by which meanes it cankereth & corrupteth the *fleſh*, which will cauſe the *Horſe* to go ſtiffe, and to halt at firſt ſetting forth till he be warm, like as doth the Scratches. It commeth either through the negligence of the *Groome* for default of rubbing, and due and orderly dreſſing, or elſe from the corruption of the *bloud* through hard and immoderate riding; and thoſe *horſes* are moſt eſpecially ſubject thereunto, which have long *hayre* growing all along the *legges* from the *paſterne* up to the top of the *thigh* as moſt commonly have your *Flanders* and *Freeze-land horſes*, by reaſon that the *hayre* in that place, being thick, long, and ſhaggy, doth gather ſand, durt, and other filth, which not being continually taken off by the induſtry of his *Keeper*, will ſcald, burne, and fret into the joynt, and ſo breed this kinde of ſorance. I have already ſhewed you the ſignes how to know it, now I will alſo give you very many receits wherewith to cure it, many of which are ſpeciall good. Firſt therefore (whatſoever you have to apply unto this ſorance) faile not to waſh and ſhave away the hayre from off and about the ſorances; firſt then

Malender. Take blacke Sope, Vnguentum Populeon, and freſh Butter, of each like much as will ſuffice: mixe them well together, and ſo bring them to a formall Vnguent, and apply it to the ſorance every other day till it be whole. ✠ But you muſt withall underſtand that unleſſe you doe picke away and rubbe off the dry cruſt or ſcurfe, as well as waſh and ſhave away the hayre which doth annoy the ſorance, you doe nothing in the perfecting of the Cure, for be you confident unleſſe you doe this, the *Malender* will not be taken away, nor any medicine that you ſhall apply to it, be able to heale it up. Another:

Take blacke ſope, and allay it with Buck-lye, and waſh the place well

well therewith: this done, apply unto the forance a plaister of Goose-dung, and renew it twice a day till it be whole. ✣ Another:

Take quick-silver, and kill it in Orpiment, then take Buck-lye, and mixe ordinary durt which lyeth in the street (wherein must be neither stones nor gravell) with the Buck-lye, Quick-silver, and Orpiment, and herewith annoynt the forance twice a day if need be, and when the oyntment is well rubbed in, then clap a plaister of the same medicine to the griefe every time you do annoynt it. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take of the strongest white Wine Vineger, and boyle it, and so boyling hot, rub the Malender therewith twice every day till it doe bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdigrece good and thicke, and so binde it on with a clout, and let it so remaine till a crust come thereon, and when you shall finde the crust to be dry, and withall to chop, annoynt the grieved place with tryed Hogs grease, and that will cause the crust to fall off, and the sore to heale up. ✠ This is is a most excellent Cure, and it did never faile me. Another:

Rub the sore with the oyle of Hemp-seed, or with the oyle of Nuts, or with sharp Mustard, but the oyle of Hemp-seed is the very best if it may be had. This was tanght me by a *French Marishall*, but I never made tryall thereof. Another:

First rub off the outward scurfe till it *bleed*, then binde upon the place this medicine; take of blacke Sope, and of Quick-silver mortified with fasting spittle as much as will suffice, and so worke them to a salve, and plaister-wise binde it to the forance, renewing it every day once till it be killed, and after heale up the sore with fresh or sweet Butter. Another:

Take *Glovers shreds* which he cutteth from his white leather, and hoyle them in *Vineger* of the best and strongest till they be soft, binde this to the *malender* very hot, and it will perfectly cure the same. I did never make tryall thereof, but it was given me for very good. Another:

Take the fat or lard of Bacon one pound, red Lead, Verdegrece and Lethurge of gold, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and boyle them well together with the said fat of Bacon, keeping them in the boyling continually stirring; then having very well cleansed the sore, and made it raw, annoynt it with this medicine morning and evening till it be cleane dryed up. ✣ This is very good. Another which is onely to annoynt the forance with the oyle of Turpentine, and it will heale it up, and make it marvellous sound. ✣ And this will likewise cure Scratches, Sores, Hurts, or the like maladies in a *horse*. Another:

Take a salt barrelled Herring out of the pickle, which hath a soft row, and cut off the *head* and *tayle*, and cast them away, then mince all the Herring very small, and put it in a stone morter, and put thereto of blacke Sope two spoonfuls, and of Allum powdred halfe

an

an ounce, ſtampe all theſe things together till you have made them to be of one body, and plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the Malender, renewing it once a day for three daies: And this will kill the *humour* that feedeth it; which once done, annoynt the place with the oyle of Roſes, and that will cauſe the Cruſt to fall away, then waſh it once every day with Chamber-ly, and ſtrew upon it the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, and it is made whole and ſound againe. ✠ This I dare promiſe to be a very good Receipt.

§ 2. *M.*

Hippoph. VVEll what ſay you now to the Mainge?

Hippoſ. This of all other is the worſt, vildeſt, and moſt filthy, and it will cauſe the *Horſe* to be ever more rubbing, ſcrubbing, and ſcratching. It is a formall *Leproſie*, and the *French* doe call it the *Elephantick Malady*, by reaſon that *Elephants* are very much ſubject thereunto. The hayre will ſtare and in many places pill and fall away, and a lothſome Scurfe will be upon the places touched therewith, and he will infect all other *horſes* which reſide in the ſame ſtable, with him: Wherefore ſo ſoone as the Malady may be eſpyed, let him be ſeperated from his fellowes whether in the Stable, or abroad at Graſſe. This diſeaſe commeth of corrupt and melancholy *bloud*, by meanes of it's over-heating, and ſometimes by feeding upon naughty and unwholeſome meate. It is ſo eaſie to be diſcovered, as that it needs no other deſcription, then what hath beene already ſhewed: and I will give you many good Receipts for this Malady.

Mainge. Take Spurge, Selendine, Brimſtone, all in fine powder, of each three ounces, Hogge-greaſe tryed, new-Wax, Sheeps-ſuet, & quick-Silver well mortified with faſting-ſpitle, of each two ounces, melt and incorporate all theſe together, and ſo bring them to an oyntment, then firſt waſh and make raw the places infected with ſtale Vrine and greene Copperas boyled together, the infected places being ſcraped, and made raw with a Curry-combe or ſome ſuch like thing, and then annoynt him with this Vnguent, but firſt of all you muſt take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*, the day before you dreſſe him with this Vnguent. ✠ This is one of the beſt Receipts for a *Mainge* that I have, and with it I have done very many rare Cures.

Take the rootes of Elecampane newly gathered, and the rootes of red Dockes, of each like much, ſlice and cut them thin, and put unto unto them of Chamber ly three quarts, and of Bay-ſalt, one handfull: boyle theſe till one quart be conſumed, then take it off, and with a rag faſtned to the end of a ſtick, waſh the places infected very hot, you having firſt made the places raw, with an old Curry-combe, Oyſter-ſhell, &c. Vſe this foure or five mornings together, then

ſome

ſome three mornings after annoynt the places greived with this Oyntment.

Take quick-Silver one ounce, let it bee well mortified in faſting ſpittle, and mix with it ſo much Hogs-greaſe as a Hens Eg, or better: then take powder of Brimſtone, ſo much as will ſuffice, and incorporate all theſe very well together, and annoynt all the Maingy places therewith till they bee perfectly whole. ✠. This is very good. Another,

Take of the Oyle of Pilchards, and of Chamber-ly of each one quart, Guinny powder, and the powder of Brimſtone, of each three ounces, white Wine-Vinegar one pint, boyle all theſe together till they bee thicke, make the places raw, and annoynt them therewith three times in nine dayes, that is to ſay, every three daies once, and this will cure him. ✠. This is very good, but you muſt not forget evermore for this Malady, to take ſtore af *bloud* from your *Horſe* a day or two before you do adminiſter any thing unto him, for untill ſuch time as the *Melancholy* & *corrupt-bloud* be firſt let out, he will not eaſily be cured. Another for a Mainge, Itch, or Running Scab, &c.

Take as much Auripigmentum finely powdred, and mixed with Hogges-greaſe as will bring it to be yellowiſh, but not too yellow a colour, annoynt the places infected therewith, and it will kill it in three or foure dreſſings: This Vuguent will take away both the Scab and *hayre* together: but have you no feare, for it will not be long ere new *hayre* will come in it's place. ✠. With this receipt I have cured very many *horſes*, who have not beene a little over-run with this diſeaſe. Another,

The firſt day let him *bloud* on the left ſide of the *Neck*, then two daies after open the other *Veine*, and three daies after that let him *bloud* on both the *Sparre-Veines*, and laſtly, two daies after that under the *Tayle*, and let him *bleed* in every of theſe *Veines*, then ſcarrifie all the places and waſh them with new Brine made very ſalt: that done annoynt the places with this Vuguent.

Take of quick-Silver one ounce, tryed Hogs-greaſe one pound, Brimſtone made into fine powder foure ounces, Rape-oyle one pint. Firſt kill the quick-ſilver with faſting-ſpittle, and then incorporate them together throughly with all the other Ingredients, and having annoynted all the raw places with this Oyntment, cauſe it the better to ſinke in by holding a barre of hot iron neere to the places, and then touch him no more in three daies after, and evermore when you dreſſe him, forget not firſt to rub and ſcarrifie the places infected till they do begin to bleed; but if all this will not avayle, then burne the rankeſt places of the Mainge with an iron, having a button on the end thereof, but then take heed you enter not the *fleſh*, but beare your hand light upon the *skin* only, and let each hole be well-nigh a ſpan from the other. ✠ This I have often uſed. Another.

Take

Take of Chamber-ly foure quarts, Bay-ſalt foure handfuls, boyle them well together, and waſh the *Horſe* therewith, ſo hot as hee can well ſuffer it, and when he is well waſhed; take Neats-foote oyle and put it into water, and beate them well together, and therewith annoynt the raw places, and in foure or five times thus doing, he will be well. This ſeemes to a good cure, but I do not remember that I ever did uſe it. Another.

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the beſt & ſtrongeſt, and waſh the ſores therewith ſo hot as the *Horſe* is able to ſuffer it, and in three or foure times dreſſing it, will cure him. This I never tryed, but the party that taught it me, averred that it would not only kill any *Mainge*, but all Scratches, Paines, Rats-tayles, &c. Another.

Take Sopers-lees, and firſt make the *Maingy* places raw, and after waſh them with the ſaid Sopers-lees, and in once or twice dreſſing, he will be well. ✠. This was taught me by the moſt able *Ferrier*, I do now know living in *England* and I have often uſed it, and I have done with it very many great Cures. It cureth the *Mainge* both in *Horſes* and *Dogges*, provided they get not to it with their mouth and teeth. Another.

Take Hogges-greaſe halfe a pound, Oyle de Bay one ounce and halfe, Crude-Mercury, and white Elebore, of each one ounce, incorporate theſe well together, and firſt make the places raw, & then annoynt them with the ſaid Oyntment. ✠. This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another.

Take of Hempe-ſeed, and of Mutton-ſuet, of each one pound, bray the Hempe-ſeed merveylous well in a Morter, then take of old Bores-greaſe one pound, Verdegreaſe, Quick-ſilver, Elebore, Gunpowder, Tartar, of each foure drams, & of Brimſtone three ounces, make all into very fine powder, that is to be powdred, and mix them well, making them into one *body*, and then diſſolve them upon a gentle fire, keeping them alwaies ſtirring till it be enough, and ſufficiently diſſolved, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane Pot, and keep it for your Vſe, and when you have occaſion to make uſe thereof, firſt ſcarrify the places, and then annoyt them, holding a hot Barre of iron neere, and in three or foure times thus dreſſing, he will be well. ✠. This is a moſt loveraigne receipt for this malady, for I have had great proofe thereof. Another whereby to cure the *Mainge* in the *Maine* or *Tayle*.

Make Aſhes of the hearb called *Abſcinthus*, ſo much as will ſuffice, quick-lime, & Soot, of each ſo much as will ſuffice: mingle all theſe together, and with warm water make a Ly thereof, with which you ſhall waſh the *Maine* and *Tayle* in the places infected, & this Ly will not only cure this Malady, but alſo cauſe the *hayre* to grow againe very faſt. This was taught me by a very good *Marſhall* of *France*, but I cold never make uſe thereof, by reaſon the hearbe *Abſcinthus* was hard to get here. Another.

Take a little Brimſtone, Maſculine-Frankinſence, Niter of Tartar,

of

of the Bark of Aſhen-trees, Vitreall, Verdegrece, Black-Helebore, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, of each as much as will ſuffice, powder all your ſimples, and mixe them well together with the yolks of Egges and Sallet oyle, of each as much as will ſuffice, and ſo boyle it, and annoynt the place well therewith warm. This ſeems to be good, but I never tryed it.

Another for the *tayle:* Take Mulberries which be not ripe, with the bark of the roots of the Mulberry tree, and Baily, of each as much as will ſuffice, boyle all theſe in faire water, and waſh the places grieved therewith, and if the ſorance do open of it ſelfe, then take Sanguis Draconis, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Sallet oyle, and old Bores greaſe, of each as much as will ſuffice, and make thereof a ſalve, and apply it plaiſter wiſe, but this I never tryed. Another:

Take of Orpin one pound, Brimſtone and Euforbium, of each one ounce, Cantharides twenty five, make all theſe into fine powder, and with Hogs greaſe make it into an Vnguent, and apply it to the ſorance, rubbing it in all along the places viſited, and foure or five dayes after, to the end the corruption may the more eaſily paſſe away, annoint him againe with Hogs greaſe onely, and when the ſcurfe is falne off, waſh the *necke* of the *horſe* with Buck-lye made bloud-warme, and he will doe well. ✠ This is a very good receit. Another:

You muſt firſt ſcrape the *leprous* places till they do bleed; then take of Vineger one pinte, white Elebore, Cantharides, Euforbium, of each one ounce, make all theſe into fine powder, and boyle them all well together, and apply it very hot to the place grieved, then when the ſcurfe or cruſt is fallen away, waſh the ſorance with Buck-lye mixed with black Sope, and it will be well. ✠ This is a ſpeciall good receit, Another:

Take of the oyle of Hempſeed, halfe a pinte, Brimſtone in fine powder, one ounce, Gunpowder finely pulverized, and Quick-ſilver, of each halfe an ounce, and a little Vineger, then beat them all together a long time, and ſo apply it cold to the place, and as you do annoynt him, let one ſtand by with a hot bar of iron, wherby to cauſe it the better to ſinke in, and this will cure him in few times dreſſing, but ſuffer the cruſt to fall away of its own accord. ✠ This is a moſt pretious receit Another:

Take of Vineger one pinte and a halfe, Euforbium halfe an ounce, made into fine powder, boyle them well together, and boyling hot, waſh the ſorance therewith, and it will heale it; neither need you to clip away the *hayre*, unleſſe you pleaſe. ✠ This I have often uſed. Another:

Take of black or blew Slat, and make it into fine powder, and mingle it with freſh Butter, of each like much: mixe them well together to a perfect Vnguent, and annoynt the place therewith, and it will cure him, but this I never tryed. Another:

Take of the hearb called in *French*, *Ouraige*, one handfull, boyle it in Vineger, two quarts, then take of green Coperas halfe a pound, and of Salt two handfuls, rub the place therewith ſo hot as he may well ſuffer it, and in few times dreſſing him thus, it will cure him. This I had of a *French Mariſhall*, but becauſe I could never finde the hearb *Ouraige*, I did never make tryall thereof. Another:

Take of white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte, Cantharides in fine powder, one ounce, boyle them together, and boyling hot apply it to the ſorance, and your *Horſe* will ſooner be cured. ✠ This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

Thus I have delivered you many receits for this one malady, which we call the *mainge*, moſt of them I have tryed, and can promiſe them to be ſpeciall good, whereof many will not onely cure the *mainge* in the *body* it ſelfe, but in the *mayne* and *tayle* alſo if you pleaſe to make uſe of them.

Another moſt excellent receit for the *mainge*:

Take Lithurgie of gold, two pound, beat it to very fine powder, and ſearce it through a fine ſearcer, and put it into a glaſſe which will hold a pottle; then put thereto of the ſtrongeſt and beſt white Wine Vineger that can be gotten, three pintes or better, and for foure and twenty hours after, ſhake it together ever and anone, but the firſt time it muſt be beaten or ſhaken a good time together, to wit, a quarter of an houre at the leaſt without intermiſſion, and then let it ſettle, and ſo keep it in the ſame glaſſe cloſe ſtopped for your uſe. Now when you would uſe the medicine, you muſt make it into a ſalve after this manner: Take of the oyle of Roſes two ounces, and of the cleereſt of the ſaid Vineger in the glaſſe (which muſt not have any of the Lithurgie in it) two ounces alſo; beat theſe together with a wodden ſplatter, untill you have brought it into a thick ſalve: Take then of Quick-ſilver the weight of a ſhilling, and firſt mortifie it very well in a little of the ſirrup of Damaske Roſes, the quantity of ſixe or eight drops, and about three or four drops of the ſpirit or oyle of Turpentine; with the ſirrup and oyle, mingle and work theſe things well untill the Quick-ſilver be very well mortified, then mixe it well with the former ſalve, and then put it up into a cleane gally-pot, and ſo keep it; and firſt making the places raw, annoynt them with theſe Vnguents, and it will kill any *mainge* in the *body*, *mayne*, or *tayle*. ✠ This is very good. Another very good.

Take of Tarre a gallon, of tryed Hogs greaſe, and Bolearmoniack of each two pound, of Pepper one pound, beat the Pepper and Bolearmoniacke to very fine powder, and then mixe all the ingredients together, making them into one body, then firſt ſcrape the ſorance, ſo as you doe raiſe the ſcurfe and dry cruſty ſtuffe, but not to make it raw, or to bleed much, and then annoint all the places infected, rubbing and chafing it in very well, as if it be in winter, let one hold a barre of hot iron neer to the places as you annoint and chafe it in; but

if

if in Summer, the ſunne will do it much better as he runneth at graſſe; and thus dreſſe him every three dayes ſo long as the unguent laſteth, and he will be cured. + This is an approved cure.

Another, To perform this cure, the beſt way is, to give the fire to the place after this manner: the iron being hot, firſt draw it along either ſide of the chinke, then draw it upon the top of the chink, then draw three ſtrakes (if need ſo require) overthwart, and in ſhort time the hoofe will grow again, ſo as the chink will be cloſed, and remain ſound and whole. And over and above, you may exerciſe him that very next day after you have thus given him the fire, provided his exerciſe be not upon hard, but upon ſoft or ſandy ground. ✠ This is a very able cure taught me by a ſingular *Mariſhall* of *Bruxels*, and I have practiſed the ſame upon ſundry good *horſes* here in *England*.

§. 3. *M*.

Hippoph. WHat is good to cure a ſore Mouth?

Hippoſ. This is a diſeaſe that ſometimes comes by much corrupt *bloud*, and ſometimes by cold: for this malady moſt commonly beginneth in the *palat* of the *mouth*, which will cauſe it to look red, and be enflamed, and from the *palat* it will fall into his *chaps*, whereby he will not be able to ſhut them, as if he had there a *convulſion*. The cure is, if it be but yet in the *palate*, then let him *bloud* there, and let him *bleed* well, then: Take of life Honey four ounces, Chibbals or young Onions, halfe a handfull, and toſted Cheeſe as much as will ſuffice, boyle theſe in faire water very well, and bloud warm waſh the *palat*, *tongue*, and all other places in and about the *mouth*, well with this liquor four or five times, and he will do well. ✠ This is very good. Another: *Mouth ſore.*

After you have let forth the corrupt *bloud*, then take Verjuyce of the Crab, and Bay-Salt as much as will ſuffice, and warm it upon the fire, and bloud warm with a rag waſh well every part of the *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day till it be well. ✠ This is alſo very good; but if it be come into his *chaps*, which you may eaſily know by obſerving his wide yawning and gaping, whereby his *chaps* will be ſo fallen, as that he will not be able to bring them together to ſhut cloſe againe, wherefore ſo ſoon as you doe perceive him in that poſture, Take Verjuyce of the Crab onely, and make it warm, and then faſtening a rag upon a ſtick, waſh his *mouth* very well therewith; the Verjuyce being bloud warme, and then with your hand help him to cloſe up his *mouth*, and doing thus two or three times, he will be perfectly cured. ✠ theſe be ſpeciall good receits.

§. 4. *M.*

Mellet.

Hippoph. VV*Hat is good to cure the* Mellet *in the* heeles?
Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you that cure before, *lib. 2. cap. 4. § 9. lit. A.* But yet I will give you one receit more,

Take of Honey one pinte, and of Sope three ounces, and of white Wine Vineger five or ſixe ſpoonfuls, and as much Allum as an Egge, and of Beane flower two ſpoonfuls, mixe all theſe together, and apply it to the ſorance ſo farre as the *mellet* goeth, and let it lye on five dayes, and then take it away: that done, waſh the *legge, foot,* and ſorance with warme beefe broth, and ſo keep his *legges* roped up, well moyſtened in the beefe broth two or three dayes after, and he wil be well. ✠ This I have often uſed, and it is a moſt rare cure.

§. 5. *M.*

Mollifie humours.

Hippoph. VV*Hat is beſt to mollifie* humours?
Hippoſ. This I have alſo formerly handled, yet take with you this onely one receit more.

Take of Roſin three ounces, of freſh Butter five ounces, of new Waxe one ounce, melt all theſe upon the fire, and ſo bring them to an Vnguent, and herewith annoynt the humours foure or five dayes together, and this will mollifie them very well. ✠ This is moſt pretious for this cauſe.

§ 6. *M.*

Morfounded

Hippoph. VV*Hat ſhall a man doe to a* Horſe *that is* morfounded?
Hippoſ. Morfounding is but the *French* word: ſignifying melting of greaſe or *foundring* in the *body,* whereof I have before ſufficiently intreated; nevertheleſſe I will give you for this malady two ſingular receits, the one I had of an *Italian rider* in *Bruſſels,* and the other of a *French Mariſhall* in *Avinion,* a man eſteemed moſt famous, and of both thoſe receits I have made often uſe, and I have perfected them for moſt rare cures. That which the *Italian* taught me is this; firſt open the *necke veyne,* and draw away the inflamed and corrupt bloud, then take of white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, of Rhubarb and of Aloes, of each two drams, of Senæ halfe an ounce, of Agarick three drams, Bay berries halfe an ounce, Saffaron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of cordiall powder, of each two drams, make what is to be powdred into very fine powder, and mixe them well together, adding thereunto of life Honey foure ounces, all which being made warme upon the fire, and well brewed together, give it your *horſe* bloud warme, but you muſt withall underſtand that the ſame day you ſhall adminiſter this drink unto him,

him, he do ſtand faſting upon the Trench three or foure houres before, and as many after; neither muſt you the ſame day give him any Oates, and let his drink be either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and keep him warm, and with white water five or ſixe dayes after, and then give him Oates, but in tthe interim in ſtead of Oates, let him have either bread made for him of purpoſe, or elſe Bran prepared; and when you do give him Oates, put in amongſt them Fenugrick bruiſed. X This is I do aſſure you a moſt excellent receit, with which I ſaved the life, and brought to perfect ſanity a *horſe* of price, which was viſited with this infirmity; the ſecond receit which I had of the *Marſhall* of *Avinion* is this; (*viz*) ſo ſoon as you doe perceive or ſuſpect him to be *morfounded*,

Take of Salt one handfull, and put to it of faire water one pinte, and give it him to drink, and ride him moderately upon it till he *ſweate*, and this will cure him if it be adminiſtred ſo ſoon as you may ſuſpect the malady, but if you ſtay three or foure dayes, or longer, before you doe give him this water and ſalt, then take of the powder of Hellebore one ſpoonfull, and of Saffaron one penny worth, of Aſſafætida, and of Sope of Venice, of each two drams, of Bacca *alias* the ſeeds of Bayes, a farthing worth made alſo into fine powder, mixe and pound all theſe together well, putting to them of Vineger one pinte, and give it him bloud warme, then cover him with a wet cloth, and clothe him warme, and ſet him upon the Trench, that he may neither lye down, nor vomit, but let him ſweat an hour after, and then coole and dry him by degrees, and let him be well rubbed, and he will doe well again. X This is alſo a very good receit.

Chap.

Chap. XIIII.

§. 1. N.

Hippoph. *Well now* Hippoſerus, *let us goe on, what will cure the running at the* Noſe?

Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you that before, but yet I will give you two or three receits more;

Noſe running.

Take Orpin and Brimſtone, as much as will ſuffice, and caſt them upon burning coles, and ſo perfume his *head* and *noſe* therewith, and that will diſſolve the *humours* congealed in the *head* and *braine*. + This is very good. Another:

Take Auripigmentum, and Tuſſilago, of each two drams, make them into fine powder, and with good Venice Turpentine waſhed, make it into a ſtiffe paſte, and thereof make ſmall cakes the breadth of your thumb naile, and dry them a little, and therewith perfume your *horſe* over a Chafing-diſh and coles every day; but before you doe perfume him, give him the drink preſcribed you in *lib. 2. cap.* § which beginneth thus (firſt let him bleed in the necke veine well, then take Aſſafætida as much as a haſle nut, &c.) ✠ and this is very good.

§. 2. N.

Hippoph. *What is good to cure a* Navell gald?

Hippoſ. This is a naughty ſorance comming by meanes of a Saddle behinde, which being let run a while, will be long in curing. It is called a *Navell galled*, by reaſon that the hurt is upon the top of the *backe*, right over againſt the *Navell*, the ſignes are ſo demonſtrative, as that they need no deſcription; the cure therfore is,

Navell galled.

Take oyle de Bay, Coſtus, Foxe greaſe, oyle of Savine, of each one ounce, then take great garden Wormes a hundred, and ſcowre them well in white Wine and Salt, then put all the ingredients together into an earthen pot very well ſtopped, and boyle it well, then adde thereto of Sallet oyle one ounce and a halfe, and boyle it over again till it come to a perfect oyntment, then ſtraine it into a Galley pot or glaſſe, and ſo keep it cloſe ſtopped for your uſe, and when you are to uſe it, onely warme it, and ſo dreſſe the ſorance therewith; with Lint or Hurds, and it will ſoon be whole. + This by proofe I do know to be very good.

§ 3. N.

Hippoph. *What helpe have you for a* Horſe, *that is troubled with a diſeaſe commonly called the* Night-mare?

Night-mare

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is ſo called indeed, but yet all able and skilfull *Ferriers* doe laugh at thoſe that give it the ſame *Epiphraſe*, for it is none other thing but a ***Malancholly blond***, wherewith the *creature* is oppreſſed, for it doth perplex the *Heart* more then any other *member* or part of the *Body*, cauſing him in the night time to ſweate more then in the day, bereaving him of his ſleepe and naturall reſt, and the beſt ſignes to know this diſeaſe, is by obſerving well the *Horſe* when you come unto him in the morning, you ſhall perceive him to have ſweat aſwell in the *Flankes*, as *Neck*, and *Short-ribs* next to the place where the *heart* lyeth. The Cure for the Malady is:

Take of Salt one handfull, Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, and of brown-Sugar-Candy made into fine powder, foure ounces, mix all theſe very well, then warme them upon the fire, and ſo give it him with a horne bloud warme, give him this two mornings together, and it will cure him: But the day before you drench him, firſt open the two *Spur-veines*, and let him *bleed* there very well: ✠.

I have knowne many who have taken a good great ſtone, which hath had an hole in it, and they have taken a withe and put it through the hole of the ſaid ſtone, and ſo hung it upon the top of the Rack, iuſt over the *Horſe*, whereby hee hath beene perfectly cured.

W Chap.

Chap. 15.

§. 1. O.

Hippophylus.

What good Receipt have you, wherewith to Cure old Sores.

Hippoſ. Sir I have many, and the moſt of them be very good, whereof I will give you only one, and leave the reſidue to their proper places:

Old ſores. Take of Roch-allome a good quantity, and burne it in a hot fire Pan, then take ſo much Bay-ſalt, and burne that alſo; beat theſe together to very fine powder. then Take of common Hony and of ſweet Butter, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo incorporate all theſe ingredients together; neyther muſt it be warmed upon the fire, but only thus brought to a Salve, and ſo keep it for your uſe: which muſt be applyed eyther Plaiſter-wiſe, or Taint-wiſe, or both, according as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and this will heale any Sores very ſoundly; neither will it permit any dead or proud *fleſh* to remaine in the place. ✠. This I have often tryed.

§ 2. O.

Hippoph. *What is beſt to bee applyed to an over-reach upon the* Heele?

Hippoſ. I have handled this Malady before, *in lib. 2. chap. 4. §. 10. let. A.* notwithſtanding I will give you one or two Receipts more. Firſt, cut out the over-reach with your inciſion Knife, making it plaine as may be, then waſh it with Beere and Salt, and apply this Plaiſter unto it.

Over reach in the heele. Take Oate-meale and Butter, ſo much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a Salve, pound them together in a Morter, working them into one body, and apply this Plaiſter-wiſe to the Sorance, renewing it every day once till it bee whole. ✠. This is very good Another.

Mollifie the *heeles* of the *Horſe* with ſuppling things, whereof I have given you ſtore, then open the ſole of the *Foote* round about, and preſſe the *Heele* to enlarge it, then when you have made the *Sole* firme againe, keep his *Feete* moiſt with *Vnguentum Roſatum*, or ſome ſuch

such like suppling thing, and hee will bee whole and sound againe, This I never tryed. Another.

If the malady doth proceed from a disease which the *French* doe call *Encastelure*, then take out the *sole* of the *Foot* where the Sorance is, open it close to the *bayre*, then take up the *veine* in the ball of the *Foote*, and give him the fire all a long the *bayre*, upon the saide Sorance, and lay unto it black-Sope upon the Hurds, and when the scurfe falleth off, dresse it with black Ægiptiacum, untill such time as it hath produced a circle of a new horne, and keepe the *Hoofe* alwaies supple with *Vnguentum-rosarum*, and the greise will heale up, and weare away in short time, This is very good.

§. 3. *O.*

Hippoph: HOw doe you make Oyle of Oates, *and what is it vertue?*

Hippos. To deale ingeniously with you, neither my *Master* nor my selfe did ever know the nature of this Oyle, or how to make it, untill such time as wee met with Master *Markhams Master-Peece*, from whence since we have made very good use thereof, and doe finde it to be a most singular receit: I will give it you iust as we have it from him.

Take of Milke eight quarts, and warming it upon the fire put thereunto of burnt Allome foure ounces, which will cause it to run into a Curd like to a Posset; take of the Curd and cast it away, and straine the Whey through a course cloth into a cleane vessell: then take of *Oates* a quarter of a Peck, dry and cleane husked, that were never dryed, and put them into the Whey, and so set the Whey upon the fire, and let them boyle untill the *Oats* doe burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender, so that the Whey may go gently from them without any pressing: (for you must keep the *Oats* as moist as may be) this done, put the *Oates* into a frying-Panne, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till you see the vapour or smoke of them, not to ascend upwards: But as it were to run about the Pan; then suddenly take them off: and putting them into a Presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what comes from them is only their Oyle, which you must reserve in a close glasse and so stop it well.

Now there are others more artificiall and curious waies whereby to distill and extract this Oyle, yet this above them all, is both the easiest, surest, and least troublesome way, and the very best for every meane capacitie. ✠ This Oyle of Oates is of all medicines whatsoever the most excellent, and soveraigne for the *Body* of the *Horse*, as being abstracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best nourishing food, which doth belong to the sustentation and lively-hood of the *Horse*, this Oyle being given by foure or five spoon-

fuls in ſweet Wine, one pint, or ſtrong Ale one quart, and ſome of the Whey poured into his noſthrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines. It is alſo (given in the ſame manner) the beſt of all *Purgations*, for it purgeth away all thoſe venemous and *Peccant-humors* that feedeth the moſt incurable *Farcin* whatſoever; and for my owne part at what time I can conveniently come by this oyle of Oates, I will never uſe any other Oyle or vnctious matter in any medicine whatſoever, to be adminiſtred inwardly but this only: I having found by good experience, that it is the moſt Soveraigne of all ſimples of that kind, and thus I have ſhewed you what Maſter *Markhams* opinion (which is the ſame both with my *Maſter* and my *Selfe*) is, both of this Oyle and it's vertues, and ſo I remit you to the uſe and practice thereof. ✠.

CHAP. XVI.

§. 1. P.

Hippophilus.

WHat is that Receipt which I have often-times heard ſo highly commended among Ferriers, *called* Paſtons, *and to what uſe doth it ſerve?*

Hippoſ. This thing which is called *Paſtons* is none other then a plaine *Plaiſter*; only ſome of of our *verball Ferriers* have gotten hold of the *French* word *Paſton*, which doth ſignifie a *Playſter*, and that they deliver and vent among ignorant people, whereby to cry themſelves vp for learned, and skilfull *Doctors* in *Horſe-leech-craft*; now foraſmuch as maladies and diſeaſes, are of ſundry ſorts and different natures: ſo ought the *Paſtons*, *Plaiſters*, and *Medicines* bee diſcrepant each from other, but ſince you were pleaſed to underſtand the true nature of this word *Paſton*, I have in a word delivered the ſame unto you, and now I will give you the Receipt of one of the *Paſtons* which will bee well worth your acceptance, It being the moſt ſoveraigne remedy of any that ever I could come to know, which is as good to diſſolve and take away evill *humors*, which ſhall at any time fall downe into the *Legges* of your *Horſe*, as any other Medicine you can uſe, And this it is.

Take of common Hony one pound, of Turpentine halfe a pound, of Maſtick in fine powder two ounces, of Frankincenſe and Bole-armoniack both made into fine powder, of each four ounces, of San-

guis,

guis Draconis, three ounces, of new laid Egges sixe, of the strongest white Wine Vineger one pinte, of the flower of Rice seven ounces, mixe all these together, and hereof make a plaister, and lap the *legges* of the *horse* from the *feet* to the upper joynts, and do this but foure or five times, and you shall see it will performe a most strange and rare cure. ✠

§ 2. *P.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat is good to helpe a strain in the* pasterne joynt? *Hippos.* If it be onely a straine in or upon the *pasterne joynt*, and not upon the *backe sinew*:

Take then of Chamber-lye one quart, and boyle it untill the scum doe arise, then straine it, and put unto it of Tansey and of Mallowes, of each one handfull, and of ordinary Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow foure ounces, chop the hearbs small, and then mingle all these ingredients together, and so boyle them untill the hearbs be well sodden, and so apply the medicine to the place with a linnen cloth bound up, and stitched close with a needle and threed, that it may not remove, renewing this plaister every day once, for three or foure dayes, and he will be sound and goe upright againe. ✠ This is speciall good. Another: *Pastern joynt strained.*

Take of Brine one quart, and boyle it till it ariseth, and then strain it, and put to it of Tansey and Mallowes, of each one handfull, of Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow foure ounces; chop all these together, and then pound them well: and set them upon the fire, and so boyle them, as much as will suffice, apply this warme to the place with a cloth *plaister-wise*, sewing it fast on, and so let it remaine five dayes, and if this doe not cure him, then wash the place with warme water, and shave away the *hayre*, and scarifie the *joynt*, and then apply the medicine of Cantharides and Euforbium, &c. as you are shewed in the cure for an upper attaint in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 4 § 9. *lit. A.* and so he will be cured, this is very good.

§ 3. *F.*

Hippoph. I*Would gladly* Hippolerus, *learne a good* pill *for the* Glanders.

Hippos. I have delivered you many already, but since yon are pleased to renew this cure again, I will give you two *pils*, which shall be of most singular vertue, which shall cure any violent cold or Glanders; prevent *heart-sickenesse*, purge away all *molten grease*, recover a *lost stomacke*, keep the *heart* from fainting in and after hard travell, and violent riding and exercise, and these pils will raise a leane *Horse*, and make him fat suddenly.

Take Anniseeds, Comin, dryed Elecampane, Canthamus, of each *Pill for the Glanders.*

each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searce them; then adde unto them of the powder of Brimstone, and of the juyce of Licoris, of each one ounce, which said juyce of Licoris must be dissolved in white Wine one pinte, then take of the oyle of Annisseeds, and of the Sirrop of Colts foot, of each one ounce, of Sallet oyle and like Honey, of each halfe a pinte; mixe all these with the former ingredients, and with as much fine wheat flower as will knead it into a stiffe paste, and so make it up into *pils* somewhat bigger then a *French Walnut*, and so keep them close stopped in a glasse or galley pot, for they will last good the whole yeare, and when you shall have occasion to use them, take forth one, and annoynt it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it your *horse*, and continue thus to do every morning one for some time, and ride him a little after the taking thereof gently, if the weather be temperate, and let him stand upon the Snaffle or trench three houres after, then feed him, and at night you may either give him a Mash, or white water. ✠ and thus doe (if it be to prevent sickenesse) three or foure mornings together, but if it be to take away any infirmity, as Cold, Glanders, or the like, then administer it eight or ten dayes together at the least, but if it be to cleanse his *body* from *molten grease*, or to take away foulenesse, then give it him either in his heat, or presently after; but if it be to make him fat, being meager, poore, and leane, then use it fifteen dayes at the least. If you shall finde any difficulty in the giving of this *pill*, you may then at your pleasure dissolve it, either in sweet Wine, or else in good Ale or Beere, and so give it him with a horn drench-wise. ✠

The other *pill* is,

Take of Wheat flower one pound, or so much as shall suffice to make a stiffe paste, then take of Annisseeds, Fenugricke, Brimstone, of each two onnces, Sallet oyle one pinte, common Honey one pound and a halfe, white Wine two quarts; make the hard simples into fine powder, and searce them, then with the residue make a stiffe paste, and of this paste make a *pill* the bignesse of a mans fist, and dissolve it into two or three gallons of faire water, by washing and laving the said paste therin within your hands, & so let your *horse* drink the same at his ordinary watering times, or at any other time, when he is willing to drink, for he cannot drink too much of this water, then ride him to warme it in his *belly*, but not otherwise, and when the water is spent, doe not cast away the bottome, but filling againe the vessell wherein he drinketh, with fresh water, the next time he drinketh, dissolve another ball therein, and thus do for fifteen dayes together at least, and you shall see some wonderfull effects thereof. This water scowreth, cleanseth, and feedeth after an admirable manner, and the former lesser *pils* doe purge the *stomacke* and entrals from all foulenesse, it voydeth and carrieth away in his ordure molten and dissolved grease, and fortifieth nature so powerfully, as that it leaveth no evill *humours* in the *body*. ✠ This was taught me by a

Scotch

Scotch man who was Groome in *Prince Henry* his Stable under Monsieur Saint *Anthony*, and a singular good Groome he was. I have often times made proofe and use thereof, and have found it to be right good, and for that reason I doe rather commend it unto you.

§ 4. P.

Hippoph. VV *Hat good* Antidote *or* preservative *have you for the* Pestilence?

Hippos. This disease which we call the *Pestilence* or *Plague*, hath also sundry other names, for some doe call it the *murraine*, others the *garget*, others the *gargill*, and the *French* doe call it *mal de montaine*; the montaine evill: it is a most contagious, and infectious disease, it is sometimes engendred of a surfet by riding, when the *horse* afterwards taketh cold, and sometimes it commeth of the contagiousnesse of the ayre; as when a *horse* commeth upon a sudden into *fenny* or *marish* places, where he never was before, having been ever bred and kept in pure, sweet, and wholesome ayre, as one hapned to a young Geloing of my own, when I comming into the hundreds in *Essex*, and travelling late, I came to my Inne, where my *Horse* the very next day fell into a *pestilent Feaver*, whereof he had doubtlesse dyed, had I not administred help instantly, wherefore whensoever you do suspect your *horse* to be never so little touched with this mallady, remove him presently, lest he should infect so many *horses* as be in the same Stable with him. This comes also to a *horse* many times by meanes of corrupt bloud and bad *humours*, which doe lye lurking in his *body*, which washing, drinking being hot, and surfets, do often cause, but let it come as it may, it brings with it a *pestilent Feaver*, which is seconded by ensuing death, if speedy prevention be not at hand.

The signes be these; after that he hath drooped and languished two, three, or foure dayes at most, he will begin to swell under the roots of his eares, as if he had the vives, and under the *chaule*, and so this swelling will run up his *cheeks* through the malignancy of the disease, and become very hard, he will hang down his *head* and *face*, and seeme alway to *sleepe* and forsake his meat, and his *eyes* will be yellowish, he will draw his *breath* short, which will be also very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will put forth Carbuncles, and swellings in his groine, bigger then a mans fist, and his *stones* will hang, but this not alwaies, and this I have known in *Horses* more then in one or two. The cure is,

Take of white Wine one quart, and the hearb called in *French*, *Mareile*, which we in *English* doe tearme *Nighte-shade*: stamp it, and take the juyce thereof, and boyle it in the Wine, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, take then Linseed meale, and Barly meale, and sift out the bran, taking only the flower of them both as much as will *Pestilence.*

will ſuffice, and put it into the liquor, and ſo boyle them againe to a Poulteſſe, and make plaiſters thereof, and apply it to the ſwellings, but before you lay on the plaiſter, ſtrew upon them the powder of burnt Egge ſhels, and thus renewing the plaiſters every day once, you ſhall either ripen or breake them, or they will drive the ſwellings back againe without further trouble, but if the ſwellings doe breake, then heale them with your green oyntment ſo often ſhewed you, but then to drive away the malignancy of the infection from the heart, and to ſend it forth, firſt let him bloud in the *necke* and *weeping* veines, and then give him of Diapent two ſponfuls, with white Wine one pinte, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, and this will recover him. And for your other *Horſes* which you may have juſt cauſe to ſuſpect to be infected, to prevent their danger, give him this preparative.

Preparative Take two Walnuts, the kernels onely, and (the older the Nuts be, the better:) take alſo two Figs, and twenty leaves of Rue, ſtamp them all well together, and let every *Horſe* have his proportion three or foure mornings together faſting, being made up and given in *pils*, and let them faſt three houres after, and this will both preſerve and free them. Theſe things I have often uſed, and found them to be ſpeciall good.

§ 5. *P.*

Hippoph. VVHat *good purging* pils *have you?*

Hippoſ. I have already ſhewed you many in *lib.* 2. *cap.* § But yet I will give you one or two more.

Take freſh Butter one pound, Aloes and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, life Honey, and white refined Sugar powdred, of each foure ounces, Agarick halfe an ounce, make all theſe into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Honey, make *pils* thereof and give them to your *Horſe*, and if he be a ſmall or weake *Horſe*, then you muſt give him but two parts of three, but if your *horſe* have a ſtrong cold, and a cough withall, then

Take of freſh Butter, and of Mel-Roſarum, of each foure ounces, of Aloes and Sene, of each one ounce, Rubarb and Bay berries, of each three ounces, Colloquintida and Saffaron, of each two drams, cordiall powder one ounce, Ducke or Dutch powder foure ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and mixe them well with Mithridate two ounces, and with your Butter and Mel Roſarum, beat and pound them well together, and ſo make them into *pils*, and give them your *Horſe*; this receit will purge him very well, albeit it may heat him for ſome time; and as touching the ordering him in his dyet, or otherwiſe, let all things be done as in other *phyſicall* cures of the like nature: if it be a ſmall *horſe*, then give unto him two parts in three, and proportion the *pils* according to the ſtrength, greatneſſe, and corpulency of your *horſe*. ✠ This is very good. § 6.

§ 6. *P.*

Hippoph. VVHat is good to cure the paines in the Heeles of a Horse?

Hippoſ. This is a noyſome Sorance, comming to a *Horſe*, either by ill *humours*, and corrupt *blond*, by meanes of Surfets, proceeding from great heats, by intemperat ridings, as I have ſufficiently declared, before or elſe through the negligence of his *Groome*, or *Keeper*, for want of good rubbing, clenſing and picking, this doth grow betweene the *Fetlock-ioynt*, and the *heele*, in the very *Paſterne*, which will cauſe the place to ſwell, and to have chops, from whence will iſſue a thin and ſtinking water, and thoſe *horſes* which have ſhaggy, and long *hayre* upon their *Fet-locks*, are moſt ſubiect to this Malady; the ſignes bee eaſily knowne, by reaſon that the chops may be ſoone felt, for they will cauſe the *Legges* of the *horſe* to ſwell, and much filthy matter will come from the place greived, being of that hot nature, as that it will ſeald the very *haire* from about the ſorance, and this will cauſe the *horſe* to go very ſtiffe, and lame, at firſt ſetting forth: The cure is.

Take of the Lees of red Wine one pint, of Wheat-branne one handfull of Houſe-leeke one head, of common Hony, two ſpooneſuls, of the duſt of *Tanners* bark, Allome, and tryed Hogges-greaſe, of each one pound, & of Verveine halfe a handfull, bray all theſe well in a Morter, and adde unto them of the leaue of of Martlemas or dryed Beefe, burned, and made unto fine powder, halfe a pound, and ſo work them to a kind of ſalve, and apply it unto the Sorance, ſo hot as the *horſe* can ſuffer it: But before you do apply this medicine, you muſt draw the *skin* with a hot iron, a little above the *houghes*, or *knees*, or elſe take up the *veines* (which I altogether uſe to do) then take of Tarre, and of ſweet Butter, and of Hony, of each two ſpoonfuls, and warme them upon the fire, and eyther annoynt the places ſeared, or elſe the *veine*, ſo taken up with this Vnguent, once every day, till his Oyntment be all ſpent, and by that time, your *horſe* will be perfectly cured, eſpecially if you continue this former Emplayſter daily to the ſorance, having firſt clipped, and ſhaven away the *hayre*; from about the place greived, ✠, With this I have cured many *horſe*. Another.

Take of Turpentine, Hogges-greaſe, and Honey, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, a little Bole-armoniack in fine powder, and yolkes of two Egges: with ſo much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the other ingredients: incorporate all theſe well together, and ſo bring it to a ſalve, and Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the Sorance, and ſo bind it up, renewing it every day, and let him not come out of the Stable, or come into any wet, and he will be ſoone cured. ✠. This is alſo very good. Another. *Paſtons.*

Take

Take of tryed Hogges-greaſe one pound, Verdegreaſe one penny-worth, of ſtrong Muſtard two ounces, Nervall foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, of Hony and Wax, of each halfe a pound, Arſenick one ounce, Red-lead two ounces, and of white-Wine-Vinegar halfe a pint, powder your Verdegreaſe, and then boyle all together, and the *hayre* firſt clipt away, which muſt alwaies be done in any of theſe Cures) apply this Medicine hot to the place, and renew it daily, and it will not only cure the paines, but all manner of ſcratches, ſcabbed, and kibed *Heeles*; to waſh alſo the Sorance, with Vinegar and Gunpowder is very good to helpe the paines, and ſcratches. ✠. This I have often uſed.

§. 7. *P.*

Hippoph. *DOe you not uſe to purge a* Horſe *that is* Purſive *&* Short winded?

Hippoſ. Yea Sir, and I do it after this manner.

Purſivenes a pill.

Take of the fat of a Boare three pound, mince it very ſmall, and lay it in faire Water foure and twenty houres, to the end the ſalt (if any be in it) may ſoake out of it, then: Take of Agarick, Pulverized two ounces, of Colloquintida in powder halfe an ounce, *mel roſarum* ſix ounces, in corporrate all theſe well together, and worke it to a paſte; which you muſt make into Pils, the bigneſſe of an ordinary tennis Ball, one of which you moſt give him at a time rowled up within the powder of Lycoris, but the night before you doe adminiſter it, you muſt give him no Oats at all, but a little Hay and wheat-Branne prepared only, then the next morning about ſix or ſeven of the clocke, give him one of theſe Pils, and then cover him up warm; and ride or walke him two houres ſpace; then bring him in, and let him ſtand upon the Trench two houres more, then unbridle him, and give him a little Hay ſprinkled with water, and eight or nine houres after the taking of his *Pill* (which will be about three of the clocke, give him white Water to drinke, and let him eate of the Branne, then at night when you are to go to bed, put a muzell upon his *mouth*, und let him remaine ſo all night faſting, and let him be warme covered, and the next morning unmuſell him, and give him Hay ſprinkled with water to eate, and continue to let his drinke bee white Water, only, the third day give him another of theſe Pils, after which you may begin to give him Oates, but a little at once; but then the dayes he do not take his Pils, you muſt remember ever more an houre after you give him his white Water, to give him of Agarick, and of Rubarb in powder, of each one ounce, which he muſt take in freſh or ſweet Butter made up like to a Pill: This Purgation may be given to any *Horſe* but eſpecially to that *Horſe* you ſhall feare is in danger, to become eyther purſive of Glandery, and if perhaps the Malady to have beene longer upon him, give him then of Antimony thirty graines,

drams more or leſſe, according to the ſtrength and age of the *horſe*, and alſo according to the nature and quality of the diſeaſe; and if after the application of this medicine your *horſe* will not feed (as it may be very probably) you may cheriſh him with milke mingled with the yolkes of Egges and Sugar, well beaten and brewed together. ✠ This I applyed to a *horſe* of more then twelve yeares old, who in ſeven dayes eate not one bit of any thing but onely the ſaid Milke, Egges, and Sugar, and yet in fourteen dayes after, I cured him, and made him perfectly healthy and ſound.

§. 8. P.

Hippoph. VV *Hat remedy have you for* a horſe *that* piſſeth bloud?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe comes ſometimes being troubled with the *ſtone*, like as we have it often times among men; ſometimes it comes to a *horſe*, that being very fat, is put to more then his ſtrength is well able to performe, like as I once ſaw a very proper Gelding (a young Gentleman being upon his back in hunting) who comming to a great leap, and the *horſe* being ridden off from his winde, his Rider inconſiderately forcing him to take that leap, which the Gelding with much difficulty tooke, but withall fell, and was not able to ariſe but with the help of men, and comming home the ſame night he piſſed bloud, whereof he dyed four dayes after, maugre the endeavours of three very able *Ferriers*, and being opened, they found two veynes broken neere to the kidneys, and much *blacke bloud* found in the place. This malady may alſo come by bearing too great a weight, as alſo when a *horſe* is too hard ridden, he will piſſe water like to *bloud*: your *eye* ſheweth you the diſeaſe, and therefore it needs no further remonſtrance. The cure is:

Piſſing of bloud.

Take of *Ambroſio Sanguinario*, alias *Bloud-wort*, and Burſa Paſtoris, of each three ounces, ſtamp them well, and boyle them in faire water very well, and ſo give the liquor thereof being ſtrained, to the *horſe* bloud warme. ✠ Give him this five mornings together, and it will help him. Another:

Take Barly, and boyle it in the juyce of Gumfolly, and give him the Barly to eate, and the liquor to drink, and this will cure him. ✠ This is alſo very good. Another:

Firſt cleanſe his *yard* from all filth, and his ſheath alſo with broken Beer and Butter, then let him *bloud* in the *necke* and *mouth*, then take the juyce of Leeks or green Onyons, to wit, the water wherein they have been ſteeped twelve or ſixteen hours at the leaſt, the veſſell wherein they be ſteeped being kept cloſe ſtopped.

Take of this liquor, and of white Wine, of each one pinte, and ſtir and jumble them together till they become ſlimy, then give it him to drink, and do this ſixe or ſeven mornings together, and it will ſtay his fluxe of *bloud*, and bring his *urine* to its naturall and ordinary co-

lour. ✠ This is a very good medicine, and I have often tryed it.

Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take Beane flower finely ſifted, and adde unto it the Suet of a Stagge as much as will ſuffice, and give it him three mornings together warme, with a horn, with a ſufficient quantity of red Wine, and during that time, let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, made with Beane meale. ✠ This is an approved good receit.

§. 9. P.

Hippoph. *WHat good receit have you for a* horſe *that hath taken a ſurfet by* Provender?

Hippoſ. This comes commonly to ſuch *horſes* as are inſatiable feeders, and therefore it is requiſite that they be dyeted, eſpecially if they have too much reſt, and too little exerciſe; for ſuch *horſes* if they can either breake, or ſteale to a Bing of Provender, and drink preſently after, will undoubtedly ſurfet upon them, for drinking after Oates, Peaſe, or Beanes, doth cauſe the Provender to ſwell in their *belly* and *ſtomacke*, and ſo clogge the *ſtomacke*, as that crudities will ariſe, and ſo cauſe him to be very ſicke, yea and perhaps to no little danger, that you ſhall ſee him to ſtand with his four legges aſunder, the one farre from the other, and he will ſcowre and caſt forth of his fundament, corn which will goe forth as whole and entire, as he did greedily ſwallow them without chewing, or grinding them. The cure is, firſt open a *vayne* in the *necke* to keep the *blond* from inflaming, then draw his *yard*, and waſh it with broken Beere, and Butter, then anoynt it with ſoft greaſe, and put into the *pipe* of his *yard* a ſmall piece of a clove of Garlick, whereby to provoke him to *ſtale*, then rack him, and give him the *Cliſter* preſcribed in *lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 8. Cliſter 8. C.* and it is called a *Cliſter lenative*, then keep him warm, and to a ſpare dyet, for four or five dayes after, and let his drink be white water during that time. ✠ with this receit I have cured many a *horſe*, but one *horſe* amongſt the reſt of very great *price*, who otherwiſe had infallibly dyed.

§. 10. P.

Hippoph. *HOw doe you cure the* Poll-evill?

Hippoſ. This mallady we do tearm the *Poll evill*, becauſe it breedeth in the top of the *Poll* behinde the *eares* of the *horſe*, but let it aſſume what name it ſhall, yet it is none other thing then a *Fiſtula in graine*, that is a formall *Fiſtula* which doth begin like all other *Fiſtulaes* with a great inflamation and impoſthume in the *nape* of the *necke*: ſometimes it comes by meanes of his unruly ſtriving, the halter being new, and therefore hard, which doth ſo pinch and gall him, that the harm thereof by reaſon that the *fleſh* is bruiſed, doth

doth feſter and inflame, and from thence is ingendred this moſt lothſome ſorance, and ſometimes it comes againe of bilious and evill *humours*, which do make their approach to that place: ſometimes it comes again by the means of a ſtroke or blow given by ſome cudgell by his *Keeper* or *Rider*, betwixt his *eares*, whereby it feſtereth inwardly, and inflaming breedeth an impoſtumation, ſo as if it be not in time taken, it will grow to a very foule *Fiſtula*, not eaſie to be cured; for the *poll* of the *horſe* is ſo tender a member, as to be ſoon offended, and therefore eaſily damnified; I need not to deliver you the ſignes, for the ſwelling will be ſo apparant, as that it cannot be miſtaken, albeit it will putrifie much more inwardly then outwardly; and therefore you ought to apply your diligence to open it, before it do breake of it ſelfe. The cure is,

First to lay unto the place ſwollen, ſuch things as will ripen it, and to prepare it ready to be opened: and as touching the ripening thereof, *Poll-evill.*

Take the loame of a mud wall which had never any Lime in it, but much Straw or Litter; and the elder this Loame or mud wall is, the better; boyle ſo much as you ſhall pleaſe thereof in the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vineger, and let it boyle till it come to be a very Poulteſſe, then being very hot, lay it to the ſwelling, renewing it morning and evening till it be ripe enough to be opened, then open it with a red hot iron made ſharpe at the end, and let the iron be the bigneſſe of a naile rod, but you muſt begin below, thruſting your inſtruments upwards, cleane through, that it may come forth in the ſofteſt place, and when it is thus opened, ſo as the corruption may iſſue forth at eaſe, anoynt the orifices with tryed Hogs greaſe two or three dayes together, to get out the fire, but howſoever faile not to dreſſe it twice every day with the ſaid Poulteſſe, taynts being dipped in the Poulteſſe, and put down to the bottome, as well to carnifie and heale the *Fiſtula* at the bottome, as to keep open the orifices, and this Poulteſſe will cure him. † But withall you muſt remember to make him a hood or nightcap to keep warm the *nape* of his *neck*, and to keep in the taints alſo: this alſo cureth the Botch in the groine, hurts in the withers, navell-galles, galled-back, or Sit-faſts, &c. Another:

First ripen it as before, or elſe with tryed Hogs greaſe ſcalding hot, making him a Biggin wherewith to keep his *poll* very warme, and renew this Emplaiſter every day, and it will ripen it the ſooner; then when you finde it to be ſofteſt, and moſt likely to breake, open it with a hot iron two inches beneath the ſoft place, carrying your hand upward into the ſoft and moſt matterative place, to draw forth the corruption downwards, then taint it with Flaxe or Hurds dipped into molten Hogs greaſe, and lay alſo a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe upon it, renewing it for four or five dayes once every day, to get forth the fire: after this, take of Turpentine of *Venice*, halfe a pound thrice waſhed, and dryed from the water, the yolks of two Egges, and of

Saffaron one penny worth in powder; incorporate all theſe together very well, then with a probat ſearch the depth of the ſorance, and taint it with a ſpunge full as bigge as the hole of the wound, and as long, and convey the taint down to the very bottome, well anoynted with the ſaid medicine. but this muſt be done with the help of your inſtrument, and then cover it with a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe, renewing it twice a day, but when the ſwelling is alaid, then uſe no plaiſter, and in ſhort time it will be perfectly whole and ſound. ✠ This is a very good cure. Another:

Firſt ripen and open it as before is taught you, and apply Hogs greaſe to fetch forth the fire, then heale it thus.

Take Roman Vitreall, Allum and Roſe water, of each two ounces, boyle all theſe together on a quick fire till they do come to be as hard as a ſtone, and then beat it into a very fine powder, and when you are to dreſſe the ſore, firſt dippe a taint into Vnguentum Egiptiacum, and ſo rowle it in the ſaid powder, and convey the taint with the help of your inſtrument, to the very bottome, and it will in ſhort time make it perfectly whole and ſound. ✠ This powder being ſtrewed upon any old ſore or ulcer, will both heat and dry it up. Another:

Powder for old ſores.

Take of Quick-ſilver one ounce, let it be well mortified with faſting ſpittle, and mixe with it tryed Hogs greaſe the quantity of a Hens Egge, and Brimſtone pulveriſed; incorporate theſe very well together, and anoynt the ſwelling very well with this unguent; having thus done, take preſently of red Tarre one penny worth, of the reddeſt and beſt, of Hogs greaſe halfe a ponnd, and of green Copperas and bay Salt of each one handfull, both made into fine powder; boyle all theſe on the fire exceeding well, and then boyling hot (even as it comes from the fire) with a clout faſtened upon the end of a ſtick; apply this medicine upon the place (being ſo lately anointed with the Quick-ſilver, Hogs greaſe, and Brimſtone) and thus by ſcalding it three or foure mornings together, you ſhall after theſe mornings but onely warme the Tarre medicine upon the fire, ſo that it be but molten, and apply it, and it will be cured; for this ſcalding of the place doth ſo kill the malice of the *Fiſtula*, that it can never breake to annoy the *Horſe* any further. ✠ And thus with this medicine I have not onely cured many *poll-evils*, but ſundry other *Fiſtulaes*; it cureth all impoſtumations and foule Vlcers, being thus applyed.

CHAP.

Hippoph. *What is good in case of* Purfiveneſſe *or ſhortneſſe of* Breath?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe commeth by two meanes: the firſt *naturall*, the ſecond *accidentall*; *naturall*, as when a *horſe* is (as we doe uſually ſay) *cock-thropled*, for that his *throppell* or *winde-pipe* being too long, and ſo becomes crooked as his *winde* is thereby ſo ſtraightned or ſtopped, as that he is not able to draw it in and put it forth with that eaſe and pleaſure that other *horſes* doe that are looſe *thropled*, for that the *winde-pipe* is (I ſay) ſtraightned, which doth convey his breath into his *lungs*, and vent it forth againe. In like manner, a *horſe* becommeth *purſive* and *ſhort winded*, when the *pipe* is too much filled, with fat or other *phlegmaticke* ſtuffe, whereby he is very much ſuffocated, which cauſeth his *lungs* to labour the more, and therefore if you ſhall be pleaſed to follow my counſell, never breed with that *horſe* that is *cock-thropled*.

This diſeaſe commeth ſecondly by *accident*, when a *horſe* ſhall be too hard ſtrained upon his water, like as many of your ignorant *Iockries* uſe to doe, when morning and evening they doe make them *watering courſes* (as they are frequently ſo termed) ſo alſo this infirmity commeth by riding, gallopping, or ſtraining a *horſe* upon a full *ſtomacke*, before he hath either digeſted his meat, or emptied himſelfe; for by this meanes *phlegmaticke humours* do diſtill out of the *head* into the *winde-pipe*, and ſo fall upon the *lungs*, where they doe reſt, and there congeale, hindring the drawing of his *breath*: it comes alſo by Colds, Glanders, and the like; the ſignes are ſo apparant, as that they need no diſcription, onely this inconvenience (beſides many more) it bringeth with it, as to be heavy, ſad, and dull in travell, be marvellous ſubject to ſweats, and be ready to fall down if he be but a little ſtrained. A right skilfull *Ferrier* not long ſince told me of a ſtrange cure in this kinde, which a Gentleman *Groome* relateth to him of a Gelding which the *Groome* had in his ſaid keeping, who was ſo *purſive* (or as we plainely ſay) *broken-winded*, as that he became almoſt unuſefull, and his cure was after this manner; he ſuffered his Gelding to eate what he would, as well his fill (*viz.*) of good Hay, as of Provender, but debarred him of all drink for the ſpace of two or three dayes together, then leaping his backe, he rode him upon a foot pace to the water, at which time he ſuffered him to drink his fill, then comming forth of the water, he clapt ſpurres ſuddenly to him, and ran him with a looſe hand upon the top of his ſpeed ſo long, untill for want of *breath* he fell with him, and for ſome time lay as if he were dead, but recovering *breath*, he aroſe, and being well recovered of his *winde*, he rode him into the water the ſecond time, where he alſo drank, and being come out of the water, he did as before,

before, and so being againe ridden from off his wind, he fell like as at first, having thus the second time recovered breath, hee gave him water the third time, and then rode him as formerly, but now this third time being fallen, when he began to get *breath* again he coughed most vehemently, at what time through the violence of his coughing, the Gelding cast forth of his *mouth*, and that out of his *wind pipe* a hard lumpe of congealed *Flegmatick stuffe* of a good bignes, which by this meanes brought up, the Gelding was ever after freed from the malady, and made sound, and from that houre, had the use of his *winde*, as ably, and as well as ever before, and this was the story which one of the ablest *Ferriers* I do know in *England* delivered unto me (as he affirmed, and I do beleeve him, for that I do know him to be a right honest man) from the *mouth* of the *Groome*, who with many vehement asseverations affirmed the thing to be most true, nevertheless albeit I do Mathematically beleeve that the *Groome* delivered this history to the *Ferrier*, I must say with the *French man Ie croy en Dieu*: But leaving this famous *Groome* to his rare *cure*, let us proceed to cures that are more probable, and now of such cures as I have met with for this disease. You shall participate.

Purfivenes or shortnes of breath.

Take of new Milke one pint, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pint, give him this bloud warme, which done, put downe his throate two new laid Egges, do thus three or foure mornings together, and then you shall perceive amendment, but for his Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and his Oates well wet in good Ale or Beere, and let his drinke bee altogether white water. ✠. This is very good Another.

Keepe your *horse* three or foure daies to a spare Diet, before you do administer to him; then give him this drinke: Take Fenugreecke three ounces, of Bay-berries one ounce and a halfe, of the inner rind of Elder halfe a pound, the whites of six new laid Egges, of browne Sugar Candy, water-Cressets, Prim-rose leaves, if they may bee had, red Mints, red Fennell, white or Hawethorne leaves, of each one pound, bray all these together in a Morter, (the Spices before beaten by themselves) and when they be well powdred, put to the Ingredients Ale one quart, and so boyle it, and after straine it, and so give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* to drinke bloud warme, and set him upon the Trench, and let him fast six houres after, then give him meat, and an houre after that, give him a warme Mash, or white Water, and let him be kept to a strickt Dyet, and let his drinke be Mashes or white Water, nine daies together after, and his Hay sprinkled with Water, and his Provender wet in Ale or Beere; and thus you may cure him, ✠. With this medicine I have don very great cures. Another.

Take the guts of a Hedge-hogge, and hang them in an Oven till they be dry, then make them into powder, then take three or foure spoonefuls of the powder, and put it into sweet Wine, Ale, or Beere,

and

and ſo give it him to drinke, and the reſidue of the powder mix with the powder of Anniſeeds and Lycoris, and with ſweet Butter make it into Pils, and give him two or three of the Pils preſently after his drench, and keepe him faſting three or foure houres after, then you may give him Hay firſt ſprinkled with water, and after Provender or Bread wet or moiſtned in good Ale or Beere, putting alſo thereunto of this powder, and if you have not enough of this powder to ſerve, then ; Take of Comin, Lycoris, Centaury, and Anniſeedes, of each like much, make theſe into fine powder, and give him thereof two ſpoonfuls with his provender, and put alſo into his Maſhes and bread of the powder of Fennell-ſeede, mixed with the powder of brimſton; this is very good for this malady, for I have ſeen a *horſe* for a month together, to eate no other Provender but what hath been mixed with this powder, and alſo his Maſhes and white water, ſo made and compounded, and I have alſo brought him to drinke new Milke mingled with the powder of Brimſtone, by meanes whereof he hath been the ſooner recovered, and made perfectly ſound : X. and this is very good. Another.

Firſt let him *bleud*, then take of ſweet Wine one pint, and of the juyce of Hore-hound halfe a pound, of the Oyle of Frankincenſe halfe an ounce, of the powder of Anniſeed, Lycoris, and browne-Sugar-Candy of each halfe an ounce, let all theſe be made into fine powder, incorporated well together, and give it him once or twice in the weeke, for a while, and ride him not at all that day you drench him, but keepe him warme clothed, and well littered, and let him ſtand upon the Trench foure houres after faſting, then give him meat, and three houres after a ſweet Maſh : Putting thereinto of the powder of Lycoris, and Anni-ſeeds, of this I never made tryall but it hath beene highly commended unto me for right good. Another.

Take of Barley, two gallons, ſteepe it in water two dayes, and ſhift the water every day, then take it cleane from the water wherein it was laſt ſteeped, and boyle it in three gallons of faire cleere water till it burſt, putting thereto of Anniſeeds, and Lycoris, and of Raiſins of the Sunne ſtoned of each one pound ; and ſo let it boyle one houre, then take it from the fire, & ſtrain it very dry, and put unto the liquor of honey one pint, and of Sugar-Candy in powder ſixe ounces, then put the liquor into a clean earthen Pot, or bottle keeping it cloſe ſtopped, and thereof give your *horſe* bloud warme, foure mornings together, the quantity of an Ale pint at a time, and let him eate the Barly if he will, howſoever put it not away ; but heat ſome of it every day : and being hot, put it into a bagge, and therewith perfume his head. ✠. This is very good, for I have often uſed it. Another.

Firſt you muſt keep him to a very ſpace Dyet and inure him, five or ſixe daies to eate his Oates ſteeped in Chamber-ly, and after that.

Take

1 Take of Bayberries, Fennell, Cummin, Smallege, Fenugreak, Fearne-roots dryed, and Lycoris foure ounces in the whole, or, of each halfe an ounce, according to the bignes, age, ſtrength, or Corpulency of the *Horſe*, make all theſe into powder, then take one part
2 of the powder, and put unto it of freſh or ſweet Butter halfe a pound, and of new Milke halfe a pint, and ſo give it your *horſe* bloud warm:
3 the next day do the like with the other halfe of the powder, and the third day let him not forth of the Stable, & give it him ſo long as he ſhall be in *Phyſicke*, for his drinke let it be white water made of Barly meale, but not with Wheate bran, and let him ſtand upon the Trench, at leaſt two houres before his drench, and two houres after, then after that give him that which followeth.

4 Take of freſh Butter halfe a pound of good Agarick, night-ſhade,
5 and Caſſia, of each one ounce, make all theſe into Pils (being firſt powdered, ſearced, and well mixed,) and adminiſter them to your *Horſe*, then give him of white Wine halfe a pint, whereby the better to cauſe him to ſwallow Pils, the fift day let him reſt, and keepe him alwaies warme covered, and well littered, and if you do percive him to bee looſe in his *body*, and that hee hath purged well, let him reſt three or foure daies quiet, without doing any thing unto him, but if he hath not purged after one daies reſt only, then give him this drinke.

Take Mithridate, Diacartami, Senæ of each two ounces, and of good white Wine one pint, mixe and brew all theſe together, and ſo give it him to drinke, and let him reſt three daies, giving him every one of theſe three dayes about noone of freſh Butter onely, halfe a pound, made into the manner of *Pils*, theſe three dayes being ended, you muſt adminiſter unto him as followeth, and continue it weekely till he be perfectly cured.

Take of Agarick, Alloes, and of Diacartami of each one ounce, of Saffaron, Mirrh halfe an ounce, make all theſe into fine powder, and ſo make them into *Pils* with freſh Butter foure ounces, and give it to your *Horſe*, and then preſently after give him of white Wine one pint, to waſh down the *Pils*. ✠. This is a moſt excellent cure, and by me often practiſed. Another.

Take of white Wine one pint, of Sallet-oyle three quarts, of Alloes, & Lycoris, of each one ounce, of Colloquintida, of Agarick, & Mirrh, of each halfe an ounce, of Ariſtolochia-rotunda three drams, of Night-ſhade one ounce, of Bay-berries three drammes, make all theſe into fine powder, then take of Venice Turpentine two drams, of *mel roſarum* three ounces, mix all theſe together, and make it bloud warme, and ſo give it your *Horſe* to drinke with a horne, but give him no Oates in fifeteene daies, and let his drinke be white water, it will not bee good to give him much Hay, but Wheate flower, which ſhould not be much beaten or threſhed, and inſtead of his Oates give him Wheate bran, or Barly meale, and keepe him warme ſix dayes after

after let him *bloud*, in the *Neck*. ✠. Let him have this drink twice to wit, after the first drinke let him rest one day, and then drench him againe, as you did before. Another. First give him this *purgation*.

Take of fresh Butter halfe a ponud, of Sene, and of Agarick, of each halfe an ounce, made into fine powder, of Alloes, and of loafe Sugar, both powdred of each one ounce, of Cordiall powder halfe an ounce, make all these into fine powder; then

Take common-hony foure ounces, mix and beat all these together, and so make them into Pils, and give them to your *Horse*, but before you do, administer these *Pils*, he must stand upon the Trench two houres, and so likewise two houres after; that day give him no Oates, and let his drinke be white water, and for your other directions you may give him his allowance of Oates all the other daies, but you must then wet them either in strong Ale or good Beere, and you may travell or give him exercise, but with moderation all those other daies, and three times every day you shall give him three or foure handfuls of Wheate bran prepared, as before is shewed you in *lib.* 2. *Chap.* 9. §. 4. *F.* and thus continue him to this dyet at your pleasure. ✠. I have made tryall of this cure, and I doe know it to bee right good, for in a month or six weekes I have brought a Gaunt and Pursive *Horse* to have a *belly* as round, fresh, & as cleer, as that of a sucking Colt, nor is this cure very chargable or costly; you must give him Wheate straw insteed of Hay, only in the night you may give him Hay, provided it be sprinkled with water.

§. 12. P.

Hippoph: VV*Hat cure have you for a* Horse *that is* Prickt?

Hippos. This Sorance hath many names; It is called *Accloyed*, *Cloyd*, *Retraite*, *Prick't*, *&c.* All which names, wee for the most part do fetch from the *French*, and all is but only plaine *Prick't*, which occurreth to the *horse* eyther through the unskilfulnes or negligence of the *Ferrier*, in the driving of his *Nayles*, or in the weak-nesse of the *Nayles* of their evill pointing, or if a *Nayle* should fortune to breake in the quick, and not be immediatly drawne forth, it will in short time fester in the *flesh*, and soone after imposthumate, and so in time beget a fowle Sore, which may aske much Art to Cure. The signes be, that he will complaine when he treadeth upon stony or hard ground specially, which so soone as you perceive, you have then iust cause to suspect him to bee *Prick't* if hee were lately shod, wherefore the better to make tryall, your way must be to search the *foote* whereof he complaineth, and you shall no sooner put your Pinsors, to the place, but that he will presently shrinke in his *foote* by reason that the nipping of the Pinsons doth paine him in the *quick*, or if you do but cast water upon the *foote* whereon he halteth, in short time

you ſhall perceive the *hoofe* to be ſooner dry againſt the *nayle* or place which grieveth him, before any other part of the *hoofe*. Again, if you ſhall with your hammer knock upon the top of the *clenches*, when you do come to that *nayle* which grieveth him, he will lift up his *foot*; ſo likewiſe there be many other ſuch like ſignes, whereby to diſcover the place *prickt*, which be familiar to every common Smith, and therefore I ſhall not need to ſpeake any more thereof. But let us now paſſe to the Cure.

Prickt. Firſt therefore after you have made tryall with your *Pinſons*, or otherwiſe, as before is inculcated; pluck off the *ſhooe*, and either with your drawing iron, or your Butter, ſearch the place to the very bottome, and if you can ſee or feele any ſtub of any naile therein, leave not till you have got it away; and if the place be feſtered or matterative, wipe or waſh the wound very well, ſo as you may leave no part thereof behinde; then take of the tender tops of red Nettles, a little handfull, and ſtamp them in a morter, of *Badgers greaſe* two ounces, of red Wine Vineger, and of black Sope, of each two ſpoonfuls, or for want of *Badgers greaſe*, take the like quantity of the fat of Bacon, which is ſalt: Beat all theſe together in a morter to an Vnguent, and ſtop the wound well therewith, and after cover it with Hurds, and ſo tack on the ſhooe again, and do not remove it in two dayes, and when you dreſſe it the ſecond time with the ſaid Vnguent, you may ſhooe him up, but drive no naile at that place, and ſo you may travell him, for he will be whole and ſound. ✠ This is an excellent Cure, and I have often uſed the ſame. Another:

Open the ſorance well as before is ſhewed you, and waſh it cleane with Vineger and Salt, and then lay unto it the tender tops of Elder buds beaten to a very Vnguent, if it be in Summer that thoſe buds or leaves may be had, if not, then in Winter, take inward rinde of Elder ſo pounded and brayed, and upon that, melt into the wound hard Tallow with a hot iron, and then lay upon it to keep it cloſe ſtopped, ſome Hurds, and ſo tack on the ſhooe, and in few times dreſſing, he will be whole. ✠ With theſe two receits I have done many (whereof ſome have been very great) Cures. Another.

Firſt open the place, cleanſe the ſore well as before; then take red Nettles, and Bay Salt, of each like much, beat them unto a ſalve, then fill up the hole of the wound therewith; that done, lay upon it bolſter-wiſe Hurds, and melt upon the Hurds hard Tallow to keep wet, durt, and gravell from it, which would annoy the ſorance; then tack on the ſhooe, cauſing the *foot* to be well pared, and drive no nayle neere the place, and after twice or thrice dreſſing, you may ride him, for then the more exerciſe he hath, the ſooner will he be whole. ✠ This is ſpeciall good. Another:

Take off the ſhooe, and cauſe him to be well pared and ſearched as before, then take of Turpentine, brown Sugar Candy powdred, and white Ginger in powder alſo, of each the quantity of a Garden-

Beane,

Beane, then melt them all together in an iron ſpoon, and ſo poure it into the wound hot, and lay Hurds upon it, and after do as you are directed in the former Cures. ✠ This alſo is very good. Another:

Search the place as before is ſhewed, then take Roch Allum, and burn it, and make it into fine powder, and ſo fill the hole therewith, and lay a boulſter of Hurds upon it, and after do as before you are taught. ✠ And this is very good. Another:

Search the place as before is ſhewed, then take of Goats greaſe, or for want thereof, Deers-ſuet, or Sheeps-ſuet, of Turpentine, Sallet oyle, and new waxe, of each two ounces, melt them all together, and whilſt it is upon the fire, adde thereunto of ordinary Honey, three ounces, and of Sanguis Draconis one dram made into fine powder, incorporate all theſe together upon a gentle fire, and bring it to an oyntment, and of this you muſt poure a ſufficient quantity into the wound warm, then put on Hurds, and do as before is preſcribed you, and let the *foot* be very well ſtopped, and let him come in no wet if you can prevent the ſame, neither let any nayle be driven neer the grieved place. ✠ This is one of the beſt Receits of this kinde. Another:

Search the place as before, and cleanſe it with Salt and Vineger. Then take Salt, and make it into fine powder, then take foure times ſo much Turpentine, and boyle them together, and ſo poure it hot into the wound, and then put upon it the powder of Brimſtone diſſolved in white Wine, and lay upon it Hurds, and then do as before is declared. ✠ Very good Another moſt ſingular receit which the *French* do call a *Reſoire*. Firſt ſearch and waſh as before. Then

Take of oyle de *Bay* four ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and ſet it upon a gentle fire, ſtirring it, till you have brought it to an Vnguent, with which dreſſe him as before is taught you.

§ 13. *P.*

Hippoph. VVHat hold you good wherewith to perfume a Horſe?

Hippoſ. Perfumes are very neceſſary to be applyed to *horſes* in ſome cales, *viz.* in Colds, Glanders, Rhumes, Murs, Pozes, Catars, &c. for the better expiation of which maladies, Perfumes are admirable helps, for ſometimes they breake a cold, ſometimes they diſſipate congealed *humours*, which do annoy the *head*, *braine*, and *ſtomacke* of the *horſe*, ſometimes they expell and cauſe the *horſe* to vent, and to ſend away at his *noſe* and *mouth*, much filth and corruption, which doth ſtop, clog, and peſter his *head* and *body*, and ſometimes they do ſiccicate and dry up many bad *humours*, which are engendred in the *head* and *braine*, and ſo likewiſe many vertues *Perfumes* have whereof very many of our *Ferriers* here in *England* are moſt ignorant: for did they truly know the nature of *Perfumes*,

fumes, and how rightly to apply them in their proper places, they might eaſily do cures for which they ſhould be not a little admired. The ingredients and ſimples wherewith we uſually perfume *ſicke horſes*, are many, as Frankincenſe, Storax, Benjamin, Brimſtone, Olibanum, &c. ſometimes Hearbs, Roots, Graine or Corne, and ſuch like things, which are very much behooſefull for the cures of ſuch diſeaſes, for which they are frequently adminiſtred, as you ſhall finde in many of my Cures ſet you down at large: yet I will for example ſake ſet you down two or three for your better ſatisfaction.

1 *Perfume.* Take the beſt Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincenſe, of each one ounce, bruiſe all theſe, and mixe them well together, but not too ſmall, and when you are to perfume your *Horſe*, take all theſe, ſo well mixed, and putting thereof upon a Chafing-diſh and coles, cover the coles with a Tunnell, and ſo apply the ſmall end to one *noſtrill* at once, and after to the other, to the end he may receive the ſmoke or fume up into his *head*, and let him be thus perfumed a quarter of an houre together. ✠ Another:

2 *Perfume.* Take Brimſtone made into fine powder, and mixe with it freſh Butter and Sallet oyle as much as will ſuffice, let him not take this with fire, like as he did the former, but let it be conveyed into his *noſe* with a linnen clowt rowled up in the faſhion of a great Taynt, and this will bring forth much bad matter. ✠ Another:

3 *Perfume.* Take Penny-royall, Sage, and Wheate, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyle them in faire water till the Wheat do burſt, put the Wheat and Hearbs being firſt drayned from the water ſo hot as it commeth from the fire, and ſo faſten the bag unto the *head* of the *horſe*, whereby he may receiue the fume up into his *head*. And thus you may perfume him at pleaſure, and as you ſhall ſee cauſe. ✠ The reſidue of *perfumes*, and the manner how to apply them, you ſhall finde among my Cures, and therefore it will be ſuperfluous for me to intreat any further of them.

§. 14. P.

Hippoph. WHat is the beſt manner of adminiſtring Purgations to a Horſe?

Hippoſ. As touching *Purgations*, I have ſpoken before very largely, as well for inward *purging*, as for outward, and therefore what I ſhall ſay more, is in effect but one and the ſame thing: nevertheleſſe for your further ſatisfaction, I will briefly deliver unto you, what can be ſaid of *Purgations*. Five wayes we have whereby to purge a 1 *horſe*, *viz.* by *Pils*, *Potions*, *Cliſters*, *Suppoſitories*, and *Graſſe*. *Pils* for the moſt part do purge and cleanſe the *head* and *braine*, by drawing the *peccant humours* down into the *body*, and ſo ſending them forth with the *excrements*. *Potions* do free the *ſtomack*, *belly* and *guts*, from 2 ſuch naughty *humours* which Glanders, Colds, and Surfets have engendred

gen-ted in the *body*. *Cliſters* are of ſundry, and thoſe of different natures, ſome to eaſe and aſſuage griefes, ſome to allay the boiſtneſſe and ſharpneſſe of evill *humours*, ſome to *looſen*, and ſome to *looken*, or to heale as in caſe of *Vlcers* and old Sores within the *body* principally, and thoſe do alſo cleanſe the *guts* and *fleſh* the inward parts and *ſpirits vitall*, and prepare the *body* before hand for the receiving of *purging pils* or *potions*. Suppoſitories help the diſeaſes in the *guts*, being of nature and condition more gentle then *Cliſters* are, and may be applyed when *Cliſters* cannot. It therefore remaineth that the skill of the *Ferrier* be ſuch, as to be able judiciouſly to underſtand the ſeverall natures of every of theſe things, to know how to make choice of his ingredients and ſimples aptly, to underſtand how to compound them punctually and artificially, to diſcern rightly before he do adminiſter what be the *humours* and maladies wherewith the *creature* is annoyed and viſited, as whether (*V. G.*) it be *Choler*, *Melancholy*, *Flegme*, or *Rhume*, as alſo in what part of the *body* the *humour* offenſive, is moſt predominant, and what ſimples will purge or remove thoſe evill *humours*, for it is requiſite he be able to know right well, and *ad unguem*, the nature and property of every one of them in particular, by reaſon that ſome are much more aſperous and violent then others be, yea many ſimples are *ſtrong poyſons*, if they be not well prepared and corrected, and yet their qualities well weighted and compounded by true Art, and great good judgement, will work wonderfull effects. Thoſe ſimples which be ſtrong, are *Collaquintida*, Scamony, Elebore, &c. the more gentle are Manna, Caſſia, Whey, Prunes, &c. But thoſe that be of the meane, or indifferent working, are Rubarb, Agarick, Aloes, Sene, &c. and this I am bold to intimate unto you, to the end you may the better underſtand their natures, vertues, and qualities, and come to know the more ſecurely how to work when occaſion ſhall be offered. The fift and laſt way of *purging* is by graſſe, eſpecially if the *horſe* be *ſurfetted*, and hath been over-toyled the Winter before, for this muſt be done in the *Summer* time, when graſſe is in its beſt heart; but that graſſe which will ſcoure and purge moſt, is a new mown meadow, for that will rake his *guts* very well, nor will be in ſuch a place gather fleſh; I do therefore counſell you not to ſuffer him to remain in ſuch grounds above fourteen or fifteen dayes, and then take him forth, and put him into ſome other paſture, where the graſſe hath not been touched with the *Sythe*, for then he will *belly* well, and in ſhort time recover much *fleſh*, and become fat and luſty. This manner of ſcowring will cauſe him to empty himſelfe well, to purge, and ſend away all his bad *humours* and *ſurfets*, eaſe his *limbs* marvellouſly well, do his *legges* and *feet* very much good, refine his corrupt *blood*, and make him agill and full of *ſpirit*. To mow green Rye before it be eared, is alſo moſt wholeſome, for it ſcowreth, cleanſeth, and cooleth the *body* very much; ſo doth the leaves of Sallowes, and of the Elme: but as touching

3

4

ing

ing the administring of Scowrings and *Purgations* in the Stable, you must understand that some skilfull *Ferriers* who have been far travelled in this *Mystery*, have very diligently and studiously set you down many very good rudiments and instructions, wherewith to worke with all security, whose observations I do advise you punctually to observe: as first the seasons of the yeere are to be pondred: (*V.G.*) in winter, if his *body* be to be purged, it must be first prepared by *Phlebothomy* or *Bloud-letting*, together with artificiall dyet, therefore you shall administer eyther *Suppository*, *Clyster*, *Potion*, or *Pill*, *&c.* You must keep him a day or two from hay, straw, or such like hard-meats of digestion, for that those things will be a great impediment to the working of *physicke* or medicine, and he must also be kept for a time from meate, because *emptinesse* is a great helpe to *physicall operation*, otherwise it may happen (as it doth oftentimes) that more danger then good may accrew to the *Horse*. Wherefore two or three dayes before you do intend to *purge* him, let his meate be eyther Wheate or Rye-bran prepared, like as before is taught you, and give him also either good bread made of purpose with Beanes, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oates well sifted which must be dry and sweet, and let his drinke be white water onely, and that morning you intend to give him a *purge*, let him besasting from either meate or drinke, but about six or seven a clock in the morning, give him this or some other *purge*, which I have already taught you, or shall hereafter, which must be correspondent unto the malady, for which you are to *purge* him, for one *Purgation* will not sort to every infirmity, but this *purge* is most profitable for the causes which I shall presently deliver unto you: And this it is, *viz.*

1 *Purgation* Take of white Wine one pint, or of strong new Ale one quart, so much of the powder of Mechoacan of the best, and choycest as you may take up upon a shilling at foure times, give him this drinke warm with a horne, then Trot him but a matter of a Mile gently upon good ground, and so set him up warme, and let him stand upon the Trench till one of the clock, then give him a warme Mash. This will purge and fetch away his filth and slime, and carry away his *peccant humours*, which Surfets have engended; halfe an houre after hee hath had his Mash, give him Bread or else a few Oats mingled with wheat bran, and that little and oft for feare of cloying his *stomacke*, and at night give him white water, and so give him bread and hay sprinkled with water for all night. ✠. This is an excellent *Purge*. Another.

2 *Purgation* If it be in the spring prepare him as before, then for three or foure daies together give him, greene Rye so much as he will eate, and after feed him with Bread, or else Oates and Bran, like as you are told before, but insteed of Hay, continue him those nights with greene Rye, by reason his teeth will be on edge. ✠. This cooleth his *body*, and cleareth it from all *Flegmatique* and *Rhumatique humours*: as

for

for his *bloud-letting*, let that bee according as your judgement shall dictate unto you, and you may use this so long as you may see cause ✠. If you doe perceive your *Horse* to bee sicke, Surfetted, full of colds, or otherwise ill disposed, whether in *Summer* or in *Winter*, after you have opened a *Veine*, give him this *Purge*.

3 *Purgation*

Take of Alloes, Siccatrina, made into fine powder two ounces, and make it up into *pils* with fresh or sweete Butter, and give it to your *Horse* over night, he having beene kept fasting the whole day before, and prepared also with the Dyet before prescribed; and after he hath taken those *pils*, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water the next morning early, for that will cause his *pils* to work the more kindly, that day, and so let him fast till night, during which time he will *purge* freely; then at night (he having stood upon the Trench all day,) give him white water, and after Oates and Branne, and then give him Hay sprinkled with water for all night, nevertheless he may not the first day *purge*, by reason that some *horses* are of so strong a *Constitution*, as that *Physicke* will not easily or soddenly worke, but then bee you confident it will the next day: you must therefore be carefull how you do order him. After his *purging* keep him still warm clothed and well littered, take him from the Trench, and put on his Coller-halter, give him sweet Mash or white water, and after feed him well, but by discretion, both with Hay, Oates, and Bran, and keepe him to white water two or three dayes after, or longer, if you shall so please, and when you give him cold water, let it bee with exercise. ✠. This I have often tryed. Another.

If your *horse* bee newly taken from Grasse, and that you hold it needful his *body* be cleansed, & to free him of his many bad *humours*, which eyther his Grasse or former Surfets might bring: Then first Rake him, and administer unto him the *Clyster* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. §. 8. letter C. Clyster* 4. and the next day after give him this drinke.

4 *Purgation*

Take of the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of London Treacle two ounces, mixe and brew all together well, and so give it him bloud-warme: this done, keepe him upon the Trench warme clothed, and well littered sixe houres after, and let his drinke be a sweet Mash, or white water, and let his Racke meate be sweet Wheate-straw, Oates, and Branne. X. This both purgeth and comforteth. Another which must bee given the next day.

5 *Purgation*

Take of white-Wine one pint, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused all night in the Wine; the next morning betimes straine it, and put into it of the best and choycest Alloes one ounce, made into fine powder, and Agarick halfe an ounce, of Licoris powdred one spoonfull, warme this a little upon the fire, and mix and brew it well together, and so give it your *Horse* bloud-warme; then

then walke or ride him gently a quarter of an houre, and ſo ſet him up warm clothed and littered, nor let any cold ayre come unto him, neither let him eate or drink in ſix hours after, and at night give him a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and let his Rack-meat be ſweet Wheat ſtraw, and Oates with Bran. ✠ The next day (if the *ſigne* be good) open a *veine* in the *necke*, and prick him in the *mouth*, and if the *bloud* be bad, take from him two quarts, but if good, then not fully one quart; keep him warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, and put into his drink, either the powder of Brimſtone, or of Fenugrick, of Turmerick, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them, which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink, one ſpoonfull at once. ✠ Theſe are very ſoveraign purgative receits, whereby to coole the *body*, *purge choler*, and other *peccant humours*, and to purifie and refine the *bloud* but beſides, this is not onely good for *horſes* newly taken from graſſe, but for other ſick, ſurfetted, and diſeaſed *Horſes*.

Another:

Purgation. 6

Take of Gentian two ounces, ſlice it into very ſmall ſlices, then boyle it in Beer one quart, till it come to one pinte, and give it him bloud warm, but it will make him very ſick for a ſhort time, but have no feare, for the *potion* will do him much good: let him faſt upon it four or five hours at leaſt, then give him a warm Maſh, or white water, and the next day give him this receit.

Take of Life-Honey, or for default thereof, ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oates that he is to eate, which muſt be mixed by rubbing the Oates and Honey betwixt your hands, ſo that the Honey may be very well mixed, let him eate his Oates thus mingled, untill you do finde him to be quite cured, which will be when he hath quite done running at the *noſe*. ✠ This is one of the beſt, and moſt certain cordials that I know, neither have I made uſe of any ſo much as of this, for the time I have known the ſame, for this diſperſeth all flegme and choler; it alſo purgeth the *head* and *brain*; it purifieth the *bloud*, it venteth the evill *humours*; it cauſeth good digeſtion, and freeth a *Horſe* from Glanders, Colds, Catars, Rhumes, Running at the *noſe*, and the like.

Chap.

Chap. XVII.

§ 1. Q.

Hippoph.

What cure have you for the quick *or* running Scab?

Hippoſ. This is a noyſome diſeaſe and infectious, a very formall *mainge*, and meer neighbour to the *leproſie*, or *Elephantique diſeaſe*. It commeth by ſurfet taken by over-riding, when the *bloud* is over-hot; it doth putrifie and corrupt the *bloud*, and conſequently the *fleſh*, and at the laſt, breaketh forth into this malady, which we call the *Quick-ſcab*. And the reaſon why we do give it this name is, for that it runneth from one member of the *horſe* to the other, ſometimes it will be in the *neck*, and at other times in the *breaſt* or the *horſe*, now in the *maine*, and then in the *tayle*, &c. The cure is,

First ſhave or clip away the *hayre* from that place viſited, ſo cloſe as may be, and take off the *ſcurfe* and *ſcabs* with ſome old Curry-Comb, Oyſter-ſhell, or ſome ſuch like thing. Then *Quick ſcab.*

Take faire cold water, with a linnen cloth, waſh and bathe the places very well, and lay the linnen cloth well wet upon the place, and ſo touch it no more in *ten* dayes, and if in that time the *quick-ſcab* do not heale, then dreſſe it as before, and ſo a third time, or a fourth, or ſo oft as neceſſity requireth, till it be throughly healed. But remember that the day before you thus dreſſe the ſorance after this manner, you take (to a reaſonable quantity) of *bloud* from the *neck-vein*. ✠ This is an approved cure. Another as good as the former.

First let him *bloud*, and then ſhave or clip away the *hayre* cloſe, as in the former cure. Then take Mallowes, and Marſh-Mallowes, of each like much, and boyle them in faire water as much as will ſuffice, till the hearbs be ſoft, and with the hearbs and decoction, bathe and waſh the ſorance two or three dayes together warme; then take of common Honey one pinte, Coperas, Allum of glaſſe, and Verdigrece, all made into fine powder, of each four ounces, Turpentine and Quick-ſilver mortified, of each two ounces; boyle all theſe together with the Honey unto an Vnguent, and herewith dreſſe him every day till he be whole. ✠ This I ſay is very good.

§ 262.

Hippoph. *How doe you cure a* Quitter-bone?

Hippos. This commeth to a *horse* by some hurt he hath taken in the *foot*, either by a pricke with a nayle in shooing, or by graveling, or by a stub, or the like, when it was not so well healed, that it impostumated, and so brake out above the *cronet*, which bred the malady; or else being neglected, it brake out above the *hoofe* before it was perceived. It is bred also sometimes by a hurt upon the *hoofe*, by a blow, or by striking one *foot* upon the other; and sometimes it commeth by evill *humours* which fall down into that place, and it groweth most usually upon the in-side of the *foot*, where when it beginneth, it causeth a hard round swelling upon the *cronet* of the *hoofe*, betwixt the *heele* and the *quarter* of the *long talent*, it begetteth an Vlcer at what time it doth beginne to impostumate, and it breaketh out above the *Cronet*, like as I said before. The signes I have already given you, for the place will be swelled the bignesse of a hasle nut, and the *horse* will hault right down. The cure is, so soon as it is espied, to open it above; if it doe begin to be soft, then

Quitter-bone.

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and infuse it in the strongest white Wine Vineger can be gotten, forty eight houres, and then apply it to the sore, and it will so eat about the *Quitter bone*, as that you may pluck it away with your *finger* or *pliers*, which so soon as the *bone* or *gristle* is taken forth, you may heale up the wound with your Coperas water, and green oyntment prescribed in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. § 4. *G.* till it be whole, but he must not come into any wet during the time of the cure. ✠ This is very good. Another:

First cut the *hoofe* to the *quicke*, then

Take a Snake the greatest you can get, and cut off his *head* and *taile*, and flea it, and so boyle it in water till the *flesh* come from the *bone*, and then you may bring the *flesh* to be a very oyntment; put of this into the sorance down to the bottome, and this will kill the *Quitter-bone*, and dry up and heale it; but you must not suffer him to come into any wet, dirt, or gravell, during the time you have him in cure. ✠ With this medicine I cured one *horse* onely, for that I had no cause to use it to any other since. Another:

Take of Arsenick the quantity of a small beane, make it into powder, and put it into the hole of the Sorance, conveying it downe unto the bottome with your instrument, and then stop the *mouth* of the wound with Hurds, and binde it on with a cloth, and a rowler, that the *Horse* may not bit it away; and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres: then open it, and if you shall perceive the wound to looke blacke within, it is a token that the Arsenick did its office in well working, then to allay the fire, and to restore the *flesh* that is thereby become

become mortified, *taynt* the hole with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together. Then take Pitch, Roſin, and Waxe, of each like much, and of Turpentine as much as of all the other three, and melt them and ſo make a Plaiſter of Leather, with which you muſt cover the top of the Sorance, but firſt be ſure to convey the aforeſaid *taint* to the bottome, and then lay on your Plaiſter, and thus dreſſe him dayly till you have gotten forth the Core, or ſharpe *Griſtle*, if the Arſenick have not eaten it out before, for if the *Griſtle* be in the bottome of the wound and uncovered, you may raiſe it with your *Fingers* or Inſtrument, and ſo pluck it quite away, for till that be out, the Sorance will not heale; that done, heale it up with your green oyntment, or elſe with this Vnguent.

Take of common-Hony, and of Verdegreece in fine powder, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, boyle this till it bee red, and therewith *Taint* the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the *mouth* of the wound open, leaſt it heale up above before it be well healed at the bottome, neyther let your *Horſe* come into any wet, or go forth of the Stable untill he be throughly cured. ✠. Thus I have cured many *Quitter-bones*. Another.

Cut the place to the quick, then take Virgin-wax, Pitch of Greece, Galbanum, Maſtick, Sagapenum, Olibanum, and Sallet-oyle, of each one ounce, and of Deere or Sheeps-ſuet halfe a pound, melt theſe upon a ſoft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith *Taint* and dreſſe the ſame till it be whole. ✠. This is alſo very good.

Chap. XVIII.

§. 1. R.

Hippophilus.

What is good to cure the Red-water?

Hippoſ. This *Red-water* is that which iſſueth out of old incurable *Vlcers*, and Sores, which when you ſhall ſee it to come forth of any wound, then be you aſſured that it is very hardly or ſeldome cured, till that Water be gotten away; for it is a ſigne that the wound is poyſoned with the ſaid *Red-water*: nor could I ever finde any cure for the *Red water*, but only one which a *Mariſhall* of *France* taught me, which is this, *viz.*

Red water. Take of the root of the hearb called *Emanuell*, alias *Bonus-Henricus*, or good *King-Henry*, or *All-good*: boyle the Rootes thereof in water, and give it him drench-wiſe with a horne bloud-warme, and this will take away the *Red-water* and you may then cure the wound with your other Salves or Vnguents.

This I had never cauſe to make tryall off in *England*; but I have beene an *Eye witneſſe* to two or three cures in this kinde, which the *Mariſhall* of whom I had the Receipt did very ſufficiently perfect. The *French* calleth this Malady, *La En Renſe*.

§ 2. R.

Hippoph. *How doe you make a* Reſtringent charge?

Hippoſ. This *Reſtringent charge* is to be applyed to broken bones, or to bones diſlocated or out of joynt, being firſt ſet, as alſo take moiſt *humours* from weeping wounds, and ſo dry up bad *humours* which do preoccupate the *body*. I will commend unto you one onely receit which ſhall be ſpeciall good.

Reſtringent charge. Take of oyle de Bay, four ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder and mixe them with your oyle de Bay very well, and therewith *Charge* the place greived. ✠. This is alſo very good to *Charge* the ſwelling of a *Back-ſinew ſpraine*.

§. 3. R.

§ 3. R.

Hippoph. VVHat cure have you for a Ring-bone?

Hippos. A *Ring-bone* commeth two waies, to wit, eyther by *Nature*, or by *Accident*; by *Nature*, when as either the *Stallion* or *Mare* have it, from whom the Colt is ingendred, whereby he taketh it as hereditary from them, and therefore (as I have formerly admoniſhed) I will diſſwade you from breeding upon any *ſuch Horſe* or *Mare* that either had or have this malady. It commeth alſo accidentally by ſome knock or blow given either by ſome other *Horſe*, or by his *Keeper* or other perſon, and ſometimes by ſome evill *humour*, which through over-heats do fall down into the *legges*, and maketh its reſidence upon the top of the *cronet*. It beginneth firſt with a ſlimy *humour*, which in time groweth to a hard griſtle; you ſhall know it, for that there will be a ſwelling round about the *cronet* of the *hoofe*, adjoyning unto the lower part of the *paſterne*, and the *hayre* will ſtare, and be briſtly, and it will cauſe the *Horſe* to hault. The cure is: firſt waſh the place, and ſhave away the *hayre*, then

Take quick or *unſlaked Lime*, newly taken from the Kill, which muſt be well burned, the beſt burned you may know by its lightneſſe, make your *lime* into fine powder, and lay it upon the place ſwelled all along of a good thickneſſe, and binde upon it a linnen cloth made faſt about the *foot*, and ſo put the *horſe* into the water, and let him ſtand in the water a pretty while, then take him forth, and unbinde the *foot*, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the *Lime* doth kill the *Ring-bone*, even unto the very root thereof. + With this receit I have cured not ſo few as a hundred *horſes* at the leaſt, but when you are thus to dreſſe your *horſe*, let him be brought cloſe to the water whereinto he is to be ridden, that ſo ſoon as you have applyed your *Lime* unto the ſorance, you may preſently put him into the water. Another. Firſt, ſhave away the *hayre* as before is adviſed, then ſcarifie the place. *Ring-bone.*

Take then Cantharides halfe an ounce, Euphorbium, and oyle de Bay of each one ounce, your Cantharides and Euphorbium muſt be made into fine powder, and then boyled with your oyle de Bay, ſtirring it continually, that it run not over, then with two or three *feathers* lay it boyling-hot upon the ſorance good and thick, let him be dreſſed in the ſame place where uſually he ſtandeth in the Stable, and let him have no litter neer him, but tye up his head ſo as he may not reach the medicine with his mouth; but when the *hayre* do begin to grow again, give the fire to the ſorance, to wit, three or four ſtraight lines right downwards, drawing the ſwelling quite croſſe, and let the edge of the iron be no thicker then the back of an ordinary knife, neither muſt you burn him any deeper then that the *skin* may look yellow. that done, apply to the place this charge.

Take

Take of Pitch and Rosin, of each like much, let them be molten together, and whilst it is hot, apply it to the place all along, from the one end of the swelling to the other, & before it be cold, clap Flocks upon it, and about three dayes after, lay on more of the said charge, and new Flocks again upon that charge, and so let it remain untill the Flokes and charge fall off of its own accord. ✣ This is also very good. Another. First wash and shave, and scarrifie, as before, then

Excretion to cure.

Take gray-Sope, and Arsnick pulverized, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the forance so far as the *Ring-bone* goeth, and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and binde a cleane linnen cloth upon it to keep it on, neither let it be removed in four and twenty hours, then take it away, and stir not the *asker* or *scab*, but onely annoint it with fresh Butter, till it doe fall away of it selfe, and so heale it up with some healing salve, whereof I have given you plenty. ✣ This I have tryed, and have found to be very good. This medicine will cure a *bone-Spaven*, *Splint*, *Curb*, or any other *bony excretion*.

§. 4. R.

Hippoph. HAve you any way to recover and make sound a Horse that is rotten?

Hippos. Truely Sir, for any man to promise that, were great precipitation, onely thus far he may wade therein, as to give ease and help to a *horse* that hath the *rot*, for it is one thing for a *Horse* to be *rotten*, and another thing for him to have the *rot*. For a *horse* to be *rotten*, is to have his inward parts wasted and consumed, or at least so *rotten*, as never possibly to be recovered, to wit, his *Liver*, *Lights*, &c. But for a *horse* to have the disease called the *rot*, I doe finde the same to be either a formall *dropsie*, or else a disease so allied neerly thereunto, as not to be distinguished easily: as we say, a Sheep is *rotten*, when his *Liver* is become foule and tainted; nevertheless men doe eate the *carkas*, and doe averre it to be good meat, wherefore the Sheep is not rotten, but hath the disease called the *rot*. This malady commeth oft times to *horses* unhandled, to wit, in their youth, whilst they be yet Colts, which be bred, and do feed in *Fenny-Marsh*, and *wet grounds*, and sometimes it commeth to them after they have bin backed and ridden, when they haue too hard and violent riding, being yet but young, whereby the *bloud* is first enflamed, and after putrified and corrupted, begetting obstructions in the *Liver*, and those do cause putrefaction, and so knots and pustils do engender in the *Liver*, which breedeth either a *Dropsie*, a *Feltricke*, or a *rot*. The signes how to know this infirmity, are these: After his journeyes his *hayre* will *stare*, his *legges* swell and burn, and when you shall presse the places swoln with your finger, upon taking your finger away, there will

will remaine a pit or dint, hee will forbeare his meat very much, and when he doth eate, it will be without any *stomacke* or *appetite*, he will pant much, lift and beat in the *flanks* many times, he will swell under the *belly*, neither will he cast his *coat* in seasonable time, when other *Horses* that be sound do, and he will be so faint of *body*, as that he will become *lunt*, and utterly to have lost his *mettle*. These and such like be the symptomes of this malady. Now come I to the cure.

Let him first *bleed* well under the *taile*, then

Take of *Mares-milke* two quarts, if the same may be had, if not, the like quantity of the milke of a *red Cow*, then take a lump of Arement, then take a young *horse* of or about the age of foure yeares, and of colour blacke, if it may be, if not, then of some other colour, run and chafe him about that he may *sweate* much, then with a *spoone*, or with some other such like instrument, rake the *sweate* from his *head*, *necke*, *breast*, *backe*, *sides*, *ribbes*, *buttocks*, *legges*, and in a word, from each part or *member* of the said *horse*, and get off the sweat so much as you can possibly, and so put your Arement and your *sweat* into the milke, which all being well mixed, give him this by equall portions three mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drinke none other drinke after it in sixe or seven houres, but immediately after his drink, let him be led forth into some *pasture* where other *horses* be, the better to cause him to *neese*, *stale*, *dung*, and *empty himselfe*; for it is very *wholesome* for him so to doe, before he either eate or drink. Having thus done, set him up warm and well littered, and if the season do serve, give him of the green blades of Rye, if not, give him Barly steeped in milk three dayes, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these drinks, if you feele him cold in the *pasterne joynts*, or that he *trippeth* or *stumbleth* as you leade him in your *hand*, meddle no further with him, for that he is past cure, otherwise for nine dayes together, after morning and evening give him white water onely, unlesse now and then a sweet Mash, and sometimes give him milke with his white water, if the *Horse* be not above nine years old, and so you may cure him: but if he be elder, this may prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. This I never did experience, but a *Noble Knight*, and a very friend told me, that he hath thus recovered sundry *Horses* which have beene visited with this disease. *Rot.*

Chap.

Chap. XVIII.

§. 1. 3.

Hippophilus.

What good Salves have you wherewith to heale up sores and wounds?

Hippos. Sir, I have many, according as I have before shewed you, but yet I will give you many more, the greatest number of which I have tryed, and I am able to commend them unto you for very good, and those not Salves onely, but Vnguents, Powders, and Waters, which be most soveraign.

Salve. Take of Perosen, and of hard Rosin, of each one pound, of Frankincense, Virgin-Wax, or for want thereof new Waxe and Sheeps suet, of each halfe a pound, of old tryed Hogs grease one pound and a quarter, boyle the Gummes and Waxe in white Wine halfe a pint, and then put unto it your Sheeps tallow and Hogs grease, and when all is well molten and incorporated, straine it, and whilst it is yet hot, put in of *Venice* Turpentine one ounce, and so work all well together, and when it is cold, poure in the liquor from the salve, which put up into a cleane galley pot, or other cleane vessell for your use. ✠ This is a most soveraign *Treate* or Salve wherewith to heale any wound (that is not come to an *Vlcer*) and so dry it up. Another most excellent powder.

Powder. Take unslaked Lime, the dry dust of Tanners Oken Bark and old shooe soles burned to a cole, of each like much, make these into fine powder, and mixe them well, and keep it in a cleane boxe or glasse for your use. ✠ This powder healeth the *buds* or *knots* of the *Farcin*, after they be broken, and it skinneth them, and if they be first washed with the juyce of Vervine and strong Vineger mingled together, and then this powder being cast upon them, will (I say) heale and skin them. It also healeth and skinneth all other sores. Another:

Oyntment. Take tryed Hogs grease halfe a pound, Verdigreece in fine powder one penny worth, boyle these upon the fire two or three walms, then take it off, and put unto it of *Venice* Turpentine halfe an ounce, and stirre it well together till it be cold. ✠ This Vnguent will heale any wound or sore in a *Horse*. Another:

Oyntment. Take of Roch-Allum a good quantity, and burn it, and as much bay Salt, and burn that also, make both these together into fine powder, then take of common Honey, and of sweet Butter, of each like much as will suffice, incorporate the Allum and Salt with the Honey

Honey and Butter by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a taint or plaister apply it. ✠ And this cureth any foule sore. This I have often tryed. Another:

Water. Take of faire water one pinte, and put into it of green Coperas, and of bay Salt, of each the quantity of a good hasle nut, both made into very fine powder; let these boyle a little upon the fire. With this wash any sore before you do apply your Salves, Vnguents, or Powders. ✠ This is a right good water. Another:

Take of common Honey two ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdigrece, and Vineger, of each one ounce, make your Allum and Verdigrece into very fine powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdred, two ounces, boyle all these a walme or two on the fire; this laid on a Spatula plaister-wise once a day, or if the wounds be deep, with a *taint*, cureth both speedily and soundly; but before you dresse him with this Salve, let the Sore be well washed and injected with the water last above mentioned, made of faire water, Coperas, and bay Salt. ✠ This is a most approved cure, and good beyond all peradventure, for it cureth not onely sores and wounds in any part in the *body* of the *Horse*, but in the *foot* which way soever it may happen, and it cleanseth any wound from dead or proud *flesh*. Another:

Salve. Take the buds or tendrest tops of the leaves of Elder, one handfull, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a perfect Salve, and apply this to the sore, binding a cloth upon it to keep it from falling off. ✠ This will cure any old or new sore whatsoever in any part of the *body*, as *galled backs, Spurregals, gravelling, pricks*, or *accloyed*, the wound being dressed herewith every day once, it will cure any *Fistula* if the juyce thereof be injected to the bottome. With this one thing alone I have done cures which very good *Ferriers* could not cure. Another:

Ægyptiacum. Take common Honey and Verdigrece finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boyle them together till the medicine waxe red, and this will heale up any old or green sore in short space. ✠ This is also very good. Another:

Ointment. Take the white of a new laid Egge, and Sallet oyle as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you do apply it unto the wound, poure into the wound burnt Butter, and then lay on your medicine with Hurds plaister-wise, and this will cure any green wound. ✠ This is very good. And thus much for sores.

§. 2. S.

Hippoph. WHat is good for a Horse that hath gotten a wrench in his shoulder?

Hippos. If you do finde that the griefe be in the *shoulder*, and that you do know it to be a wrench, make this charge, and charge the grieved *shoulder* therewith.

Shoulder wrench.

Take Wheate-meale two pound, and allay it with red Wine in a Pipkin or Postnet, as if you would make thereof a paste, then take of Bolearmoniack made into fine powder halfe a pound, of ordinary Honey one pound, boyle all these together, and adde thereunto in the boyling, of Pitch halfe a pound, and so keep it continually stirring untill your Pitch be throughly molten, but before you take it from the fire, put into it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, of Comin, oyle de Bay, Dialthea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugrick, Linseed flowre, of each, two ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take of the oyle of Aspick one ounce, boyle and mixe all these very well together, that done, charge the grieved shoulder all over very well, even down the knees. ✠ This charge is most soveraign for any wrench or straine in the *shoulder*, *knees*, or *hips*; it also cureth Kibes, Scratches, and all such like soraunces, it is also most excellent to comfort the *sinewes* offended or hurt; it is very good for a *back-sinew-sprain*, it draweth away all bad *humours*, and abateth swellings. ✠ I have often made use of this receit, but if it be a *shoulder*-pight, or *joynt*-dislocated, then thus he is to be cured, *viz.*

Charge.

Shoulders dislocated.

First cast him and lay him upon that side which is not hurt, then fasten with a cord the *foot* of the same *legge* all along a board, and so fasten the *foot* to some tree or post which must be some two or three paces distant from the *horse*, and neer to the ground, and let one stand at the middle of the boord with a stick to turn it easily and by degrees in the middle thereof, and whilst that is in doing, let another with a paile of cold water, rub, wash, and bathe the grieved place with his *hand* or *foot*, and that very hard, and in so doing, he must take up the *member* grieved, which he must chafe from the very top to the farther end of the *legge*, and by thus doing you shall put in the *bone* which was out, into its right place, and after this is done, you must raise him as gently as may be, and when he is up, let him *bloud* in the *breast veine* on that side the griefe lyeth, putting a *Patten-shooe* upon the contrary *foot*, and let his forefeet be *tramelled* fifteen dayes after at the least, to hinder him from lying down, and charge the grieved *shoulder* daily with a *restringent charge*, and look upon the grieved member every two or three dayes, by the space of fifteene dayes; after that you have thus set the same, neither let him be removed out of his place during that time, and after swim him, and apply

bathes

bathes unto the *ſhoulder* made of good hearbs, ſuch as I have preſcribed you in the Section of *bathes*, and laſtly annoint him with this Vnguent:

Take oyle de Bay, the oyle de Petra, oyle de Spike, and Nervall, of each like much: and thus ordering him, he will be found and well again. ✠ I have proved this upon ſixe *horſes*, and cured them all.

Another.

If the *ſhoulder* be either ſtrained or diſlocated, it were very good to *ſwimme* him, then take *blond* from the *breaſt veyne* on that ſide the griefe lyeth, then tramell his *fore-feet* that he do not lye down, and ſo let him remaine three weeks, then anoynt the *member* grieved with Sallet oyle onely, and the firſt time you ſhall take but of Sallet oyle halfe a pound, which you muſt rub in againſt the hayre very hard, both upon the *ſhoulder* and the *breaſt*, by the ſpace of halfe an houre, the next day after you ſhall likewiſe rub and chafe the *ſhoulder* and *breaſt*, by the ſpace of halfe an houre more, without applying any thing unto them, and ſo continue rubbing and chafing him for the ſpace of eight or ten dayes together; as for the Sallet oyle, you muſt take four ounces thereof every third day, wherewith to chafe, rub, and anoynt the *ſhoulder*, and the other two dayes betwixt, you muſt not rub and chafe it with any oyle at all, and at the end of eight or ten dayes, his *ſhoulder* will be ſwelled down to the very *knee*, then take off the oyle, and apply a reſtringent charge to the part grieved and ſwelled, and adde to it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, to cauſe the *charge* to remaine on the better, and the next day, and all other dayes after in ſtead of this *reſtringent charge*,

Shoulders ſtrained.

Take Vineger and bathe the *ſhoulder* therewith upon the ſaid *charge*, and by degrees the *haire* will fall away, and when the ſwelling is aſſwaged, ſend your *horſe* in the beginning to the water, upon a *foot* pace, and he will be cured; this receit certainly is very good, and not coſtly; but I did never make tryall thereof, albeit it was *highly* recommended unto me by a famous *French Marſhall*, who averred that he hath recovered very many *horſes* therewith, but for a *horſe* that hath gotten a wrench or ſlip, the onely remedy is to put in a *French rowell*, and then to *blow* him, and put on a *Patten ſhoe*, and let his *Keeper* turne the *rowell* every day once, as well to cauſe the putrefaction the better to iſſue forth from growing to the *fleſh*, and after twenty dayes you may take it forth at your pleaſure. ✠ This is good for a new *ſtraine*.

§. 32. S.

Hippoph. WEre it not much better Hipposerus, *that after you have thus* rowelled *and* blown *him, and set a* Patten-shooe *upon the contrary* foot, *that he were turned forth to grasse, for that the* horse *keeping himselfe in continuall agitation and motion, as hee feedeth in the pasture, the humour may the better descend, and so issue forth, whereby he may sooner be cured?*

Hippos. Sir, I answer negatively to your assertion, for by his being abroad, the *winde* will take the wound, and cause him to swell, and thereby doe the *horse* more harme then you are aware of: secondly I say, if when he is abroad there might happen to fall *raine*, that the place *rowelled* might take wet and cold, it might thereby endanger a *Gangrene*, and therewith endanger the life of your *Horse*, for the like I my selfe have done; but having rowelled your *horse*, and that you be to blow him, if you use to take *Tobacco*, then forbeare to blow him your selfe, but let some other who taketh not any, to blow him, for the very scent and steame of *Tobacco* will cause your *Horse* to swell both in the *shoulder*, and all along under his *belly*, even to the *sheath* and *stones* most violently, and the effect thereof I have very often seen. ✠ With rowelling I have cured very many *horses*, if the *straine* be newly taken, but if the *horse* have gotten hurt on his *shoulder*, that the *skin* be broken, then first cut away all the dead and bad *flesh* if there be any, then

Shoulder rowelled.

Take the white of an Egge, and beat it, and lay it upon a few Hurds *plaister-wise*, but first wash the wound with a little white Wine made bloud warme, and then apply your plaister to the forance, and then anoynt the *shoulder* round about the forance with sweet Butter: do this every day once, and it will be whole. ✠ This I have often tryed. Another:

Shoulder the skin broken.

Take your *lancet* or *fleame*, and make a little hole in the *skin* upon the pitch of the *shoulder*, and blow the place with a quill, that the *skin* may arise from the *flesh*, then

Take of stale Vrine two quarts, and boyle it to a moyety, then straine it, and put thereto of sweet Butter, and of tried Hogs grease, of each halfe a pound, then take of Mallowes, Tansey, Vervine, red Nettles, Sothernwood, and of the tender tops of broome, of each halfe a handfull, chop all these together, and boyle them in the Vrine till they be soft, and then first bathe the *shoulder* with the decoction or Vrine, and after anoynt the *shoulder* with the hearbs, being first made into an Vnguent, using thus to doe every day once or twice till it be well; but during this cure, the *horse* must be kept within doores, and in a few dayes he will goe sound againe. ✠ This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another:

If your *horse* have any griefe in his *shoulder*, first put into it a

French

French rowell, and *blow* it, and put a *patten ſhoe* upon the contrary *foot*, then apply this *charge* unto the place: take of Pitch and Roſin, of each one pound, and of Tarre halfe a pinte, melt them upon the fire, and before it be cold, *charge* the *ſhoulder* therewith, and clap Flaxe upon it, and let the *charge* lye on till it fall away of it ſelfe, and once a day turn the rowell for fifteen dayes together at leaſt, then take out the rowell, and heale up the wound, (then if the ſeaſon be fit for it) turne him to graſſe with his *patten-ſhoe* on, and let him runne three or foure moneths, and he will goe upright againe. ✠ This is very good, Another,

Firſt ſwimme him, (as you may doe well to doe for any griefe in the ſhoulder or hips) and before you do rowell him, apply unto the grieved *member* this *bathe* and unguent.

Take Pimpernell an armefull, Bay berries, Primroſe leaves, Camomil, Crow-foot, Mallowes, Fennell, Roſemary, and fine upland Hay (which was cut about Midſummer) of each like much, and of each a good quantity, put all theſe into a Leade or Cauldron, and there let it ſteep in faire water two dayes and two nights, then boile it untill the hearbs be ſoft, and bathe your *Horſe* therewith every day once good and warm, and binde of theſe hearbs with the Hay to the *ſhoulder* or place grieved, in what place or joynt ſoever it be, uſe this bathe foure dayes, and at the expiration of foure daves, let him *bleud* in the *breaſt*, on that ſide the griefe lyeth, if the griefe be in the *ſhoulder*, but if in the *knee* or *fetlock joynt*, then let him *blond* in the paſtern veyne, and ſo likewiſe if the paine be behinde, and let him *bleed* well, but if you have not skill or knowledge enough to open any of theſe *veynes*, then pare the foot very cloſe, and open the *toe veyne*, and there let him bleed well; after this his foure daies bathing, when he is dry againe, anoynt the grieved *member* with this Vnguent.

Take Petroleum, Nervall, Patch or piece greaſe, and oyle of Wormes, of each like much, and anoynt him herewith by the ſpace of halfe an houre, and then for halfe an houre after, trot him in your hand in a faire ſoft ground, then bring him into the Stable, and obſerve if any of the ſaid oyntment be come forth, or doth ſtick to his *hayre*, which if it doe, let it be rubbed and chafed in againe; alſo bathe him morning and evening, and at noon anoynt him, and trot him as before is adviſed, but at night onely binde or rope on the hearbs, and this is the cure. Vſe this but foure dayes onely, for feare of making his *joynts* too ſupple and weake (and if this help not, as I do beleeve it will) then *rowell* him, this I never tryed, but my opinion is that it is a very good receit. Another.

Shoulder ſplat.

If your *Horſe* be *ſhoulder ſplat*, then put upon him a paire of *ſhort paſternes* upon his *fore feet*, then take of Dialthea one ounce, of Sallet oyle one pinte, of oyle de Bay halfe a pinte, of freſh Butter halfe a pound, melt all theſe together in a Pipkin, and anoynt the grieved place

place round about (*viz.*) as well all over the *ſhoulder*, as the *breaſt*, and betwixt the *fore-legs*, upon and about the *briſket*, and in two or three houres after, all the *ſhoulder* will be ſwelled, then with your *fleame* ſtrike the ſwelling in very many places, that the corruption may iſſue forth, and continue to anoynt him with the ſaid ointment, and if it gather to a head (as it is likely it will) when it is ripe enough, open it, where you doe finde it to be ſofteſt, and then heale it up with your green oyntment ſo often commended unto you, and thus your *horſe* will goe ſound againe. ✠ This I have often tryed, and let this ſuffice for this malady.

§ 4. Sect.

Hippoph. *You have delivered your ſelfe very well, but yet* Hippoſe-rus *(but yet) I am to ſeeke to know and underſtand when I ſee a* horſe *doth hault or complaine, where the griefe lyeth, being a thing moſt needfull for a Gentleman to be very perfect in, but more eſpecially for him that is a* Ferrier, *who is to cure and ſet upright the* Horſe *that is lame:*

Rules how to know where a horſe halteth either before or behinde.

Hippoſ. You ſpeake pure truth Sir, and therefore I will give you ſuch aſſured rudiments, whereby you ſhall not at any time faile in the diſcovery of the leaſt *lameneſſe* that ſhall proffer it ſelfe to your *eye*, if you will be pleaſed diligently to obſerve my documents, you muſt therefore firſt underſtand, that if he do hault before, his griefe muſt of neceſſity be, either in the *ſhoulder*, or in the *knee*, or in the *ſhanke*, or in the *paſterne*, or in the *foot*, if it be in the *ſhoulder*, it muſt be either towards the *withers*, or in the pitch of the *ſhoulder*, or in the *elbow*; if in any of theſe places of the *ſhoulder*, you may know it, in that he will a little draw his *legge* after him, and not handle it ſo nimbly and dexterouſly as he doth the other; if he caſt his *legge* more outward then he doth the other, it is a manifeſt ſigne that he is lame, and that the griefe lyeth in his *ſhoulder*, and for the better tryall thereof, let your man but turn him ſhort on either hand, and in that *ſhoulder* where the *lameneſſe* is, you ſhall perceive him to complaine, and to yeeld, for he will either favour that *legge*, or trip in the turning: you may alſo finde his *lameneſſe* by his ſtanding in the ſtable, for there he will hold forwards his lame *legge* more then the other, but yet you come not to underſtand in what part of the *ſhoulder* the griefe lyeth; wherefore take for an infallible rule, that if he doe complaine more when a man is upon his *backe*, then otherwiſe, when he is from his back, then be you confident that the griefe lyeth in the *withers*, and gripe him hard, and you ſhall perceive him to ſhrinke, and perhaps offer to bite if the *Horſe* doe tread thicke and ſhort before, then is the griefe upon the pitch of the *ſhoulder* cloſe to the *breaſt*, which you may eaſily finde by ſetting your thumb hard to the place, and by thruſting him with it as if you would have him to goe back, where-

at he will *ſhrinke*, and put back his *legge*, *foot*, and *body*; if the griefe be in the elbow, you ſhall diſcover it by pinching him with your *fore-finger* and *thumb*, good and hard upon that place, at the doing whereof you ſhall perceive him to ſhrinke and hold up his *legge*, and to offer to bite; and theſe be all the griefes which doe lye in the *ſhoulders* of the *Horſe*, which not being viſible, you ſhall thus diſcover them, as touching thoſe griefes which lye lower, they muſt be either in the *knee*, in the *ſhin*, in the *paſterne*, or in the *foot*. If it be in the *knee*, you ſhall finde it by his ſtiffe going, for he will not bend it ſo actively as he doth the other; if it be in the *ſhanke* or *ſhin-bone*, you may both ſee and feele the ſame, it being then a *backe ſinew ſpraine*, ſplent, or ſome ſuch like ſorance or anoyance, ſo likewiſe if it be in the bending of the *knee*, then it is a malender, which is alſo moſt eaſily deſcryed; if it be in the *paſtern* or *joynt*, then may you know it by his not bending it ſo well as the other; beſides if you put your hand upon the place, you ſhall finde it to be very hot, and to burn much: firſt if it be in the *foot*, it muſt then be either in the *cronet*, or in the *ſole*; if in the *cronet*, it is then probable it came by ſome ſtraine or wrench, if in the *heele*, then it came by ſome over-reach, or elſe by ſome diſeaſe in or about the *Fruſh*; if in the *ſole*, then it came by ſome pricke, accloy, retoire, cannel nayle, ſtub, ſtone, or gravell. And thus have I diſcovered unto you all the ſeverall ſorts which cauſeth a *Horſe* to hault before, and how to know and diſtinguiſh the places grieved, together with the occaſion of every particular griefe. It followeth that we diſcuſſe yet further the meanes how to diſtinguiſh an old griefe, from a new taken ſtraine or hurt, which without an exact ſcrutiny, cannot eaſily be diſcovered, for oft times a *horſe* hath gotten a ſtraine, for which he is preſently turned to graſſe, where peradventure he runs the whole Summer, and ſo by that meanes ſeemeth to goe upright, till he be heated and ſtrained anew, and then will it appeare again, howbeit upon his firſt riding it may not appeare: you have therefore three wayes whereby to finde out his lameneſſe, in what *joynt*, *limb*, or *member* of the *body* ſoever it lyeth. 1 The firſt way is to take him out of the Stable, and to cauſe him to be turned at the halters end on either hand ſuddenly and ſwiftly upon as hard a way as you can pick out, and if he have any ache, wrench, or griefe in his *fore-parts*, it will appeare, for that when he ſhall turne upon that hand in which the griefe is, you ſhall perceive him to favour that *legge*, and ſo likewiſe run both towards you and from you; eſpecially down a little yeelding hill, and if he have any imperfection, he will ſoon ſhew it, for that he will favour that *legge* wherein the griefe reſideth; but if you be not able to finde out his *lameneſſe* this way. 2 Then your ſecond way muſt be for you to take his *backe*, and to ride him out a good round trot or pace a full houre, or ſo long untill ſuch time as you have throughly heat him, then ſet him up, and let him ſtand quiet two or three houres, and then either take his backe againe, or elſe

When in the knee.

When in the ſhanke.

When in the paſterne.

Three waies to finde out lameneſſe.

elſe turne him at the halters end as before, and by thus doing, you may diſcover the leaſt griefe that may be in him, eſpecially when you thus ſtir him, if it be done upon ſtony or hard ground, for then he can neither will or chooſe, but either to favour the member grieved, or elſe to hault right downe. 3 A third way we have, and that is, to know whether the griefe doth proceed from a hot or cold cauſe, for if it proceed from a hot cauſe, then will the *Horſe* hault moſt, when he is hot, and in the middeſt of his travell; but if it be of a cold cauſe, then will he hault leaſt whilſt he is hot and moſt ridden and travelled, and moſt at his firſt ſetting forth, whilſt he is cold; and thus much for lameneſſe and halting before.

Now you perceiving your *horſe* to hault, and that you be aſſured that his lameneſſe is not before, then may you be confident it muſt be behinde, which being ſo, the griefe muſt of neceſſity be either in the foot, or in the nether joynt, in the paſterne, or in the legge, in the hamme, or in the hough, in the ſtifling place, or joynt, or in the hip. If the griefe be either in the legge, paſterne, or foot, if you doe obſerve him well, you ſhall underſtand it by the very ſame ſignes which I have inculcated already in the legges, paſternes, or feet, for that the ſignes be the very ſame; if it be in the bending of the hamme, you may then eaſily know it to be a plaine Selander. If it be in the hough, then is it either a bone or bloud-Spaven, which is eaſily enough to be diſcerned, or elſe it muſt come of ſome blow, wrench, or ſtraine, neither then will the ſwelling eaſily appeare, but you ſhall perceive it either by the ſtifneſſe of the joynt, or elſe you ſhall finde the place to be hot and burning if the paine ſhall lye in the ſtifling place, it is manifeſtly diſcovered by his gate, for then you may perceive him in his going, to caſt the ſtifle ioynt outward, and you may plainely ſee the bone on the inſide to be bigger then the other, beſides, his toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the ſide of the buttock, and if the hurt or wrench be newly taken, you ſhall eaſily know it, in that the *Horſe* will goe ſide-long like a Crab, not being able ſo well to follow with the grieved legge as he can doe with the other. Notwithſtanding if it be a hurt taken long before, you ſhall perceive the Hip to be falne lower then the other, and the fleſh to ſhrinke, you may alſo perceive it the better, as by going up a hill, or upon yeelding ground, by reaſon he cannot goe with ſo great eaſe, as when he goeth upon even or plaine ground. But the better to diſcover in what part behinde the griefe lyeth, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable in a long raine or coller-haulter, and let him runne him in his hand the full length of the rayne, for that in which legge ſoever the griefe is, you ſhall perceive him to favour it, but if you finde him to goe upright, without favouring any legge, then let your man take his backe, and ride him out a good trot or hand gallop, till he be warmed, then ſet him up, and let him ſtand an houre or two till he be cold, then take him forth againe, and

let

let your man trot him in his hand at the end of the Rayne as he did before, and thus you shall perceive him to hault and complaine, and well observing him and his gate or going, you may easily finde the place grieved. And if any lameneſſe whether before or behinde, doe proceed from any hot cauſe, then you shall beſt know it, for that the more you travell or exercise him, and the warmer he is, the more he will hault. But if his griefe ſhall proceed from any cold cauſe, then will he halt moſt, being cold after he hath been travelled and ſet up warme.

Q. 5. S.

Hippoph. *YOu have ſpoken well of lameneſſe in generall termes, but yet would I gladly underſtand from you ſomewhat more in particular, as (V. G.) I would know how to diſtinguiſh between a pinch in the* ſhoulder, *and a wrench in the* ſhoulder, *as alſo betwixt a* ſhoulder ſplat, *and of the* ſhoulder pight, *and ſo of the other* members?

Hippoſ. In anſwer to this demand, I ſay that if you be cautelous in obſerving duely and juſtly the *poſtures* and *geſtures* of your *Horſe*, may very eaſily come to know in what *member*, *joynt*, or *limb* the griefe lieth, and from whence it proceeds; for you muſt underſtand that when a *horſe* is pinched in the *ſhoulder*, it muſt come either by carrying too heavy burthens, or by being put to draw, and be over-laboured too *young*, his *ioynts* and *limbs* not being knit, and this you may eaſily finde, in that the *horſe* will appeare to your *eye* to be very narrow breſted, and to conſume and waſte in his *fleſh* from thoſe parts where griefe remaineth, and you may alſo perceive it, in that the *ſhoulder bone* will ſticke out further then the other, and thus you may finde it; but if he hath gotten a wrench in the *ſhoulder*, it comes commonly by meanes of ſome *ſlip*, or by cauſing him to make too ſudden a ſtop upon falſe ground, or by ſome fall upon yeelding or ſlippery ground, or by too ſhort or ſudden turning him upon falſe grounds, or upon the *planks* in a Stable, or by ſome raſh going out of a doore, or other narrow place, or by ſome ſtroke given by another *horſe*, you ſhall know it (like as before I told you) by his not well lifting and handling his *legge* with that dexterity he doth the other, as alſo by taking him upon the pitch of the *ſhoulder bone*, and as touching a *ſhoulder ſplat*, which alſo commeth by a ſlide or ſlip, eſpecially upon ſome ſide or yeelding ground, where one *legge* doth ſlide from the other, whereby he teareth the *fleſh* which is in the inſide neere the *briſket*, which cauſeth a bauke to be underneath the *body*, which will after be ſwelled, and the *horſe* will thereupon hault right down, and he will draw his *legge* after him; but if he be *ſhoulder-pight*, this commeth by ſome bruſh, ſtraine, or fall, which the *Horſe* receiveth by ſome *leap*, *skip*, *ſtroke*, or *bruiſe* againſt ſome doore, tree, or the like: inſomuch that often times the *ioynt* is diſlocated, and this will alſo cauſe him

Shoulder-ſplat.

Shoulder-pight.

to hault down right: wherefore your cures for each of these mischiefes and mishaps, must be handled accordingly, and if the paine doe lye in any of the nether joynts, it commeth most commonly by meanes of some wrench, as by putting his *foot* into some cart roote of rough uneven ground, or by going upon loose stones, and many times by turning him too short in places that may be dangerous for his limbs, for by such like causes doe occurre lamenesse to a *Horse*, which when it shall happen, you shall thus know them, and know also in what *joynt* or *member* the griefe hath its abode, and the manner of curing each of these severall griefes, I have already sufficiently shewed you, and therefore now let us passe to other matters.

§ 6. S.

Hippoph. WVell then tell me what is good to cure the Scratches?

Hippos. Of this malady we have sundry sorts and degrees, unto which albeit we doe give severall names, nevertheless they be all in effect but one and the same disease, as Mules, Kibes, Rats tayles, Crepanches, paines, &c. every of which are none other thing but the very *Scratches*, being certaine scabs which ingender betwixt the *heele* and the *pasterne joynt*, and so goeth many times above the *pasterne*, even up to the *hough*, and albeit you may have this sorance sometimes upon all foure *legges*, yet not ordinary, for that it breedeth most commonly in the *hinder legges*, this is a noysome sorance, and comes sometimes through the negligence of the *Groome*, in that he doth not daily anoint the *horse heeles* with store of *elbow grease*, (as we tearme it) especially after journeyes and hard travell; or when he brings his *horse* in from water, and then doth not rub his *legges* and heeles dry, for that the sand and durt doth burne and fret his *heeles*, which doe occasion swellings, and such like swellings doe occasion the *Scratches*. It is therefore requisite that the *Groome* doe clip away the long *shag haire* from about the *pasternes* (if he have any) and *fetlocks*: as also from the inside of his *legs*, unto the bending of the *knee*, by meanes whereof he may the better keep the *legges* of his *horse* from this disease; sometimes it also comes from the corruption of the *blood* after great heats and surfets taken, sometimes againe for that the *horse* hath been bred in *marrish*, *fenny*, and *watery grounds*, sometimes it is ingendered from *melancholy humours* which doe fall down to the *legges*, and sometimes by standing continually upon his owne *dung*, which will through the heat and steame thereof, breed the *Scratches* without other help, and sometimes again, the *Scratches* will fall down into the heeles of the *horse*, and there make its way forth after a desperate sickenesse taken by a surfet; and lastly it comes by reason the *grease of the horse* had been moulten by over-riding or labour, whereby the *grease* falleth down and resteth in the *pasterne* and *fetlocks*, and so causeth the *Scratches* to be ingendered. It beginneth

neth first with a dry *scab*, and after it sendeth forth fretting, watrish, and matterative stuffe, which will stinke and be most noysome, and his *pasternes* and *fetlocke joynts* will be full of *chaps* and *chinkes*, sometimes all along, sometimes right down, and sometimes overthwart, and the places will swell, and the cracks or chinkes will cause the *legs* to be very *gourdy*, and to run with much noysome and offensive matter, and the *horse* will be many times so lame, as not to be well able at first setting forth to goe, but with much trouble, and no lesse paine, and by these very signes you shall know this malady: neither shall you want store of receits wherewith to cure it; the *French* doe call this disease *grappes*, grapes, and Iavars, and *Arraistes*, as also such other like tearmes and epithetons, all which (as before is touched) makes but onely one and the same disease: the first thing which is to be done towards the cure, is to bathe and wash the places all about, and then either to shave or clip away the *hayre* very close, otherwise you can hardly make a perfect cure thereof; then

Take the spawne of Toads, which in the beginning of March you shall finde in pooles, ponds, ditches, and standing water; and first draine the water from the said spawn, and then distill it, and keep the water in a glasse close stopped to serve you for the whole yeare, and herewith wash and bathe the places every day warm, and in short space it will cure them: this I have often used. Another: *Scratches.*

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them together and anoint the sorance therewith, and they will soon heale and dry up; this I did never try, but a famous *Ferrier* of *France* taught it me. Another.

Take Lime and Salt, and make them both into fine powder, which being well mixed, apply it to the places grieved good and thick, then take Hurds, and cut them very small, and clap them upon it, and so binde up the place with a linnen cloth, that it doth not remove, and so let it remaine two whole dayes and nights, and this will cause the sorance to purge, and after heale it up very kindely: This I did never try. Another:

Take Verdigrece and the fat of Bacon, and ponud them to a formall Salve, and so *plaisterwise* apply it to the sore, and it will heale up the *scratches* in short time. This is very good. Another.

Take old Bores grease and common Honey, of each as much as will suffice, and worke it to an Vnguent, anoynt the sorance therewith, four or five dayes, and no longer, and it will cure the Scratches. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take Verdigrece in fine powder, Gals, Brimstone, and Bolearmoniack, of each one ounce, make all into fine powder, and mixe them with Bores grease as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Vnguent, and anoint the sorance therewith, and this will both heale and dry them up. ✠ This I have often tryed. Another.

First cauterize five strakes on either side, and your iron must be some-

somewhat broad and you must go but only one crosse-wise, and after heale it up as it is usuall in Cures in your Cures of Cauterize this I never did practise. Another.

Take Pepper, Garlick, Cole-wort-leaves, and old Boares-grease, of each so much as will suffice, pound them together to an Vnguent, and herewith anoint the Sorance, and in few daies it will ripen the *Scratches*, and kill the mallice of the disease, and heale it up. X. of this Receipt I have made often use, and it is good; you must not faile alwaies before you dresse any *horse* that hath the *Scratches*, first to wash and bathe the place well with warme water, and then to shaw or clip away the *haire* very close, also every time you are to dresse any *horse* of this malady, wash the place with Chamberly and greene Copperas boyled together, and after dresse him up with your other Salves, Vnguent, &c. Another.

Take Hogs-grease and strong Mustard, and anoint the Sorance therewith, and in short time he will be whole, ✠. This is very good. Another.

Take first of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, and put unto it of the strongest *Tobacco* in the Rowle you can get one ounce, open the leaves, and shread the Tobacco small, and boile it untill the Vineger do begin to consume, then take it from the fire, and strain it wringing it hard, then take white-Wine one pint, of Roach Allome the quantity of a Walnut, of Bay-salt, and of common Honey, of each one Spoonefull, red Sage, Rue, Hony-suckle-leaves, Yarrow, Plantaine, Rib-wort, Bramble-leaves, of each like much, halfe a handfull in the whole; boile all these in the Wine till one quart be consumed, then straine this water also, and mix them both together, and set it upon the fire till it begin to boile, then take it off, and when it is through cold, put it up into a glasse, and so keep it close stopped, that no *ayre* come unto it, and when you would use it for the *Scratches*, wash the Sorance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt Allome; and this will cure the *Scratches*. ✠. This I have often tryed, and it is singular good. Another.

Take Verdegrease and make it into fine powder, and then take common hony, and worke them together to an Vnguent, and therewith anoynt the sorance, and in short time it will infallibly cure him. ✠. With this Receipt I have cured very many *Horses*. Another.

Take tryed Hogs-grease, and Gun-powder, of each so much as will suffice, first beat your Gun-powder to very fine powder, and incorporate them very well together, and anoynt the places greived once a day therewith, and it will soone cure the *Scratches*. ✠. This is a speciall good receipt. Another.

Take Trayne oyle, white-lead, made into very fine powder, and the Jelly which you shall find upon the ground, which many do report to be the falling of a Star in the night where it shooteth, of each like

like much, incorporate these well together, and anoynt the sore twice every day therewith, but if you cannot get of this Jelly then adde to the former ingredients a little Arsenick pulverised, and in ten or twelve daies this will heale him. X. This also is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Elder buds, and the berries of the bramble while they be red, and before they be rip, of each one handfull, boil them in Wort two quarts, and put unto it of Allome the quantity of an Egge, and therewith wash and bathe the Sorance good and hot twice every day, and this water will cure him, X. This is also very good. Another.

Take of Hemlocke a good quantity, shread it very small, then take of Creame one quart, and boyle it with the Hemlock till the Creame do turne into an oyle, which done take it from the fire, and straine it into a cleane galley pot, and keepe it for your use: with this anoint the Sorance and it will soone heale it; of this I never had tryall. Another.

Take Brimstone, and make it into fine powder, and mix with it of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, to bring it to an Vnguent, which will be of the colour of Gold, herewith anoint the sores and it will cure them. This I never tryed. Another.

Take unslaked Lime, Salt, and Soot, of each like much, all made into very fine powder: boyle this in the strongest white Wine Vineger you can get so much as will suffice, till it become as thicke as a Pultis: then soften it with tryed Hogs-grease, and so worke it to an Vnguent, and herewith anoint the places greived till they be perfectly cured. +. This is very good; but to prevent all sorts of Scratches, Kibes, Rat-tayles, &c. take up the *Thigh-veynes*, and your *Horse* shall never have any of these Maladies, or if he have them, yet by so doing, they will of themselves be cured. +. This I have oft experienced.

§ 7. S.

Hippoph. *How doe you cure a* Sit-fast?

Hippos. This Malady the *French* do call *Mal de Li Corn*; it is an hard knob which hath beene formerly a *Saddle-gall*, but by reason that the Owner of the *Horse* was unwilling to spare his worke till it was fully cured; it is converted into a *Sit-fast*, which is oftimes troublesome to the *Horse*, by reason it is growne to a dry knob so hard as a horne. The cure is.

Sit-fast.

Take the greene outward leaves of a Cabbadge, and stamp them with old Boares-grease, or tryed Hogs-grease, and worke them to an Oyntment; and then mount his *Back*, and then set the Saddle, to the end that the Oyntment may the better enter, or sinke into his *Backe*, and in a few daies it will Cure him. ✠ This is a very good cure.

§. 8. S.

§. 8. *s.*

Hippoph. *THere be yet certaine* Scabbes *which doe grow upon Horſe-heeles, which* Ferriers *doe deny to bee the* Scratches, *but they will have it to bee a diſeaſe wholy different. - How doe you cure them?*

Hippoſ. Sir, men may ſay what they ſhall pleaſe, but I doe aſſure you, theſe are alſo plaine *Scratches*. But yet I will give a few Receipts for them.

Scabs and Scratches.

Take of Salet-oyle three ounces, Red-wax-gummed one ounce, common Hony two ounces, mixe and melt all theſe together, and make them into an Vuguent, with which you muſt oft anoint the Sores, and this will cure them. ✠. I have often uſed it. Another.

Take ordinary Turpentine two ounces, new Wax, oyle de Bay, Quick-Brimſtone, of each three ounces, common Hony one ounce, Allome and Lacacon, of each halfe an ounce, mixe, melt, and incorporate all theſe well together, and every evening anoint the places grieved therewith, having firſt cleanſed the Sorances, as before is taught you. This I did never try, but I hold it to be very good. Another.

Take the ſtrongeſt white-Wine-Vineger, Muſtard, and Soote, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, and mix them well, them adde to them the yolkes of two Egges, and of Hogs-greaſe one ounce, Rape-oyle, and new Wax, of each two ounces, quick-Brimſtone in fine powder halfe an ounce, melt all theſe, and make it into an Vuguent, and therewith, anoint the grieved Sorances, ✠. This I have often tryed, and I know it to be very good.

§ 9. *s.*

Hippoph. *VVHat is good for a* Horſe *that can neither* Stale *or* Dunge?

Hippoſ. This accident oftimes hapneth to a *Horſe* that is ſuddenly travelled, being newly taken from Graſſe, or that hath beene long time kept and pampered in the Stable without any exerciſe at all, for as thoſe who be too hard Riders do ſoone ſurfet their *Horſes*, ſo likewiſe do theſe terribly wrong their *Horſes* who be too indulgent, and tender of them, and therefore the *golden* meane is evermore the beſt. The ſignes to know this Malady is plaine, for that his paine will bee ſo great as that it will cauſe him oft to lye downe and tumble, as if he had the Bots. I will give you one onely Receipt which a famous *French Mariſhall* gave me, with which I cured one *Horſe*, for that I had never occaſion to practiſe it upon any ſince, but I do hold it to be moſt ſoveraigne in a caſe of this nature.

Take

Take the root of *Male-Brake* or *Fearne*, and put a piece thereof upon his *tongue*, and it will cause him both to *stale* and *dung*, and so he will be cured. The male of Fearne is to be knowne by the root, from the female, for if you take a Fearne-root, and cut it in two pieces, you shall see the perfect figure of an *Eagle*, and thereby you may know it to be the *male*, which is for your turne. And the *female* root will beare other effigies different from the *male*, which wanteth its vertue to perfect this cure. ✠ This (I say) I have once tryed.

Stale or dung.

§ 10. *S.*

Hippoph. WHat is to be done to a Horse that falleth sicke in his iourney or travell?

Hippof. This also hapneth as the former doth, but yet oftner and sooner, especially if he be very fat and pursive, and wanting *breath*, as also if he be travelled being fat and heavy, the Sunne shining and scorching much, for such a *horse* is in danger either to tire, or to fall desperately sicke, which may also endanger his life, as I have frequently knowne. The cure must be.

Sicke in travell.

Take Muskadine or sweet Sacke one pinte, Aqua vitæ a quarter of a pinte, of *London* Treacle two ounces, and of the best Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte: warme all these upon the fire, and brew it well, and give him one hornfull thereof, then take his *tongue* in your *hand*, and put down his *throat* a new laid Egge, breaking it with your fingers as you put it forth of your hand; then give him a second horne full, and then another Egge, and after all the residue of the drinke, and so after that a third Egge, then let him *bloud* in the *palat*, and rub it well with white Salt, then set him upon the *Trench*, cloath, stop, and litter him againe warme, and let him fast an hour or two after it, and then feed him by degrees, both with Hay and Oates, giving him either a sweet Mash or white water, and he will doe well againe. This drink refresheth all the *spirits*, being over-laied through heate and labour, and causeth a good appetite to meat. ✠ With this drinke I have cured many sicke *horses*, as well of mine own, as of my friends, which have fain away very desperately sick upon the way in travell; but if I do finde that his *bloud* is inflamed, as many times it will be, I then use to open a *veyne* in the neck.

§ 11. *S.*

§. 11. S.

Hippoph. BVt *what is to be given to a* Horſe *that falleth ſuddenly ſick?*
Hippoſ. Firſt let him bloud in both *breſt veines*, or if you have not skill ſufficient to open theſe veynes, then let him bloud in both ſides the *necke*, and let him *bleed* well nigh two quarts, then give him this comfortable drink.

Sudden ſickneſſe.

Take of ſweet Sacke one quart, and burn it with Graines, Cloves, and Cinamon, of each like much, being all beaten groſſe, put to it of Suger three ounces, and when it is burnt, adde unto it of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and of *London* Treacle two onnces, warm all theſe, and brew them well together, and ſo give it to your *horſe* bloud warme, then ride him gently untill he do begin to ſweate, and ſo ſet him up warm clothed and littered, but be ſure to keep his *head* and *heart* warme, neither muſt you ſtuffe and cloth him too hot; for this drink will cauſe him to ſweate ſufficiently of it ſelfe, yet litter him well, keeping the Stable cloſe, and ſo let him faſt ſixe hours after, againſt which time, let him be rubbed very dry, and give him to eate ſweet Wheat ſtraw, and after give him either a ſweet Maſh or white water, and boile therein of Mallowes and Water-creſſes, of each one handfull, of Fennell-ſeed, and of Perſley-ſeed, of each one ounce, if he will drink the ſame. After that morning and evening (your *horſe* being faſting) ride him a mile or two, to the end he may take the ayre, which is very wholeſome for him, if the weather be temperate, and let his meat be ſweet ſtraw, old clean dry Oats, and ſome Wheat, and Peaſe mixed therewith: give him a little at once, and often, untill you doe perceive his *ſtomacke* to come well unto him, and let him be daily well rubbed, and warm clothed, to provoke him to ſweat, and let him be alſo well littered, and his drink either ſweet Maſhes, or white water: and by this manner of keeping and ordering of him, in ſhort time he will recover his priſtine ſanity. ✠ This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

§ 12. S.

Hippoph. VV*Hat cure have you for a* Selender?
Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is the very ſame with the *Malander*, but the ſole difference is, in that the *malander* breedeth upon the bending of the *knee*, or the *legge* before, and the *Selender* engendreth of the bending of the *hough* in the *legge* behinde: but it commeth juſt as doth the *Malander*, and the cure is the very ſame with it: but yet I will give you one good receit which will cure both: firſt, waſh and ſhave away the *hayre*, and rub the ſorance with a wiſpe or hayre cloth till it be raw: then take the ſhreds of white leather untanned, which *Glovers* doe make, and boyle them in Vineger till they be ſoft and binde of this hot to the place, but if you do not finde that by

Selender.

by once or twice dreſſing, taketh not away the ſcurfe or ſcab, renew it daily untill it doth, for by this meanes the roots of the briſtly haire which groweth in and about the ſorance, is the onely thing that feedeth the *Malander*, wherefore the roots of the *hayre* being taken off (which this medicine will doe) the ſorance will ſoon be cured; and to heale up the rawneſſe thereof,

Take freſh or ſweet Butter, bay Salt, and Frankincenſe, both made into fine powder, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyle them all together on the fire, and with a ragge upon a ſticke apply this medicine to the place ſcalding hot two mornings together, and after heale it up, and cauſe the *hayre* to come againe, being daily anointed with Mallowes and ſweet Butter made into an Vnguent. ✠ This is a very good cure.

§. 13. S.

Hippoph. *WHat is to be given to a* Horſe *ſicke, ſurfetted, and his greaſe molten?*

Sick or ſurfetted.

Hippoſ. The onely way is firſt to take *blood* from him, if there be juſt cauſe, and after to ſcowre his guts with this purge.

Take Caſſia one ounce, Filonio-perſio, or Perſico, and Triſora magna, of each halfe an ounce, ſirrop of Violets two ounces, diſſolve theſe in mel Roſarum four ounces, and give it him with a horne in a morning faſting, and after either ride him gently, or elſe walk him up and down an houre or better, and for an houre after at the leaſt let him ſtand upon the *Trench*, then give him a ſweet Maſh, which when he hath diſpatched, give him old dry Oates cleane and well ſifted, and after ſweet Hay, neither let him have any cold water in eight dayes after, nor after that time, but with exerciſe. ✠ And this is a ſpeciall good cure.

§. 14. S.

Hippoph. *NOw let us come to the* ſinewes, *what ſay you to a* ſinew ſpraine?

Hippoſ. I have already handled this point ſufficiently in *lib. 2. cap. 4. § 9. A.* for an Attaint upper, nevertheleſſe I will give you more receits for a *ſinew ſpraine*, albeit it be the ſame malady: the firſt ſhall be for a *ſinew ſprung*, or when the *ſinew* is broken, and ſevered from the *fleſh*, as many times it falleth out, then

Sinew ſprung.

Take Tartar, and the lees of Claret or red Wine, of each three ounces, Wheate Bran one handfull, boyle theſe with the juyce of Smalledge, two handfuls or better, and when you take it from the fire, put into it of Turpentine one ounce, binde this to the *ſinew* grieved, ſo hot as he may well ſuffer it, and uſing this medicine foure or fiue dayes, he will be ſound againe. ✠ This is very good: Another,

ther, if the *ſinew* or *artery* be broken with Coraſives, or other accident, to cauſe it to ſoder or joyne againe.

Take the leaves and roots of *Solomons ſeate*, and of great Cumfrey, of each like much, pound them ſmall, and infuſe it in white Wine foure and twenty houres, bathe the ſorance herewith warme (you having firſt boyled it) and after you have bathed the place well, binde the hearbs and roots to the place grieved, dreſſing him every day once, untill he be perfectly conſolidate. And if the *fleſh* be ſtill broken, when you do finde the *ſinew* to be knit, ſtrew theron the powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale and skin it in ſhort time. ✠ This is good, for I have often tryed it. Another for a *ſinew* grieved.

Sinew grieved.

If the *ſinew* be ſo farre grieved, whereby to cauſe the *horſe* to complaine, and to hault,

Take then of Mallowes a good quantity, and boyle them in faire water, untill they ſhall become tender, then draine the water from the hearbs, and ſo ſtamp them to maſh, and apply them to the *member* grieved hot over night, and the next morning he will be upright againe, but then he muſt haue eight or ten daies reſt at the leaſt after. But if it be a ſinew *ſprained*, then clip away the hayre cloſe, or ſhave it, then

Take of the oyle of Sulphur, and of the oyle of Turpentine, of each one ounce, take firſt the one halfe thereof being well mixed, and chafe and rub it into the *ſinew* well, and ſo let him be tyed up to the Rack, that he may not come unto it with his mouth, for that it will greatly perplexe him for four or five hours after his dreſſing, and the next day anoint him, as you did the day before, & he wil be cured, but the place will be raw, and therefore heale him up with ſweet Butter, or Hogs greaſe, and when the place healeth, the skin will peele, and yet the *hayre* will come again, but he muſt either runne at graſſe, or elſe be kept in the Stable without any exerciſe at all by the ſpace of a moneth at leaſt. If the ſinew be cut, then

Sinew cut.

Take new Waxe, and Gumme-Arabick, of each two ounces, of the marrow of an Oxe or Cow, four ounces, of the oyle of Roſes three ounces, melt and incorporate all theſe on the fire, and ſo keep it for your uſe, and when you are to uſe it, warme it, and ſo apply it either unguent wiſe, or taint wiſe, or plaiſter wiſe, according as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and it will cure any ſorance of this nature. ✠ This I have often tryed. Another.

If your *Horſe* have a *ſinew ſprained* by an over-reach, ſtroke, or otherwiſe weakened, the better to ſtrengthen the ſame,

Sinew ſprain

Take tryed Hogs greaſe, Horſe greaſe, May or freſh Butter, Sallet oyle, of each ſixe ounces: take alſo of the oyntment called Agrippa, two drams, or new Waxe, two ounces and a halfe, and of Camphier a third part to all the reſt, melt them all together upon the fire, and ſo work it to an unguent, and good and warme, anoint the ſwelled or grieved part therewith morning and evening, and what remaineth

of

of this medicine, let it be reserved in a galley pot for other times, for it will keep a whole yeare. ✠ This is very good. Another, if it be a *sinew sprain* onely, then

Take Goats, Kids, or Deeres suet, and Rosin, of each one pound, Fig dust halfe a pound, Verdigreece in fine powder, halfe a pound, melt and mixe all these well, and therewith anoint the *sinew grieved* every day, and chafe it into the *sinew* by holding a hot bar of iron neer it. This will both comfort and strengthen the *sinew*, but I did never make tryall thereof.

§. 15. S.

Hippoph: BVt Hipposerus, *is it needfull that by applying your Vnguents, you doe evermore worke them in with a hot bar of iron?*

Hippos. Truely Sir, those that are for Straines, Aches, Mainges, Farcins, and such like maladies and sorances, the further they doe sinke into the *skinne* and *flesh*, the sooner and better will the cure be performed, and therefore albeit I do not alwaies put you in minde of the hot bar of iron in every of my *receits*, yet it is needfull to be used. But to proceed with another receit for a *sinew sprain.*

Sinew sprain.

Take ordinary Sope, and Aqua vitæ, of each as much as will suffice, boyle them, and in the boyling, keep it by continuall stirring, then take it off, and (so hot as he can well suffer it) bathe and chafe in the oyntment, and he will be found again. This was commended unto me for most soveraigne, but I never made tryall thereof. Another for a *straine* taken in travell.

Take so must of the best gray Sope as will serve to anoint the *sinew* strained, but before you do anoint him, having caused his legge to be cleansed from dirt, sand, or gravell, and made dry again, anoint him therewith, and then swathe the leg with a thumband of Hay, and so let him stand all night, and the next morning he will be found again, so that you may securely travell him againe, without feare. ✠ This I have often used, and it is very good. Another if it be a straine newly taken.

Straine newly taken.

Take then of the strongest white Wine Vineger you can get, one pinte, and May or fresh Butter halfe an ounce, then put to it of Wheat bran as much as will suffice, which by boyling will bring it to a Poultesse, and apply it so hot as he can suffer it; doe this morning and evening, untill the swelling be asswaged. ✠ This is very good. Another, but if it be an old taken straine, then

Take Mallowes and Chickweed, of each like much, boyle them either in the grounds of Ale or Beere, or else in old Chamberlye, and apply it to the place. ✠ This is a speciall good cure. Another for an old *straine* which is thought to be incurable, insomuch as the *sinew* being swelled, is become very hard and knotty.

Straine old.

Take Patch-greaſe, *alias* Peere or Peece-greaſe, as much as will ſuffice, melt it upon the fire, and anoint the *ſtraine* therewith very hot, and chafe and heat it very well, then rope the place as before is ſhewed you, but before you rope him up, wrap a rowler of linnen upon the place, and do thus daily, and it will diſſolve the hardneſſe, and make him ſound again. ✠ This is moſt excellent. Another for a *ſpraine* of the ſame nature.

Take Nervall, Bolearmoniack, Bores greaſe, black Sope, of each like much, melt them together, but firſt pulverize your Bolearmoniack, and anoint the ſorance herewith, chafing and heating in very well; continue thus to do twice a day till it be well. ✠ This is alſo very ſoveraign.

§ 16. S.

Hippoph. *What is good for a Horſe that hath a* ſtinking Breath? *Hippoſ.* This commeth by means of corrupted and infected *lungs*, the ſigns how to know it is by the ſmell onely, the cure is,

Stinking breath.

Take Cinamon, Gloves, Galingall, Comine and Coriander ſeeds, of each three ounces, Fenugrick eight ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and ſearce and mixe them well with Wheat flowre two pound, and put thereto ſo much white Wine as will bring it to a ſtiffe paſte, and make a cake thereof and bake it in an Oven till it be as dry and as hard as *biſket*, and when it is cold, beat it to fine powder, and give him every morning an houre at leaſt before his water, of this powder four ſpoonfuls in white Wine or ſtrong Ale, of each one pinte. This will take away all the corrupt and evill favours of his breath, for this powder healeth all his inward parts that be putrified, from whence his bad breath taketh its origen. ✠ This is very good and approved, and a better remedy you ſhall finde none.

§ 17. S.

Hippoph. *What is the beſt way to cure or take off a* Splent? *Hippoſ.* This is to be done many waies, but becauſe we are come to treat of this cure, I hold it not amiſſe to make you underſtand what a *ſplent* is, by what meanes it commeth, how to know it, and which way to cure the ſame, and to take it cleane away. A *ſplent* is in the beginning, a very *griſtle*, howbeit if it be long let alone, it will come to be a hard *bone* or *excreſion*, and then it will not be ſo eaſily cured. It commeth to a *Horſe* by meanes of too hard travell and ſore riding, whilſt he is very yong, or by bearing in his youth too heavy burthens, by both which meanes the greaſe being molten, falleth down into his *legges*, and ſo breedeth this ſorance, you ſhall have it bigger or leſſer, according as the cauſe of its comming

ming was; it taketh its residence for the most part upon the inside of the *shanke* about the middle thereof, but sometimes againe higher even adjoyning to the *knee*, which if it be there, then it is more difficile to cure, It will many times cause the *Horse* to hault, but howsoever it will make him oft to *stumble*, and to *trip*, and many times to *fall* in his travell. Sometimes it commeth to a *horse* hereditarily, like as doth the *Spaven*, and other forances and maladies: as if either the *Stalion* or *Mare* be visited therewith, as I have formerly intimated: The signes how to know it are most facile, *viz.* either by the *sight* or *feeling*, for that you may both *see* and *feele* its swelling. Now to the cure, for which I shall give you very many receits.

Splent.

First wash the place with warme water, and shave away the *hayre*, then with your *incision knife* slit a hole cleane through the *skin*, more then the length of a Barly corne, and then convey into the said hole so much *Arsnicke* as the fourth part of a haſle Nut, which must be bound on with a boulster and rowler of linnen, and made fast with a needle and threed, and so let remaine untouched three whole daies and nights, in which time the *Arsnicke* will date and corrode cleane away the *splent*, then to kill the fire, anoint the place (having first taken off the rowler and boulster, and washed cleane the forance) with sweet or fresh Butter molten, eight or ten dayes after, and it will be whole. ✠ With this I have done very many cures of this kinde. Another:

First, anoynt the place with ordinary soft washing Sope, then tye a red woollen cloth about the *legge*, just upon the *splent*, that done, heat a Brick glowing hot, and lay it upon the cloth against the place where the *splent* is, and hold it so close unto it a pretty space, then so soone as you doe take that away, have another as hot in a readinesse, and clap that too also, doing as before, and so a third, or so many as shall be needfull, till you doe finde that the *splent* is dissolved and taken away, which commonly will be in applying two or three hot Bricks. ✠ With this I have taken off very many *splents*. Another:

First wash and shave away the *hayre*, then *knock*, *rubbe*, and *pricke* it with your *blond staffe* and *fleame*, and after you have so done, rub and knock it again; then

Take Vervine and Salt, of each one handfull, pound them together to an Vnguent, and apply it to the place, and binde it up with a rowler stitched on fast with a needle and threed, and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres, and then unbinde it, and it is cured without any more to doe. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Wash and shave as before, and rub and knock as before also, then with your incision knife lay open the place a little, then knocke and rubbe againe with a little Salt, then apply unto it this oyntment which the *French* do tearme a *Retoyre*.

Take of oyle de Bay foure ounces, Cantharides, Euforbium, and

Orpin, of each one ounce, all theſe being made into fine power, let them be well incorporate into the ſaid oyle, and wrought to an Vnguent, lay of this to the ſplent, and bind it up with a Bowlſter and Rowler, and ſew it up faſt, and let him ſtand ſo by the ſpace of three houres upon the Trench, ſo tyed up as that he bite not off the rowler and Medicine: at three houres end, unrowle the place, and put unto it againe the ſaid Retore or Oyntment, being made warme, and let the *Horſe* ſtand trameled foure dayes, and at foure daies end ſend him to the water a *foote pace*, where every day he muſt be ridden up and downe, to the *belly*: If you doe love the *horſe*, and have a deſire to have him perfectly cured, let him not bee ridden more then a *foote* pace to the water in a *moneth* after, for indangering the growing of it againe, for nothing can bee more ſoveraigne for him then reſt. 4. This *Retore* is a ſpeciall good thing for this Malady, and I have often uſed it, and it did never faile me. I had this in *France* of a famous *Mariſhall* who cured many *horſes* therewith in my preſence. Another.

After you have waſhed and ſhaven, knocked, rubbed, and laid it open, as before is taught you, take a head of Garlicke, picked and pilled, three or foure drops of the beſt white Wine Vineger, a penny weight of greene Coppras, all well beaten together, apply it to the *ſplent*, and then bind and ſtich it up, and let it lye on foure and twenty houres, then open it, and if the *ſplent* be not taken quite away, make more of the ſame Medicine, and adminiſter it againe, binding it up as before, and after other foure and twenty houres take of the medicine, and then you ſhall need do nothing more unto him, but only what you are preſcribed in the precedent cure. This I did never try. Another. Firſt burne away the *haire* with a hot *tyle*, then ſhave it cloſe with your Raſor, that done have in a readineſſe a peece of Leather, the breadth of the Sorance, and bind it hard upon it, and let it ſo remaine by the ſpace of an houre, then take him off, and leade to the water, without doing any more unto him, and hee is cured. This cure I never tryed. Another.

Take Muſtard ſeed, and beat it, and let it ſteepe a little in fayre water, and after make a Plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the place, and three dayes after take it away, but have a care your *horſe* come not unto it with his teeth, the *hayre* alſo being ſhaven away before you do apply your Plaiſter, and this will cure him. This alſo I never proved. Another. Firſt waſh and ſhave away the *hayre*, then take of the tender tops of Wormewood, Smalage, Pellitory, and of Brauca-vrſina, of each like much, and beat them together with old Bores-greaſe, ſo much as will ſuffice, and apply it to the place: neither did I try this. Another. Firſt waſh and ſhave as before, and knocke, beat, and rub the *ſplent* three or foure times, then take marſh mallow rootes, boyled with the *skin* on, and laid to the place, and it will take away the *Splent*: This I never made uſe of, but a very good

Ferrier

Ferrier taught it mee, who avowed it to bee right good. Another.

Take Muſtard-ſeede, Mallow rootes, and Oxe dung, all ſtamped and boyled together, and plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the place three or foure times. This I never uſed. Another.

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and lay it upon the *Splent*, and it will take it off; but beware that this powder doe touch neither *veine* nor *ſinew*, for it is a very coroding thing, &c. Another.

Take two heads of Garlick and pill them, and cut them ſmall, but do neither ſtamp or bruiſe them: then take of Salt the like quantity, and mix them with your Garlicke, and divide them into two equall parts, & ſo put them into two fine linen cloutes, and bind them upon the ends of two ſticks, of a foote in length a peece of the faſhion of two ſhort woodden *foyles* but nothing ſo long, being not above twelve inches a peece. Take then your bloud ſticke, and rub, knock, and beat, the *Splent* therewith very well to ſoften it, then pricke it through the *skin* with your *bloud ſtaffe* and *Fleame*; then take of the oyle of Nuts one pint, and put it into a ſmall Pipkin, and ſet it upon the fire in a Chafingdiſh with coles, and make it boyling hot, and when it is ready to boyle, put into it your ſhort ſticks or foyles which hath the Garlicke and Salt faſtned unto them, and firſt with the one *foyle*, and then with the other (I meane by turnes) apply them hot unto the *Splent*, and between whiles, rub and ſtroke the *Splent* downwards, with your thumbe, whereby to bring forth the *bloud*, till having with the *foyles* very well mollefied the ſaid *Splent*, you may the more eaſily cruſh forth the *bloud* whereof the *Splent* is ingendred, and formed; it being indeede compact of bad and corrupt *bloud*: and thus is the *Splent* cured, only you muſt remember to anoint the place two or three times after with ſweet or freſh Butter, ✠. This of all the cures I have is the beſt, for this Malady, howbeit it may ſeeme intricate; I gate it of a *French Rider* to a *Noble Knight in England*, and I have herewith taken off more then one hundred *Splents*, I have uſed this more then thirty yeares ſince. Another.

Take up the contrary *Legge*, and beat the *Splent* with your *bloud-ſtaffe* till it do begin to be ſoft, then with your *Fleame* prick it in ſundry places that the *bloud* may iſſue forth. Take then the greateſt red Onion, and cut off the top, and picke out the core, and put into it ſo much of the powder of *Verdegreaſe* as the end of your *Thumbe*, then put on the top again, and wrap it up in a wet brown paper, and ſo roſt it in the hot embers, as you do a *Warden*, till it be as ſoft as pap, then take it out of the *Embers*, and put away the paper and all that is burnt from about it, and ſtamp it, and being yet very hot apply it unto the *Splent*, and lay a Bowlſter upon it, and then ſwathe it up with a linnen Rowler, ſtitching it faſt, and ſo let it remaine five or ſixe dayes, and then open it, and after anoint the place every day once, with ſweete Butter

Butter till it be whole. ✠ This is a very good cure. Another.

Take a great Onyon, and pick out the core, and put into it of the powder of *unſlaked Lime*, and of the powder of *Verdigrece*, of each as much as will ſuffice, but ſo much as will fill it up, then roſt it, as before is ſhewed you, and ſtamp it in a morter well, then ſlit the *skinne* a little, that the medicine may come unto it, to eate away the *ſplent*, and ſhave not away the *hayre*, but lay on the medicine and boulſter, and bind it up faſt, and ſo let it remaine on three dayes, without ſtirring it, then unbind it and waſh it cleane, and anoint it every day with ſweet Butter, till it be whole. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take an Elecampane root, and make it cleane, and wrap it up in a brown paper, and roſt it in the *embers* as you did the *Onions*, and being ſoft like pap, apply it to the *ſplent*, you having firſt rubbed, knocked, and prickt it as before is taught you, the *hayre* alſo being waſhed and ſhaven off, it muſt be laid on ſo hot as he is able to ſuffer it, and let it lye on two dayes and two nights, then take off that, and lay on a ſecond, and after a third, till the *ſplent* be quite conſumed, and then anoynt the place with freſh butter onely every day till it be whole. ✠ This is ſpeciall good. Another.

Take of the oyle of Exeter, and taking every day once or twice a little thereof upon the brawn of your thumbe, rub and anoint the place therewith, and thus doing, it will take it quite away, but this will aske long time to do. ✠ This I have tryed. Thus have I given you very many *receits* for this malady, moſt of which I know to be good from my own experience: the reſidue which I never tryed, were cryed up unto me by very skilfull *Ferriers* and *Mariſhals*, for very good. The *French* do call this malady *Suros*, and *Epineles*, or *Eſpinule*.

§. 18. S.

Hippoph. WHat helpe have you for ſtumbling?

Hippoſ. This inconvenience commeth many wayes, ſometimes it commeth *naturally*, and ſometimes *accidentally*, it commeth *naturally* by reaſon the *ſinewes* of the *fore-legs* are ſomewhat ſtraight, ſo that the *horſe* is not able to handle his *legges* with that dexterity and agility he ſhould, and the onely remedy to cure him of this defect is, to cut him of the Cords (as we termeit) *viz.* by cuting a ſlit upon the very top of his *noſe*, and with your *cornet* to take up the two great *ſinewes* which you ſhall there finde, and ſo cut them in ſunder, and after to heale it up againe with ſome healing Salve, and this will doe him no harme, but good; for by this doing, it will give him the uſe of his *legges* ſo perfectly, as that he will ſeldome or never after *trip* any more, and this can every ordinary Smith doe. ✠ And my counſell is, that when at any time you

Stumbling.

ſhall

ſhall either breed or buy a yong *horſe*, before, or preſently after you ſhall *backe* him, let him be thus cut of the *cords*, and you will finde great profit thereby. The ſecond cauſe that maketh a *horſe* to *ſtumble*, is *accidentall*, and this commeth either by meanes of the putting forth of a *ſplent*, or a *ridge bone*, or about *wind gals*, or by ſome detriment taken in the *foot*, as by being hot, foundred, prickt, ſtubd, gſaveld, or the like, or by ſome *ſinew ſpraine*, or ſome hurt or wrench in the *ſhoulder*, or by ſome pinch in the *withers*; and it commeth alſo by over-riding, and then negligently ſet up, which cauſeth him to goe *ſtiffe*, and then the cure muſt be done with *bathes* and *unguents*, whereby to ſtretch, ſupple, mollifie, and to comfort the ſtiffe *members*, for remedy and eaſe whereof, I have given you very many good *receits* before preſcribed you, as well of *bathes* as of *unguents*. But yet I will give you one more which I have often made uſe of, and have done much good therewith for ſtiffe legges, *viz.*

Stiffe legges

Take of Hogs greaſe one pound, of freſh Butter, Altheæ, and of oyle de Bay, of each halfe a pound, mixe and incorporate all theſe well together, and therewith anoynt, rub, and chafe the *legges* and *ſinewes* of the *horſe*, every third day three times a day, and let his ſhooes be made wide enough, eſpecially at the *heeles*, and let him be pared thin; the *ſinewes* being well ſuppled, it is needfull he be alſo cut of the *cords*, which will prevent his *ſtumbling* the better. *Stumbling* commeth alſo by meanes of carrying heavy *burthens*, and when the *rider* is a man of an extraordinary weight, eſpecially if the *Horſe* be young. ✠ This is a very good cure.

§. 19. *S.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat is to be given to a Horſe that cannot* Stale *or* Piſſe?

Hippoſ. This infirmity commeth either of the *collicke*, or by meanes of too much hard riding: the cure is,

Stale or piſſe.

Take Grummell ſeed, Saxafrage-ſeed, and the roots, of each halfe an ounce, make them into fine powder, boyle them a walme or two in white Wine one quart, and give it him warme. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take the tops of green Broom, and burne a good quantity of them, ſo as you may have ſo many of the *aſhes* as will come to be a pretty handfull, ſearce them, and put them into white Wine a pinte, and after it hath infuſed an houre, give him the Wine, but not the *aſhes*. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take black buds of the Aſhen tree, and burn them, then take the aſhes cleanſed, and as before is ſhewed you of the Broome *aſhes*, and adminiſter it to the *Horſe* juſt as you did the other. ✠ This is a moſt approved cure.

§ 20. S.

Hippoph. VV*Hat good cure have you for the* Stavers?

Hippof. This disease is *secundum vulgus*, called the *Staggers*, but the true name thereof is the *Stavers*, it is a dizzinesse in the *head*, neerly allyed unto the *frenzy* when it seazeth the *braine*. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *bloud*, and heavy and bad *humours*, which do intoxicate and oppresse the *braine*. It is a disease incident to almost every *horse*, yea and that most dangerous if it be not soone espied. Sometimes it commeth by feeding and grazing, at what time the *Horse* is hard ridden, that he be hot and sweateth, for by his feeding and holding down his head so low as to graze upon the ground, the *peccant humours* doe fall down to the *head*, and there settle, and in short time seazeth the *braine*, which bringeth this mortall disease. Sometimes it commeth by what was occasioned by hard and over-violent riding, whereby the whole *body* became distempered, and the *bloud* inflamed and putrified: and sometimes it commeth by eating over-much, for thereby is the *stomack* so overcharged with meat, as not to be able to digest and convert it all as it ought into good *bloud* and nutriment, and therefore must necessarily breed evill *humours*, which attaching the *head* and *braine*, it is in conclusion the cause of this disease. The symptomes whereby to discover it, is, in that his *sight* will faile him, and he will hardly be able to *see* a white Wall, he will slaver at the *mouth*, and his *eyes* will be swelled, and runne with much water and other filth, and his gate will be reeling and staggering, he will oft lye down and beat his *head* against the planks, floore, and walles, and when he is laid, his *body* will quiver and shake, and he will forsake his meat; and these be most certaine signes which I have ever observed to be in *horses* oppressed and exercised with this infirmity.

Of melancholy.

Corrupt bloud.

But now to come to the cure: I will give you first a cure which a *French Marishal* taught me, which by reason it sounded to be so much improbable, I would never make tryall thereof, but such as it is you shall have it. Fasten unto the end of a stick a linnen ragge, and anoint it well with Barbary Sope, and put it up into his *nose* gently, and by degrees, and so draw it out again as treatably. Another.

Stavers.

If you do perceive your *horse* in his travell to fall sicke suddenly of the *Stavers*, and that you be in such a place, where for the present you can get no help, then thrust up the greater end of your riding rod into either *nostrill* good and hard, causing him thereby to *bleed* well, and this will preserve him for the time, till you come where you may meet with better remedy: then take a piece of Wheaten leaven, bay Salt, Rue, Aqua vitæ, and strong white Wine Vineger, of each as much as will suffice, bray all these in a stone morter very well, then put this medicine into two thin fine linnen clothes or rags,

by

by equall portions, and then moisten it well in the liquor, and so convey those clouts into either of his *eares* one, and then stitch them up close, that he get not the medicine forth, but that the substance thereof may be diffused into his *head*, and let the medicine remaine so foure and twenty hours, then take forth the rags, and this will make him a sound and whole *horse*. ✣ But before you apply this medicine to his *eares*, run him through the *gristle* of the *nose* with a long *iron Bodkin*, and the next day after let him *bloud* in the *neck* and *mouth*, and then giue him this drink, which will keep off the *Yellowes* for comming too fast upon him; then take Turmerick, Myrrh, Ivory, or Harts-horne, of each one ounce, of Saffaron one penny worth, pound all these by themselves to very fine powder, then take Seladine a good handfull, stamp it and straine it, and put the juyce thereof to the other ingredients, then put unto it of Muskadine or sweet Sack, one pinte, or for want thereof, of strong Ale one quart, adding unto it of *London* Treacle one ounce, set these upon the fire, and let it boyle one walme or two, and in the taking off, put unto it of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and so having well brewed the same, give it him bloud warme, and for three or foure dayes, give him either sweet Mashes, or white water. ✣ This is very good. Another.

First take *bloud* from him in the *necke* and *mouth*, and let him chew and swallow down his own *bloud*, being most wholesome for him; and whilst he is thus *bleeding* thrust an iron Bodkin through the gristle of his nose, skin and all, then

Take Assafetida, the quantity of a hasle nut, and dissolve it into a sawcer full of white Wine Vineger, then take Lint or fine Flax, and dip it into the liquor, and so stop both your *Horse eares* therewith, and so stitch them up, and at the end of foure and twenty houres, unstitch them, and he is cured. ✣ This is very good. Another.

First let him *bloud* in both the *weeping veynes*, and in the *mouth*, then

Take of bitter Almonds one ounce and a halfe, of the gall of an Oxe two drams, of black Ellebore made into fine powder, a halfe penny worth, of Graynes, Castoreum, Vineger, and of Varnish, of each five drams, boyle all these together, untill the Vineger be all consumed, then straine it, and put it into his *eares*, and do as before. ✣ This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before, then with your incision knife, make a slit down his *forehead* an inch long and better, and with your *corner* loosen the *skin* round about, but most toward the *foretop*, then put into the place the root of a red great Dock, cut thin, and let it remaine there fourteen or fifteen dayes, and once in two dayes at furmost crush out the mattrative stuffe, and then take forth the Dock roots, and heale up the place with your healing Salve, and give him during these fourteen dayes, white water onely, and he will doe well. ✣ This I assure you is very good. Another.

ther Bloudy, &c. Then take Aqua-vitæ, and Garlicke, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, ſtamp them together, and convey it into his *eares* doing *vt ſupra*, ✠ This is ſingular good. Another. Let him *bleede* well in the *neck* and *mouth* (for the abundance of bad *bloud* is the cauſe of this diſeaſe) then with your *Inciſion knife* ſlit the *forehead* of the *Horſe*, and with your *Cronet* raiſe the *skin* eſpecially upwards, & put in three or foure *cloves* of *Garlick* pilled, & put upon it a little lint or fine Flax to keepe away the *Wind* (for that is dangerous) and then give the *Orifice* a ſtitch to keep in the Medicine the better. Then.

Take the ſeeds of Creſſes, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Parſly, of Dill (I ſay the ſeeds only of theſe hearbs) and take alſo pepper, and Saffron, of each two drammes, make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barley water two quarts, as it commeth boyling from the fire, and let it infuſe therein three houres, and then ſtraine it, and give him one quart thereof, if it may be in the morning faſting bloud-warme, and walke him up and downe an houre and better, and then ſet him up warme, and give him Hay ſprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart faſting, and then doe as before, neither let him drinke any cold water in foure or five daies after, but only white water, unleſſe ſometimes a ſweet Maſh: And thus doing he will be cured. ✕. This is a moſt excellent Receipt, and I have often uſed it.

§. 21. S.

Hippoph. VV*Hat remedy have you for a* Horſe *that hath* Swelled-Legges?

Hippoſ. This Malady of *ſwelled* or *Gourdy-Legs* commeth eſt-ſoones by long ſtanding in the Stable, whereas the upper parts of the plancks at his *fore feete*, are much higher then that at the hinder *feete*, as I have before obſerved in *lib.* 1. *cap.* 4. for by that meanes the *Horſe* not ſtanding even, and therefore not at his eaſe, the *bloud* ſetleth in the *hinder Legges*, which cauſeth them to *ſwell*. Sometimes they doe come by reaſon the *Horſe* being hard ridden, was brought into the Stable too hot, and careleſſy ſet up, who taking cold, the *bloud*, *greaſe*, and *humours* do fall downe into the *Legges*, and ſo cauſe them to *ſwell*. Sometimes it commeth by over-riding, whereby the *Horſe* hath his *bloud* ſtirred, and his *greaſe melted*, which falleth down, and reſteth in the *hinder Legges*, cauſing them to *ſwell*. Sometimes by being ridden and gallopping upon hard waies in the Heates, and by that meanes the *bloud* and *greaſe* falleth downe into his *Legges*, congealeth there, whereby they do become *gowty* and *gourdy*. And ſometimes *gourdy-Legges* cometh by ſicknes and ſurfets taken, which after remedy had, yet the *faces* or *dregges* thereof ſtill remayning in the *body* of the *horſe*, falleth downe, and cauſeth the *legges* to *ſwell*, as

I have frequently ſeene. And theſe be the primme cauſes and reaſons which we have obſerved for this Malady. The ſignes your *eie* doth demonſtrate, and you may without teaching point to it with your *finger*, and therefore we may ſay nothing thereof. Wherefore now we will to the cure. If the *ſwelling* come by ordinary meanes, then take up the *Thigh-veines*, and then you neede doe no more, for that alone will cure him, and after open the *heele-veines*, and lay a *Retoyre* to the *Legges*, or elſe give him the *fire* which will ſiccicate & dry up the bad *humours*, which muſt be given gently, and lightly, neither would I have you give him the *fire*, unleſſe you might thinke or find it in your indgement to be very requiſite. But my meaning is not that this remedy of the fire bee applyed, but only to an old griefe, otherwiſe not at all. ✠. This is good. But if beſides his *ſwelled-Legges*, they alſo be ſtiffe, comming to him after much labour and travell; therefore. *Swelled-Legges.*

Take of Violet-leaves, Primroſe-leaves, and Strawberry-leaves, of each a handfull, boyle all theſe in new-Milke till they become very ſoft, and then take it from the fire, and put to it of the oyle of *Nervall*, of *Petroleum*, and of *Pamphilion*, of each one ounce, and ſo ſtirre all together untill it becometh bloud-warme, and therewith chafe, rub, and anoint the *Legges*, *Nerves*, *Sinewes*, and *Ioynts*, holding a hot barre of Iron neere to the place, to cauſe the Vnguent to ſinke the better in: Anoint him thus with this Vnguent, five or ſixe daies together, and it will helpe him. ✠. This I have often uſed. Another.

Take Traine-oyle, and warme it upon the *fire*, and therewith bathe his *legges* morning and evening, and in ſhort time he will be well. ✠. This is very good; alſo to ride your *Horſe* into the water morning and evening up to the *belly*, doth take away the ſwelling of his *legges*. ✠. This is mervelous good.

§ 22. S.

Hippoph. VVHat is good to aſſwage the ſwelling of the Cods in a Horſe?

Hippoſ. This Malady commeth many waies, to wit, by violent riding & heats, when there was not ſufficient care had of him, but was neglected in the ſetting up; alſo it commeth by waſhing, walking, and cold taken after immoderate labour, and ſometimes by feeding to intemperately upon Provender, and ſometimes by feeding upon unwholeſome meate. The ſignes to know it, are, his *ſtomacke* may be peradventure good to his meate, but yet it will do him little good, for he will be alwaies meagre and leane, his hayre will ſtare, neither will he caſt his coate at uſuall times like as other *Horſes* doe, he will looſe his mettle, and become very *lunt*, and his *eyes* will run with water and matter, and his *ſtones* will ſwell; in a word, he will be out of

ioynt,

ioynt, that is, out of good temper throughout every part and member of his *Body*. Other causes there bee of this Malady whereof I have intreated before in *lib. 2. cap. 6. §. 9. let. C.* to which place I do referre you; nevertheleſſe I will give you a Receipt or two which I have often uſed, and doe know them to be right good.

Swelled cods

Take Turmerick and long Pepper, of each a penny-worth, Anniſeeds, and Fenugrick, of each a halfe penny-worth, ſweet Butter ſo much as will ſuffice, boyle all theſe (being firſt powdred) in Ale three pints, till one pint be conſumed, and then take it from the fire, and ſtraine it, and diſſolve into it in London Treacle one ounce, and ſo well brewed, give it your *Horſe* bloud-warme, let him have this drinke ſundry times, and let otherwiſe his drinke be white water, and ſometimes a ſweete Maſh till he be well. ✠. This is very good.

Another.

Take of the beſt Tarre two ſpoonefuls, life-honey one ſpoonefull, black-ſope the quantity of a Nutmegge, Diapente one ounce, and of Bay-ſalt two ſpoonefuls, mix all theſe well together, and convey it into two or three Egges-ſhels, the tops being ſo opened as that you may but get forth the meate, then fill up the ſhels with this Medicine, and ſo put them downe his *throate* in a morning faſting, and give him preſently after it two or three hornefuls of Ale or Beere to ſend downe the Medicine the better, but the ſurpluſage of what remaineth of the Medicine, let it be ſpred upon the roote of his *mouth*, doe thus every morning for eight dayes together, and when he hath taken his Medicine, let him be ridden gently an houre or two, and then ſet him up warme cloathed and littered, and ſet him upon the Trench three houres, and let his drinke bee white water, and ſometimes a ſweet Maſh, both then and for ſometime after. ✠. This is alſo very good.

§ 23. S.

Hippoph. HOw doe you take off a Spongy-Wart?

Hippoſ. A *Spongy-Wart*, is that very thing which our *Ferriers* call an *Anberry*, which is kind of *wen*, which ſwelleth ſomtimes to a great bigneſſe, ſometimes againe it will bee but ſmall, but then commonly they are many, and do grow into *cluſters*, this commeth by meanes of *peccant humours* cauſed of bad *bloud*, and that *horſe* that is inclined to *Warts*, will ſeldome be ever free of them, for take them off in one place, and he will put forth more in other parts of his *body*, but to breed of eyther *Horſe* or *Mare* inclined to them I will diſwade you: for moſt commonly hee will put them forth about the *eyes*, yea, and oft-times ſo neere to the *eye* it ſelfe as to endanger the *ſight* thereof; They be eaſily knowne by reaſon they be ſo apparently ſeene, and therefore need no further deſcription. The cure is. It were good firſt to *purge* him, and to take *bloud* from that *Maſter-veine* which

Spongy-wart.

which you doe finde doth moſt feed them, as well to divert as to ſtop the malice of that bad *humour* which doth occaſion the malady. If the *Wart* or *Anberry* be farre enough extant from the *skin*, then tye two of his ſtrongeſt *hayres* taken from his *tayle*, hard about the ſorance ſo faſt as you poſſibly can, and ſo as that it may not looſen, and in few dayes it will fret and eate it cleane off, which done, ſtrew upon it the powder of Verdegreece to kill it at the root, and after heale it up againe with your green ſalve. But if you cannot come to tye it either with hayre or threed, then either with your inciſion knife cut it away cloſe to the *skin*, or elſe burn off with an hot iron, and then firſt kill the *fire* with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and after heale it up as before is preſcribed you. ✠ This is very good.

§ 23. *S.*

Hippoph: VV*Hat is good to be applyed to a* Horſe *that is* Surbated? *Hippoſ.* Two wayes a *horſe* doth ſurbate; the firſt is when a *horſe* is newly backt and weighed, upon his firſt ſhooing, and when the owner of the *horſe* will not have patience with him, but will preſently journey him upon hard and ſtony wayes, his *hoofes* and *feet* being yet but tender to what they will be afterwards, and ſo the *horſe* muſt needs *ſurbate*. The ſecond way is, when a *horſe* hath of himſelfe bad *feet*, and is alſo either ill *ſhod*, or elſe his *ſhooes* be very thinne worne, or that they be too narrow or too ſhort, and that he be ridden upon bad, hard, ſtony, and rough wayes; in ſuch like caſes your *horſe* will *ſurbate*; you ſhall finde it by the handling of his *feet*, eſpecially the next day after a long journey, by reaſon he will not ſtand ſtill long upon his *feet* without hitching them up, and removing them, for that they will be ſo ſore, as that he will not know how or where to place them, and you ſhall alſo perceive him to be *ſurbated*, by reaſon that after a journey he will lye much, ſtanding being painefull unto him, and in his lying you ſhall ſee him covet to lye and ſtretch himſelf all along upon one ſide, and if you feele the *coffins* of his *hoofes*, you ſhall finde them to burne very hot, and his hoofes to be very dry. The cure is very facile.

1

2

3

Take two new laid Egges, and after you have well picked his *fore-feet*, breake them raw into the *ſoles*, and then ſtop them up with Oxe or Cow dung, and he will be well by the next morning. ✠ This is an approved good cure.

Surbated feet.

§ 24. *S.*

§ 24. S.

Hippoph. *How doe you cure a* Horſe *that is* ſtifled?

Hippoſ. This miſchiefe commeth *accidentally*, to wit, either by a *ſtraine* in leaping, or by a ſlip in travell, or by the ſtroke of ſome other *horſe*, and thus the *bone* is either out of its place, or elſe the joynt is very much ſtrained or hurt. The ſignes to know it is; if the *bone* be out, you may ſee it plainely, for beſides his halting, the *bone* diſlocated will ſo ſtick out, as that the *horſe* can do no more then touch the ground with his *toe*, til it be put in again, and the way to put it in is thus. Firſt tye down his head to the Manger, then take a cord and faſten it to the *paſterne* of the *ſtifled legge*, and draw his *legge* forwards, and ſo the bone will come right by helping it with your *hand*, which being in, your care then muſt be to keep it in with your *hand*, and then tye the other end of the cord to the Rack, ſo as he may not put back his *legge* to diſlocate the *bone* any more for an houre or two after till it be ſetled and dreſſed. Wherefore let his *Keeper* ſtand by him all the time, leſt the *horſe* ſhould lye down, or be unruly. This done, take pitch which you muſt have molten in a pot, in a readineſſe, and with a clout upon a ſtick annoint the ſtifling three or foure inches broad at the leaſt, and ten inches long, and preſently before the pitch can coole, have a ſtrong piece of new Canvas cut fit for the purpoſe, which being made very warme by a fire, clap it upon the place ſo neatly, that the *bone* cannot goe forth againe. This plaiſter muſt not lye towards the *flanke* and *foot* longſt-wayes, but croſſe-wayes upon the *joynt*, as it were about the *thigh*, otherwiſe it cannot hold in the *bone*. Having thus done, anoint the plaiſter on the out-ſide all over with the ſaid molten pitch, and whilſt it is warm, clap flocks of the *horſes* colour all over upon the out-ſide of the Canvas, and let the plaiſter remaine on untill it fall away of it ſelfe, and after that you may apply ſuch good Vnguents as you may thinke to be moſt expedient for the malady. But if the *bone* be not out, then put in a *French Rowell* a little beneath the ſtifling-place, and let the *Rowell* remain in fifteen dayes, turning it once every day, and at fifteen dayes end take it forth, and heale up the *orifice*, like as before you have been taught. ✠ This is ſpeciall good.

Stifled.

§. 25. S.

Hippoph. *What remedy may be had for a* Horſe *that is troubled with the* Stone?

Hippoſ. This is a very troubleſome diſeaſe, and it commeth of groſſe and bad *humours*, gotten principally by violent exerciſe, and intemperate riding, and it commeth from the *Liver* and *Spleen*, which falling down into the kidneyes and bladder, ſettleth there, whereby there groweth in the *mouth* of the *conduct* certaine inflamed hard knots

knots which ſtoppeth his *urine*, whereby he is not able to *piſſe*, but with great difficulty, by reaſon the *ſinewes* and the *pores* about the necke of the *bladder* are benummed, which taketh away the ſenſe and feeling of the *bladder*. And ſometimes this infirmity commeth by reaſon that in his travell, the *horſe* is kept ſo long in agitation, as not to ſuffer him to *ſtale* and *piſſe*, for the water being made hot by exerciſe, doth conglutinate, and becommeth viſcous and thick, ſo as it cannot paſſe away from him, as nature requireth it ſhould do, whereby there is made too great a retention of the *Vrine*, by meanes of the obſtructions he hath in his *kidneyes*, which engendreth gravell, ſometimes red, and ſometimes grey, which falling down into the *conducts*, ingendreth *phlegmaticke* and *groſſe humours*, which occaſioneth conglutination, and ſo becommeth to be the *ſtone*, waxing ſo hard, and thereby ſtopping the current of his *water*, ſo as he will not be able to *piſſe* or *ſtale*. And you may come eaſily to know it, by reaſon that he can neither draw his *yard*, nor *piſſe*, but with great paine and difficulty in his ſheath, and that many times drop by drop.

Stone.

The cure is, take Saxafrage, Nettle-roots, Parſley-roots, Fennell-roots, Sperage-roots, and of Dodder, of each one handfull, bruiſe all theſe things, and boyle them on a gentle fire with white Wine, untill a third part be conſumed, then put unto it of Salt one handfull, of Sallet oyle, and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three ounces, Honey halfe a pound; when all this is boyled, ſtraine it, and wring it very hard, and of this give your *Horſe* one pinte every morning faſting, made bloud warme, and if in the boyling or by ſtanding, it happen to become thicke, diſſolve it again with white Wine, and after the firſt boyling it muſt be but onely warmed. And give to him this drinke every morning ſo long as it will laſt. ✠ This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another as good as the former.

Take of ſtrong Ale one quart, and put it into a pottle pot, then take ſo many of the reddeſt Radiſh roots, cleane waſhed and ſliced into ſmall pieces as will fill up the pot, then ſtop up the pot ſo cloſe, as that the *ayre* cannot get in, and let it remaine foure and twenty hours, then ſtraine the roots from the Ale very hard into ſome other clean pot, and ſo give it him in a morning faſting with a *horne*, then ride him a while upon it, and ſo ſet him up warme covered and well littered, and in a little while you ſhall ſee him *piſſe*, give him this drink ſundry mornings together; and during this cure, let him have but onely white water to drink. ✠ This is ſpeciall good.

§. 26. S.

Hippoph. WHat cure have you for a String-hault?

Hippoſ. This is a malady which for the moſt part the beſt mettled *horſes* be many times troubled with; it commeth meerly of cold, as by taking cold ſuddenly after hard riding, eſpecially when by being waſhed, for the *bloud* and *ſinewes* being by that meanes ſtupified and benummed, is the cauſe of the diſeaſe by reaſon the ſenſe and feeling of the *member* is taken from him; you may eaſily know it by the manner of the unſightly lifting, and ſudden ſnatching up of his *legge* much higher then the other, and it commonly commeth into the *hinder legge*, rather then into the *fore-legge*. The cure is, firſt to take up the veine in the thigh, and after to anoint all the *legge* and the *thigh* from the *body* down unto the very *foot* a long time together, one holding a red hot Barre of iron neere to the place, and let him be anointed with this oyntment.

String-hault.

Take of the oyle of Petroleum, of the oyle of Wormes, of the oyle of Nervall, of Patch or Piece greaſe, of the oyle of Spike, of each one ounce, of *London* Treacle two ounces, and of Hogs greaſe one pound, melt all theſe upon the fire, and then take it off, and keep it with continuall ſtirring til it be thorough cold, and with this anoint the viſited member every day once, and then wiſpe him up with a ſoft thumb band of Hay from the *paſterne* to the top of the *hoofe*, and thus do for ten dayes together, rubbing and chafing in the ointment very well a long time together, holding (as before I have adviſed) a hot barre of iron neere to it, to cauſe this Vnguent the better to ſinke into the *ſinewes*, *nerves*, and *joynts*. But after you have done anointing him, you muſt keep him warme and well littered, and let the thumb band be daily made leſſer and leſſer, and ſhorter and ſhorter, till you perceive him to handle both *legges* alike, and your *Horſe* to be recovered; but you muſt not ride him that he may ſweat much in a *moneth* after, and ſo ſoon as warme weather commeth, turne him to graſſe into ſome dry paſture where is water, and take him up againe about *Bartholomew* Tide, or before the cold commeth, and whilſt he doth remaine in the Stable, keep him warm, and ſo he will be free of his *String-hault*, and be a ſound *horſe* againe. To anoynt him alſo with Acopum is very good. ✠ Thus I have recovered ſundry *horſes* of this malady.

§ 27. S.

§ 27. S.

Hippoph. *What is the nature of* Suppositories?

Hippof. The nature of *Suppositories* are to helpe a *horſe* that cannot well empty himſelfe; for a *Suppoſitory* cauſeth him to diſcharge himſelfe of many ſuperfluous and evill *humours* which do diſturb, annoy, and diſtemper his *body* with their *peccant qualities* and conditions, for they breed bad *nutriment*, which oft times good dyet cannot amend, and therefore muſt be ſent away by *purgation*, that is to ſay, by *Suppoſitory*, or *Cliſter*, or *Potion*; I have ſpoken already ſufficiently, and therefore I will now intreat of *Suppoſitories* onely, which of all other wayes is the gentleſt, wherewith to *purge* and *cleanſe* the *guts*: for a *Suppoſitory* is but a preparative to a *Cliſter* or *Potion*, whereby to looſen the *guts*, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard *excrements*, which a *Suppoſitory* rather then a *Cliſter* can looſen; and as I have already given you receits for *Cliſters*, ſo now will I give you for *Suppoſitories*, whereof you may make uſe according as occaſion and neceſſity ſhall require.

1 *Suppoſitory.*

Take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three inches at the ſmaller end, and then anoint the bigger and longer part either with Sallet oyle, or freſh or ſweet Butter, and ſo convey it into his *fundament*, then with your hand hold his *tayle* to his *tuell* a good halfe houre, or elſe tye his *tayle* with a *ſtrap* to his girt or Surſingle, by which time the *Suppoſitory* will be diſſolved, then let looſe his *taile*, and then preſently leap his *backe* and trot him up and down till he do begin to *empty* and *purge* himſelfe, for by this meanes it will worke the better and more kindely. ✠ This is the moſt gentle of all *Suppoſitories* can be given. ✠ This diſſolveth all hard, dry, and hot *excrements*, and ſendeth them forth, and beſides it ſuppleth the *guts*. Another, If you doe finde your *horſe* to be ſo exceeding weake, as that you dare not without perill of his *life*, adminiſter unto him any *Potion* or *purging medicine*, then give him this *Suppoſitory*.

2 *Suppoſitory.*

Take of common Honey ſixe ounces, of Salt-Niter one ounce and a halfe, of Wheate flowre, and of Anniſeeds in fine powder, of each one ounce, boile all theſe to a ſtiffe thickneſſe, and ſo make it into *ſuppoſitories*, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Sallet oyle, and your hand alſo, and ſo put it up into his *fundament* the length of your hand, then tye his *tayle* betwixt his *legges*, as before is ſhewed, and let it remaine ſo halfe an houre, by which time the *ſuppoſitory* will be diſſolved, then ride and order him as before. ✠ This is alſo very good, eſpecially in caſe of *ſurfets* or inward *ſickneſſe*. Another.

3 *Suppoſitory.*

Take a piece of Caſtle-Sope, and paring it bring it into the faſhion of a *ſuppoſitory*, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you. ✠ This is ſpeciall good to purge *phlegme*, & it is very gentle. Another.

4 *Suppository.*

Take Saven, ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſtamp it to maſh, and ſtamp with in Staveſaker and Salt, of each two ounces, boyle theſe in common Hony ſo much as will ſuffice, till it be thick, and ſo make it up into *Suppoſitories* and adminiſter one of them, like as you are before ſhewed, and order him ſo likewiſe. +. This purgeth *Choler.* Another.

5 *Suppository.*

Take an angry red Onion and pill it, and iagge it croſſe wayes with your knife, and ſo adminiſter it, and order him as before. +. This purgeth *Melancholy.* Another.

6 *Suppository.*

Take common-hony one pint, and boyle it till it be thick, & make it up into *Suppoſitories* as it cooleth, and adminiſter it, and order him as before is preſcribed you. +. This purgeth evill *humours*, it cooleth and comforteth the *body* very much, and cauſeth a good appetite to meate. All theſe I have often uſed and I do know them to bee very good. But you muſt take with you ſome inſtructions fit to bee knowne, which are 5 Firſt, when at any time you do adminiſter eyther *Suppoſitories Clyſters, Potions*, you muſt doe it in a morning faſting unleſſe neceſſity urge the contrary: Secondly, you muſt not at thoſe times ſuffer him to drinke any cold water, no not with exerciſe, but eyther ſweet Maſhes, or white water. Thirdly, it is very needfull that before you ſhall adminiſter eyther *Suppoſitory, Clyſter*, or *Potion*, that the *Horſe* bee raked. And fourthly that he be after kept warme.

1
2
3
4

§. 28. S.

Hippoph. WHat benefit commeth to a Horſe by Sweating?

Hippoſ. Truely Sir very much, for by moderat and iudicious giving of *Sweates*, as well in his cloathes in the Stable, as abroad in his exerciſe, you may cure him of many Maladies and prevent many infirmities which otherwiſe might accrew unto him. For *Sweating* doth open the *pores*, & ſendeth forth thoſe *peccant* and *malignant humours* which doe annoy, oppreſſe, and vexe him. But as touching this manner of *ſweating* by you propoſed, it hath relation unto what I have already handled in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 2. where I intreating of what is to be done to a *Horſe*, newly taken from graſſe, I there tooke occaſion to adviſe *ſweating*, and there I referred you to this place, and therefore I will here illuſtrate it. Wherefore if you bee in the way of *enſayning your Horſe* having already *purged, bloudied* and *cleanſed* him, and prepared his *body* fit for *ſweating* (if neede ſhall require) Then if the weather be faire and warme, ride him a mile upon his trot, and then home againe, then preſently litter him very well, and cloath him up ſo warme as that he may *ſweate*, but not yet ſo violently as to ſtirre the *humours* in his *body* too much, neyther let him *ſweate* above an houre, and then coole him againe by degrees, and that with great

Sweating.

great care and moderation; and thus ride and *sweate* him for three dayes together; then for sixe dayes together keepe him warme, but not to *sweate* any more, and during the time of his *sweating*, and sixe or eight dayes after, let him have no cold drinke, but white water, and sometimes a sweet Mash. And thus briefly of *sweating*. ✠. This manner of giving *sweates* I have often used, and with great commodity to the *Horse*. But let us passe on to another Chapter.

CHAP. XIX.

§. 1. T.

Hippophilus.

What cure have you for a Horse *whose* Tongue *is hurt?*

Hippos. This Malady commeth by *accident*, as with with a Bit, Halter, or the like.

Take therefore of Arman halfe an ounce, and rost it in the embers till it be red-hot, then take it up and beat it to very fine powder: then take of life-hony a Sawcer-full, and of white Wine one pint mixe and steepe these with the powder together, and so let it boyle over the fire, stirring it continually, then take it off, and let it coole, and so wash his *tongue* therewith morning and evening, or as you shall please till it be whole. ✠. This is very good. Another. *Tong hurt*

Take the iuyce of Salendine, and wash the *hurt-tongue* therewith nine dayes together, and it will cure it, albeit it be halfe cut in sunder, for the iuyce of Salendine well conglutinat and sodder the *tongue* together being cut or wounded. ✠. This also is very good.

§. 2. T.

Hippoph. *How doe you helpe a* Horse *that hath an* Itch *in his* Tayle?

Hippos. This commeth of rankenesse of *blood*, and therefore it is requisite that first he be let *blood* in the *Tayle*, and that hee *bleed* well. After.

Take Buck-lye, and with a Ragge or Hurds in the Lye wash the place infected every day often, or as many times as it shalbe dry, and continue thus doing foure or five dayes, and this will cure it. ✠. This *Taile an itch.*

is

is very good. Another. But if the *hayre* do fall away with the *Mainge*, or *Itch*, then slit the *skin* from within two inches of the *Tuell* to the fourth *ioynt*, and with your *Cornet* take out a certaine *bone* or *gristle*, which the *French* do call *Bariuole*, then fill up the clift with Salt made into fine powder, and with a hot iron burne the *gayle* in sundry places, and wash it with Buck-lye, as before; But your Lye must bee made very strong. This cure I never practised, but I once saw a *Marishall* of *Paris* dresse, and so cured a *Horse* in this manner of this malady, of whom I had the cure.

§ 3. T.

Hippoph. HOw doe you make your Vnguentum Theriacum?

Hippos. This *Vnguentum Theriacum* is most soveraigne for any *Ach* in any of the *Ioynts*; it is also speciall good for *Horses* that doe fall *lame*, if the griefe be in the *Hip*, *Stifling-place*, *legs*, *shoulders*, *Pasternes*, or any other part of the *legges*, a *back-sinew-sprain* only excepted. And thus I do make it.

Theriacum Vnguentum.

Take of Nervell, of Oyle of Pamphilion, and of black-Sope, of each two ounces, and of tryed-hogs-grease halfe a pound, melt all these upon a gentle fire, and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two penny-worth, then take it from the fire, then with a Splatter or Spoone, keepe it by continuall stirring till it be through cold, then will it be of a dun-colour, keep this in a gally-pot for your use. And when you shall have occasion to use the same, anoynt the grieved place therewith, rubbing, and chafing it in very well, and let one hold a barre of hot iron neere, as you do anoynt the griefe. And thus is it made. ✠. This is most excellent to raise the *veine* from the *sinew* at what time you are to take up the *veine*. I have tryed it *sæpè et sæpiùs*.

§. 4. T.

Hippoph. HOw doe you destroy a Tetter?

Hippos. This Malady or Sorance the *French* doe call *Vervelant*, the *Flying Worme*, which is a *Tetter* or *Ring-worme*, and the cure is this.

Tetter or Ring-worme

Take the rootes of Elicampane, and the rootes of the red-Dock, of each like much, slice them thinne, and put them into vrine three quarts with Bay-salt, two handfuls, let it boyle untill one quart bee consumed, then take it off, and with a clout fastned to a stick wash the Sorance very hot. Vse this foure or five mornings together, and it will kill it. ✝. This is very good.

§. 5. T.

§. 5. T.

Hippoph. WHat is to be done to a horſe *that tyreth in* travell, *and falleth ſicke?*

Hippoſ. For a *Horſe* to tire upon the way, the cauſes are many: 1
Firſt, for that he is travelled when he ſhall be too young; Secondly, 2
in that he is lately taken from graſſe whilſt he is yet foule and foggy, before he be well *enſaimed*; thirdly, in that he hath beene long kept 3
and pampered in the Stable, without giving him breath or moderate exercile; Fourthly, by being travelled beyond his ſtrength in longer journeyes, and deeper waies then he was well able to performe; Fift- 4
ly, it might be through the covetouſneſſe or careleſneſſe of his *rider*, 5
in not feeding or ſeeing him fed ſo well as was fitting; Sixtly and 6
laſtly, by reaſon the *Horſe* might have ſome ſecret infirmity where-of his *maſter* might be ignorant. Wherefore if your *Horſe* may happen in his travell to *tire* or *faint*, have patience with him, and do not force him beyond what he may be able to performe, either by ſpurring or beating him, like as many *cholericke* and *paſſionate people* doe uſually, but get to ſome houſe or Inne ſo ſoone as conveniently you may, when firſt you ſee him begin to ſinke or to faint under you, ſet him preſently up warme clothed, and well littered, that he take no cold, and let his *Keeper* or the *Oſtler* of the *Inne* rubbe and chafe him all over with freſh dry ſtraw, but eſpecially let him rub him againſt the *hayre*, and let him have no meat till two houres or more after you have given him this drinke.

Take of the beſt ſweet Sack one pinte, but if that cannot be had, *Tyring in travell.*
then take the ſame quantity of White or Claret Wine, and put thereto of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Graines, Cloves, Anniſeeds, and Fennell-ſeds, of each one ounce, all made into fine powder: then take red Sage, Roſemary-tops, Mints, Camomill, and wilde Thyme, of each like much, ſo that in all they amount to halfe a handfull, chop the hearbs very ſmall, and then put all theſe Hearbs and Spices into the Wine, and then boyle them a pretty while, then take it from the fire, and ſtraine it hard, and unbit your *horſe*, and give him this drink bloud warme; this done, Bit him up againe, and with a ſwitch ſtir him up and down as he ſtandeth in his place tyed to the Rack, then coole him, and two houres after his drink, give him firſt ſome Hay, and halfe an houre after that, give him either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and after feed him at your pleaſure, but be you conſiderate in giving him his Provender by little at once and often, and howſoever feed him well, and thus ordering him, by morning he will be well recovered, and able to travell againe. ✠ This is an excellent drink, and of great vertue for any *Horſe* that *tyreth* or falleth ſick upon the way. It is alſo very requiſite that with a Syringe you do inject of this drinke into his *noſtrils*. Another. If you doe feare that your

your *horſe* may tire in his journey, for prevention, carry with you a boxe of powder of dryed Elecampane roots, and let the powder be alſo ſearced, and when you do come unto your Inne, let him not be walked, but ſet up warme in the Stable clothed and littered, his *legs*, *body*, *head*, and *necke*, be by the *Groome* or *Oſtler* well rubbed, but chiefly his *Poll* betwixt his *eares*. Then take of ſtrong Ale one quart, or of ſweet Sack one pinte, which is much better, and put into it of your Elecampane halfe an ounce, brew them well together, and give it him with a horne, then bridle him, and tie him to the Racke, but not too high, ſo as he may put down his *noſe*, and let him ſtand ſo an houre, then unbridle him, and give him Hay, and an houre or better after that, give him either a ſweet Maſh or white water, and then Provender ſufficient, but with diſcretion and by degrees, and ſo alſo in the morning, give him both Oates and Bread, whether he will eate beſt, feeding him by little and little ſo long as he will eate, and in the morning when you are ready to take his *backe*, give him the ſame drinke againe, and you ſhall finde him to travell with *ſpirit* and *mettle*; and if you tye a branch of Penny-royall upon his Bit, it will greatly comfort him. But yet for all that which hath been ſaid, if he happen to tire, then

Take Arſmart, and rub his *bare backe* where the Saddle reſteth, and lay alſo ſome of the leaves upon his backe under the Saddle, and ſo clap on the Saddle, and this will cauſe him the better to hold out. ✠ This is good. Another.

Take the beſt Spaniſh Tobacco you can get, ſhred it ſmall, and dry it, and make it into fine powder, and mixe therewith the powder of Cockle ſhels of the like quantity, which muſt be ſearced, and put this powder into a glaſſe, keeping it cloſe ſtopped, and ſo keep it to your uſe. And when you are to uſe it, take of this powder, and mixe therewith of the oyle of Dill, and of the oyle of Cloves ſuch a quantity as will make this powder into a ſtiffe paſte, and ſo make it into *pils*, every Pill the bigneſſe of a Walnut, which muſt be dried in the ſhade (theſe Pils muſt be made in the Canicular or Dog dayes onely) then keep them cloſe ſtopped in ſome glaſſe or gally pot, that no ayre can get into it, and when you have cauſe to uſe any of them, give him one of them at what time you ſhall perceive your *horſe* to faint or tire, or that you do perceive him to have taken a cold or ſurfet, which may very well be the cauſe of his debility, give him (I ſay) one of theſe *Pils* when you do come unto your Inne. But if hee hath taken a cold or ſurfet, then give him a *Pill* in the morning faſting, and let him be well rubbed, clothed warme, and well littered, and ſuffer him not to drink any cold water, but either a ſweet Maſh or white water, for there is not any thing more noxious then to give a *horſe* in this caſe cold water, and let his travell be moderate and with great diſcretion, and he will both hold out his journey, and get ſtrength and fleſh alſo in his travell. ✠ And this I have often tryed both upon my own

horſes

horſes and others in whoſe company I have travelled, as well in *England* as in parts abroad.

Chap. XX.

§ 1. V.

Hippoph.

How doe you preſcribe a Vomit *to a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Of this I have ſpoken a little already, where I did remit you to this place. We doe uſually give vomits unto *horſes* newly taken up from graſſe, by reaſon they are thereby full of very groſſe and phlegmaticke humours, which doe abound in the ſtomacke and head, which if they be not fetched from the *horſe* in its due time, will be a meanes to impaire greatly the health of the *horſe*, which muſt oft times be neceſſarily expulſed by vomit, and you ſhall have a receit of a vomit which I had in *France* from a ſpeciall Ferrier there, who (as I have before touched) hath in my preſence adminiſtred to ſundry *horſes*, which did worke very kindely upon them, and I my ſelfe have adminiſtred the ſame to ſundry *Horſes* here in *England* to very great profit unto them. The receit is this.

Vomiting.

Take two of the greateſt roots of Polipodium you can get from the Oke, waſh and ſcrape them very cleane, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench, or Bit, then let it be ſteeped in the oyle of Spike a whole night, and in the morning faſting put on his bridle with the ſaid roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an houre or better faire and ſoftly, and if he be troubled with any rhumaticke or phlegmaticke humour, or with any cold or other filthy matter which may any way peſter, clogge, or annoy his ſtomacke; this thing will force him to vent them at his mouth and noſe, and it wil cauſe him to cough and neeze, whereby he will ſend forth a great abundance of filth and evill ſlimy ſtuffe from off his ſtomacke and head, as that in ſhort time he will become very cleane in his body, for this will both refine his bloud, and exhauſt all his watry humours, in ſuch ſort as by temperate ordering him, and doing as I have here preſcribed you, you may be confident to keep him a long ſound, perfect, and ſerviceable *horſe*. And this is not to be applied onely to a *horſe* newly taken from graſſe, but to any other *horſe* that hath taken a cold, or to any ketty, foule, foggy, or purſive *horſe* whatſoever. ✠ This may ſeeme ſtrange here a-

amongst us, but let any man make tryall, and he shall finde it to be most admirable.

§ 2. *V.*

Hippoph. VV*Hat is to be given to a* Horse *that hath a violent* Cough?

Hippof. If this great and very violent *Cough* proceed from a cold (as commonly all Coughs doe) then give him first Wheat Bran prepared, as sundry times before is prescribed you, and take bloud from the necke veine, then with his Oates give him this powder following, *viz.*

Violent Cough.

Take of Comen, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, *alias* Sisileos, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimstone sixe ounces, make all these into fine powder, and of this powder give him every night with his Oates one spoonfull. But because this powder disperseth the corrupt, grosse, and phlegmaticke humours which are predominant in the body of the *horse*, which doe occasion the said violent Cough, so soone as you shall perceive that with this powder he hath purged sufficiently, use it then no longer, but faile not to continue his white water, but before you give him his water, take a sticke about the bignesse of your thumb at least, and well-nigh a foot long, and wrap a fine ragge about it foure or five times steeped before hand in oyle de Bay, and so put it into his mouth, like as you would doe a Snaffle, and with straps made fast to the ends of the sticke, fastned then over his Poll, like as Smiths use to doe when they burne *horses* for the Lampas, and let him drinke with it in his mouth, that done, let him stand with it in his mouth one houre after at the least, to the end he may lick and suck up the said oyle upon the ragge or cloth, and when you doe give him his Oates, mixe them with this powder following, *viz.*

Take of Fennell-seeds foure ounces, of Fenugrick two ounces, of Cardamom one ounce, beat all together but grosly, otherwise hee will blow it away as he eateth his Oates, and keep him warme as before is advised you. ✠ This is very good, for I have often used it.

§ 3. *V.*

Hippoph. F*Or what causes doe you take up* Veines?

Hippof. As touching taking up of *veines*, you shall understand that it is a thing in many cases so much behoofefull, as that many times the most exquisite Ferrier living, shall not be able to perfect this cure but by that way and meanes, for unlesse such *veines* be either taken up, or some wayes stopped, which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the malady with its peccant humours, the Ferrier

can

can never worke by true Art. Againe, *veynes* well taken up, doe prevent many maladies wherunto many *horſes* are much more propenſe then others are. And laſtly, the taking up of *veynes*, cureth ſome diſeaſes, which could otherwiſe never be cured. For by taking up of the *thigh-veines*, ſendeth away Spavens, Splents, Curbs, Kibed-heeles, Swelled-legges, Scratches, Malenders, Faricion in the legs and the like forances; beſides it eaſeth all paines, aches, ſtraines, ſtiffneſſe in the limbs, &c. Take up the *Shackle-veynes*, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, ſwellings in the lower-joynts, foundrings, &c. Wherefore foraſmuch as ignorant people, whatſoever opinion they may have of their ſuperabundant skill, yet are they very much to ſeeke in that they doe ſo much exclaime againſt taking up of *veyns*, abſurdly affirming it to be a great meanes of laming of *Horſes*: but let them not miſtake themſelves, for aſſuredly it is the beſt and onely remedy againſt theſe and many more maladies, and when they ſhall have made triall, they will not be of ſo prejudicate opinions.

Voynes to take up.

Chap. XXI.

§ 1. *W.*

Hippoph.

What good thing have you wherewith to preſerve the winde of a Horſe?

Hippoſ. Sir, for this infirmity I make a Cataplaſme which is this.

Take Wheate flowre foure pound, Elecampane and Gentian, of each one ounce, Anniſeeds, Fenugrick, Comyn, Brimſtone, and Licoris, of each halfe a pound, let all theſe be made into very fine powder and ſearced, then put unto it of common Engliſh Honey halfe a pound, and ſo much white Wine as will make all theſe things into a Cataplaſme, boyle all theſe ſufficiently, till it be ſo thicke that you may make it into Pils, and give your *horſe* of them three or foure at a time for ſixe or eight mornings together. Vſe this often, for it will conſerve a *horſe* in health, and keepeth him ſound of his body, winde, and courage. ✠ This is moſt excellent. But if you doe perceive a taint in his winde, then

Winde to preſerve.

Take a cloſe earthen Pot or Pipkin, and put thereinto of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vineger three pints, and foure new laid Egges unbroken,

broken, and foure heads of Garlicke cleane pilled and bruiſed, then cover the pot very cloſe, and bury it in a Mixen or Dung-hill twelve houres, then take it up, and take forth the Egges, but breake them not, then ſtraine the Vineger and Garlick through a fine linnen cloth, putting unto the liquor of life-honey foure ounces, and of browne Sugar-Candy, Anniſeedes and Licoris, all made into very fine powder, of each two ounces, and your *horſe* having faſted all night till morning, give him one of the ſteeped Egges, and then one hornefull of this liquor or drinke, and then another Egge, and after that another hornefull, and ſo a third Egge, and then an hornefull, and laſtly a fourth Egge, and ſo the reſidue of the liquor, remembring to give him into eyther noſethrill halfe a hornefull of his drinke, and it muſt be adminiſtred bloud-warme; then ſet him upon the Trench, cloth, ſtop, and litter him warme, and let him ſtand ſo foure houres, then unbit him, and if it be in Winter time give him ſweet Wheate-ſtraw, but no Hay, and if it be in Summer, give him graſſe, greene-corne, or the leaves of Sallowes, and for nine dayes give him eyther ſweete Maſhes, or white water, putting therein ſome Salet-oyle, and be you aſſured hee will doe well againe. ✠. This is alſo very good. Another.

Take a Hedge-hogge alive, and Bake him in the Oven in an earthen-pot, cloſe ſtopped untill he do become ſo dry as that you may make him into powder: give him alſo this powder one ſpoonefull, in a quart of good Ale every other day, and this will infinitely helpe and preſerve his winde. ✠. This is alſo ſpeciall good.

§ 2. W.

Hippoph. *IS there ſuch a diſeaſe which is called the* Wilde-Fire?

Hippoſ. Yea Sir, there is, and it is a diſeaſe moſt dangerous and very difficult to cure, but by a Receipt of a powder which once I obtained of a skilfull Chirurgion, which ſaid powder is not fit to bee applyed to any living creature, but to a *horſe* only it is ſo terrible. And thus it is to be made, *viz.*

Wild-fire. Take of living Toades foure, the greateſt and blackeſt can bee found, living Moles or Ants three, and of old Shoo-ſoles ſixe, and heads of Garlick unpilled, and with their beards or roots remaining upon them forty, then take of the leaneſt and ſalteſt Martlemas-beefe three pounds, cut it into thin and ſwall peeces and ſlices, ſuch Martlemas-beefe I meane which hath longeſt hanged in the ſmoake: take alſo of Oates eight pints, and of old woollen-ragges the couſer the better two pounds; take alſo of Swallowes-dung a good quantity, and foure or five living Swallowes, put all theſe things into an Earthen-pot new, and well nayled, and let it bee big enough to be able

to

to hold all the Ingredients, and put alſo all thoſe living-creatures among them alive, and then make a Cake of Clay, and therewith lute up the Pot ſo cloſe, as that neyther ſmoake nor ayre can eyther get in or out; having ſo done carry your Pot into ſome Orchard or other Cloſe, or Back-ſide, from Houſing or Straw, and there place it, and ſo make a great fire both round about it, and upon it, and ſo keep the fire unto the Pot, till it bee as red-hot as the very fiery-coles themſelves, and let the fire continue ſo great after the pot is red-hot by the ſpace of halfe an hour at the leaſt: then let the fire remaine untouched untill it be all conſumed to aſhes, and ſo go forth of it ſelfe, without eyther quenching the ſame, or taking away any of the fire about it, and ſo let it ſtand till it be through cold, which will hardly be done the ſame day, ſo when the Pot is through cold, take it from the place, and opening it, take forth the ſtuffe, and put it into ſome Trough or great Morter made for the purpoſe, which muſt ſtand in ſome out or open place where no winde can come, the Trough or Morter being covered with a cloth, that the powder may not fly away, there pound and ſtamp theſe things together into fine powder, and in the ſtamping, adde thereunto of unſlacked-Lime one pound. Let him that ſtampeth it be cloſe muffled, and his eyes covered with a glaſſe-caſe made for the purpoſe for feare of hurting them; and when it is throughly powdred, ſearſe the powder through a courſe Haire-cloth, and ſo keepe the very fineſt of the powder for your uſe, in ſome cleane glaſſe or gally-pot. This powder killeth all *Wilde-fires* whatſoever, and all running Soraunces and Vlcers, provided it be applyed to fleſhy-places, and not to places where *veines* or *finewes* be, for that it will burne them in ſunder. X. This I have made ſundry times, and often uſed it, and to cure and dry up old ſores and Vlcers (this powder being diſcreetly uſed and rightly applyed) a better thing then this truly I know not, eſpecially if the cure be eyther deſperate or dangerous.

§ 3. *W.*

Hippoph. *WHat good Plaiſter have you to lay upon a* Wound, *whereby to keepe in the Taint or Salve?*

Hippoſ. Take Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, Turpentine, Hogge-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, melt all theſe together, and ſo keepe it: and when you would uſe it, ſpread what will ſerve upon a plaiſter of Leather, and ſo cover the *wound* therewith. ✠. This ſalve doth infinitely comfort a *wound* greene or old, bee the ſame Fiſtula or otherwiſe. Very good. *Wounds.*

§. 4. *W.*

§. 4. *W.*

Hippoph. *How doe you take away a* Wen, *or other excretion arising in the* Fleſh?

Hippoſ. A *Wenne* is a hard riſing out of the *fleſh*, which commeth ſometimes by bad-humours, but moſt commonly by ſome Hurt, Stroke, Bruiſe, Blow, or with a ſtone throwne at that place, it is outwardly *fleſhie*, but towards the roote it is matterative, you neede no ſignes whereby to know it, for it will betray it ſelfe by its ſwelling, The cure is.

Wen or excretion.

If you cannot come to tye a double threed about it whereby to eate it off, as I have formerly ſhewed you in the cure of a *Spongy-Wart:* then with your Inciſionknife cut it a croſſe into four equal parts or quarters to the very bottome, but beware you touch not either *veynes* or *ſinewes*, then with Mercury eate away the foure quarters, or elſe burne them off with your hot-iron; then heale the place with your healing ſalve. ✣. This is very good.

§. 5. *W.*

Hippoph. *What is good to take away* Wind-gaules?

Hippoſ. Wind gaules are terrible Sorances, which do breed in the *legges* of a *Horſe*, as well on the outſide as on the inſide, a little above the *Fet-locke joynt*, and by their ſwelling are plainly diſcovered, and made viſible to the *Eye*, for they bee bladders, wherein lyeth a Ielly, which being ſet forth is thicke, and of the colour of the yolke of an Egge, whereof ſome will be bigger, and ſome leſſer. It commeth moſt commoly to *Horſes* in the Summer-time, by reaſon they are ridden upon hard ground, and the *Horſe* being over-heat by too hard riding, his greaſe falleth downe into his *legges*, and ſetleth there, and by that meanes breedeth this Malady, wee call *Wind-gaules*, and they will be ſo painefull unto him, as to cauſe him many times to halt. The ſignes to know them are by the ſwellings in that place before named, which be moſt eaſie to be ſeen and felt. The cure is eyther to ſtricke with your Fleame or to open them with your Inciſion-knife, and to let and cruſh out all the congealed ſtuffe which is therein, opening the place no further then through the *skin*, and you muſt be carefull of the *ſinew*, which lyeth cloſe to that place: then.

Wind-galles

Take the white of an Egge, and Oyle-de Bay ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate them together, and apply it with Hurds Plaiſter-wiſe, and in three or foure dayes thus dreſſing it, he will be cured. ✣. Thus have I cured many *Horſes*. Another. After you have let forth the Ielly.

Take Pitch, Roſin, and Maſticke, of each like much, boyl or but melt

melt them together, and as it cooleth, make it up into rowles bigger or lesser at your pleasure, and being thorough cold, apply it with a hot iron to the orifice, and so round about the place of the sorance on either side of the legge, and so soon as you have layed on this charge, and before it can be cold, clap on Flocks, and this will dry up the Wind-gaules, and heale them. ✠ This is speciall good. But during not onely these two cures, but all other for this malady, you must not suffer your *horse* to come into any Well by any means. Another. First shave away the hayre as you must doe in all these kinde of cures, then open the sorance as before is taught you, and crush forth the jelly and filth, then

Take Tacha-Mahacha, Masticke, Parrosin, of each to the quantity of a hasle nut, and of Stone-Pitch to the quantity of a Wall-nut, with a little Brimstone powdred, melt all these together, and when it is molten, put in so much Turpentine as a Wall-nut, and so stirre them together, and when it is cold, make a plaister thereof upon leather, and apply it warme to the place upon the out-side onely upon the orifice, which ought evermore to be made on the out-side, then put on the plaister it selfe, and round about it with the same Salve, and clap Flocks upon it, and so let him rest in the Stable, and by keeping him from wet till he be whole, and let the plaister remaine on untill it shall fall away of it selfe. ✠ This is a most excellent cure, and I have often made good use thereof. Another.

Take the oyle of Vineger, and dip your thumb therein, and rub the sorance therewith every day till the haire do fall off, which will cause the Wind-gaules to breake, run, and bleed, then heale and cure the Wind-gaules well and soundly. ✠ This is as good as the former. Another. Wash and shave as formerly is shewed you, then give fire to the place, that done, open the Wind-gaules just in the middle line or stroke, halfe an inch at least, and so crush forth the jelly with your thumb, then

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, and therewith charge the place as before is taught you. This is very good. Another. First wash and shave, and open the place with your fleame, &c. then take of oyle de Bay, and of Turpentine, of each one spoonfull, Verdigreece in fine powder, one penny worth, the white of an Egge, and of red Leade two ounces in powder, boyle all these to a Salve, and administer it to the place plaister-wise. ✠ This is one of the best cures for Wind-gaules that I doe know.

§. 6. W.

Hippoph. *What is good for a* Horſe *that is wrung or hurt in the* Withers?

Hippoſ. This is a thing that I have handled before, yet I will give you a few more receits. Having travelled him, and comming home, or to your Inne, when you take off the ſaddle, and that you doe finde the *horſe* to be wrung in the *withers*, and his backe or *withers* thereby to be ſwelled, immediately clap on the Saddle againe, and lay upon the ſwolne place ſome wet litter, and ſo let the Saddle abide on againe; then cut up a thin Turfe of graſſe and earth together, that done, put the Turfe upon the fire, and let it there remaine till it becommeth red hot, and being well burned, take it from the fire, and moiſten the graſſy-ſide very well with white Wine Vineger, then take off the wet litter, and lay the Turfe very hot with the graſſy-ſide next to the place, and ſo put on the Saddle againe, and let it ſo remaine for all night, and this preſently helpeth any ſwellings in the *withers*, or any other part of the backe, as alſo any ſwellings by Spur-gaules or Navell-gaules. ✠ This is very good. Another. If the skin be broken or ulcerated, then

Wither-wrung.

Take ſweet Butter, Bay-ſalt, and powder of Frankincenſe, of each as much as will ſuffice, boile all theſe upon the fire, and with a clowt faſtened to the end of a ſticke, even as it commeth boyling from the fire, ſcald it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption, then make inciſion on both ſides from beneath, that the matterative ſtuffe may the more eaſily void away downewards, and after uſe none other thing wherewith to heale it up, but onely your uſuall powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale that, or dry other ſuch like hurts. ✠ This is moſt excellent, I have often experimented the ſame. Another. But if it be a wrinckle either in the ſhoulder, or in any other joynt or member, then

Take of white Wine one pinte, halfe a porringer full of Wheate flower, of common Honey one pinte, of Syzes three ounces, boyle all theſe together to an Vnguent, and anoint the places grieved therewith. And this alſo is very ſoveraigne for Cores, Cracks, and Chops in the heeles of the *horſe*. ✠ This I often uſing have found it to be very good. Another.

Take three great Onyons, picke forth the cores, making a concavity or hollowneſſe in them, then fill them up with the powder of Frankincenſe, then wrap them up in three or four handfuls of Hurds or Tow, then wet the Hurds, and ſo cover and heale them up in the hot embers, and lay upon the top of the embers a good Shovell-full of hot burning coles, and ſo let it remaine untill the Onions be throughly roſted, then take them forth, and ſeparate the Hurds and burned

burned part from the other, and the ſoft and pappy part you ſhall apply to the ſorance very hot, and let it remain three daies before it be removed, and do thus ſo oft as need ſhall require, untill it be through whole; but unleſſe the hurt or bruiſe be very great, it will be cured at firſt dreſſing. ✠ This is very good. Another. But if the place grieved be broken,

Take then of the oyle of Worms, of Turpentine, and common Honey, of each two ounces, incorporate all theſe together very well till you have brought them to be one body, and either by Taint or Plaiſter dreſſe the ſorance therewith, and it will heale it up ſound. ✠ And this alſo is very good. Another. If your Horſe hath taken a wrēch in the ſhoulder, or in the hippe, knee, or hoofe; then firſt ſwim him, then after for thirteen or fourteen dayes together, annoynt the member grieved all over, and a good way about with this unguent.

Take of the oyle de Bay, of Nervall, of Dialthea, of tryed Hogs greaſe, of each two ounces, melt all theſe together, and ſtirre them well till they be well incorporated, and herewith anoint him againſt the haire, with a hot bar of iron to be holden before you as you annoint him. and after let him be rowelled with a *French* Rowell, and let a Patten-ſhooe be put upon the contrary foot, and let him be kept in the houſe, and the Rowell turned daily, and the corruption put forth, and then let him be either gently ridden or walked every day halfe an houre, and let the Rowell remain in the Horſe fourteen daies at the leaſt, then take it out, and heale up the orifice with your green Oyntment, and ſo ſoon as he is whole, with your cauterizing-iron draw croſſe lines eight or nine inches long over againſt the joynt that was pained, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the middle, but yet burn him no deeper then that the skin may look yellow, and then charge all that place with this charge.

Take Pitch one pound, Roſin halfe a pound, and Tarre half a pint, melt theſe together, and whilſt it is warm, charge the place therwith, and clap Flocks upon the charge, and then if the ſeaſon of the yeare will ſerve, let him be turned to graſſe, and ſo let him run three moneths at the leaſt. ✠ This is very good.

§ 7. *Worms.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to cure wormes of what ſort ſoever in a Horſe?*

Hippoſ. Of this malady I have entreated ſufficiently before in the § of Bots, where I have given you many good receits. Nevertheleſſe I will give you one or two more for wormes onely, and ſo leave you to practiſe.

Wormes. Take the entrails of a great Chick, and with the powder of Brimſtone and Bay-Salt rowled in the ſaid entrails, give it him down his throat, and cauſe him to ſwallow them ſo warm as they come out of

the belly of the Chicken, but caſt away the Gizard, give him this three mornings together, and every time ride or walk him till he dungeth, and keep him warm, and give him white water, and at three dayes end, give him Rice boyled in water, and after dryed in the Sun, and give him alſo to eate the leaves of Sallowes, and it will cauſe him to voyd the Worms with his ordure, but if you ſhall rake him firſt, it will be the better. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Broom and Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very ſmall, and work them into Pils with ſweet Butter, and having kept your Horſe faſting over night, give him them in the morning, to wit, three of thoſe Pils at a time, and then ſet him upon the Trench for two or three hours after, and then give him meat, but no drink at all till night by any meanes, and then let him have warm, but no white water. ✠ This I have often experienced, and do know it to be a moſt excellent receit.

Chap. XXII.

§. 1. 7.

Hippoph.

What is your beſt cure for the Yellowes?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe of the *Yellowes* in a Horſe is the very ſame that Phyſitians do call the Iaundiſe in a man; and as there be two ſorts of Iaundiſe in a man, ſo alſo are there the like in a Horſe, *viz* the Yellow and the Black, the yellow being moyſt, the black dry; the yellow proceeding from the over-flowing of the gall, occaſioned of choller, and the black comming from the over-working of the Spleen, by means of over-much malancholy, both bad infirmities, but the black worſt, more dangerous and moſt mortall, the yellow is more eaſily diſcovered by reaſon of its colour, for it coloureth the whites of the eyes, the tongue, the lips, and the inward parts of the noſtrils, which the black Iaundiſe doth not apparantly, albeit by due and ſtrict obſervation, you may come to know when your Horſe hath a black Iaundiſe, for then you ſhall perceive the whites of his eyes, lips, tongue, and mouth to be of a thick and duskiſh colour, and not ſo cleere and ſanguine as before when he was not viſited with any ſuch infirmity, both which are ſo mortall (eſpecially the latter) as that if very great care be not taken whereby to pry into its ſymptomes, the Horſe may fall.

fall downe upon a ſudden (as I have often ſeen and known) even as he travelleth, and dye, or elſe he appearing to be ſound and healthy, and to eate his meat like as he was accuſtomed over night when you left him, comming again unto him in the morning, you may finde him dead, ſtiffe, and cold. And the origen of this malady commeth principally of unkindely and unnaturall heats given him by moſt violent and intemperate riding, whereby the Liver becommeth inflamed; the Liver, the Bloud, Gall, and the Spleen, which cauſeth choller to have ſoveraignty and dominion over the other humours, and ſo engendreth this perilous diſeaſe, which ſeldome bringeth a lingring or languiſhing death, but that which endeth him ſuddenly, and therefore it is moſt requiſite that the greater eye and care be had unto it. The beſt ſymptomes how to know it is thus. Your Horſe will be dry in his body, mouth, and noſtrils, being marvellous hot through the abundance of choller that reigneth in him, and he will be very gaunt in his belly towards the flanks, he will be alſo very faint, and not onely ſweat upon every the leaſt motion, but alſo as he ſtandeth in the Stable: his eyes, the inſides of his lips, mouth, and tongue, will be yellow as Saffron, and he will ſeldome lye down, and being layd, he will ſometimes grone. The cure. Firſt let him bloud in the neck and mouth, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink.

Yellowes.

Take of Turmerick and long Pepper, of each one penniworth, Anniſeeds and Licoris in fine powder and ſearced, of each halfe a ſpoonfull, Selendine, the leaves and roots one handfull chop, ſtamp, and ſtraine the Selendine, and ſo put all theſe together into ſtrong Ale one quart, warm this upon the fire, and in the warming adde unto it of London Treacle one ounce, and of ſweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and give it him bloud warm, and after keep him warme, and give him white water, and he will do well. ✠ This is very good. Another. Firſt bloudy him as before, and then

Take Turmerick, Myrrah, Ivory or Harts-horn, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one penny worth, make all theſe into fine powder, and ſearce them, and put unto it of the juyce of Selendine a good quantity, put all theſe into Muskadine one pinte, Sack or Ale, and let it boile upon the fire a walm or two, then put unto it of ſweet Butter as much as will ſuffice, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, and ſo give it him bloud warm, but let him firſt be raked. This is very good. Another. Firſt bloudy him as before, then

Take of white wine one quart, of Saffron two drams, and of Turmerick halfe an ounce, and a good quantity of the juyce of Selendine; give him this bloud warm, and keep him warm, and give him white water. ✠ This is very good. Another. Firſt let him bloud as you are preſcribed before. Then

Take of ſweete Wine one pinte, of ſtronge Ale and Beere one quart, and put unto it of the iuyce of Salendine ſix ſpooneſuls, and of

the iuyce of Rue two ſpoonefuls, and let all theſe boyle upon the fire a little, then ſtraine into it of *Engliſh* Saffaron halfe an ounce, and put into it of life hony three ounces, and ſo give it him bloud-warme, then leap his backe, and ſo ride or elſe walke him a foot-pace a quarter of an houre, then ſet him up warme, letting him to faſt three houres after; and after give him meat, and a ſweete Maſh, or white-water. ✠. This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before. Then

Take of the beſt life hony halfe a pound, of Saffaron made into fine powder, and of the powder of Fenugrick of each ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate theſe with your Hony to a ſtiffe paſte, and ſo make thereof three Pils, and dipping them into Salet-oyle give them to your *Horſe*, which after he hath taken, ride or walke him gently an houre, then ſet him up warme, and order him as before. ✠. This is a particular good Pill. Another. Firſt let him bloud as before; Then

Take of white-Wine one quart or Ale to the ſame quantity, and put therein of Saffaron one ounce, and Turmerick one ounce, both made into fine powder, with the iuyce of Salendine ſo much as will ſuffice, and give him this bloud-warme, and order him as before. ✠. This is alſo very good.

§. 2. *Y*.

Hippoph. VV*Hat cure have you for the mattering of the* Yard *?*
Hippoſ. This diſeaſe commeth commonly in Covering-time by overmuch ſpending upon *Mares*, for that the heat of the *Mares*, & the *Horſe* his own heate and Coity, doth burne the *Horſe* giving him the running of the reines, as we may truly terme it: And the ſignes to know it, is, you ſhall perceive the end of the *Yard* to be ſwelled, & when he piſſeth you may obſerve him to do it with much paine, and you may alſo ſee at other times the *Yard* to drop with yellow matter. The cure. Give him firſt a purge preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 16. §. 14. *let P.* & it is the firſt purgation which will eaſe his pain in piſſing; then the next day,

Take Roch-Allome one ounce, and white-Wine one pinte, boyle them till the Allome be diſſolved, then bloud-warme iniect this Lotion with a Syringe, putting it up into his *Yard*, ſo far as may be, foure or five times a day till he be well. ✠. This is a perfect cure, nor ſhall you need any other.

FINIS.

Imprimatur,

THOMAS VVYKES.

A Table of the Contents.

The First Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the first Booke.

THE *Introduction*, Chap. 1. page 1
Of the best manner of breeding, 2. 4
How to make and order your Stable, 3. 10
Of the marks, colours, and shapes of Horses, 4. 15
Of the office of the Groome and Rider, 5. 25

The Second Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the second Booke.

OF *what poynts consisteth the office of the Ferrier, handled Dialogue-wise: as also a formall examine of the Ferrier*, chap. 1. p. 34
Of the causes of sickenesse in generall, and the causes of health and long life, 2. 46
Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Ferrier before he doe adventure to administer, 3. 55
The manner of handling the particular cures, 4. 64

The Index.

Chap. 4. A.

Acopum and its vertues 66
Arman 1. 67
Arman 2. 68
Ach in the head 69
Ægyptiacum 1. 71
Ægyptiacum 2. ibid.
Accloy 72
All diseases a Cataplasme 1 ibid.
All diseases a Cataplasme 2. 73
All diseases 3. ibid.
S. Anthonies *fire* 74
Anticor 75
Attaint upper 76
Attaint upper or back sinew sprain 77
Attaint Neather 79
Avives ibid.
Arraistes or Rat-tayles 81
Ayering 139

Chap. 5. B.

Back swelled 82
Barbs 83
Bath for Humours to dry them up ibid.
Bath for stiffe legges 84
Bath 1 ibid.
Bath 2 ibid.
Bath 3 85
Bath 4 ibid.
Belly gaunt 86
Belly paine ibid.
Bit wherewith the tongue is hurt 87
Bleeding to stanch 87

Blinde-

Blindeneſſe 88
Biting of a mad Dog 89
Blond Spaven 90
Bath for a bloud-Spaven 91
Bone-Spaven ibid.
Bloud-ſhotten eyes 93
Bloud ſhotten eyes: a charge 94
Bloud-running itch 95
Blowing and Purſiveneſſe ibid.
Bots, &c. 97
Bots 1. ibid.
Bots 99
Britle hoofe 100
Bruiſed heeles and feet 101
Burning with ſhot 102
Bunches, knots, &c. 103
Bran prepared 185
Black drink for the Glanders 234

Chap. 6. C.

Caſt in a Halter 105
Canker 106
Caſting the hoofe 107
Cordiall powder 67
Cautery actuall 108
Cautery potentiall 110
Coraſive 1 ibid.
Cauſtick ibid.
Charge for ſurbating 111
Cleanſe a Horſe ibid.
Clifts and cracks in the heeles 112
Cliſters 113
Cliſter 1. 116
Cliſter laxative 2. 117
Cliſter reſtringent 3. ibid.
Cliſter for a fat Horſe 4. ibid.
Cliſter for melancholy 5 ibid.
Cliſter in caſe of deſperate ſickneſſe 6. 118
Cliſter for the Peſtilence 7. ibid.
Cliſter lenitive 8. ibid.
Cliſter for the Collicke 9. ibid.
Cloyed 119
Cods ſwelled ibid.
Cods ſwelled a charge 120
Collicke ibid.
Collicke and ſtone 121
Colt Evill 122
Cold ibid.
Conſumption 135
Conſumption of the fleſh 136
Convulſion 137
Coſtiveneſſe or belly-bound 139
Crown-ſcab 140
Curb 141
Cold or running at the noſe 159
Coperas water 219
Charge 306
Corrupt bloud 330

Chap. 7. D.

Dangerous ſickneſſe how it commeth 142
Dangerous ſickneſſe how to know 143
Dangerous ſickneſſe how to prevent 145
Dangerous ſickneſſe how to cure ib.
Diapente 146
Diateſſeron 147
Deſperate and dangerous ſickneſſe ibid.
Diſſolve tumors 149
Deſperate ſickneſſe 150
Drooping 152
Dropſie 153
Dead fleſh 155
Deep wounds ibid.
Deſperate ſtraine 156
Diſſolve greaſe ibid.
Diſeaſe of the Liver 158
Draw his yard 160
Draw a thorne ibid.
Drink to preſerve lungs 161
Diſeaſes to prevent 163
Drinke comfortable ibid.
Diſlocated joynt 164
Diſeaſe of tranchaiſons or the cholicke ibid.
Dry up ſores 165

Chap. 8. E.

Eate a tayne 166
Eate a feather 167
Eate a Spider ibid.
Eye a ſtroke 168
Eye Filme, Pin and Web Dragons ibid.
Eye a canker. 170
Eye a charge 171
Electuarium Theriacum 67
Excreſion to cure 302
Eye a Wart 173
Eye broken 174
Excretion 175
Eares impoſtumated 176

Chap. 9. F.

Farcin 178
Farcin wet 184
Flanks ibid.
Fat Horſe 185
Fat a leane horſe ibid.
Falling of the fundament 186
Feaver defined 187
Feaver how to know 189
Feaver ordinary ibid.
Feaver Hectique 191
Feaver peſtilent 192
Flying worme or tetter 194
Feet to mollifie 195
Figge in the foot ibid.
Fiſtula 196
Fiſtula water 197
Fetlock hurt 199
Froathy or weeping hoofe ibid.
Foundring in the feet 200
Foundred long 201
Foundred in the feet and body ibid.
Falſe quarter 206
Flanks or maidesflanks 209
Flux 210
Foule and old ſores to wounds ifie 211
Forſaking meat 212
Fruſh running 213
Felerick 154
Fret 214

Chap. 10. G.

Galled back 217
Galled with the ſhackle ibid.
Gravelling 218
Green oym-ment 219
Greaſe molten 220
Glanders 222
Glanders a purging drink 230

Chap. 11. H.

Hayre from the mayne and tayle falling away 235
Hayre to grow 236
Head-ach ibid.
Heeles ſcabbed ibid.
Heeles kibed 237
Heele Mellet ibid.
Hide-bound 238
Honey-charge 241
Hoofe to grow ibid.
Hoofe weeping 243
Hoofe looſe ibid.
Hoofe hurt ibid.
Hoofe bound 244
Hoofe bound a charge ibid.
Hoofe brittle 245
Hoofe ſtraight ibid.
Hroſe looſe ibid.
Hoofe trodden upon or hurt ibid.
Hoofe brittle to make tough ibid.
Hoofe to grow 246
Halter caſt ibid.
Hough ſwelled ibid.
Humours to dry up 247
Hurt ſhoulder ibid.
Hurts old to cure ibid.
Honey 69
Horſe-bread 148
Haw 169

Chap. 12. I.

Imperfections in the feet 248
Impoſtumation to ripen. ibid.

Inward

Inward ſickneſſe 249
Inward ſickneſſe a ſuppoſitory ibid.
Inflamations 250
Ioynt grieved 251
Increaſe the hoofe ibid

Chap. 12. L.

Lampas 252
Lax to ſtop ibid.
Leane horſe to make fat 253
Legs ſwelled 254
Legs ſwelled 255
Leproſie or elephantick malady ibid.
Lice 256
Lime and Honey 257
Loe-worme ib.
Lungs a diſeaſe 259
Lint wherewith to heale ulcers or old ſores 165
Lunatick eyes 173
Lameneſſe to finde out, three wayes 311

Chap. 13. M.

Malender 260
Mainge 262
Mouth ſore 267
Mellet 268
Mollifie humours ib.
Morfounded ib.
Melancholy 330

Chap. 14. N.

Noſe running 270
Navell galled ib.
Night mare 271

Chap. 15. O.

Old ſores 272
Over reach in the heele ib.
Oyntment 304
Oyntment ib.
Oyntment 305

Chap. 16. P.

Paſtern joynt ſtrained 275
Pill for the Glanders ib.
Peſtilence 277
Preparative 278
Paſtons 279
Purſiveneſſe a pill 280
Piſſing of bloud 281
Poll-evill 283
Powder for old ſores 284
Purſiveneſſe or ſhortneſſe of breath, 286
Prickt 290
Perfume 1 292
Perfume 2 ib.
Perfume 3 ib.
Purgation 1 294
Purgation 2 ib.
Purgation 3 295
Purgation 4 ib.
Purgation 5 ib.
Purgation 6 296
Putrefactive 110
Purgation defined 113
Pin and Web 169
Pearle or filme ib.
Perfume 234
Powder 304

Chap. 17. Q.

Quick ſeab 297
Quitter-bone 298

Chap. 18. R.

Red water 300
Reſtringent charge ib.
Ring bone 301
Excration to cure 302
Rot 303
Rules to know where a Horſe halteth either before or behinde 310

Chap. 18 S.

Salve 304
Salve 305
Shoulder wrench 306
Shoulders dislocated ibid.
Shoulders strained 307
Shoulder rowelled 308
Shoulder the skin broken ibid.
Shoulder splat 309
Shoulder splat 313
Shoulder-pight ibid.
Scratches 315
Sit fast 317
Scabs and Scratches 318
Stale or dung 319
Sicke in travell ibid.
Sudden sickneſſe 320
Selender ibid.
Sicke or surfeited 321
Sinew sprung ib.
Sinew grieved 322
Sinew cut ib.
Sinew sprain ib.
Sinew sprain 323
Straine newly taken ib.
Straine old 324
Stinking breath ib.
Splent. 315
Stumbling 328
Stiffe legges 329
Stale or pisse ib.
Stavers 330
Swelled legs 333
Swelled cods 334
Spongy wart ib.
Surbated feet 335
Stifled 336
Stone 337
String hault 338
Suppoſitory 1 339
Suppoſitory 2 ib.
Suppoſitory 3 ib.
Suppoſitory 4 340
Suppoſitory 5 ib.
Suppoſitory 6 ib.
Sweating ib.
Spirit of Tinne 211

Chap. 19. T.

Tongue hurt 341
Taile an itch ib.
Theriacum unguentum 342
Tetter or Ring worme ib.
Tyring in travell 343
Trunchions 97
Two things to be observed in every cure 64
Three sorts of vermine which doe ingender in the body of the Horse 97

Chap. 20. V.

Vomiting 345
Violent cough 346
Vineger 69
Ver volant 193
Veynes to take up 347

Chap. 21. W.

Winde to preserve 347
Wild-fire 348
Wounds 349
Wen or excretion 350
Wind galles 350
Wither-wrung 352
Wormes 354
White water 68
Water 305
When in the knee 311
When in the shanke ib.
When in the pastern ib.

Chap. 22. Y.

Yellowes 355
Yard mattering 356

FINIS.